English: 1 Corinthians, 1 John, 1 Peter, 1 Thessalonians, 1 Timothy, 2 Corinthians, 2 John, 2 Peter, 2 Thessalonians, 2 Timothy, 3 John, Acts, Colossians, Ephesians, Galatians, Hebrews, James, John, Jude, Luke, Mark, Matthew, Philemon, Philippians, Revelation, Romans, Titus

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Chapter 1

# Matthew 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set a quotation from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this for the quoted material in 1:23.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list that records a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could become king. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Use of the passive voice

Matthew uses the passive voice very purposefully in this chapter to indicate that Mary did not have a sexual relationship with anyone. She became pregnant with Jesus because the Holy Spirit performed a miracle. Many languages do not have a passive voice, so translators in those languages must find other ways to present the same truths.

#### Matthew 1:1

##### General Information:

The author begins with Jesus's genealogy in order to show that he is a descendant of King David and of Abraham. The genealogy continues through Matthew 1:16.

##### The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ

You could translate this as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

##### Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

There were many generations between Jesus, David, and Abraham. Here "son" means "descendant." Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

##### son of David

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus's ancestry.

#### Matthew 1:2

##### Abraham was the father of Isaac

"Abraham became the father of Isaac" or "Abraham had a son Isaac" or "Abraham had a son named Isaac." There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus's ancestors.

##### Isaac the father ... Jacob the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Isaac was the father ... Jacob was the father"

#### Matthew 1:3

##### Perez ... Zerah ... Hezron ... Ram

These are names of men.

##### Perez the father ... Hezron the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Perez was the father ... Hezron was the father"

#### Matthew 1:4

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

##### Amminadab the father ... Nahshon the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Amminadab was the father ... Nahshon was the father"

#### Matthew 1:5

##### Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab

"Salmon was the father of Boaz, and Boaz's mother was Rahab" or "Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

##### Boaz the father ... Obed the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Boaz was the father ... Obed was the father"

##### Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth

"Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed's mother was Ruth" or "Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

#### Matthew 1:6

##### David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah

"David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon"

##### the wife of Uriah

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

#### Matthew 1:7

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

##### Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa

The word "was" is understood in both of these phrases. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa"

#### Matthew 1:8

##### Joram

This man was called both Joram and Jehoram in the Old Testament.

#### Matthew 1:9

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

#### Matthew 1:10

##### Amon

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

#### Matthew 1:11

##### Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah

A more specific term for "ancestor" can also be used, particularly if the word "ancestor" would only be used for someone who lived before one's grandparents. Alternate translation: "Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah"

##### at the time of the deportation to Babylon

"when they were forced to move to Babylon" or "when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon." If your language needs to specify who went to Babylon, you could say "the Israelites" or "the Israelites who lived in Judah."

##### Babylon

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

#### Matthew 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

##### After the deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

##### Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel

Shealtiel was Zerubbabel's grandfather.

#### Matthew 1:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 1:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 1:15

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

#### Matthew 1:16

##### Connecting Statement:

The author concludes Jesus's genealogy, which began in Matthew 1:1.

##### Mary, by whom Jesus was born

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, who gave birth to Jesus"

##### who is called Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom people call Christ"

#### Matthew 1:17

##### fourteen

"14"

##### deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

#### Matthew 1:18

##### General Information:

This begins a new part of the story in which the author describes the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph

"His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph." Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: "The parents of Mary, the mother of Jesus, had promised her in marriage to Joseph"

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged

Translate in a way that makes it clear that Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged"

##### before they came together

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together"

##### she was found to be pregnant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they realized that she was pregnant" or "it happened that she was pregnant"

##### to be pregnant

"to be carrying a child"

##### by the Holy Spirit

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

#### Matthew 1:19

##### Joseph, her husband

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. Alternate translation: "Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary"

##### to divorce her quietly

"to quietly cancel their plans to get married"

#### Matthew 1:20

##### As he thought

"As Joseph thought"

##### appeared to him in a dream

"came to him while Joseph was dreaming"

##### son of David

Here "son" means "descendant."

##### the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

#### Matthew 1:21

##### She will bear a son

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy.

##### you will call his name

"you must name him" or "you must give him the name." This is a command.

##### for he will save

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

##### his people

This refers to the Jews.

#### Matthew 1:22

##### General Information:

The author quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's birth was according to scripture.

##### all this happened

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

##### what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago"

##### the prophet

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Isaiah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Isaiah"

#### Matthew 1:23

##### Behold ... Immanuel

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

##### Behold, the virgin

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the virgin"

##### Immanuel

This is a male name.

##### Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."

This is not in the book of Isaiah. Matthew is explaining the meaning of the name "Immanuel." You could translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "Immanuel." This name means 'God with us.'"

#### Matthew 1:24

##### Connecting Statement:

The author concludes his description of the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

##### as the angel of the Lord commanded

The angel had told Joseph to take Mary as his wife and to name the child Jesus.

##### he took her as his wife

"he married Mary"

#### Matthew 1:25

##### he did not know her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with her"

##### to a son

"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

##### Then he called his name Jesus

"Joseph named the child Jesus"

## Chapter 2

# Matthew 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6 and 18, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "His star"

These words probably refer to a star that the learned men believed to be the sign of a new king of Israel. (See: sign)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Learned men"

English translations use many different words to translate this phrase. These words include "magi" and "wise men." These men could have been scientists or astrologers. If you can, you should translate this with the general words "learned men."

#### Matthew 2:1

##### General Information:

A new part of the story begins here and continues through the end of the chapter. Matthew tells about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

##### Bethlehem of Judea

"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### in the days of Herod the king

"when Herod was king there"

##### Herod

This refers to Herod the Great.

##### learned men from the east

"men from the east who studied the stars"

##### from the east

"from a country far east of Judea"

#### Matthew 2:2

##### Where is he who was born King of the Jews?

The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"

##### his star

They were not saying that the baby was the rightful owner of the star. Alternate translation: "the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"

##### in the east

"as it came up in the east" or "while we were in our country"

##### worship

Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

#### Matthew 2:3

##### he was troubled

"he was worried." Herod was worried that this baby would replace him as king.

##### all Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" refers to the people. Also, "all" means "many." Matthew is exaggerating to emphasize how many people were worried. Alternate translation: "many of the people in Jerusalem"

#### Matthew 2:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 2:5

##### In Bethlehem of Judea

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### this is what was written by the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what the prophet wrote long ago"

#### Matthew 2:6

##### General Information:

The chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

##### you, Bethlehem, ... are not the least among the rulers of Judah

Micah was speaking to the people of Bethlehem as if they were with him but they were not. Also, "are not the least" can be translated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: "you, people of Bethlehem, ... your town is among the most important towns in Judah"

##### who will shepherd my people Israel

Micah speaks of this ruler as a shepherd. This means he will lead and care for the people. Alternate translation: "who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep"

#### Matthew 2:7

##### Herod secretly called the learned men

This means that Herod talked to the learned men without other people knowing.

##### men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "men, and he asked them, 'When exactly did this star appear?'"

##### what time the star had appeared

It is implied that the learned men told him when the star appeared. Alternate translation: "what time the star had appeared. The learned men told Herod when the star first appeared"

#### Matthew 2:8

##### young child

This refers to Jesus.

##### bring me a report

"report back to me" or "let me know"

##### worship him

See how you translated this in Matthew 2:2.

#### Matthew 2:9

##### After they

"After the learned men"

##### they had seen in the east

"they had seen come up in the east" or "they had seen in their country"

##### went before them

"guided them" or "led them"

##### stood still over

"stopped over"

##### where the young child was

"the place where the young child was staying"

#### Matthew 2:10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 2:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Mary, Joseph, and the young Jesus were living.

##### They went

"The learned men went"

##### They fell down and worshiped him

"They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground." They did this to honor Jesus.

##### their treasures

Here "treasures" refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. Alternate translation: "the containers that held their treasures"

#### Matthew 2:12

##### God warned them

"Afterwards, God warned the learned men." God knew that Herod wanted to harm the child.

##### dream not to return to Herod, so

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "dream, saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod,' so"

#### Matthew 2:13

##### they had departed

"the learned men had departed"

##### appeared to Joseph in a dream

"came to Joseph while he was dreaming"

##### Get up, take ... flee ... Remain ... you

God is speaking to Joseph, so these should all be singular forms.

##### until I tell you

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "until I tell you it is safe to come back"

##### I tell you

Here "I" refers to God. The angel is speaking for God.

#### Matthew 2:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 2:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

##### He remained

It is implied that Joseph, Mary, and Jesus remained in Egypt. Alternate translation: "They remained"

##### until the death of Herod

Herod does not die until Matthew 2:19. This statement describes the length of their stay in Egypt, and it does not say that Herod died at this time.

##### what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord had said through the prophet; he had said" or "what the Lord had told the prophet to tell the people; he had said"

##### Out of Egypt I have called my Son

"I have called my Son out of Egypt"

##### my Son

In Hosea this refers to the people of Israel. Matthew quoted it to say that this was true of God's Son, Jesus. Translate it using a word for son that could refer to the only son or the first son.

#### Matthew 2:16

##### General Information:

These events happen before Herod's death, which Matthew mentioned in [Matthew 2:15]

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts back to Herod and tells what he did when he learned that the learned men had deceived him.

##### he had been mocked by the learned men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the learned men had embarrassed him by tricking him"

##### He sent and killed all the male children

Herod did not kill the children himself. Alternate translation: "He gave orders for his soldiers to kill all the boys" or "He sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies"

##### two years old and under

"2 years old and younger"

##### according to the time

"based on the time"

#### Matthew 2:17

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Jeremiah to show that the death of all of the male children in the region of Bethlehem was according to scripture.

##### Then was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled"

##### what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah"

#### Matthew 2:18

##### A voice was heard ... they were no more

Matthew is quoting the prophet Jeremiah.

##### A voice was heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound"

##### Rachel weeping for her children

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

##### she refused to be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one could comfort her"

##### because they were no more

"because the children were gone and would never return." Here "were no more" is a mild way of saying they are dead. Alternate translation: "because they were dead"

#### Matthew 2:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to Egypt, where Joseph, Mary, and the young Jesus are living.

##### behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

#### Matthew 2:20

##### those who sought the child's life

Here "sought the child's life" is a way of saying they wanted to kill the child. "Alternate translation: "those who were looking for the child in order to kill him"

##### those who sought

This refers to King Herod and his advisors.

#### Matthew 2:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 2:22

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 2:1 about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

##### But when he heard

"But when Joseph heard"

##### Archelaus

This is the name of Herod's son.

##### he was afraid

"Joseph was afraid"

#### Matthew 2:23

##### what had been spoken through the prophets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets"

##### he would be called a Nazarene

Here "he" refers to Jesus. The prophets before the time of Jesus would have referred to him as the Messiah or the Christ. Alternate translation: "people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene"

## Chapter 3

# Matthew 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in verse 3.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Bear fruit worthy of repentance"

Fruit is a common picture word in the scriptures. Writers use it to describe the results of either good or bad behavior. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "The kingdom of heaven is near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

#### Matthew 3:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of the ministry of John the Baptist.

##### In those days

This is many years after Joseph and his family left Egypt and went to Nazareth. This is probably near the time that Jesus begins his ministry. Alternate translation: "Some time later" or "Some years later"

#### Matthew 3:2

##### Repent

This is plural in form. John is speaking to the crowds.

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

#### Matthew 3:3

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that John the Baptist was God's appointed messenger to prepare for Jesus's ministry.

##### For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Isaiah the prophet was speaking of John the Baptist when he said"

##### The voice of one calling out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight

These two phrases mean the same thing.

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear the Lord's message when he comes" or "Repent and be ready for the Lord to come"

#### Matthew 3:4

##### Now ... wild honey

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about John the Baptist.

##### wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist

This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

#### Matthew 3:5

##### Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region

The words "Jerusalem," "Judea," and "the region" are metonyms for the people from those areas. The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people went out. Alternate translation: Then very may people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region"

#### Matthew 3:6

##### They were baptized by him ... River, confessing their sins

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized them ... River after they confessed their sins"

##### They

This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

#### Matthew 3:7

##### General Information:

John the Baptist begins to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

##### You offspring of vipers, who

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are a kind of dangerous snakes and represent evil. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes! Who" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who"

##### who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?

John uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's wrath like this." or "do not think that you can flee from God's wrath just because I baptize you."

##### flee from the wrath that is coming

The word "wrath" is being used to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "run away from the punishment that is coming" or "escape because God is about to punish you"

#### Matthew 3:8

##### Bear fruit worthy of repentance

The phrase "bear fruit" is a metaphor referring to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Let your actions show that you have truly repented"

#### Matthew 3:9

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham.

##### For I say to you

This adds emphasis to what John is about to say.

##### God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones

"God is able to make physical descendants out of even these stones and give them to Abraham"

#### Matthew 3:10

##### Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist continues to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

##### Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins"

#### Matthew 3:11

##### for repentance

"to show that you have repented"

##### But he who comes after me

Jesus is the person who comes after John.

##### is mightier than I

"is more important than I am"

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This metaphor compares John's baptism with water to the future baptism with fire. This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word "baptize" in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism.

#### Matthew 3:12

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

This metaphor compares the way Christ will separate the righteous people from the unrighteous people to the way a man separates wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "Christ is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

Here "in his hand" means the person is ready to act. Alternate translation: "Christ is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar in shape to a pitchfork but with wide tines made of wood.

##### his threshing floor

"his ground" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

##### gather his wheat into the storehouse ... burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out

This is a metaphor showing how God will separate righteous people from evil people. The righteous will go to heaven like wheat into a farmer's storehouse, and God will burn the people who are like chaff with a fire that will never be put out.

##### can never be put out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will never burn out"

#### Matthew 3:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when John the Baptist baptizes Jesus.

##### to be baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so John could baptize him"

#### Matthew 3:14

##### I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?

John uses a question to show his surprise at Jesus's request. Alternate translation: "You are more important than I am. I should not baptize you. You should baptize me."

#### Matthew 3:15

##### for us

Here "us" refers to Jesus and John.

##### John permitted him

You may need to make explicit that John permitted Jesus to be baptized by John. Alternate translation: "John allowed Jesus to be baptized" or "John agreed to baptize Jesus"

#### Matthew 3:16

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about John the Baptist. It describes what happened after he baptized Jesus.

##### After he was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After John baptized Jesus"

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### the heavens were opened to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus"

##### coming down like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a statement that the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) this is a simile that compares the Spirit coming down upon Jesus gently, the way a dove would.

#### Matthew 3:17

##### a voice came out of the heavens saying

"Jesus heard a voice from heaven." Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke from heaven"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

## Chapter 4

# Matthew 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6, 15 and 16, which is from the Old Testament.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "the kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for use whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phase "is coming near" and "has come near."

#### "If you are the Son of God"

The reader should not understand these words in verses 3 and 6 to mean that Satan did not know whether Jesus was the Son of God. God had already said that Jesus was his Son ([Matthew 3:17](../../mat/03/17.md)), so Satan knew who Jesus was. He also knew that Jesus could make stones become bread and could throw himself off of high places and not be hurt. He was trying to make Jesus do these things and so disobey God and obey Satan. These words can be translated as "Show me your power if you are the Son of God" (See: satan and sonofgod)

#### Matthew 4:1

##### General Information:

Here Matthew begins a new part of the story in which Satan tempts Jesus in the wilderness after Jesus has been there for 40 days.

##### Jesus was led up by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led Jesus"

##### to be tempted by the devil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so the devil could tempt Jesus"

#### Matthew 4:2

##### he had fasted ... he was hungry

These refer to Jesus.

##### forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights." This refers to 24-hour periods. Alternate translation: "40 days"

#### Matthew 4:3

##### The tempter

These words refer to the same being as "the devil" (verse 1). You may have to use the same word to translate both.

##### If you are the Son of God, command

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do miracles for Jesus's own benefit. Alternate translation: "You are the Son of God, so you can command" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding"

##### the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

##### command these stones to become bread.

You could translate this with a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "say to these stones, 'Become bread.'"

##### bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

#### Matthew 4:4

##### General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with a quotation from Deuteronomy.

##### It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote this in the scriptures long ago"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

##### but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God

Here "word" and "mouth" refer to what God says. Alternate translation: "but by listening to everything that God says"

#### Matthew 4:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 4:6

##### General Information:

Satan quotes from the Psalms in order to tempt Jesus.

##### If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do a miracle for Jesus's own benefit. Alternate translation: "Since you are truly the Son of God, you can throw yourself down" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are truly the Son of God by throwing yourself down"

##### the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

##### throw yourself down

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

##### for it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the writer wrote in the scriptures" or "for it says in the scriptures"

##### 'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and

This can be translated with a direct quotation, and you can specify that it is God who will command. Alternate translation: "'God will say to his angels, "Take care of him,"' and" or "'God will command his angels to take care of you,' and"

##### They will carry you

"The angels will hold you"

#### Matthew 4:7

##### General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

##### Again it is written

It is understood that Jesus is quoting scripture again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Again, I will tell you what Moses wrote in the scriptures"

##### You must not test

Here "you" refers to anyone. Alternate translation: "One should not test" or "No person should test"

#### Matthew 4:8

##### Again, the devil

"Next, the devil"

#### Matthew 4:9

##### He said to him

"The devil said to Jesus"

##### All these things I will give you

"I will give you all these things." The tempter is emphasizing here that he will give "all these things," not just some of them.

##### fall down

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping.

#### Matthew 4:10

##### General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about how Satan tempted Jesus.

##### For it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses also wrote in the scriptures"

##### You will worship ... you will serve

Both instances of "you" are singular, a command to everyone who hears it.

#### Matthew 4:11

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

#### Matthew 4:12

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Matthew describes the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. These verses explain how Jesus came to be in Galilee.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### John had been handed over

This can be stated in active form and the information omitted from the euphemism can be stated. Alternate translation: "the king had handed John over to the prison" or "the king had arrested John"

#### Matthew 4:13

##### in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali

"Zebulun" and "Naphtali" are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel.

#### Matthew 4:14

##### This happened

This refers to Jesus's going to live in Capernaum.

##### what was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God said"

#### Matthew 4:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

##### The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali ... Galilee of the Gentiles!

These are two descriptions of the same territory.

##### toward the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Matthew 4:16

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

##### The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is a metaphor for God's true message that saves people from their sin.

##### The people who sat

These words can be combined with the sentence beginning with "The land of Zebulun" (verse 15). Alternate translation: "In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali ... where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

##### who sat ... who sat

"who were living ... who were living." The word "sat" is an idiom for having lived for a long time in one place, not to sitting on the ground or a piece of furniture.

##### to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen

This basically has the same meaning as the first part of the sentence. Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" is a metaphor. It represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever.

#### Matthew 4:17

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "the kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, include a word that means "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

#### Matthew 4:18

##### General Information:

This begins a new scene within the part of the story about Jesus's ministry in Galilee. Here he begins to gather men to be his disciples.

##### casting a net into the sea

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Matthew 4:19

##### Come, follow me

Jesus invites Simon and Andrew to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples. Alternate translation: "Be my disciples"

##### I will make you fishers of men

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish"

#### Matthew 4:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 4:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus calls more men to be his disciples.

##### He called them

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

#### Matthew 4:22

##### they immediately left

"at that moment they left"

##### left the boat ... and followed him

It should be clear that they immediately put their nets down and left that place with Jesus. If your language requires you to tell whether they were leaving for the rest of the day or for a long time or for the rest of their lives, you should probably translate as they were leaving for the rest of their lives. It would be good to have a note saying that the Greek does not specify how long they would be gone.

#### Matthew 4:23

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. The rest of this chapter summarizes what he did and how the people responded.

##### teaching in their synagogues

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or "teaching in the synagogues of those people"

##### preaching the gospel of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's reign as king. Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will show himself as king"

##### every kind of disease and sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 4:24

##### those who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom demons controlled"

##### the epileptics

The word "epileptic" refers to people who have epilepsy and so sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably.

#### Matthew 4:25

##### the Decapolis

This name means "the Ten Towns." This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

## Chapter 5

# Matthew 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

Matthew 5:3-10, known as The Beatitudes or as The Blessings, has been set apart by being set farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text, with each line beginning with the word "blessed." This way of placing the words on the page highlights the poetic form of this teaching.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "His disciples"

It is possible to refer to anyone who followed Jesus as a follower or disciple. Jesus selected twelve of his followers to become his closest disciples, "the twelve disciples." They would later become known as the apostles.

#### Matthew 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

#### Matthew 5:2

##### He opened his mouth

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Jesus began to speak"

##### taught them

The word "them" refers to his disciples.

#### Matthew 5:3

##### General Information:

Here, Jesus begins to describe the characteristics of people who are blessed.

##### the poor in spirit

This means people who are humble. Alternate translation: "those who know they need God"

##### for theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "for God in heaven will be their king"

#### Matthew 5:4

##### those who mourn

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

##### they will be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will comfort them"

#### Matthew 5:5

##### the meek

"the gentle" or "those who do not rely on their own power"

##### they will inherit the earth

"God will give them the entire earth"

#### Matthew 5:6

##### those who hunger and thirst for righteousness

This metaphor describes people who strongly desire to do what is right. Alternate translation: "those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink"

##### they will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them"

#### Matthew 5:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 5:8

##### the pure in heart

"people whose hearts are pure." Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or intentions. Alternate translation: "those who only want to serve God"

##### they will see God

This means they will be able to live in God's presence. Alternate translation: "God will allow them to live with him"

#### Matthew 5:9

##### the peacemakers

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

##### for they will be called sons of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God will call them his children" or "they will be children of God"

##### sons of God

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

#### Matthew 5:10

##### those who have been persecuted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those people whom others treat unfairly"

##### for righteousness' sake

"because they do what God wants them to do"

##### theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:3]

#### Matthew 5:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes describing the characteristics of people who are blessed.

##### Blessed are you

The word "you" is plural.

##### say all kinds of evil things against you falsely

"say all kinds of evil lies about you" or "say bad things about you that are not true"

##### for my sake

"because you follow me" or because you believe in me"

#### Matthew 5:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 5:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how his disciples are like salt and light.

##### You are the salt of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) just as salt makes food good, disciples of Jesus influence the people of the world so that they will be good. Alternate translation: "You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt. Alternate translation: "As salt is for food, you are for the world"

##### if the salt has lost its taste

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor."

##### how can it be made salty again?

"how can it be made useful again?" Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "there is no way for it to become useful again."

##### except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it"

#### Matthew 5:14

##### You are the light of the world

This means Jesus's followers bring the message of God's truth to all the people who do not know God. Alternate translation: "You are like a light for the people of the world"

##### A city set on a hill cannot be hidden

At night when it is dark, people can see the city lights shining. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "During the night, no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill"

#### Matthew 5:15

##### Neither do people light a lamp

"People do not light a lamp"

##### put it under a basket

"place the lamp under a basket." This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

#### Matthew 5:16

##### Let your light shine before people

This means a disciple of Jesus should live in such a way that others can learn about God's truth. Alternate translation: "Let your lives be like a light that shines before people"

##### your Father who is in heaven

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 5:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law.

##### the prophets

This refers to what the prophets wrote in the scriptures.

#### Matthew 5:18

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### until heaven and earth pass away

Here "heaven" and "earth" refer to the entire universe. Alternate translation: "as long as the universe lasts"

##### all things have been accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all things have happened" or "God causes all things to happen"

##### all things

The phrase "all things" refers to everything in the law. Alternate translation: "everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law"

#### Matthew 5:19

##### whoever breaks

Possible meanings are 1) "whoever disobeys" or 2) "whoever ignores."

##### the least one of these commandments and teaches

"any of these commandments, even the least important one, and teaches"

##### whoever ... teaches others to do so will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if anyone ... teaches others to do so, God will call that person"

##### least in the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in Matthew. If possible use "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "the least important in his heavenly kingdom" or "the least important under the rule of our God in heaven"

##### keeps them and teaches them

"obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same"

##### great

most important

#### Matthew 5:20

##### For I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### you ... your ... you

These are plural.

##### that unless your righteousness exceeds ... Pharisees, you will in no way enter

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "that your righteousness must exceed ... Pharisees in order to enter"

#### Matthew 5:21

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is singular in "Do not murder," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about murder and anger.

##### it was said to them in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

##### will be subject to judgment

Possible meanings are 1) "will have to go to the judge" or 2) "will be in danger of punishment."

#### Matthew 5:22

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "I say to you."

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

##### brother

This refers to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

##### worthless person ... fool

Both of these insults represent a person who cannot think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

##### council

This was likely a local council, not the main Sanhedrin in Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 5:23

##### you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### offering your gift

"giving your gift" or "bringing your gift"

##### at the altar

It is implied that this is God's altar at the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to God at the altar in the temple"

##### there remember

"while you are standing at the altar you remember"

##### your brother has anything against you

"another person is angry with you because of something you did"

#### Matthew 5:24

##### First be reconciled with your brother

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "First make peace with the person"

#### Matthew 5:25

##### Agree with your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### your adversary

This is a person who takes someone to court for doing something wrong to accuse him before a judge.

##### may hand you over to the judge

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "will let the judge deal with you"

##### the judge may hand you over to the officer

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "the judge will give you over to the officer"

##### officer

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

##### you may be thrown into prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the officer might put you in prison"

#### Matthew 5:26

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### from there

"from prison"

#### Matthew 5:27

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is singular in "Do not commit adultery," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about adultery and lust.

##### that it was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God said" or "that Moses said"

##### commit

This word means to act out or do something.

#### Matthew 5:28

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart

This metaphor indicates that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery.

##### to lust after her

"and lusts after her" or "and desires to sleep with her"

##### in his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts. Alternate translation: "in his mind" or "in his thoughts"

#### Matthew 5:29

##### If your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you

The irony here is that people use their eyes in part to keep from stumbling. Here "eye" is a metonym for what a person chooses to look at or learn about, "stumble" is a metaphor for "sin," and "pluck it out and throw it away from you" is a hyperbolic metaphor for doing everything possible to avoid sinning. Alternate translation: "if what you are interested in causes you to want to sin, do everything you can to stay away from it"

##### If your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

##### right eye

This refers to the eye on the right-hand side of the face. The Jews thought of the right hand as more important than the left, so the phrase "right eye" was a metaphor for the most important eye. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

##### pluck it out

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. It means "forcefully remove it" or "destroy it." If the right eye is not specifically mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy your eyes." If eyes have been mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy them."

##### throw it away from you

"get rid of it"

##### one of your members should perish

"you should lose one part of your body"

##### than that your whole body should be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than for God to throw your whole body into hell"

#### Matthew 5:30

##### If your right hand causes

In this metonymy, the hand stands for the actions of the whole person.

##### right hand

This means the most important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

##### cut it off

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning.

#### Matthew 5:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about divorce.

##### It was also said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also said" or "Moses also said"

##### sends his wife away

This is a euphemism for "divorces his wife."

##### let him give

"he must give"

#### Matthew 5:32

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### makes her an adulteress

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

##### her after she has been divorced

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "her after her husband has divorced her" or "the divorced woman"

#### Matthew 5:33

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The "you" and "your" are singular in "Do not swear" and "carry out your oaths," but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about swearing oaths.

##### Again, you

"Also, you" or "Here is another example. You"

##### it was said to those in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

##### Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.

"Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do"

#### Matthew 5:34

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### swear not at all

"do not swear at all" or "do not swear by anything"

##### it is the throne of God

Because God reigns from heaven, Jesus speaks of heaven as if it were a throne. Alternate translation: "it is from here that God rules"

#### Matthew 5:35

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his words from verse 34, telling the people not to swear.

##### nor by the earth ... city of the great King

Here Jesus means that when people make a promise or when they say that something is true, they must not swear by anything. Some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, such as by heaven or earth, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

##### it is the footstool for his feet

This metaphor means the earth also belongs to God. Alternate translation: "it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet"

##### for it is the city of the great King

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

#### Matthew 5:36

##### General Information:

Previously Jesus told his hearers that God's throne, footstool, and earthly home are not theirs to swear by. Here he says that they may not swear even by their own heads.

##### your ... you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of these words are singular, but you may have to translate them as plural.

##### swear

This refers to taking an oath. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:34.

#### Matthew 5:37

##### let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.'

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

#### Matthew 5:38

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about retaliating against an enemy.

##### that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

##### eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him worse.

#### Matthew 5:39

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "I say to you" is plural. The "you" in "whoever strikes you" and the understood "you" in "turn to him" are both singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

##### one who is evil

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

##### strikes ... your right cheek

To strike the side of a man's face was an insult in Jesus's culture. As with the eye and the hand, the right cheek is the more important one, and striking that cheek was a terrible insult.

##### strikes

hits with the back of an open hand

##### turn to him the other also

"let him hit your other cheek also"

#### Matthew 5:40

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular. In some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

##### tunic ... cloak

The "tunic" was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The "cloak," the more valuable of the two, was worn over the "tunic" for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

##### let that person also have

"give also to that person"

#### Matthew 5:41

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The word "you" is singular, as is the understood "you" in the command "go." In some languages these may need to be translated as plural.

##### Whoever

"Anyone who." The context implies that he is speaking about a Roman soldier.

##### one mile

This is one thousand paces, which is the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If "mile" is confusing, it can be translated as "one kilometer" or "a distance."

##### with him

This refers to the one who compels you to go.

##### go with him two

"go the mile he forces you to go, and then go another mile." If "mile" is confusing, you can translate it as "two kilometers" or "twice as far."

#### Matthew 5:42

##### do not turn away from

"do not refuse to lend to." This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "lend to"

#### Matthew 5:43

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural. The "you" and "your" are singular in "You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy," but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about loving enemies.

##### that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

##### your neighbor

Here the word "neighbor" does not refer to a specific neighbor, but to any members of one's community or people group. These are people whom one usually desires to treat kindly or at least believes he ought to treat kindly. Alternate translation: "your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group"

#### Matthew 5:44

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### I say to you ... your enemies ... pray ... persecute you

All instances of "you" and "your," as well as the command to pray, are plural.

#### Matthew 5:45

##### you may be sons of your Father

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 5:46

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. This section began in Matthew 5:17.

##### what reward do you get?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that loving those who love them is not something special that God will reward them for. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will get no reward."

##### Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the tax collectors do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:47

##### what do you do more than others?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you do nothing more than others."

##### greet

This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

##### Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the Gentiles do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:48

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

## Chapter 6

# Matthew 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Matthew 6 continues Jesus's extended teaching known as "The Sermon on the Mount."

You may wish to set apart the prayer in 6:9-11 by placing it farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

#### Matthew 6:1

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3. In this section, Jesus addresses the "acts of righteousness" of alms, prayer, and fasting.

##### Watch out

This is a way to warn people to be careful. Alternate translation: "Be careful" or "Beware"

##### before people to be seen by them

It is implied that those who see the person will honor him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in front of people just so that they can see you and give you honor for what you have done"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 6:2

##### do not sound a trumpet before yourself

This metaphor means to do something that purposefully gets people's attention. Alternate translation: "do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:3

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about alms.

##### do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing

This is a metaphor for total secrecy. Just as hands usually work together and each can be said to "know" what the other is doing at all times, you should not let even those closest to you know when you are giving to the poor.

#### Matthew 6:4

##### your alms may be given in secret

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can give to the poor without other people knowing"

#### Matthew 6:5

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about prayer.

##### so that they may be seen by people

It is implied that those who see them will give them honor. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that people will see them and give them honor"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:6

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### enter your inner chamber. Shut the door

"go to a private place" or "go where you can be alone"

##### Father, who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is in that private place with the praying person. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### your Father who sees in secret

"your Father will see what you do in private and"

#### Matthew 6:7

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### do not make useless repetitions

Possible meanings are 1) the repetitions are useless. Alternate translation: "do not keep uselessly saying things over and over again" or 2) the words or sentences are meaningless. Alternate translation: "do not keeping repeating meaningless words"

##### they will be heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their false gods will hear them"

#### Matthew 6:8

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about how they as individuals should pray. The words "you" and "your" are plural in the first sentence. Within the prayer, the words "you" and "your" are singular and refer to God, "Our Father in heaven."

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### you ask him

See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

#### Matthew 6:9

##### Our Father in heaven

This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

##### may your name be honored as holy

Here "your name" refers to God himself. This can also be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "may people honor you as holy" or "may people honor you because you are holy"

##### may your name be honored as holy

By saying this, people show that they want to honor God as holy. Alternate translation: "help us to honor your name as holy" or "we want to honor you as holy"

#### Matthew 6:10

##### May your kingdom come

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "May you rule over everyone and everything completely"

##### May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will, just as everything in heaven does"

#### Matthew 6:11

##### General Information:

This is part of a prayer that Jesus was teaching the people. All instances of "we," "us," and "our" refer only to those who would pray this prayer. Those words do not also refer to God, to whom they would be praying.

##### daily bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general.

#### Matthew 6:12

##### debts

A debt is what one person owes another. This is a metaphor for sins.

##### our debtors

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person. This is a metaphor for those who have sinned against us.

#### Matthew 6:13

##### Do not bring us into temptation

The word "temptation," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything cause us to desire to sin"

#### Matthew 6:14

##### General Information:

All instances of "you" and "your" are plural. However, Jesus is telling his hearers what will happen to them as individuals if each person does not forgive others.

##### their trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "when they trespass against you"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 6:15

##### their trespasses ... your trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "them when they trespass against you ... you when you trespass against God" or "them when they do things that harm you ... you when you do things that make your Father angry"

#### Matthew 6:16

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurences of "you" are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about fasting.

##### they disfigure their faces

The hypocrites would not wash their faces and would not comb their hair. They did this purposely to draw attention to themselves so that people would see them and give them honor for fasting.

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:17

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

##### anoint your head

"put oil in your hair" or "groom your hair." To "anoint" the head here is to take normal care of one's hair. It has nothing to do with "Christ" meaning "anointed one." Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

#### Matthew 6:18

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

##### Father who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is with that person who fasts secretly. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private" See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### who sees in secret

"who sees what you do in private." See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

#### Matthew 6:19

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about money and possessions.

##### treasures

riches, the things to which a person gives the most value

##### where moth and rust destroy

"where moth and rust ruin treasures"

##### moth

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

##### rust

a brown substance that forms on metals

#### Matthew 6:20

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

##### store up for yourselves treasures in heaven

This is a metaphor that means do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven.

#### Matthew 6:21

##### General Information:

All occurrences of "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated in plural.

##### there will your heart be also

Here "heart" means a person's thoughts and interests.

#### Matthew 6:22

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### The eye is the lamp of the body

This is a metaphor. Possible meanings are 1) the eye is like a lamp because it enables a person to see things, or 2) the eye is like a lamp shining on a person's body because it shows what the person is really like. Alternate translation: "A person's eyes are like a lamp for his body"

##### if your eye is good, your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is good, it fills your body with light" or 2) "if your eye is good, it shows that your body is filled with light."

##### if your eye is good

Possible meanings are "if your eye is noble" or "if your eye sees clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are generous" or 2) "if you look at and want at what is good"

##### your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "you are full of righteousness" or 2) "you understand what is truly good"

##### eye is

You may have to translate this as plural, "eyes are."

#### Matthew 6:23

##### if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is bad, it fills your body with darkness" or 2) "if your eye is bad, it shows that your body is full of darkness."

##### if your eye is bad

Possible meanings are "if your eye is evil" or "if your eye does not see clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are greedy," or 2) "if you do not look at and want what is right."

##### if your eye is bad

This does not refer to magic. Jewish people often used this as a metaphor for someone who is greedy.

##### your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are "you are full of evil" or 2) "you will understand nothing about what is right."

##### if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!

"if that which is supposed to cause light in your body causes darkness, then your body is in complete darkness"

#### Matthew 6:24

##### for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that a person cannot love and be devoted both to God and money at the same time.

##### You cannot serve God and wealth

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

#### Matthew 6:25

##### General Information:

Here the instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### to you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

##### is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "obviously life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear." or "clearly there are things in life that are more imortant than food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes."

#### Matthew 6:26

##### barns

places to store crops

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### Are you not more valuable than they are?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "Obviously you are more valuable than birds."

#### Matthew 6:27

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Here to "add one cubit to his lifespan" is a metaphor for adding time to how long a person will live. Alternate translation: "None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need."

##### one cubit

A cubit, a measure of a little less than half a meter, is used here as a metaphor for a short period of time.

#### Matthew 6:28

##### Why are you anxious about clothing?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "You should not be worried about what you will wear."

##### Think about

"Consider"

##### lilies ... They do not labor, and they do not spin cloth

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

##### lilies

A lily is a kind of wild flower.

#### Matthew 6:29

##### even Solomon ... was not clothed like one of these

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### was not clothed like one of these

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies"

#### Matthew 6:30

##### so clothes the grass in the fields

Jesus continues to speak about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

##### grass

If your language has a general word that can refer both to "grass" and to the word you used for "lilies" in the previous verse, you can use it here.

##### is thrown into the oven

The Jews at that time used grass in their fires to cook their food. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone throws it into a fire" or "someone burns it"

##### how much more will he clothe you ... faith?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that God will provide what they need. Alternate translation: "he will certainly clothe you ... faith."

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about clothing shows they have little faith in God.

#### Matthew 6:31

##### Therefore

"Because of all of this,"

##### What clothes will we wear

In this sentence, "clothes" is a synecdoche for material possessions. Alternate translation: "What possessions will we have"

#### Matthew 6:32

##### For the Gentiles search for these things

"For the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear"

##### your heavenly Father knows that you need them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 6:33

##### seek first his kingdom and his righteousness

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "concern yourselves first with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right"

##### all these things will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will provide all these things for you"

#### Matthew 6:34

##### Therefore

"Because of all this"

##### tomorrow will be anxious for itself

Jesus speaks of "tomorrow" as if it were a person who could worry. Jesus means that a person will have enough to worry about when the next day comes.

## Chapter 7

# Matthew 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Matthew 5-7

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

#### "By their fruits you will know them"

Fruit is a common image in the scriptures. It is used to describe the results of either good or bad actions. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

#### Matthew 7:1

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The instances of "you" and the commands are plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

##### Do not judge

It is implied here that "judge" has the strong meaning of "condemn harshly" or "declare guilty." Alternate translation: "Do not condemn people harshly"

##### you will not be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not condemn you harshly"

#### Matthew 7:2

##### For

Be sure the reader understands the statement in 7:2 is based on what Jesus said in 7:1.

##### with the judgment you judge, you will be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will condemn you in the same way you condemn others"

##### measure

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

##### it will be measured out to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure it out to you"

#### Matthew 7:3

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the people for paying attention to other people's sins and ignoring their own. Alternate translation: "You look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." or "Do not look ... brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

All occurrences of "brother" in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

##### the log that is in your own eye

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

##### log

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

#### Matthew 7:4

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Matthew 7:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 7:6

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

##### dogs ... pigs

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. They are metaphors for wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally.

##### pearls

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. They are a metaphor for the knowledge of God or precious things in general.

##### they may trample

"the pigs may trample"

##### then turn and tear

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

#### Matthew 7:7

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

##### Ask ... Seek ... Knock

These are metaphors for praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers. If your language has a form for continuing to do something over and over, use it here.

##### Ask

request things from someone, in this case God. See how you translated this word in Matthew 5:42.

##### it will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you what you need"

##### Seek

look for someone, in this case God

##### Knock

To knock on a door was a polite way to request that the person inside the house or room open the door. If knocking on a door is impolite or not done in your culture, use the word that describes how people politely ask for doors to be opened. Alternate translation: "Tell God you want him to open the door"

##### it will be opened to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will open it for you"

#### Matthew 7:8

##### who ... asks

See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

#### Matthew 7:9

##### Or which one of you ... a stone?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "There is not one person among you ... a stone."

##### son asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

##### a loaf of bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "some food"

##### stone

This noun should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:10

##### Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

Jesus asks another question to teach the people. It is understood that Jesus is still referring to a man and his son. Alternate translation: "And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake."

##### he asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

##### fish ... snake

These nouns should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:11

##### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

##### how much more will your Father in heaven give ... him?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "then your Father in heaven will most certainly give ... him."

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### ask him

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

#### Matthew 7:12

##### whatever things you want people to do to you

"whatever way you want others to act toward you"

##### for this is the law and the prophets

Here "law" and "prophets" refer to what Moses and the prophets wrote. Alternate translation: "for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures"

#### Matthew 7:13

##### General Information:

This image of walking through a wide gate to destruction or a narrow gate to life represents how people live and the results of how they live. When you translate, use appropriate words for "wide" and "broad" that are as different as possible from "narrow" in order to emphasize the differences between the two sets of gates and ways.

##### Enter through the narrow gate ... many people who go through it

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter.

##### Enter through the narrow gate

You may need to move this to the end of verse 14: "Therefore, enter through the narrow gate."

##### the gate ... the way

Possible meanings are 1) "the way" refers to the road that leads to the gate of a kingdom, or 2) the "the gate" and "the way" both refer to the entrance to the kingdom.

##### to destruction

This abstract noun can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "to the place where people die"

#### Matthew 7:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak of people choosing how they are going to live as if they are choosing whether to go on one path or another.

##### to life

The abstract noun "life" can be translated using the verb "live." Alternate translation: "to the place where people live"

#### Matthew 7:15

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves

This metaphor means that false prophets will pretend they they are good and want to help people, but they are really evil and will do people harm.

##### ravenous wolves

wolves that are extremely hungry and that consume or destroy everything they touch

#### Matthew 7:16

##### By their fruits you will know them

This metaphor refers to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Just as you know a tree by the fruit that grows on it, you will know false prophets by how they act"

##### Do people gather ... thistles?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The people would have known that the answer is no. Alternate translation: "People do not gather ... thistles."

#### Matthew 7:17

##### every good tree produces good fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to good prophets who produce good works or words.

##### the bad tree produces bad fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to bad prophets who produce evil works.

#### Matthew 7:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 7:19

##### Every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

Jesus continues to use fruit trees as a metaphor to refer to false prophets. Here, he only states what will happen to the bad trees. It is implied that the same thing will happen to the false prophets.

##### is chopped down and thrown into the fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people chop down and burn"

##### chopped down

See how you translated this in Matthew 3:10

#### Matthew 7:20

##### you will recognize them by their fruits

The word "their" can refer to either the prophets or the trees. This metaphor implies that the fruit of trees and the deeds of prophets both reveal whether they are good or bad. If possible, translate this in a way so that it can refer to both trees and prophets.

#### Matthew 7:21

##### will enter into the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king"

##### those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"whoever does what my Father in heaven desires"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 7:22

##### in that day

Jesus said "that day" knowing his hearers would understand he was referring to the day of judgment. You should include "the day of judgment" only if your readers would not understand otherwise.

##### did we not prophesy ... drive out demons ... do many miracles?

The people use a question to emphasize that they did these things. Alternate translation: "we prophesied ... we drove out demons ... we did many miracles."

##### we

This "we" does not include Jesus.

##### in your name

Possible meanings are 1) "by your authority" or "by your power" or 2) "because we were doing what you wanted us to do" or 3) "because we asked you for the power to do it"

#### Matthew 7:23

##### I never knew you

This means the person does not belong to Jesus. Alternate translation: "You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you"

#### Matthew 7:24

##### Therefore

"For that reason"

##### my words

Here "words" refers to what Jesus says.

##### like a wise man who built his house upon a rock

Jesus compares those who obey his words to a person who builds his house where nothing can harm it.

##### rock

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

#### Matthew 7:25

##### it was founded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he put its foundation"

#### Matthew 7:26

##### like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand

Jesus continues the simile from the previous verse. He compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away.

#### Matthew 7:27

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Jesus's Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

##### fell

Use the general word in your language that describes what happens when a house falls down.

##### its destruction was complete

The rain, floods, and wind completely destroyed the house.

#### Matthew 7:28

##### General Information:

These verses describe how the people in the crowds reacted to Jesus's teaching in the Sermon on the Mount.

##### It came about that when

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

##### were astonished by his teaching

It is clear in 7:29 that they were amazed not just at what Jesus taught but also the way he taught it. Alternate translation: "were amazed by the way he taught"

#### Matthew 7:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 8

# Matthew 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Miracles

Jesus performed miracles to show that he could control things that no other people could control. He also showed that it is proper to worship him because he performed miracles. (See: authority)

#### Matthew 8:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that contains several accounts of Jesus healing people. This theme continues through Matthew 9:35.

##### When Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him

"After Jesus came down from the hill, a large crowd followed him." The crowd may have included both people who had been with him on the mountain and people who had not been with him.

#### Matthew 8:2

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### a leper

"a man who had leprosy" or "a man who had a skin disease"

##### bowed before him

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus.

##### if you are willing

"if you want to" or "if you desire." The leper knew that Jesus had the power to heal him, but he did not know if Jesus would want to touch him.

##### you can make me clean

Here "clean" means to be healed and to be able to live in the community again. Alternate translation: "you can heal me" or "please heal me"

#### Matthew 8:3

##### Be clean

By saying this, Jesus healed the man.

##### Immediately he was cleansed

"At that moment he was cleansed"

##### he was cleansed of his leprosy

The result of Jesus saying "Be clean" was that the man was healed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he was well" or "the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended"

#### Matthew 8:4

##### to him

This refers to the man that Jesus just healed.

##### say nothing to any man

"do not say anything to anyone" or "do not tell anyone I healed you"

##### show yourself to the priest

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people.

##### offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed. Lepers were ostracized, banned from the community, until they had proof of their healing.

##### to them

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups.

#### Matthew 8:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells about Jesus healing another person.

##### When he was coming into Capernaum

"When Jesus was coming into Capernaum"

#### Matthew 8:6

##### paralyzed

unable to move because of disease or stroke

#### Matthew 8:7

##### Jesus said to him

"Jesus said to the centurion"

##### I will come and heal him

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

#### Matthew 8:8

##### under my roof

This is an idiom that refers to inside the house. Alternate translation: "into my house"

##### say the word

Here "word" represents a command. Alternate translation: "give the command"

##### will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will become well"

#### Matthew 8:9

##### under authority ... under me

To be "under" someone means to be less important and to obey the commands of someone more important.

#### Matthew 8:10

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel

Jesus's hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater.

#### Matthew 8:11

##### you

Here "you" is plural and refers to "those who were following him" in [Matthew 8:10]

##### from the east and the west

Using the opposites "east" and "west" is a way of saying "everywhere." Alternate translation: "from everywhere" or "from far away in every direction"

##### recline at the table

People in that culture would lie down beside the table while eating. This phrase indicates that all those at the table are family and close friends. The joy in the kingdom of God is frequently spoken of as if the people there were feasting. Alternate translation: "live as family and friends"

##### in the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "when our God in heaven shows that he is king"

#### Matthew 8:12

##### sons of the kingdom will be cast out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will cast the sons of the kingdom out"

##### the sons of the kingdom

The phrase "the sons of the kingdom" is a metonym, referring to the unbelieving Jews of the kingdom of Judea. There is also irony here because the "sons" will be thrown out while the strangers will be welcomed. Alternate translation: "those who should have allowed God to rule over them"

##### the outer darkness

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. Alternate translation: "weeping and showing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 8:13

##### so may it be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so I will do it for you"

##### the servant was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed the servant"

##### at that very hour

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

#### Matthew 8:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells of Jesus healing another person.

##### Jesus had come

The disciples were probably with Jesus, but the focus of the story is on what Jesus said and did, so introduce the disciples only if needed to avoid wrong meaning.

##### Peter's mother-in-law

"the mother of Peter's wife"

#### Matthew 8:15

##### the fever left her

If your language would understand this personification to mean that the fever could think and act on its own, this can be translated as "she became better" or "Jesus healed her."

##### got up

"got out of bed"

#### Matthew 8:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to later that evening and tells of Jesus healing more people and casting out demons.

##### When evening had come

Because Jews did not work or travel on the Sabbath, "evening" may imply after the Sabbath. They waited until evening to bring people to Jesus. You do not need to mention the Sabbath unless you need to avoid wrong meaning.

##### many who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled"

##### He drove out the spirits with a word

Here "word" stands for a command. Alternate translation: "He commanded the spirits to leave"

#### Matthew 8:17

##### This was to fulfill

"Jesus did this to fulfill"

##### what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Isaiah the prophet had spoken"

##### He took our illnesses and bore our diseases

Matthew is quoting the prophet Isaiah to show that when Jesus healed people, he fulfilled what Isaiah had said would happen. These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Jesus truly did this. Alternate translation: "Truly he took our illnesses"

#### Matthew 8:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts and tells about Jesus's response to some people who wanted to follow him.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### he gave instructions

"he told his disciples"

#### Matthew 8:19

##### Then

This means after Jesus "gave instructions" but before he could get into the boat.

##### wherever

to any place

#### Matthew 8:20

##### Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests

Jesus answers with this proverb. This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest.

##### Foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs. They eat nesting birds and other small animals. If foxes are unknown in your area, use a general term for dog-like creatures or other furry animals.

##### holes

Foxes make holes in the ground to live in. Use the appropriate word for the place where the animal you use for "foxes" lives.

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### nowhere to lay his head

This refers to a place to sleep. Alternate translation: "no place of his own to sleep"

#### Matthew 8:21

##### allow me first to go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is that the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:22

##### leave the dead to bury their own dead

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead": 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the account of Jesus calming a storm as he and his disciples cross the Sea of Galilee.

##### entered a boat

"got onto a boat"

##### his disciples followed him

Try to use the same words for "disciple" and "follow" that you used in ([Matthew 8:21-22](./21.md)).

#### Matthew 8:24

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this. Alternate translation: "Suddenly" or "Without warning"

##### there arose a great storm on the sea

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a powerful storm arose on the sea"

##### so that the boat was covered with the waves

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the waves covered the boat"

#### Matthew 8:25

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's healing ministry was a fulfillment of prophecy.

##### woke him up, saying, "Save us

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

##### us ... we

If you need to translate these words as inclusive or exclusive, then inclusive is best. The disciples probably meant they wanted Jesus to save the disciples and himself from drowning.

##### we are perishing

"we are going to die very soon." The word "perishing" is a strong word for "dying."

#### Matthew 8:26

##### to them

"to the disciples"

##### Why are you afraid ... faith?

Jesus was rebuking the disciples with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid ... faith!" or "There is nothing for you to be afraid of ... faith!"

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in Matthew 6:30.

#### Matthew 8:27

##### What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?

"Even the winds and the sea obey him! What sort of man is this?" This rhetorical question shows that the disciples were surprised. Alternate translation: "This man is unlike any man we have ever seen! Even the wind and the waves obey him!"

##### even the winds and the sea obey him

For people or animals to obey or disobey is not surprising, but for wind and water to obey is very surprising. This personification describes the natural elements as being able to hear and respond like people.

#### Matthew 8:28

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the author returns to the theme of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### the Gadarenes

This name refers to theo people who lived in the town of Gadara.

##### two men who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "two men whom demons possessed" or "two men whom demons were controlling"

##### They ... were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way

The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

#### Matthew 8:29

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this.

##### What do we have to do with you, Son of God?

The demons use a question but they are being hostile toward Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not bother us, Son of God!"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God.

##### Have you come here to torment us before the set time?

Again, the demons use a question in a hostile way. Alternate translation: "You should not disobey God by punishing us before the specific time God has set when he will punish us!"

#### Matthew 8:30

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived.

#### Matthew 8:31

##### If you cast us out

It is implied that the demons knew that Jesus was going to cast them out. Alternate translation: "Because you are going to cast us out"

##### us

This is exclusive, meaning the demons only.

#### Matthew 8:32

##### to them

This refers to the demons inside the men.

##### The demons came out and went into the pigs

"The demons left the men and entered the pigs"

##### behold

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### rushed down the steep hill

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

##### they died in the water

"they fell into the water and drowned"

#### Matthew 8:33

##### Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

##### tending the pigs

"taking care of the pigs"

##### what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Jesus did to help the men whom demons had controlled"

#### Matthew 8:34

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

##### all the city

The word "city" is a metonym for the people of the city. The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize how very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out.

##### their region

"their area"

## Chapter 9

# Matthew 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action.

#### Rhetorical questions

Speakers in this chapter asked questions to which they already knew the answer. They asked the questions to show that they were not happy with the hearers or to teach them or to get them to think. Your language may have another way of doing this.

#### Proverbs

Proverbs are very short sentences that use words that are easy to remember. They teach about something that is generally true. People who understand proverbs usually have to know much about the language and culture of the speaker. When you translate the proverbs in this chapter, you may have to use many more words than the speakers used so that your readers can understand things that the original audiences understood.

#### Matthew 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Matthew returns to the theme, which he began in Matthew 8:1, of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man.

##### Jesus entered a boat

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus.

##### a boat

This is probably the same boat as in Matthew 8:23. You only need to specify this if needed to avoid confusion.

##### into his own city

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

#### Matthew 9:2

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

##### they brought

"some men from the city brought"

##### their faith

This refers to the faith of the men and may also include the faith of the paralyzed man.

##### Son

The man was not Jesus's real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

##### Your sins have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:3

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### among themselves

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

##### blaspheming

Jesus was claiming to be able to do things the scribes thought only God can do.

#### Matthew 9:4

##### knew their thoughts

Jesus knew what they were thinking either supernaturally or because he could see them talking to each other.

##### Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?

Jesus used this question to rebuke the scribes. Here "hearts" refers to their minds or their thoughts. Alternate translation: "Do not think evil thoughts."

##### evil

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

#### Matthew 9:5

##### For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

##### which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

The quotes can be translated as indirect quotes. Alternate translation: "which is easier, to tell someone that his sins are forgiven, or to tell him to get up and walk?" or "you may think that it is easier to tell someone that his sins are forgiven than to tell him to get up and walk."

##### Your sins are forgiven

Here "your" is singular. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:6

##### that you may know

"I will prove to you." The "you" is plural.

##### your mat ... your house

Here "you" is singular.

##### go to your house

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

#### Matthew 9:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 9:8

##### they were afraid

Possible meanings are 1) they were afraid, or 2) they were in awe. "Awe" is a feeling of wonder a person has when they see or experience something great or powerful.

##### who had given

"because he had given"

##### such authority

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

#### Matthew 9:9

##### Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man. Jesus then calls a tax collector to be one of his disciples.

##### As Jesus passed by from there

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### Matthew ... him ... He

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

##### He said to him

"Jesus said to Matthew"

##### He got up and followed him

"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means Matthew became Jesus's disciple.

#### Matthew 9:10

##### the house

This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be Jesus's house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

##### behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Matthew 9:11

##### When the Pharisees saw it

"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the tax collectors and sinful people"

##### Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?

The Pharisees use this question to criticize what Jesus is doing. Alternate translation: "Your teacher should not eat with tax collectors and sinner."

#### Matthew 9:12

##### When Jesus heard this

Here "this" refers to the question the Pharisees asked about Jesus eating with tax collectors and sinners.

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician, only those who are sick do

Jesus answers with a proverb. He means that he eats with these kinds of people because he has come to help sinners.

##### People who are strong in body

"People who are healthy"

##### physician

doctor

##### only those who are sick do

The phrase "need a physician" is understood. Alternate translation: "only people who are sick need a physician"

#### Matthew 9:13

##### You should go and learn what this means

Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate translation: "You should learn the meaning of what God said in the scriptures"

##### You should go

Here "you" is plural and refers to the Pharisees.

##### I desire mercy and not sacrifice

Jesus is quoting what the prophet Hosea wrote in the scriptures. Here, "I" refers to God.

##### For I came

Here "I" refers to Jesus.

##### the righteous

Jesus is using irony. He does not think there are any people who are righteous and do not need to repent. Alternate translation: "those who think they are righteous"

#### Matthew 9:14

##### Connecting Statement:

The disciples of John the Baptist question the fact that Jesus's disciples do not fast.

##### do not fast

"continue to eat regularly"

#### Matthew 9:15

##### Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses a question to answer John's disciples. They all knew that people do not mourn and fast at a wedding celebration. Jesus uses this proverb to show that his disciples do not mourn because he is still there with them. Alternate translation: "The sons of the wedding hall never mourn while the bridegroom is still with them."

##### sons of the wedding hall

This is an idiom that refers to the men who serve a bridegroom during a wedding. Alternate translation: "bridegroom's attendants"

##### the days will come when

This is a way of referring to some time in the future. Alternate translation: "the time will come when" or "someday"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them"

##### will be taken away

Jesus is probably referring to his own death, but this should not be made explicit here in the translation. To maintain the imagery of a wedding, it is best to just state that the bridegroom will not be there any longer.

#### Matthew 9:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that the disciples of John had asked. He did this by giving two examples of old things and new things that people do not put together.

##### No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment

"No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment" or "People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch an old garment"

##### an old garment ... the garment

"old clothing ... the clothing"

##### the patch will tear away from the garment

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

##### the patch

"the piece of new cloth." This is the piece of cloth used to cover a hole in the old garment.

##### a worse tear will be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will make the tear worse"

#### Matthew 9:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that disciples of John had asked.

##### Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins

Jesus uses another proverb to answer John's disciples. This means the same as the proverb in Matthew 9:16.

##### Neither do people put

"Neither does anyone pour" or "People never put"

##### new wine

This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit. Alternate translation: "grape juice"

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

##### wineskins

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

##### the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine"

##### the skins will burst

When the new wine ferments and expands, the skins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

##### both will be preserved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine"

#### Matthew 9:18

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus bringing to life the daughter of a Jewish official after she had died.

##### these things

This refers to the answer Jesus gave John's disciples about fasting.

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### bowed down to him

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture.

##### come and lay your hand on her, and she will live

This shows that the Jewish official believed Jesus had the power to bring his daughter back to life.

#### Matthew 9:19

##### his disciples

"Jesus's disciples"

#### Matthew 9:20

##### Connecting Statement:

This describes how Jesus healed another woman while he was on the way to the Jewish official's house.

##### Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who suffered from a discharge of blood

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### twelve years

"12 years"

##### his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

#### Matthew 9:21

##### For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus's garment. This tells why she touched Jesus's garment.

##### If only I touch his clothes

According to Jewish law, because she was bleeding she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus's power would heal her and yet

#### Matthew 9:22

##### But Jesus

"The woman was hoping she could touch him secretly, but Jesus"

##### Daughter

The woman was not Jesus's real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

##### your faith has made you well

"because you believed in me, I will heal you"

##### the woman was healed from that hour

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her at that moment"

#### Matthew 9:23

##### Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

##### the flute players and the crowd making a commotion

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

##### flute players

"people who play flutes"

##### and the crowd making a commotion

The phrase "making a commotion" applies only to "the crowd" and does not include the flute players. Alternation translation: "and the crowd making a lot of noise" or "and the noisy crowd"

#### Matthew 9:24

##### Go away

Jesus was speaking to many people, so use the plural command form if your language has one.

##### the girl is not dead, but she is asleep

Jesus is using a play on words. It was common in Jesus's day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping.

#### Matthew 9:25

##### When the crowd had been put outside

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had sent the crowd outside" or "After the family had sent the people outside"

##### got up

"got out of bed." This is the same meaning as in Matthew 8:15.

#### Matthew 9:26

##### General Information:

This is a summary statement that describes the result of Jesus raising this girl from the dead.

##### Connecting Statement:

This completes the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

##### The news about this spread into all that region

"The people of that whole region heard about it" or "The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it"

#### Matthew 9:27

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus healing two blind men.

##### As Jesus passed by from there

As Jesus was leaving the region

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### followed him

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

##### Have mercy on us

It is implied that they wanted Jesus to heal them.

##### Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

#### Matthew 9:28

##### When Jesus had come into the house

This could be either Jesus's own house or the house in Matthew 9:10.

##### Yes, Lord

The full content of their answer is not stated, but it is understood. Alternate translation: "Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us"

#### Matthew 9:29

##### touched their eyes and said

It is not clear whether he touched both men's eyes at the same time or used only his right hand to touch one then the other. As the left hand was customarily used for unclean purposes, it is most likely that he used only his right hand. It is also not clear whether he spoke as he was touching them or touched them first and then spoke to them.

##### Let it be done to you according to your faith

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, I will heal you"

#### Matthew 9:30

##### their eyes were opened

This means they were able to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see"

##### See that no one knows about this

Here "See" means "be sure." Alternate translation: "Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you"

#### Matthew 9:31

##### But the two men

"The two men did not do what Jesus told them to do. They"

##### spread the news

"told many people what had happened to them"

#### Matthew 9:32

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the account of Jesus healing a demon-possessed man who could not speak, and how people responded.

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### a mute man ... was brought to Jesus

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought a mute man ... to Jesus"

##### mute

not able to talk

##### possessed by a demon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom a demon had possessed" or "whom a demon was controlling"

#### Matthew 9:33

##### When the demon had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus had commanded the demon to leave"

##### the mute man spoke

"the mute man began to speak" or "the man who had been mute spoke" or "the man, who was no longer mute, spoke"

##### The crowds were astonished

"The people were amazed"

##### This has never been seen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This has never happened before" or "No one has ever done anything like this before"

#### Matthew 9:34

##### he drives out demons

"he forces demons to leave"

##### he drives

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

#### Matthew 9:35

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 8:1]

##### all the cities

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize how very many cities Jesus went to. He did not necessarily go to every one of them. Alternate translation: "many of the cities"

##### cities ... villages

"large villages ... small villages" or "large towns ... small towns"

##### the gospel of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. See how you translated this in [Matthew 4:23]

##### all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 9:36

##### General Information:

This begins a new part of the story where Jesus teaches his disciples and sends them to preach and heal as he has done.

##### They were like sheep without a shepherd

This simile means they did not have a leader to take care of them. Alternate translation: "The people did not have a leader"

#### Matthew 9:37

##### General Information:

Jesus uses a proverb about harvesting to tell his disciples how they should respond to the needs of the crowds mentioned in the previous section.

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to what he is seeing. Jesus means there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only few people to teach them God's truth.

##### The harvest is plentiful

"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

##### laborers

"workers"

#### Matthew 9:38

##### pray to the Lord of the harvest

"pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest"

## Chapter 10

# Matthew 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The sending of the twelve disciples

Many verses in this chapter describe how Jesus sent the twelve disciples out. He sent them to tell his message about the kingdom of heaven. They were to tell his message only in Israel and not to share it with the Gentiles.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

#### "The kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

#### Matthew 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus sending out his twelve disciples to do his work.

##### called his twelve disciples together

"summoned his 12 disciples"

##### gave them authority

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

##### to drive them out

"to make the unclean spirits leave"

##### all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 10:2

##### General Information:

Here the author provides the names of the twelve apostles as background information.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells the names of the twelve apostles.

##### twelve apostles

This is the same group as the "twelve disciples" in Matthew 10:1.

##### first

This is first in order, not in rank.

#### Matthew 10:3

##### Matthew the tax collector

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

#### Matthew 10:4

##### the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that shows that he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the zealous one" or "the passionate one"

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus"

#### Matthew 10:5

##### General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out.

##### Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to give instructions to his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

##### These twelve Jesus sent out

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

##### sent out

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

##### He instructed them

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

#### Matthew 10:6

##### lost sheep of the house of Israel

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have strayed from their shepherd.

##### house of Israel

This refers to the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "people of Israel" or "descendants of Israel"

#### Matthew 10:7

##### as you go

Here "you" is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

##### The kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

#### Matthew 10:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

##### Heal ... raise ... cleanse ... cast out ... you have received ... give

These verbs and pronouns are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

##### raise the dead

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "cause the dead to live again"

##### Freely you have received, freely give

Jesus did not state what the disciples had received or were to give. Some languages may require this information in the sentence. Here "freely" means that there was no payment. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others" or "You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay"

##### Freely you have received, freely give

Here "received" is a metaphor that represents being made able to do things, and "give" is a metaphor that represents doing things for others. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received the ability to do these things, freely do them for others" or "Freely I have made you able to do these things, freely do them for others"

#### Matthew 10:9

##### your

This refers to the twelve apostles and so is plural.

##### gold, silver, or copper

These are metals out of which coins were made. This list is a metonym for money, so if the metals are unknown in your area, translate the list as "money."

##### belts

"money belts." A belt is a long strip of cloth or leather worn around the waist. It was often wide enough that it could be folded and used to carry money. Alternate translation: "purses" or "pouches"

#### Matthew 10:10

##### traveling bag

This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

##### an extra tunic

Use the same word you used for "tunic" in Matthew 5:40.

##### laborer

worker

##### his food

Here "food" refers to anything a person needs. Alternate translation: "what he needs"

#### Matthew 10:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go out to preach.

##### Whatever city or village you enter

"Whenever you enter a city or village" or "When you go into any city or village"

##### city ... village

"large village ... small village" or "large town ... small town." See how you translated this in Matthew 9:35.

##### you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

##### worthy

A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

##### stay there until you leave

The full meaning of the statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "stay in that person's house until you leave the town or village"

#### Matthew 10:12

##### As you enter into the house, greet it

The phrase "greet it" means greet the house. A common greeting in those days was "Peace be to this house!" Here "house" represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it"

##### you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

#### Matthew 10:13

##### your ... your

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

##### the house is worthy ... not worthy

Here "the house" represents those who live in the house. A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples. Jesus compares this person to one who is "not worthy," a person who does not welcome the disciples. Alternate translation: "the people who live in that house receive you well" or "the people who live in that house treat you well"

##### let your peace come upon it

The word "it" refers to the house, which represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with"

##### if it is not worthy

The word "it" means the house. Here "house" refers to the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well"

##### let your peace return to you

Possible meanings are 1) if the household was not worthy, then God would hold back peace or blessings from that household or 2) if the household was not worthy, then the apostles were supposed to do something, such as asking God not to honor their greeting of peace. If your language has a similar meaning of taking back a greeting or its effects, that should be used here.

#### Matthew 10:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

##### As for those who do not receive you or listen

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

##### you ... your

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

##### listen to your words

Here "words" refers to what the disciples say. Alternate translation: "listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say"

##### city

You should translate this the same way you did in Matthew 10:11.

##### shake off the dust from your feet

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city.

#### Matthew 10:15

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### it will be more bearable

"the suffering will be less"

##### the land of Sodom and Gomorrah

This refers to the people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

##### that city

This refers to the people in the city that does not receive the apostles or listen to their message. Alternate translation: "the people of the city that does not receive you"

#### Matthew 10:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples. Here he begins to tell them about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

##### See, I send

The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Look, I send" or "Listen, I send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

##### I send you out

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

##### as sheep in the midst of wolves

Sheep are defenseless animals that wolves often attack. Jesus is stating that people may harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act"

##### be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves

Jesus is telling the disciples they must be cautious and harmless among the people. If comparing the disciples to serpents or doves is confusing, it might be better not to state the similes. Alternate translation: "act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue"

#### Matthew 10:17

##### Watch out for people! They will

You can translate with "because" to show how these two statements relate. Alternate translation: "Watch out for people because they will"

##### will deliver you up to

"will put you under the control of"

##### councils

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

##### whip you

"beat you with a whip"

#### Matthew 10:18

##### you will be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will bring you" or "they will drag you"

##### for my sake

"because you belong to me" or "because you follow me"

##### to them and to the Gentiles

The pronoun "them" refers either to the "governors and kings" or to the Jewish accusers.

#### Matthew 10:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

##### When they deliver you up

"When people take you to the councils." The "people" here are the same "people" as in Matthew 10:17.

##### you ... you

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

##### do not be anxious

"do not worry"

##### how or what you will speak

"how you are to speak or what you are to say." The two ideas may be combined: "what you are to say"

##### for what to say will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say"

##### at that time

"right then" or "at that time"

#### Matthew 10:20

##### you ... your

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

##### the Spirit of your Father

If necessary, this can be translated as "the Spirit of God your heavenly Father" or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### in you

"through you"

#### Matthew 10:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

##### Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will deliver up his brother to death" or "Brothers will deliver up their brothers to death." Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

##### deliver up brother to death

The abstract noun "death" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "hand brother over to authorties who will execute him"

##### a father his child

These words can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death"

##### rise up against

"rebel against" or "turn against"

##### cause them to be put to death

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "have them put to death" or "have the authorities execute them"

#### Matthew 10:22

##### You will be hated by everyone

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you"

##### You

This is plural and refers to the twelve disciples.

##### because of my name

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you trust in me"

##### whoever endures

"whoever stays faithful"

##### to the end

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

##### that person will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will deliver that person"

#### Matthew 10:23

##### in this city

Here "this" does not refer to a specific city. Alternate translation: "in one city"

##### flee to the next

"flee to the next city"

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### before the Son of Man has

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "before I, the Son of Man, have"

##### has come

"arrives"

#### Matthew 10:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus.

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple is always less important than his teacher" or "A teacher is always more important than his disciple"

##### nor a servant above his master

"and a servant is always less important than his master" or "and a master is always more important than his servant"

#### Matthew 10:25

##### It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher

"The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher"

##### be like his teacher

If necessary, you can make explicit how the disciple becomes like the teacher. Alternate translation: "know as much as his teacher knows"

##### the servant like his master

If necessary, you can make explicit how the servant becomes like the master. Alternate translation: "the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master"

##### If they have called the master ... how much worse ... they call ... the members of his household

Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

##### how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household

"the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse" or "they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names"

##### If they have called

"Since people have called"

##### the master of the house

Jesus is using this as a metaphor for himself.

##### Beelzebul

This name can either be 1) transcribed directly as "Beelzebul" or 2) translated with its original, intended meaning of "Satan."

##### his household

This is a metaphor for Jesus's disciples.

#### Matthew 10:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

##### do not fear them

Here "them" refers to the people who mistreat followers of Jesus.

##### there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Being concealed or hidden represents being kept secret, and being revealed represents being made known. Jesus is emphasizing that God will make all things known. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will reveal the things that people hide"

#### Matthew 10:27

##### What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should tell everyone what he tells the disciples in private. Alternate translation: "Tell people in the daylight what I tell you in the darkness, and proclaim upon the housetops what you hear softly in your ear"

##### What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight

Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private." Here "daylight" is a metonym for "public." Alternate translation: "What I tell you privately at night, say in public in the daylight"

##### what you hear softly in your ear

This is a way of referring to whispering. Alternate translation: "what I whisper to you"

##### proclaim upon the housetops

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people far away could hear anyone speaking with a loud voice from one. Here "housetops" refers to any place where all people can hear. Alternate translation: "speak loudly in a public place for all to hear"

#### Matthew 10:28

##### General Information:

Here Jesus also begins to give reasons why his disciples should not be afraid of the persecution they might experience.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go to preach.

##### Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul

This is not distinguishing between people who cannot kill the soul and people who can kill the soul. No person can kill the soul. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul"

##### kill the body

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill other people."

##### body

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

##### kill the soul

This means to harm people after they have physically died.

##### soul

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies

##### fear him who is able

You can add "because" to clarify why people should fear God. Alternate translation: "fear God because he is able"

#### Matthew 10:29

##### Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin?

Jesus states this proverb as a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin."

##### sparrows

These are very small, seed-eating birds. Alternate translation: "small birds"

##### a small coin

This is often translated as the least valuable coin available in your country. It refers to a copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a day's wage for a laborer. Alternate translation: "very little money"

##### not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "your Father knows when every one of them falls to the ground"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 10:30

##### even the hairs of your head are all numbered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

##### numbered

"counted"

#### Matthew 10:31

##### You are more valuable than many sparrows

"God values you more than many sparrows"

#### Matthew 10:32

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

##### everyone who confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father

"whoever confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father" or "if anyone confesses me ... I will also confess him before my Father"

##### confesses me before men

"tells others that he is my disciple" or "acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me"

##### I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me"

##### my Father who is in heaven

"my heavenly Father"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 10:33

##### he who denies me ... I will also deny before my Father

"whoever denies me ... I will also deny before my Father" or "if anyone denies me ... I will also deny him before my Father"

##### denies me before men

"denies to other people that he is loyal to me" or "refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple"

##### I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me"

#### Matthew 10:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

##### Do not think

"Do not suppose" or "You must not think"

##### upon the earth

This refers to the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: "to the people of the earth" or "to people"

##### a sword

This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people.

#### Matthew 10:35

##### to set ... against

"to cause ... to fight against"

##### a man against his father

"a son against his father"

#### Matthew 10:36

##### A man's enemies

"A person's enemies" or "A person's worst enemies"

##### those of his own household

"members of his own family"

#### Matthew 10:37

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

##### He who loves ... is not worthy

Here "he" means any person in general. Alternate translation: "Those who love ... are not worthy" or "If you love ... you are not worthy"

##### loves

The word for "love" here refers to "brotherly love" or "love from a friend." Alternate translation: "cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

##### worthy of me

"deserve to belong to me" or "worthy to be my disciple"

#### Matthew 10:38

##### pick up his cross and follow after me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### pick up

"take up" or "pick up and carry"

#### Matthew 10:39

##### He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses ... will find it

Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples. This should be translated with as few words as possible. Alternate translation: "Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives ... will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life ... you will find it"

##### finds

This is a metaphor for "keeps" or "saves." Alternate translation: "tries to keep" or "tries to save"

##### will lose it

This does not mean the person will die. It is a metaphor that means the person will not experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will not have true life"

##### who loses his life

This does not mean to die. It is a metaphor that means a person considers obeying Jesus more important than his own life. Alternate translation: "who denies himself"

##### for my sake

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me." This is the same idea as "for my sake" in Matthew 10:18.

##### will find it

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will find true life"

#### Matthew 10:40

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

##### He who welcomes

This means he receives someone as a guest.

##### He who

The word "He" refers to anyone in general. Alternate translation: "Whoever" or "Anyone who" or "The one who"

##### you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles to whom Jesus is speaking.

##### He who welcomes you welcomes me

Jesus means that when someone welcomes you, it is like welcoming him. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

##### he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent me

This means that when someone welcomes Jesus, it is like welcoming God. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes me, it is like he is welcoming God the Father who sent me" or "If someone welcomes me, it is as if he were welcoming God the Father who sent me"

#### Matthew 10:41

##### in the name of a prophet

"because that prophet is a prophet" or "because he knows that that person is a prophet." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a prophet.

##### a prophet's reward

This refers to the reward that God gives the prophet, not to the reward that a prophet gives to another person.

##### in the name of a righteous man

"because that righteous man is a righteous man" or "because he knows that that person is righteous." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a righteous man.

##### a righteous man's reward

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person, not a reward that a righteous person gives to another person.

#### Matthew 10:42

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes instructing his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

##### Whoever gives

"Anyone who gives"

##### one of these little ones

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." The phrase "one of these" here refers to one of Jesus's disciples.

##### in the name of a disciple

"because that disciple" or "because he knows that that person is a disciple." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a disciple.

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### he will ... his reward

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

##### he will in no way lose

"God will not deny him." This has nothing to do with having a possession taken away. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly give him"

## Chapter 20

# Matthew 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The parable of the landowner and his vineyard

Jesus tells this parable ([Matthew 20:1-16](./01.md)) to teach his disciples that what God says is right is different from what people say is right.

#### Matthew 20:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about a landowner who hires workers, to illustrate how God will reward those who belong to the kingdom of heaven.

##### For the kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated the introduction to the parable in [Matthew 13:24]

#### Matthew 20:2

##### After he had agreed

"After the landowner had agreed"

##### one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

##### he sent them into his vineyard

"he sent them to work in his vineyard"

#### Matthew 20:3

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

##### He went out again

"The landowner went out again"

##### the third hour

The third hour is around nine in the morning.

##### standing idle in the marketplace

"standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

##### marketplace

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

#### Matthew 20:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

##### Again he went out

"Again the landowner went out"

##### the sixth hour and again the ninth hour

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon.

##### did the same

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

#### Matthew 20:6

##### the eleventh hour

This is about five in the afternoon.

##### standing idle

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

#### Matthew 20:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

##### beginning from the last to the first

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first" or "first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first"

#### Matthew 20:9

##### who had been hired

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the landowner hired"

#### Matthew 20:10

##### one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

##### When they received

"When the workers who had worked the longest received"

##### the landowner

"the vineyard owner"

#### Matthew 20:12

##### you have made them equal to us

"you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

##### we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat

The phrase "borne the burden of the day" is an idiom that means "worked the entire day." Alternate translation: "we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part"

#### Matthew 20:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

##### one of them

"one of the workers who had worked the longest"

##### Friend

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

##### Did you not agree with me for one denarius?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "We already agreed that I would give you one denarius."

##### one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a landowner who hires workers.

##### Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me?

The landowner uses a question to correct the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "It is lawful for me do what I want with my own possessions."

##### Is it not lawful for me

"Do I not have the right" or "Is it not proper." The landowner is reminding the laborers that everyone allows people to do what they wish with their own property. He is not asking if there is a law against what he is doing.

##### Or are you envious because I am good?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "You should not be envious because I am good."

##### I am good

In the context here, the reader should understand the landowner being "good" as "generous," the opposite of the laborers being "evil," which is "envious."

#### Matthew 20:16

##### So the last will be first, and the first last

Here "first" and "last" refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. See how you translated a similar statement in Matthew 19:30. Alternate translation: "So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

##### So the last will be first

Here the parable has ended and Jesus is speaking. Alternate translation: "Then Jesus said, 'So the last will be first'"

#### Matthew 20:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a third time as he and his disciples travel to Jerusalem.

##### going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

#### Matthew 20:18

##### See, we are going

Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples the must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

##### we are going

Here "we" refers to Jesus and the disciples.

##### the Son of Man will be given over

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### Son of Man ... him

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

##### They will condemn

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:19

##### and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

##### to flog

"to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

##### third day

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three."

##### him ... him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

##### he will be raised up

The words "be raised up" are an idiom for "be made alive again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again"

#### Matthew 20:20

##### Connecting Statement:

In response to the question that the mother of two of the disciples asks, Jesus teaches his disciples about authority and serving others in the kingdom of heaven.

##### the sons of Zebedee

This refers to James and John.

#### Matthew 20:21

##### at your right hand ... at your left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

##### in your kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to Jesus ruling as king. Alternate translation: "when you are king"

#### Matthew 20:22

##### You do not know

Here "you" is plural and refers to the mother and the sons.

##### Are you able

Here "you" is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons.

##### drink the cup that I am about to drink

To "drink the cup" or "drink from the cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "suffer what I am about to suffer"

##### They said

"The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

#### Matthew 20:23

##### My cup you will indeed drink

To "drink a cup" or "drink from a cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "You will indeed suffer as I will suffer"

##### right hand ... left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. See how you translated this in [Matthew 20:21]

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses"

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:24

##### heard this

"heard what James and John had asked Jesus"

##### they were very angry with the two brothers

If necessary, you can make explicit why the ten disciples were angry. Alternate translation: "they were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus"

#### Matthew 20:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about authority and serving others.

##### called them

"called the twelve disciples"

##### the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them

"the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

##### their important men

"the important men among the Gentiles"

##### exercise authority over them

"have control over the people"

#### Matthew 20:26

##### whoever wishes

"whoever wants" or "whoever desires"

#### Matthew 20:27

##### to be first

"to be important"

#### Matthew 20:28

##### the Son of Man ... his life

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate this in the first person.

##### did not come to be served

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me"

##### but to serve

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "but to serve other people"

##### to give his life as a ransom for many

Jesus's life being a "ransom" is a metaphor for his being punished in order to set people free from being punished for their own sins. Alternate translation: "to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free"

##### to give his life

To give one's live is an idiom meaning to die voluntarily, usually in order to help others. Alternate translation: "to die"

##### for many

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "for many people"

#### Matthew 20:29

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing two blind men.

##### As they went

This refers to the disciples and Jesus.

##### followed him

"followed Jesus"

#### Matthew 20:30

##### There were two blind men sitting

This is sometimes translated as "Behold, there were two blind men sitting." Matthew is alerting us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### When they heard

"When the two blind men heard"

##### was passing by

"was walking by them"

##### Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of King David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

#### Matthew 20:31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:32

##### called to them

"called to the blind men"

##### do you wish

"do you want"

#### Matthew 20:33

##### that our eyes may be opened

The men speak of becoming able to see as if there eyes were to be opened. Because of Jesus's previous question, we understand that they were expressing their desire. Alternate translation: "we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see"

#### Matthew 20:34

##### being moved with compassion

"having compassion" or "feeling compassion for them"

## Chapter 1

# Mark 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:2-3, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "You can make me clean"

Leprosy was a disease of the skin that made a person unclean and unable to properly worship God. Jesus is capable of making people physically "clean" or healthy as well as spiritually "clean" or right with God. (See: clean)

#### Prophecy

Mark begins this book about Jesus Christ with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long before that time. Then he tells how John the Baptist and Jesus Christ fulfilled that prophecy.

#### Repentance

Repent means stop sinning. John the Baptist taught people to repent so that God would forgive their sins. Jesus taught people to repent and to believe the good news about the kingdom of God.

#### The work of Jesus

Jesus went around preaching the good news of God, casting demons out of people, and healing people who were sick.

#### Mark 1:1

##### General Information:

The author of this book is Mark, also called John Mark. He was the son of one of the women named Mary mentioned in the four Gospels. He was also the nephew of Barnabas. This whole book is about Jesus Christ.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Mark 1:2

##### General Information:

Mark begins this book with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long ago about a messenger who would come and tell the people to get ready for the Lord's coming. Verses 4-15 show how this prophecy was fulfilled by John the Baptist and Jesus Christ.

##### before your face

This is an idiom that means "ahead of you."

##### your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

##### the one

This refers to the messenger.

##### will prepare your way

Doing this represents preparing the people for the Lord's arrival. Alternate translation: "will prepare the people for your arrival"

#### Mark 1:3

##### Connecting Statement:

This verse tells how the messenger in verse 2 would prepare the Lord's way.

##### The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This phrase can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight

These two phrases mean the same thing.

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Mark 1:4

##### General Information

The events in Mark 1:4-15 are a fulfillment of what Isaiah had prophesied. John was the "messenger" of verse 2 and "the one calling out in the wilderness" of verse 3.

##### John came

Translators can make it explicit that John's coming was a fulfillment of Isaiah's prophecy. Alternate translation: "So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

#### Mark 1:5

##### The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

The words "The whole country" are a metonym for the people who live in the country and a generalization that refers to a great number of people, not to every single person. Alternate translation: "Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

##### They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

They did these things at the same time. The people were baptized because they repented of their sins. Alternate translation: "When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

#### Mark 1:6

##### he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

#### Mark 1:7

##### He was preaching

"John was preaching"

##### the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

John was comparing himself to a servant to show how great the one to come would be. Alternate translation: "I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

##### the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

##### stoop down

"bend down"

#### Mark 1:8

##### but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

John was contrasting how he was purifying people with water with how the one to come would purify people with the Holy Spirit. To baptize with the Holy Spirit is a metaphor meaning that that person would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

#### Mark 1:9

##### It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### he was baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized him"

#### Mark 1:10

##### the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

#### Mark 1:11

##### A voice came out of the heavens

This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens"

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

#### Mark 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

After Jesus's baptism, he is in the wilderness for 40 days and then goes to Galilee to teach and call his disciples.

##### compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

#### Mark 1:13

##### He was in the wilderness

"He stayed in the wilderness"

##### forty days

"40 days"

##### He was with

"He was among"

#### Mark 1:14

##### after John was arrested

"after John was placed in prison." Mark is referring to when King Herod had John arrested. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

##### proclaiming the gospel

"telling many people about the good news"

#### Mark 1:15

##### The time is fulfilled

"It is now time"

##### the kingdom of God is near

Possible meanings are 1) God was beginning to rule. Alternate translation: "God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all. Alternate translation: "God is about to rule over all"

#### Mark 1:16

##### he saw Simon and Andrew

"Jesus saw Simon and Andrew"

##### casting a net in the sea

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Mark 1:17

##### Come, follow me

"Follow me" or "Come with me"

##### I will make you fishers of men

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

##### men

human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

#### Mark 1:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:19

##### in the boat

This was probably James and John's boat.

##### mending the nets

"repairing the nets"

#### Mark 1:20

##### called them

It may be helpful to state clearly why Jesus called to James and John. Alternate translation: "called them to come with him"

##### hired servants

"servants who worked for them"

##### they followed him

James and John went with Jesus.

#### Mark 1:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus teaches in the synagogue of the town of Capernaum on the Sabbath. By sending a demon out of a man he amazes the people in all the nearby area around Galilee.

##### came into Capernaum

"arrived at Capernaum"

#### Mark 1:22

##### for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

The idea of "teach" can be stated clearly when talking about "someone who has authority" and "the scribes." Alternate translation: "for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

#### Mark 1:23

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:24

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

The demon asked this rhetorical question meaning that there was no reason for Jesus to interfere with him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

##### we ... us

These pronouns are exclusive. They refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

##### Have you come to destroy us?

The demon asked this rhetorical question to urge Jesus not to harm him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Do not destroy us!"

#### Mark 1:25

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:26

##### threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

##### and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice

"and cried out with a loud voice as it went out from him"

#### Mark 1:27

##### so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

The people used a question to show how amazed they were. It can be expressed as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

##### A new teaching with authority!

The people used this exclamation to express their amazement at Jesus' teaching. It can also be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

##### He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

#### Mark 1:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:30

##### Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

The word "Now" marks a pause in the story. In this sentence, Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives background information about her.

#### Mark 1:31

##### raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

##### the fever left her

You may want to make explicit who healed her. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her of the fever"

##### she started serving them

You may want to make explicit that she served food. Alternate translation: "she provided them with food and drinks"

#### Mark 1:32

##### they brought to him

"the people brought to Jesus"

##### all who were sick or possessed by demons

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of people who came. Alternate translation: "many who were sick or possessed by demons"

#### Mark 1:33

##### The whole city gathered together at the door

The word "city" is a metonym for the people who lived in the city. Here the word "whole" is probably a generalization to emphasize that most people from the city gathered. Alternate translation: "Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

#### Mark 1:34

##### He healed

"Jesus healed"

#### Mark 1:35

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus takes time to pray in the midst of his time of healing people. He then goes to towns throughout Galilee to preach, heal, and cast out demons.

##### He got up

"Jesus got up"

##### a solitary place

"a place where he could be alone"

#### Mark 1:36

##### Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Also, those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

#### Mark 1:37

##### Everyone is looking for you

The word "Everyone" is an exaggeration to emphasize that many people were looking for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Many people are looking for you"

#### Mark 1:38

##### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "I" refer to Jesus.

##### Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place." Here Jesus uses the word "us" to refer to himself, along with Simon, Andrew, James, and John.

#### Mark 1:39

##### He went throughout all of Galilee

The words "throughout all" are an exaggeration used to emphasize that Jesus went to many locations during his ministry. Alternate translation: "He went to many places in Galilee"

#### Mark 1:40

##### A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him

"A leper came to Jesus. He knelt down and was begging Jesus and said"

##### If you are willing, you can make me clean

In the first phrase, the words "to make me clean" are understood because of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

##### are willing

"want" or "desire"

##### you can make me clean

In biblical times, a person who had any of certain skin diseases was considered unclean until his skin had healed enough that he was no longer contagious. Alternate translation: "you can heal me"

#### Mark 1:41

##### Moved with compassion, Jesus

Here the word "moved" is an idiom meaning to feel emotion about another's need. Alternate translation: "Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man, so he"

##### I am willing

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is willing to do. Alternate translation: "I am willing to make you clean"

#### Mark 1:42

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:43

##### General Information:

The word "him" used here refers to the leper whom Jesus healed.

#### Mark 1:44

##### Be sure to say nothing to anyone

"Be sure to not say anything to anyone"

##### show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

##### show yourself

The word "yourself" here represents the skin of the leper. Alternate translation: "show your skin"

##### a testimony to them

It is best to use the pronoun "them," if possible, in your language. Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

#### Mark 1:45

##### But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

##### began to declare it freely

Here "declare it freely" is a metaphor for telling people in many places about what had happened. Alternate translation: "began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

##### so much so that

The man spread the news so much that

##### that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

This was the result of the man spreading the news so much. Here "openly" is a metaphor for "publicly." Jesus could not enter the towns because many people would crowd around him. Alternate translation: "that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

##### remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

##### from everywhere

The word "everywhere" is a hyperbole used to emphasize how very many places the people came from. Alternate translation: "from all over the region"

## Chapter 2

# Mark 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

#### Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

The Jewish leaders used rhetorical questions to show that they were angry because of what Jesus said and did and that they did not believe that he was God's Son

#### Mark 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

After preaching and healing people throughout Galilee, Jesus returns to Capernaum, where he heals and forgives the sin of a paralyzed man.

##### it was heard that he was at home

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

#### Mark 2:2

##### So many gathered there

The word "there" refers to the house that Jesus stayed at in Capernaum. Alternate translation: "So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

##### there was no more space

This refers to there being no space inside the house. Alternate translation: "there was no more room for them inside"

##### he spoke the word to them

"Jesus spoke his message to them"

#### Mark 2:3

##### four people were carrying him

"four of them were carrying him." It is likely that there were more than four people within the group that brought the man to Jesus.

##### were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

#### Mark 2:4

##### could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

##### they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on

Houses where Jesus lived had flat roofs made of clay and covered with tiles. Alternate translation: "they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralzyed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

#### Mark 2:5

##### Seeing their faith

"Seeing the men's faith." Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

##### Son

The word "Son" here shows Jesus cared for the man as a father cares for a son. Alternate translation: "My son"

##### your sins are forgiven

Jesus did not clearly say who was forgiving the man's sins. Alternate translation: "your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

#### Mark 2:6

##### reasoned in their hearts

Here "their hearts" is a metonym for the people's thoughts. Alternate translation: "were thinking to themselves"

#### Mark 2:7

##### How can this man speak this way?

The scribes used this question to show their anger that Jesus said "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "This man should not speak this way!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The scribes used this question to say that since only God can forgive sins, then Jesus should not say "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "Only God can forgive sins!"

#### Mark 2:8

##### in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

##### they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

##### Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

Jesus uses this question to tell the scribes that what they are thinking is wrong. Alternate translation: "What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

##### this in your hearts

The word "hearts" is a metonym for their inner thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: "this inside yourselves" or "these things"

#### Mark 2:9

##### Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

#### Mark 2:10

##### But in order that you may know

"But so that you may know." The word "you" refers to the scribes and the crowd.

##### that the Son of Man has authority

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man." Alternate translation: "that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

#### Mark 2:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 2:12

##### in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

#### Mark 2:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus is teaching the crowd beside the Sea of Galilee, and he calls Levi to follow him.

##### the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

##### the crowd came to him

"the people went where he was"

#### Mark 2:14

##### Levi son of Alphaeus

Alpheus was Levi's father.

##### the tax collector's tent

We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

#### Mark 2:15

##### Connecting Statement:

It is now later in the day, and Jesus is at Levi's house for a meal.

##### Levi's house

"the home of Levi"

##### sinners

In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

##### for there were many and they followed him

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

#### Mark 2:16

##### Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

The scribes and Pharisees asked this question to show they disapproved of Jesus's hospitality. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

#### Mark 2:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to what the scribes had said to his disciples about his eating with tax collectors and sinful people.

##### he said to them

"he said to the scribes"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

##### strong in body

"healthy"

##### I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners

Jesus expects his hearers to understand he came for those who want help. Alternate translation: "I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

##### but sinners

The words "I came to call" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "but I came to call sinners"

#### Mark 2:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells parables to show why his disciples should not fast while he is with them.

##### the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "the disciples of the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees"

##### Some people

"Some men." It is best to translate this phrase without specifying exactly who these men are. If in your language you have to be more specific, the possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

##### came and said to him

"came and said to Jesus"

#### Mark 2:19

##### Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to remind the people of something they already know and to encourage them to apply it to him and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

#### Mark 2:20

##### the bridegroom will be taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will go away"

##### away from them ... they will fast

The words "them" and "they" refer to the wedding attendants.

#### Mark 2:21

##### No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

#### Mark 2:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell another parable. This one is about putting new wine into old wineskins rather than into new wineskins.

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

##### the wine will burst the skins

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open.

##### are lost

"will be ruined"

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

#### Mark 2:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus gives the Pharisees an example from scripture to show why the disciples were not wrong to pick grain on the Sabbath.

##### began picking heads of grain

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

##### heads of grain

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

##### as they made their way

"as they walked along"

#### Mark 2:24

##### Connecting Statement:

The Pharisees ask a question about what the disciples were doing (verse 23).

##### doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day

Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it (verse 23) was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

##### Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?

The Pharisees ask Jesus a question to condemn him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

##### Look

"Look at this" or "Listen." This is a word used to get the attention of someone to show them something. If there is a word in your language that is used to draw a person's attention to something, you could use that here.

#### Mark 2:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to scold the Pharisees by asking them a question.

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

##### Have you never read what David did

This question ends in 2:26. Jesus is reminding the scribes and Pharisees of something David did on the Sabbath. If this rhetorical question is translated as a statement or a command, then the question mark in 2:26 should become a period. Alternate translation: "You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

##### read what David did

Jesus refers to reading about David in the Old Testament. This can be translated showing the implicit information. Alternate translation: "read in the scriptures what David did"

#### Mark 2:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 25.

##### how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?

This question began in 2:25. If you translated the rhetorical question as a statement or command in verse 25, then the question mark here should become a period. Alternate translation: "how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

##### how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him

This can be expressed as a statement separate from verse 25. If so, verse 25 should end with a period instead of a dash. Alternate translation: "He went into the house of God ... to those who were with him"

##### how he went

The word "he" refers to David.

##### the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

#### Mark 2:27

##### The Sabbath was made for mankind

Jesus makes clear why God established the Sabbath. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made the Sabbath for mankind"

##### mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

##### not mankind for the Sabbath

The words "was made" are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

#### Mark 2:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 3

# Mark 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sabbath

It was against the law of Moses to do work on the Sabbath. The Pharisees believed healing a sick person on the Sabbath was "work," so they said that Jesus did wrong when he healed a person on the Sabbath. (See: lawofmoses)

#### "Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

#### Mark 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath in the synagogue and shows how he feels about what the Pharisees had done with the Sabbath rules. The Pharisees and Herodians begin planning to put Jesus to death.

##### a man with a withered hand

"a man with a crippled hand"

#### Mark 3:2

##### Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him

"Some people watched Jesus closely to see if he would heal the man with the withered hand"

##### Some people

"Some of the Pharisees." Later, in Mark 3:6, these people are identified as Pharisees.

##### so that they could accuse him

If Jesus were to heal the man that day, the Pharisees would accuse him of breaking the law by working on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

#### Mark 3:3

##### in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

#### Mark 3:4

##### Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

##### to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm ... to save a life or to kill

These two phrases are similar in meaning, except that the second is more extreme.

##### to save a life or to kill

It may be helpful to repeat "is it lawful," as that is the question Jesus is asking again in another way. Alternate translation: "is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

##### to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

##### But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

#### Mark 3:5

##### He looked around

"Jesus looked around"

##### was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

##### by their hardness of heart

This metaphor describes how the Pharisees were unwilling to have compassion on the man with the withered hand. Alternate translation: "because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

##### Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

##### his hand was restored

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

#### Mark 3:6

##### began to plot

"began to make a plan"

##### the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

#### Mark 3:7

##### Connecting Statement:

A great crowd of people follows Jesus, and he heals many people.

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 3:8

##### Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

##### the things he was doing

This refers to the miracles Jesus was performing. Alternate translation: "the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

##### came to him

"came to where Jesus was"

#### Mark 3:9

##### General Information:

Verse 9 tells what Jesus asked his disciples to do because of the large crowd of people around him. Verse 10 tells why such a large crowd was around Jesus. The information in these verses can be reordered to present the events in the order they happened, as in the UDB.

##### He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

#### Mark 3:10

##### For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him

This tells why so many people were crowding around Jesus that he thought they might crush him. Alternate translation: "For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

##### For he healed many

The word "many" refers to the large number of people Jesus had already healed. Alternate translation: "For he healed many people"

##### everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him

They did this because they believed that touching Jesus would make them well. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

#### Mark 3:11

##### saw him

"saw Jesus"

##### they fell down ... cried out, and they said

Here "they" refers to the unclean spirits. It is they who are causing the people they possess to do things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

##### they fell down before him

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

##### You are the Son of God

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Mark 3:12

##### He strictly ordered them

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

##### not to make him known

"not to reveal who he was"

#### Mark 3:13

##### General Information:

Jesus chooses the men he wants to be his apostles.

#### Mark 3:14

##### so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message

"so that they would be with him and he could send them to proclaim the message"

#### Mark 3:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 3:16

##### Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

#### Mark 3:17

##### to whom he gave

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

##### the name Boanerges, that is, Sons of Thunder

Jesus called them this because they were like thunder. Alternate translation: "the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means Thunder Men"

#### Mark 3:18

##### Thaddaeus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 3:19

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

#### Mark 3:20

##### Then he went home

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

##### they could not even eat bread

The word "bread" represents food. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything"

#### Mark 3:21

##### they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

##### for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

##### out of his mind

This idiom describes how they thought he was acting. Alternate translation: "crazy" or "insane"

#### Mark 3:22

##### By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

#### Mark 3:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains with a parable why it is foolish for people to think that Jesus is controlled by Satan.

##### Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

##### How can Satan cast out Satan?

Jesus asked this rhetorical question in response to the scribes saying that he cast out demons by Beelzebul. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

#### Mark 3:24

##### If a kingdom is divided against itself

The word "kingdom" is a metonym for the people who live in the kingdom. Alternate translation: "If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other"

##### cannot stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or continue to exist. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "will end"

#### Mark 3:25

##### house

This is a metonym for the people who live in a house. Alternate translation: "family" or "household"

#### Mark 3:26

##### If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to Satan, and it is also a metonym for his evil spirits. Alternate translation: "If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

##### is not able to stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or stay strong. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

#### Mark 3:27

##### plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

#### Mark 3:28

##### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

##### the sons of men

"those who have been born of man." This expression is used to emphasize peoples' humanity. Alternate translation: "people"

##### utter

speak

#### Mark 3:29

##### will never have forgiveness

The idea in the noun forgiveness can be expressed with a phrase. Alternate translation: "will never be forgiven"

##### is guilty of an eternal sin

"Eternal sin" is a metonym for "a sin that will be eternally punished." Alternate translation: "is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

#### Mark 3:30

##### they were saying

"the people were saying"

##### has an unclean spirit

This is an idiom that means to be possessed by an unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 3:31

##### Then his mother and his brothers came

"Then Jesus's mother and brothers came"

##### They sent for him, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell him that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

#### Mark 3:32

##### are looking for you

"are asking for you"

#### Mark 3:33

##### Who are my mother and my brothers?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

#### Mark 3:34

##### here are my mother and my brothers

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

#### Mark 3:35

##### whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

##### that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. Alternate translation: "that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

## Chapter 4

# Mark 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Mark 4:3-10 forms one parable. The parable is explained in 4:14-23.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:12, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth.

#### Mark 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus teaches from a boat at the seaside, he tells them the parable of the soils.

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 4:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 4:3

##### Listen!

"Pay attention!

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

#### Mark 4:4

##### some seed ... devoured it

"some seeds ... devoured them"

#### Mark 4:5

##### Other seed ... it did not have ... it sprang ... it did not have

"Other seeds ... they did not have ... they sprang ... they did not have"

##### it sprang up

"the seed that landed on the rocky ground began to grow quickly"

##### soil

This refers to the loose dirt on the ground in which you can plant seeds.

#### Mark 4:6

##### the plants were scorched

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it scorched the young plants"

##### because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

##### Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seeds ... choked them ... they did not produce"

#### Mark 4:8

##### yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

The amount of grain produced by each plant is being compared to the single seed from which it grew. Ellipsis is used here to shorten the phrases but they can be written out. Alternate translation: "Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

##### thirty ... sixty ... a hundred

"30 ... 60 ... 100." These may be written as numerals.

#### Mark 4:9

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" is a metonym for being willing to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

##### Whoever has ... let him hear

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." Alternate translation: "If you have ears to hear, then hear" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

##### When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

#### Mark 4:11

##### To you is given

This can be stated in active form. "God has given you" or "I have given you"

##### to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

##### everything is in parables

It can be stated that Jesus gives the parables to the people. Alternate translation: "I have spoken everything in parables"

#### Mark 4:12

##### when they look ... when they hear

It is assumed that Jesus is speaking about the people looking at what he shows them and hearing what he tells them. Alternate translation: "when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

##### they look, but do not see

Possible meanings are 1) the word "look" here refers to making an effort to see and "see" refers to actually being able to see what they have looked for and is a metaphor for "understand." Alternate translation: "they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

##### they would turn

"they would turn to God." Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "they would repent"

#### Mark 4:13

##### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

##### Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

Jesus used these questions to show how sad he was that his disciples could not understand his parable. Alternate translation: "If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

#### Mark 4:14

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to explain the parable he told in [Mark 4:3-8]

##### The sower

"The farmer who sows his seed"

##### sows the word

Sowing God's word represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "teaches people God's word" or "represents one who teaches God's word"

##### the word

The phrase "the word" represents God's message. Alternate translation: "God's message"

#### Mark 4:15

##### These are the ones beside the road

Here Jesus speaks about people. Alternate translation: "These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

##### When they hear

"When they hear the word"

#### Mark 4:16

##### these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

#### Mark 4:17

##### they do not have root in themselves

Having no root represents not fully understanding or believing God's word. Alternate translation: "they are like young plants that have no roots"

##### endure

In this parable, "endure" means "continue to believe." Alternate translation: "continue in their belief"

##### tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

The phrase "on account of the word" means "because they believe God's message. Alternate translation: "tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

##### they immediately fall away

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

#### Mark 4:18

##### Still others are the ones sown among the thorns

"Still other people are the seeds that fall among the thorns" or "And other people are like seeds that fall among the thorns"

#### Mark 4:19

##### the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word

The words "cares," "deceitfulness," and "desires" are spoken of as if they were weeds that wrap around plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

##### the cares of the world

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

##### the deceitfulness of wealth

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

##### it is unproductive

"the word does not produce a crop in them." The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

#### Mark 4:20

##### Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit

"The seeds that fall on the good soil represent people who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit"

##### and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much

Fruit represents the results or effect of God's word in a person's life. The numbers tell how much fruit there might be, or how great the results might be. Alternate translation: "and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

#### Mark 4:21

##### Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

##### Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?

This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

#### Mark 4:22

##### For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

##### nothing is hidden ... nothing is secret

"there is nothing that is hidden ... there is nothing that is secret" Both of the phrases have the same meaning. Jesus is emphasizing that everything that is secret will be made known.

#### Mark 4:23

##### If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

##### If anyone ... let him hear

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

#### Mark 4:24

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

##### for the measure you use

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) this is a metaphor in which Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

##### will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

#### Mark 4:25

##### to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

#### Mark 4:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells the people parables to teach them about the kingdom of God. Later he explains the parables to his disciples.

##### like a man who sows his seed

When someone sows seed, he plants the seed by scattering it on the ground. Alternate translation: "like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

#### Mark 4:27

##### He sleeps at night and gets up by day

This is something that the man habitually does. Alternate translation: "He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

##### gets up by day

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

##### though he does not know how

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

#### Mark 4:28

##### the blade

the stalk or sprout

##### the ear

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

#### Mark 4:29

##### he immediately sends in the sickle

Here "the sickle" is a metonym that stands for the farmer or the people whom the farmer sends out to harvest the grain. Alternate translation: "he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

##### sickle

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

##### because the harvest has come

Here the words "has come" are part of an idiom that means it is time for something. Alternative translation: "because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

#### Mark 4:30

##### To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?

Jesus asked this question to cause his hearers to think about what the kingdom of God is like. Alternate translation: "With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

#### Mark 4:31

##### when it is sown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

#### Mark 4:32

##### it forms large branches

The mustard tree is described as causing its branches to grow large. Alternate translation: "it has large branches"

#### Mark 4:33

##### he spoke the word to them

"Word" here is a synecdoche for "the message of God." The word "them" refers to the crowds. Alternate translation: "he taught them the message of God"

##### as much as they were able to understand

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

#### Mark 4:34

##### when he was alone

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

##### he explained everything

Here "everything" refers to all his parables. Alternate translation: "he explained all his parables"

#### Mark 4:35

##### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples take a boat to escape the crowds of people, a great storm arises. His disciples are afraid when they see that even the wind and the sea obey Jesus.

##### he said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

##### the other side

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 4:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 4:37

##### a violent windstorm arose

Here "arose" is an idiom for "began." Alternate translation: "a violent windstorm began"

##### the boat was almost full of water

It may be helpful to state that the boat was filling up with water. Alternate translation: "the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

#### Mark 4:38

##### the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

##### They woke him up

The word "they" refers to the disciples.

##### do you not care that we are about to die?

The disciples asked this question to show that they were in great danger and that they were upset that Jesus was not helping them. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

##### we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

#### Mark 4:39

##### Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

##### a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

#### Mark 4:40

##### Then he said to them

"And Jesus said to his disciples"

##### Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

Jesus asks these questions to make his disciples consider why they are afraid when he is with them. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

#### Mark 4:41

##### Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

The disciples ask this question in amazement at what Jesus did. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

## Chapter 5

# Mark 5 General Notes

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Talitha, koum"

The words "Talitha, koum"

#### Mark 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

After Jesus calms the great storm, he heals a man who has many demons, but the local people in Gerasa are not glad about his healing, and they beg Jesus to leave.

##### They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

##### Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

#### Mark 5:2

##### with an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that the man is "controlled" or "possessed" by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

#### Mark 5:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:4

##### He had been bound many times

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "People had bound him many times"

##### his shackles were shattered

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "he shattered his shackles"

##### shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

##### No one had the strength to subdue him

The man was so strong that no one could subdue him. Alternate translation: "He was so strong that no one was strong enough to subdue him"

##### subdue him

"control him"

#### Mark 5:5

##### cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

#### Mark 5:6

##### When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

##### bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

#### Mark 5:7

##### General Information:

The information in verses 7 and 8 may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UDB.

##### He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

##### Jesus ... do not torment me

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

##### Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### I beg you by God himself

Here the unclean spirit is swearing by God as he makes a request of Jesus. Consider how this type of request is made in your language. Alternate translation: "I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

#### Mark 5:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:9

##### He asked him

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

##### He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

One spirit was speaking for many here. He spoke of them as if they were a legion, a Roman army unit of about 6,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: "And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

#### Mark 5:10

##### He begged him

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus"

##### not to send them

"not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

#### Mark 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:12

##### they begged him

"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

#### Mark 5:13

##### he allowed them

It may be helpful to state clearly what Jesus allowed them to do. Alternate translation: "Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

##### into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea

You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

##### about two thousand pigs

"about 2,000 pigs"

#### Mark 5:14

##### reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside

"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

#### Mark 5:15

##### Legion

This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man. See how you translated this in Mark 5:9.

##### in his right mind

This is an idiom meaning that he is thinking clearly. Alternate translation: "of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

##### they were afraid

The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

#### Mark 5:16

##### Those who had seen what happened

"The people who had witnessed what had happened"

#### Mark 5:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:18

##### the demon-possessed man

Though the man is no longer demon-possessed, he is still described in this way. Alternate translation: "the man who had been demon-possessed"

#### Mark 5:19

##### But Jesus did not permit him

What Jesus did not allow the man to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But he did not allow the man to come with them"

#### Mark 5:20

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

##### everyone was amazed

It may be helpful to state why the people were amazed. Alternate translation: "all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

#### Mark 5:21

##### Connecting Statement:

After healing the demon-possessed man in region of the Gerasenes, Jesus and his disciples return across the lake to Capernaum where one of the leaders of the synagogue asks Jesus to heal his daughter.

##### the other side

This refers to the other side of the sea

##### beside the sea

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 5:22

##### Jairus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 5:23

##### lay your hands

"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

##### that she may be made well and live

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and heal her and make her live"

#### Mark 5:24

##### So he went with him

"So Jesus went with Jairus." Jesus's disciples also went with him. Alternate translation: "So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

##### pressed close around him

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:25

##### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus is on his way to heal the man's little 12-year-old girl, a woman who has been sick for 12 years interrupts by touching Jesus for her healing.

##### Now a woman was there

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story with a new person. Consider how new people are introduced into a story in your language.

##### who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

##### for twelve years

"for 12 years"

#### Mark 5:26

##### she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

#### Mark 5:27

##### the reports about Jesus

She had heard reports about Jesus of how he healed people. Alternate translation: "that Jesus healed people"

##### cloak

outer garment or coat

#### Mark 5:28

##### I will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

#### Mark 5:29

##### she was healed from her affliction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

#### Mark 5:30

##### that power had gone out from him

When the woman touched Jesus, Jesus felt his power healing her. Jesus himself did not lose any of his power to heal people when he healed her. Alternate translation: "that his healing power had healed someone"

#### Mark 5:31

##### this crowd pressed around you

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus. See how you translated this in Mark 5:24.

#### Mark 5:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:33

##### fell down before him

"knelt down before him." She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission.

##### told him the whole truth

The phrase "the whole truth" refers to how she had touched him and had became well. Alternate translation: "told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

#### Mark 5:34

##### Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

##### your faith

"your faith in me"

#### Mark 5:35

##### While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus ([Mark 5:22](./22.md)).

##### Why trouble the teacher any longer?

This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

##### the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:36

##### the message that was spoken

This can be stated as in active form. Alternate translation: "the message that they told Jairus"

##### Just believe

If necessary, you can state what Jesus is commanding Jairus to believe. Alternate translation: "Just believe I can make you daughter live"

#### Mark 5:37

##### General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

##### He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom he permitted to accompany him. Alternate translation: "He only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

##### He did not permit

Jesus did not permit

##### to accompany him

"to come with him." It may be helpful to state where they were going. Alternate translation: "to accompany him to Jairus' house"

#### Mark 5:38

##### General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

##### he saw

Jesus saw

#### Mark 5:39

##### he said to them

"Jesus said to the people who were weeping"

##### Why are you upset and why do you weep?

Jesus asked this question to help them see their lack of faith. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not a time to be upset and crying."

##### The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

#### Mark 5:40

##### They began to mock him

Jesus used the common word for sleep (verse 39). The reader should understand that the people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

##### put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

##### those who were with him

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### went in where the child was

It may be helpful to state where the child is. Alternate translation: "went into the room where the child was lying"

#### Mark 5:41

##### Talitha, koum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

#### Mark 5:42

##### she was twelve years of age

"she was 12 years old"

#### Mark 5:43

##### He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

##### He strictly ordered them

"He strongly commanded them"

##### Then he told them to give her something to eat.

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

## Chapter 6

# Mark 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Anointed with oil"

In the ancient Near East, people would try to heal sick people by putting olive oil on them.

#### Mark 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to his hometown, where he is not accepted.

##### his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

#### Mark 6:2

##### What is this wisdom that has been given to him?

This question can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What is this wisdom that he has gained?"

##### that he does with his hands

This phrase emphasizes that Jesus himself does the miracles. Alternate translation: "that he himself works"

#### Mark 6:3

##### Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

#### Mark 6:4

##### to them

"to the crowd"

##### A prophet is not without honor, except

This sentence uses a double negative to emphasize the positive. Alternate translation: "A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

#### Mark 6:5

##### to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

#### Mark 6:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends his disciples out in sets of two to preach and to heal.

##### he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

##### two by two

"2 by 2" or "in pairs"

#### Mark 6:8

##### General Information:

Jesus's instructions in verses 8 and 9 can be reordered to separate what he told the disciples to do from what he told them not to do, as in the UDB.

##### to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

This double negative emphasizes that a staff is the only thing that they were to take. Alternate translation: "to take only a staff for their journey"

##### no bread

Here "bread" is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: "no food"

#### Mark 6:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:10

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve"

##### remain until you go away from there

Here "remain" represents daily going back to that house to eat and sleep there. Alternate translation: "eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

#### Mark 6:11

##### as a testimony to them

"as a testimony against them." The testimony can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

#### Mark 6:12

##### They went out

The word "They" refers to the twelve and does not include Jesus. Also, it may be helpful to state that they went out to various towns. Alternate translation: "They went out to various towns"

##### repent

"stop sinning"

#### Mark 6:13

##### They cast out many demons

It may be helpful to state that they cast the demons out of people. Alternate translation: "They cast many demons out of people"

#### Mark 6:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Before this time, Herod commanded that John the Baptist be killed. When Herod hears about Jesus's miracles, he worries, thinking that someone has raised John the Baptist from the dead.

##### King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

##### Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised

Some people thought that Jesus was John the Baptist. This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who has been raised"

##### John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Raised from the dead" is an idiom that means "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has raised John the Baptist from the dead" or "John the Baptist has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:15

##### Some others said, "He is Elijah."

It may be helpful to state why some people thought he was Elijah. Alternate translation: "Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

#### Mark 6:16

##### whom I beheaded

Herod said "I beheaded" because he had commanded his soldier to behead John. Alternate translation: "whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

##### has been raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has risen" or "has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:17

##### General Information:

Here the author begins to give background information about Herod and why he beheaded John the Baptist.

##### Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

##### on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

##### his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

##### because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

#### Mark 6:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:19

##### Herodias held on to anger against him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John"

##### and wanted to kill him

Herodias wanted someone to kill John. Alternate translation: "and she wanted someone to kill him"

##### but she could not

What she could not do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

#### Mark 6:20

##### for Herod feared John; he knew

These two clauses can be linked differently to show more clearly why Herod feared John. Alternate translation: "for Herod feared John because he knew"

##### he knew that he was a righteous

"Herod knew that John was a righteous"

##### Listening to him

"Listening to John"

#### Mark 6:21

##### Connecting Statement:

The author continues to give background information about Herod and the beheading of John the Baptist.

##### an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time." This was a time when Herodias could finally do something so that John the Baptist would be killed.

##### he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

This means that he invited those people to a special dinner to celebrate his birthday with him. Alternate translation: "he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

##### a dinner

a formal meal or banquet

#### Mark 6:22

##### Herodias herself

The word "herself" is a reflexive pronoun used to emphasize that it was significant that it was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

##### came in

"came into the room"

#### Mark 6:23

##### Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

#### Mark 6:24

##### went out

"went out of the room"

#### Mark 6:25

##### on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

#### Mark 6:26

##### because of the oath he had made

The oath was what Herod swore to the girl in verse 23. Alternate translation: "because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

##### and because of his dinner guests

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

#### Mark 6:27

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:28

##### on a platter

"on a tray"

#### Mark 6:29

##### When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

#### Mark 6:30

##### Connecting Statement:

After the disciples return from preaching and healing, they go somewhere to be alone, but there are many people who come to hear Jesus teach. When it becomes late, he feeds the people and then sends everyone away while he prays alone.

#### Mark 6:31

##### a deserted place

a place where there are no people

##### many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

##### they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

#### Mark 6:32

##### So they went away

Here the word "they" includes both the apostles and Jesus.

#### Mark 6:33

##### they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving, and many of the people recognized Jesus and the apostles, and the people ran there together on foot from all the towns, and the people arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

##### on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

#### Mark 6:34

##### When they came ... on them because they were like ... to teach them

When Jesus and the disciples came ... on the people in the crowd because the people in the crowd were like ... to teach the people in the crowd

##### they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

#### Mark 6:35

##### When the hour was late

This means it was late in the day. Alternate translation: "When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

##### a deserted place

This refers to a place where there are no people. See how you translated this in Mark 6:31.

#### Mark 6:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:37

##### But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

##### Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

The disciples ask this question to say that there is no way they could afford to buy enough food for this crowd. Alternate translation: "We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

##### two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

#### Mark 6:38

##### loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

#### Mark 6:39

##### green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

#### Mark 6:40

##### in groups of hundreds and fifties

This refers to the number of people in each of the groups. Alternate translation: "with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

#### Mark 6:41

##### looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### he blessed

"he spoke a blessing" or "he gave thanks"

##### He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

#### Mark 6:42

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:43

##### They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

##### broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full

"twelve baskets full of broken pieces of bread"

##### twelve baskets

"12 baskets"

#### Mark 6:44

##### There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

Telling the number of men in the crowd hints at how large the crowd was. The women and children also ate. Alternate translation: "So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

##### five thousand men

"5,000 men"

#### Mark 6:45

##### to the other side

This refers to the Sea of Galilee. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:46

##### After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### Mark 6:47

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:48

##### Connecting Statement:

A storm arises while the disciples are trying to cross the lake. Seeing Jesus walking on the water terrifies them. They do not understand how Jesus can calm the storm.

##### fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### Mark 6:49

##### a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### Mark 6:50

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:51

##### They were completely amazed

If you need to be more specific, it can stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### Mark 6:52

##### what the loaves meant

Here the phrase "the loaves" refers to when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread. Alternate translation: "what it meant when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread" or "what it meant when Jesus caused the few loaves to become many"

##### their hearts were hardened

Having a hard heart represents being too stubborn to understand. Alternate translation: "they were too stubborn to understand"

#### Mark 6:53

##### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples arrive at Gennesaret in their boat, people see him and bring people for him to heal. This happens wherever they go.

##### Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:54

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:55

##### they ran throughout the whole region

It may be helpful to state why they ran through the region. Alternate translation: "they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

##### they ran ... they heard

The word "they" refers to the people who recognized Jesus, not to the disciples.

##### the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

#### Mark 6:56

##### Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

##### they would put

Here "they" refers to the people. It does not refer to Jesus's disciples.

##### the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

##### They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

##### let them touch

The word "them" refers to the sick.

##### the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

##### as many as

"all those who"

## Chapter 7

# Mark 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:6-7, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hand washing

The Pharisees washed many things that were not dirty because they were trying to make God think that they were good. They washed their hands before they ate, even when their hands were not dirty, though the law of Moses did not say that they had to do it. Jesus told them that they were wrong and that people make God happy by thinking and doing the right things. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Ephphatha"

This is an Aramaic word. Mark wrote it the way it sounds using Greek letters and then explained what it means.

#### Mark 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees and scribes.

##### gathered around him

"gathered around Jesus"

#### Mark 7:2

##### They saw

"The Pharisees and the scribes saw"

##### that is, unwashed

The word "unwashed" explains why the disciples' hands were defiled. It can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

#### Mark 7:3

##### General Information:

In verses 3 and 4, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

##### For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully

The words "do not" and "unless" are a double negative. This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "For the Pharisees and all the Jews eat only after they wash their hands carefully"

##### unless they wash their hands carefully

This kind of hand washing was an important ceremonial or religious act, not just an act of making ones hands clean physically. The Jews washed their hands carefully to obey all religious traditions and rules about cleanness. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

##### elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

#### Mark 7:4

##### they hold to many other things they have received

The words "things they have received" refers to traditions that they learned from their elders. Alternate translation: "they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

##### copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

##### the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

#### Mark 7:5

##### Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

Here "walk according to" is a metaphor for "obey." The Pharisees and scribes asked this question to challenge Jesus's authority. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

##### unclean

The hands were ritually unclean because the disciples had not performed the ceremonial washing. The Pharisees were not accusing them of eating with physical dirt on their hands.

##### bread

This is a synecdoche, representing food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

#### Mark 7:6

##### General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah, who had written scripture many years earlier.

##### with their lips

Here "lips" is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: "by what they say"

##### but their heart is far from me

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts or emotions. This is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: "but they do not really love me"

#### Mark 7:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 7:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

##### You abandon the commandment of God

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

##### hold on to

This phrase is a metaphor for strictly obeying. Alternate translation: "strictly obey"

#### Mark 7:9

##### How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition

Jesus uses this ironic statement to rebuke his listeners for forsaking God's commandment. Alternate translation: "You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

##### How well you reject

"How skillfully you reject"

#### Mark 7:10

##### He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother"

##### who speaks evil of

"who curses"

#### Mark 7:11

##### General Information:

In verses 11 and 12, Jesus shows how the Pharisees teach people that they do not have to obey God's commandment to honor their parents. In verse 11 Jesus tells what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions, and in verse 12 he tells how that affects what people do for their parents.

##### is Corban

"Corban" is a Hebrew word that refers to things that people promise to give to God. Translators normally transliterate it using the target language alphabet. Some translators translate its meaning, and then leave out Mark's explanation of the meaning that follows. Alternate translation: "is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

##### Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban

A person might say this so that he would not have to give anything to help his parents. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

##### a Gift

This phrase explains the meaning of the Hebrew word "Corban." Mark explained the meaning so that his non-Jewish readers could understand what Jesus said. This seems to have been the proper name of a sacrifice. You may need to make explicit who the gift was given to. Alternate translation: "a Gift to God"

#### Mark 7:12

##### then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Possible meanings are that by telling people that they could say that their possessions are Corban, 1) the Pharisees did not allow people to help their parents, or 2) the Pharisees allowed people to refuse to help their parents. Alternate translation: "then you permit him to do nothing for his father or his mother"

##### then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Here "do anything" refers to helping his parents by giving to them. This can be translated as "then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

#### Mark 7:13

##### the word of God

Jesus is speaking specifically of the command to love father and mother. Alternate translation: "God's command"

##### void

canceled or done away with

##### many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

#### Mark 7:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable to the crowd to help them understand what he has been saying to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### Listen to me, all of you, and understand

The words "Listen" and "understand" are related. Jesus uses them together to emphasize that his hearers should pay close attention to what he is saying.

##### understand

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is telling them to understand. Alternate translation: "try to understand what I am about to tell you"

#### Mark 7:15

##### nothing from outside of a person

Jesus is speaking about what a person eats. This is in contrast to "what comes out of the person." Alternate translation: "nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

##### It is what comes out of the person

This refers to the things a person does or says. This is in contrast to what is "outside a person that ... enters into him." Alternate translation: "It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

#### Mark 7:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 7:17

##### Connecting Statement:

The disciples still do not understand what Jesus has just said to the scribes, Pharisees, and crowds. Jesus explains his meaning more thoroughly to them.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story. Jesus is now away from the crowd, in a house with his disciples.

#### Mark 7:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples by asking a question.

##### Are you also still without understanding?

Jesus uses this question to express his disappointment that they do not understand. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

#### Mark 7:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he is using to teach his disciples.

##### because ... latrine?

This is the end of the question that begins with the words "Do you not see" in verse 18. Jesus uses this question to teach his disciples something they should already know. It can be expressed as a statement. "You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

##### it cannot go into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Here Jesus means that food does not affect a person's character. Alternate translation: "it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

##### because it

Here "it" refers to what goes into a person; that is, what a person eats.

##### all foods clean

It may be helpful to explain clearly what this phrase means. Alternate translation: "all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

#### Mark 7:20

##### He said

"Jesus said"

##### It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

#### Mark 7:21

##### out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Alternate translation: "out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

#### Mark 7:22

##### sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

##### slander

or blasphemy

#### Mark 7:23

##### come from within

Here the word "within" describes a person's heart. Alternate translation: "come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

#### Mark 7:24

##### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus goes away to Tyre, he heals the daughter of a Gentile woman who has extraordinary faith.

#### Mark 7:25

##### had an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that she was possessed by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "was possessed by an unclean spirit"

##### fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

#### Mark 7:26

##### Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story, as the author gives us background information about the woman.

##### Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

#### Mark 7:27

##### Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

Here Jesus speaks about the Jews as if they are children and the Gentiles as if they are dogs. Alternate translation: "Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

##### Let the children first be fed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We must first feed the children of Israel"

##### proper

morally right

##### bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

##### dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

#### Mark 7:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 7:29

##### you are free to go

Jesus was implying that she no longer needed to stay to ask him to help her daughter. He would do it. Alternate translation: "you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

##### The demon has gone out of your daughter

Jesus has caused the unclean spirit to leave the woman's daughter. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

#### Mark 7:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 7:31

##### Connecting Statement:

After healing people in Tyre, Jesus goes to the Sea of Galilee. There he heals a deaf man, which amazes the people.

##### went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

##### up into the region

Possible meanings are 1) "in the region" as Jesus is at the sea in the region of the Decapolis or 2) "through the region" as Jesus went through the region of the Decapolis to get to the sea.

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:20]

#### Mark 7:32

##### They brought

"And people brought"

##### who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

##### they begged him to lay his hand on him

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, people are begging Jesus to heal a man. Alternate translation: "they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

#### Mark 7:33

##### Then taking him ... privately, he

"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

##### he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

##### then he spit and touched his tongue

It may be helpful to state that Jesus spit on his fingers. Alternate translation: "then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

#### Mark 7:34

##### looked up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### sighed

This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

##### said to him

"said to the man"

##### Ephphatha

This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

#### Mark 7:35

##### his ears were opened

This means he was able to hear. Alternate translation: "his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

##### the bond of his tongue was released

This metaphor speaks of the man's tongue as if it were bound by a rope or chain that kept the man from speaking and that Jesus broke or loosened so the man could speak. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

#### Mark 7:36

##### But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it

The refers to him ordering them not to tell anyone about what he had done. Alternate translation: "But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

##### the more abundantly

"the more widely" or "the more"

#### Mark 7:37

##### were extremely astonished

"were utterly amazed" or "were exceedingly astonished" or "were astonished beyond all measure"

##### the deaf hear and the mute speak

These refer to people. Alternate translation: "the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

## Chapter 8

# Mark 8 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Bread

When Jesus worked a miracle and provided bread for a large crowd of people, they probably thought about when God miraculously provided food for the people of Israel when they were in the wilderness.

Yeast is the ingredient that causes bread to become larger before it is baked. In this chapter, Jesus uses yeast as a metaphor for things that change the way people think, speak, and act.

#### "Adulterous generation"

When Jesus called the people an "adulterous generation," he was telling them that they were not faithful to God. (See: faithful and peopleofgod)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Jesus used many rhetorical questions as a way of both teaching the disciples

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it" ([Mark 8:35-37](./35.md)).

#### Mark 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

A great, hungry crowd is with Jesus. He feeds them using only seven loaves and a few fish before Jesus and his disciples get in a boat to go to another place.

##### In those days

This phrase is used to introduce a new event in the story.

#### Mark 8:2

##### they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

##### they may faint

Possible meanings are 1) literal, "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or 2) hyperbolic exaggeration, "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

##### Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

The disciples are expressing surprise that Jesus would expect them to be able to find enough food. Alternate translation: "This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

##### loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:5

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:6

##### He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

This can be written as a direct quote. "Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

##### sit down

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

#### Mark 8:7

##### They also had

Here the word "they" is used to refer to Jesus and his disciples.

##### he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

#### Mark 8:8

##### They ate

"The people ate"

##### they picked up

"the disciples picked up"

##### the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets

This refers to the broken pieces of fish and bread that were left over after the people ate. Alternate translation: "the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

#### Mark 8:9

##### Then he sent them away

It may be helpful to clarify when he sent them away. Alternate translation: "After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

#### Mark 8:10

##### they went into the region of Dalmanutha

It may be helpful to clarify how they got to Dalmanutha. Alternate translation: "they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha"

##### Dalmanutha

This is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 8:11

##### Connecting Statement:

In Dalmanutha, Jesus refuses to give the Pharisees a sign before he and his disciples get in a boat and leave.

##### They sought from him

"They asked him for"

##### a sign from heaven

They wanted a sign that would prove that Jesus's power and authority were from God. Possible meanings are 1) The word "heaven" is a metonym for God. Alternate translation: "a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

##### to test him

The Pharisees tried to test Jesus to make him prove that he was from God. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to prove that God had sent him"

#### Mark 8:12

##### He sighed deeply in his spirit

This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows Jesus's deep sadness that the Pharisees refused to believe him. See how you translated this in Mark 7:34.

##### in his spirit

"in himself"

##### Why does this generation seek for a sign?

Jesus is scolding them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This generation should not seek a sign."

##### this generation

When Jesus speaks of "this generation," he is referring to the people who lived at that time. The Pharisees are included in this group. Alternate translation: "you and the people of this generation"

##### no sign will be given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give a sign"

#### Mark 8:13

##### he left them, got into a boat again

Jesus's disciples went with him. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

##### to the other side

This describes the Sea of Galilee, which can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 8:14

##### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are in a boat, they have a discussion about the lack of understanding among the Pharisees and Herod, though they had seen many signs.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author tells background information about the disciples forgetting to bring bread.

##### no more than one loaf

The negative phrase "no more" is used to emphasize how small an amount of bread they had. Alternate translation: "only one loaf"

#### Mark 8:15

##### Keep watch and be on guard

These two terms have a common meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "Keep watch"

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Here Jesus is speaking to his disciples in a metaphor they do not understand. Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

#### Mark 8:16

##### no bread

The word "no" is an exaggeration. The disciples did have one loaf of bread

#### Mark 8:17

##### Why are you arguing about having no bread?

Here Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples because they should have understood what he had been talking about. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

##### Do you still not see or understand?

These questions have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that they do not understand. This can be written as one question or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

##### Do you have hardened hearts?

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind and "hardened" is a metaphor for not being able or willing to understand something. Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

#### Mark 8:18

##### You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?

Jesus continues to mildly rebuke his disciples. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

#### Mark 8:19

##### the five thousand

This refers to the 5,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 5,000 people"

##### how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected the baskets of pieces. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:20

##### the four thousand

This refers to the 4,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 4,000 people"

##### how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected these. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:21

##### Do you not yet understand?

Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples for not understanding. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Mark 8:22

##### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples get out of their boat at Bethsaida, Jesus heals a blind man.

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated the name of this town in [Mark 6:45]

##### to touch him

It may be helpful to state why they wanted Jesus to touch the man. Alternate translation: "to touch him in order to heal him"

#### Mark 8:23

##### When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

#### Mark 8:24

##### He looked up

"The man looked up"

##### I see men who look like walking trees

The man sees men walking around, yet they are not clear to him, so he compares them to trees. Alternate translation: "Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

#### Mark 8:25

##### Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

##### and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

The phrase "his sight was restored" can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

#### Mark 8:26

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 8:27

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples talk on their way to the villages of Caesarea Philippi about who Jesus is and what will happen to him.

#### Mark 8:28

##### They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

##### John the Baptist

The disciples answer that this was who some people said Jesus was. This can be shown more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

##### Others say ... others

The word "others" refers to other people. This refers to their responses to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

#### Mark 8:29

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:30

##### Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

Jesus did not want them to tell anyone that he was the Christ. This can be made more explicit. This can also be written as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

#### Mark 8:31

##### Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

#### Mark 8:32

##### He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

##### began to rebuke him

Peter rebuked Jesus for saying the things he said would happen to the Son of Man. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "began to rebuke him for saying these things"

#### Mark 8:33

##### Connecting Statement:

After rebuking Peter for his not wanting Jesus to die and rise, Jesus tells both his disciples and the crowd how to follow him.

##### Get behind me, Satan

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do. Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan"

##### Get behind me

"Get away from me"

#### Mark 8:34

##### follow me

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross, and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### follow me

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "obey me"

#### Mark 8:35

##### For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

##### life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

##### for my sake and for the gospel

"because of me and because of the gospel." Jesus is talking about people who lose their lives because they follow Jesus and the gospel. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

#### Mark 8:36

##### What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

##### to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

This can also be expressed as a condition starting with the word "if." Alternate translation: "if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

##### to gain the whole world

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "to gain everything he ever wanted"

##### forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

#### Mark 8:37

##### What can a person give in exchange for his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

##### What can a person give

If in your language "giving" requires someone to receive what is given, "God" can be stated as the receiver. Alternate translation: "What can a person give to God"

#### Mark 8:38

##### ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

##### in this adulterous and sinful generation

Jesus speaks of this generation as "adulterous," meaning that they are unfaithful in their relationship with God. Alternate translation: "in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

##### the Son of Man will be ashamed

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

##### when he comes

"when he comes back"

##### in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

##### with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

## Chapter 9

# Mark 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "transfigured"

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Mark says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Hyperbole

Jesus said things that he did not expect his followers to understand literally. When he said, "If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off" ([Mark 9:43](../../mrk/09/43.md)), he was exaggerating so they would know that they should stay away from anything that caused them to sin, even if it was something they loved or thought they needed.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Elijah and Moses

Elijah and Moses suddenly appeared to Jesus, James, John, and Peter, and then they disappeared. All four of them saw Elijah and Moses, and because Elijah and Moses spoke with Jesus, the reader should understand that Elijah and Moses appeared physically.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus referred to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all" ([Mark 9:35](../../mrk/09/35.md)).

#### Mark 9:1

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

##### the kingdom of God come with power

The kingdom of God coming represents God showing himself as king. Alternate translation: "God show himself with great power as king"

#### Mark 9:2

##### alone by themselves

The author uses the reflexive pronoun "themselves" here to emphasize that they were alone and that only Jesus, Peter, James, and John went up the mountain.

##### he was transfigured

"Transfigure" means for a person's outward appearance to change. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

##### before them

"in front of them"

#### Mark 9:3

##### radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing." Jesus's garments were so white they were emitting or giving off light.

##### extremely

"very"

##### whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

Bleaching describes the process of making natural white wool even whiter by using chemicals like bleach or ammonia. Alternate translation: "whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

#### Mark 9:4

##### Elijah with Moses appeared

It may be helpful to state who these men are. Alternate translation: "two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

##### they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

#### Mark 9:5

##### Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus." Here the word "answered" is used to introduce Peter into the conversation. Peter was not answering a question.

##### it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Mark 9:6

##### For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified

This parenthetical sentence tells background information about Peter, James, and John.

##### they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

#### Mark 9:7

##### came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

##### Then a voice came out of the cloud

Here "a voice came out" is a metonym for someone speaking. It can also be stated clearly who spoke. Alternate translation: "Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

##### This is my beloved Son. Listen to him

God the Father expresses his love for his "beloved Son," the Son of God.

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Mark 9:8

##### when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

#### Mark 9:9

##### he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

##### risen from the dead

"risen from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "risen from death"

#### Mark 9:10

##### rising from the dead

"to rise from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "rising from death"

##### So they kept the matter to themselves

Here "kept the matter to themselves" is an idiom that means they did not tell anyone about what they had seen. Alternate translation: "So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

#### Mark 9:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Though Peter, James, and John wondered what Jesus might mean by "rising from the dead," they asked him instead about Elijah's coming.

##### They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

Prophecy foretold that Elijah would come again from heaven. Then the Messiah, who is the Son of Man, would come to rule and reign. The disciples are confused about how the Son of Man could die and rise again. Alternate translation: "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

#### Mark 9:12

##### Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

##### Why then is it written ... be despised?

Jesus uses this question to remind his disciples that the scriptures also teach that the Son of Man must suffer and be despised. This may be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and be hated."

##### be despised

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people would hate him"

#### Mark 9:13

##### they did whatever they wanted to him

It may be helpful to state what people did to Elijah. Alternate translation: "our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

#### Mark 9:14

##### Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

##### When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

##### they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

##### scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

#### Mark 9:15

##### was amazed

It may be helpful to state why they were amazed. Alternate translation: "was amazed that Jesus had come"

#### Mark 9:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:17

##### He has a spirit

This means the boy is possessed by an unclean spirit. "He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 9:18

##### down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes

A convulsion, or seizure, can cause a person to have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to come out of the mouth. If your language has a way to describe that, you could use it. Alternate translation: "down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes"

##### becomes rigid

"becomes stiff" or "his body becomes rigid"

##### they could not

This refers to the disciples not being about to drive the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "they could not drive it out of him"

#### Mark 9:19

##### He answered them

Though it was the boy's father who made a request of Jesus, Jesus responds to the whole crowd. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Jesus responded to the crowd"

##### Unbelieving generation

"You unbelieving generation." Jesus calls the crowd this as he begins to respond to them.

##### how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

Jesus uses these questions to express his frustration. Both questions have the same meaning. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

##### bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

##### Bring him to me

"Bring the boy to me"

#### Mark 9:20

##### spirit

This refers to the unclean spirit. See how you translated this in Mark 9:17.

##### convulsion

This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

#### Mark 9:21

##### For how much time

"How long"

##### Since childhood

"Since he was a small child." It may be helpful to state this as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He has been like this since he was a small child"

#### Mark 9:22

##### have pity

"have compassion"

#### Mark 9:23

##### 'If you are able'?

Jesus repeated what the man had said to him. Alternate translation: "Do you say to me 'If you are able'?" or "Why do you say 'If you are able'?"

##### 'If you are able'?

Jesus used this question to rebuke the man's doubt. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

##### All things are possible for the one who believes

"God can do anything for people who believe in him"

##### for the one

"for the person" or "for anyone"

##### believes

This refers to belief in God. Alternate translation: "believes in God"

#### Mark 9:24

##### Help my unbelief

The man is asking Jesus to help him overcome his unbelief and increase his faith. Alternate translation: "Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

#### Mark 9:25

##### the crowd running to them

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

##### You mute and deaf spirit

The words "mute" and "deaf" can be explained. Alternate translation: "You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

#### Mark 9:26

##### It cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### convulsed the boy greatly

"shook the boy violently"

##### came out

It is implied that the spirit came out of the boy. Alternate translation: "came out of the boy"

##### The boy looked like one who was dead

The boy's appearance is compared to that of a dead person. Alternate translation: "The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

##### so that many

"so that many people"

#### Mark 9:27

##### took him by the hand

This means that Jesus grasped the boy's hand with his own hand. Alternate translation: "grasped the boy by the hand"

##### lifted him up

"helped him get up"

#### Mark 9:28

##### privately

This means they were alone.

##### cast it out

"cast the unclean spirit out." This refers to casting the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

#### Mark 9:29

##### This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer

The words "cannot" and "except" are both negative words. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "This kind can be cast out only by prayer"

##### This kind

This describes unclean spirits. Alternate translation: "This kind of unclean spirit"

#### Mark 9:30

##### Connecting Statement:

After he heals the demon-possessed boy, Jesus and his disciples leave the house where they are staying. He takes time to teach his disciples alone.

##### They went out from there

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

##### passed through

"traveled through" or "passed by"

#### Mark 9:31

##### for he was teaching his disciples

Jesus was teaching his disciples privately, away from the crowd. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for he was teaching his disciples privately"

##### The Son of Man will be given over

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### The Son of Man

Here Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man. This is an important title for Jesus. "I, the Son of Man,"

##### into the hands of men

Here "hands" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

##### When he has been put to death, after three days he

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

#### Mark 9:32

##### they were afraid to ask him

They were afraid to ask Jesus what his statement meant. Alternate translation: "they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

#### Mark 9:33

##### Connecting Statement:

When they come to Capernaum, Jesus teaches his disciples about being humble servants.

##### they came to

"they arrived at." The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

##### were you discussing

"were you discussing with one another"

#### Mark 9:34

##### they were silent

They were silent because they were ashamed to tell Jesus what they had been discussing. Alternate translation: "they were silent because they were ashamed"

##### who was the greatest

Here "the greatest" refers to "the greatest" among the disciples. Alternate translation: "who was the greatest among them"

#### Mark 9:35

##### If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all

Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "most important" as being "first" and of being the "least important" as being "last." Alternate translation: "If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all"

##### of all ... of all

"of all people ... of all people"

#### Mark 9:36

##### in their midst

"among them." The word "their" refers to the crowd.

##### He took him in his arms

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

#### Mark 9:37

##### such a child

"a child like this"

##### in my name

This means to do something because of love for Jesus. Alternate translation: "because he loves me" or "for my sake"

##### the one who sent me

This refers to God, who has sent him to earth. Alternate translation: "God, who has sent me"

#### Mark 9:38

##### John said to him

"John said to Jesus"

##### driving out demons

"sending away demons." This refers to casting demons out of people. Alternate translation: "driving demons out of people"

##### in your name

Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. Alternate translation: "by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

##### he does not follow us

This means that he is not among their group of disciples. Alternate translation: "he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

#### Mark 9:39

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:40

##### is not against us

"is not opposing us"

##### is for us

It can be explained clearly what this means. Alternate translation: "is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

#### Mark 9:41

##### gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another. This is a metaphor for helping someone in any way.

##### not lose

This negative sentence emphasizes the positive meaning. In some languages, it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "definitely receive"

#### Mark 9:42

##### millstone

a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

#### Mark 9:43

##### If your hand causes you to stumble

Here "hand" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your hand. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

##### to enter into life maimed

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### maimed

missing a body part as a result of having it removed or being injured. Here it refers to missing a hand. Alternate translation: "without a hand" or "missing a hand"

##### into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

#### Mark 9:44

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:45

##### If your foot causes you to stumble

Here the word "foot" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your feet, such as going to a place you should not go to. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

##### to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### lame

"unable to walk easily." Here it refers not being able to walk well because of missing a foot. Alternate translation: "without a foot" or "missing a foot"

##### be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:46

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:47

##### If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

Here the word "eye" is a metonym for either 1) desiring to sin by looking at something. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful by looking at something, tear your eye out" or 2) Desiring to sin because of what you have looked at. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

##### to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

This refers to the state of a person's physical body when he dies. A person does not take his physical body with him into eternity. Alternate translation: "to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

##### to be thrown into hell

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:48

##### where their worm does not die

The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "where worms that eat people there do not die"

#### Mark 9:49

##### everyone will be salted with fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

##### will be salted with fire

Here "fire" is a metaphor for suffering, and putting salt on people is a metaphor for purifying them. So "will be salted with fire" is a metaphor for being purified through suffering. Alternate translation: "will be made pure in the fire of suffering" or "will suffer in order to be purified as a sacrifice is purified with salt"

#### Mark 9:50

##### its saltiness

"its salty taste"

##### how can you make it salty again?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you cannot make it salty again."

##### salty again

"taste salty again"

##### Have salt among yourselves

Jesus speaks of doing good things for one another as if good things were salt that people possess. Alternate translation: "Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

## Chapter 10

# Mark 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 10:7-8.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Jesus's teaching about divorce

The Pharisees wanted to find a way to make Jesus say that it is good to break the law of Moses, so they asked him about divorce. Jesus tells how God originally designed marriage to show that the Pharisees taught wrongly about divorce.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. When Jesus spoke of "the cup which I will drink," he was speaking of the pain he would suffer on the cross as if it were a bitter, poisonous liquid in a cup.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant" ([Mark 10:43](../../mrk/10/43.md)).

#### Mark 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

After Jesus and his disciples leave Capernaum, Jesus reminds the Pharisees, as well as his disciples, what God really expects in marriage and divorce.

##### Jesus left that place

Jesus's disciples were traveling with him. They were leaving Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

##### and to the area beyond the Jordan River

"and to the land on the other side of the Jordan River" or "and to the area east of the Jordan River"

##### He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

##### he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

#### Mark 10:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 10:3

##### What did Moses command you

Moses gave the law to their ancestors, which they now were also supposed to follow. Alternate translation: "What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

#### Mark 10:4

##### a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

#### Mark 10:5

##### "It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

In some languages speakers do not interrupt a quote to say who is speaking. Rather they say who is speaking at the beginning or end of the complete quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law."

##### because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

Long before this time, Moses wrote this law for the Jews and their descendants because they had hard hearts. The Jews of Jesus's time also had hard hearts, so Jesus included them by using the words "your" and "you." Alternate translation: "because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

##### your hard hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. The phrase "hard hearts" is a metaphor for "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "your stubbornness"

#### Mark 10:6

##### God made them

"God made people"

#### Mark 10:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to quote what God said in the book of Genesis.

##### For this reason

"Therefore" or "Because of this"

##### be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

#### Mark 10:8

##### and the two ... one flesh

Jesus finishes quoting what God said in the book of Genesis.

##### they are no longer two, but one flesh

This is a metaphor to illustrate their close union as husband and wife. Alternate translation: "the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

#### Mark 10:9

##### Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

The phrase "what God has joined together" refers to any married couple. Alternate translation: "Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

#### Mark 10:10

##### When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

##### were in the house

Jesus's disciples were speaking to him privately. Alternate translation: were alone in the house"

##### asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

#### Mark 10:11

##### Whoever

"Anyone who"

##### commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

#### Mark 10:12

##### she commits adultery

In this situation she commits adultery again her previous husband. Alternate translation: "she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

#### Mark 10:13

##### Connecting Statement:

When the disciples rebuke the people for bringing their little children to Jesus, he blesses the children and reminds the disciples that people must be as humble as a child to enter the kingdom of God.

##### Then they brought

"Now people were bringing." This is the next event in the story.

##### he might touch them

This means that Jesus would touch them with his hands and bless them. Alternate translation: "he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

##### rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

#### Mark 10:14

##### Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

##### was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

##### Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

These two clauses have similar meanings, repeated for emphasis. In some languages it is more natural to emphasize this in another way. Alternate translation: "Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

##### do not forbid

"allow"

##### for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

The kingdom belonging to people represents the kingdom including them. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

#### Mark 10:15

##### whoever will not receive ... child will definitely not enter it

"if anyone will not recieve ... child, he will definitely not enter it"

##### as a little child

Jesus is comparing how people must receive the kingdom of God to how little children would receive it. Alternate translation: "in the same manner as a little child would"

##### will not receive the kingdom of God

"will not accept God as their king"

##### definitely not enter it

The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

#### Mark 10:16

##### he took the children into his arms

"he hugged the children"

#### Mark 10:17

##### to inherit eternal life

Here the man speaks of "receiving" as if it were "inheriting." This metaphor is used to emphasize the importance of receiving. Also, "inherit" here does not mean that someone has to die first. Alternate translation: to receive eternal life"

#### Mark 10:18

##### Why do you call me good?

Jesus asks this question to remind the man that no man is good the way God is good. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

##### No one is good except God alone

This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

#### Mark 10:19

##### do not testify falsely

"do not testify falsely against anyone" or "do not lie about someone in court"

#### Mark 10:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 10:21

##### One thing you lack

"There is one thing you are missing." Here "lack" is a metaphor for needing to do something. Alternate translation: "One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done" or

##### give it to the poor

Here the word "it" refers to the things he sells and is a metonym for the money he receives when he sells them. Alternate translation: "give the money to the poor"

##### the poor

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

##### treasure

wealth, valuable things

#### Mark 10:22

##### had many possessions

"owned many things"

#### Mark 10:23

##### How difficult it is

"It is very difficult"

#### Mark 10:24

##### Jesus said to them again

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

##### Children, how

"My children, how." Jesus is teaching them as a father would teach his children. Alternate translation: "My friends, how"

##### how hard it is

"it is very hard"

#### Mark 10:25

##### It is easier for a camel ... kingdom of God

It is impossible for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. Jesus uses an exaggeration to emphasize how very difficult it is for rich people to get into the kingdom of God.

##### It is easier for a camel

This speaks of an impossible situation. If you cannot state this in this way in your language, you can use the word "would." Alternate translation: "It would be easier for a camel"

##### the eye of a needle

Here "the eye" refers to the small hole in one end of a sewing needle. The thread goes through this hole and ties to the needle. Alternate translation: "the hole of a needle"

#### Mark 10:26

##### They were

"The disciples were"

##### Then who can be saved?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

#### Mark 10:27

##### With people it is impossible, but not with God

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

#### Mark 10:28

##### Look, we have left everything and have followed you

Here the word "Look" is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Similar emphasis can be expressed in other ways. Alternate translation: "We have left everything and have followed you"

##### have left everything

"have left everything behind"

#### Mark 10:29

##### Truly I say to you, there is no one

This sentence ends in verse 30. It can be stated in positive form. If so, in verse 30, "who will not receive" would become "will receive." Alternate translation: "Truly I say to you, everyone"

##### or lands

"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

##### for my sake

"for my cause" or "for me"

##### for the gospel

"to proclaim the gospel"

#### Mark 10:30

##### who will not receive

This sentence began in verse 29. If you the sentence was stated in positive form in verse 29, verse 30 would be changed to positive form also. Alternate translation: "will receive"

##### this age

"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

##### brothers and sisters and mothers and children

Like the list in verse 29, this describes the family in general. The word "fathers" is missing in verse 30, but it does not significantly change the meaning.

##### with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life

This can be reworded so that the ideas in the abstract noun "persecution" are expressed with the verb "persecute." Because the sentence is so long and complicated, "will receive" can be repeated. Alternate translation: "and even though people persecute them, in the world to come, they will receive eternal life"

##### in the world to come

"in the future world" or "in the future

#### Mark 10:31

##### are first will be last, and the last first

Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "important" as being "first" and of being the "unimportant" as being "last." Alternate translation: "are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

##### the last first

The phrase "the last" refers to people who are "last." Also, the understood verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "those who are last will be first"

#### Mark 10:32

##### They were on the road ... and Jesus was going ahead of them

"Jesus and his disciples were walking on the road ... and Jesus was in front of his disciples"

##### those who were following behind

"those who were following behind them." Some people were walking behind Jesus and his disciples.

#### Mark 10:33

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### the Son of Man will

Jesus is speaking about himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

##### the Son of Man will be given over to

The words "given over" mean "betrayed" or "put into the power of." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

##### They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

#### Mark 10:34

##### They will mock

"People will mock"

##### put him to death

"kill him"

##### he will rise

This refers to rising from the dead. Alternate translation: "he will rise from being dead"

#### Mark 10:35

##### we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

#### Mark 10:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 10:37

##### in your glory

"when you are glorified." The phrase "in your glory" refers to when Jesus is glorified and rules over his kingdom. Alternate translation: "when you rule in your kingdom"

#### Mark 10:38

##### You do not know

"You do not understand"

##### drink the cup which I will drink

Here "cup" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Suffering is often referred to as drinking from a cup. Alternate translation: "drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

##### be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

Here "baptism" and being baptized represent suffering. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

#### Mark 10:39

##### We are able

They respond this way, meaning that they are able to drink the same cup and endure the same baptism.

##### you will drink

"you will drink as well"

#### Mark 10:40

##### But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

"but those places are for those for whom they have been prepared." The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

##### it has been prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

#### Mark 10:41

##### heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

#### Mark 10:42

##### Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

##### those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) people in general consider these people the rulers of the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "those whom people consider to be the rulers of the Gentiles" or 2) the Gentiles consider these people their rulers. Alternate translation: "those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

##### dominate

have control or power over

##### exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

#### Mark 10:43

##### But it is not this way among you

This refers back to the previous verse about the Gentile rulers. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But do not be like them"

##### become great

"be highly respected"

#### Mark 10:44

##### to be first

This is a metaphor for being the most important. Alternate translation: "to be the most important"

#### Mark 10:45

##### For the Son of Man did not come to be served

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man did not come to have people serve him"

##### to be served, but to serve

"to be served by people, but to serve people"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Mark 10:46

##### Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples continue walking toward Jerusalem, Jesus heals blind Bartimaeus, who then walks with them.

##### the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

#### Mark 10:47

##### When he heard that it was Jesus

Bartimaeus heard people saying that it was Jesus. Alternate translation: "When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

##### Son of David

Jesus is called the Son of David because he is a descendant of King David. Alternate translation: "You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

#### Mark 10:48

##### Many rebuked

"Many people rebuked"

##### all the more

"even more"

#### Mark 10:49

##### commanded him to be called.

This can be translated in active form or as as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

##### They called

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

##### Be brave

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

##### He is calling for you

"Jesus is calling for you"

#### Mark 10:50

##### sprang up

"jumped up"

#### Mark 10:51

##### answered him

"answered the blind man"

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Mark 10:52

##### Your faith has healed you

This phrase is written this way to place emphasis on the man's faith. Jesus heals the man because he believes that Jesus can heal him. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I am healing you because you have believed in me"

##### he followed him

"he followed Jesus"

## Chapter 1

# Luke 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:46-55, 68-79.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "He will be called John"

Most people in the ancient Near East would give a child the same name as someone in their family. People were surprised that Elizabeth and Zechariah named their son John, because there was no one else in their family with that name.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

Luke's language is simple and straightforward. He does not use many figures of speech.

#### Luke 1:1

##### General Information:

Luke explains why he writes to Theophilus.

##### of the things that have been accomplished among us

"about those things that have happened among us" or "about those events that have happened among us"

##### among us

No one knows for sure who Theophilus was. If he was a Christian, the word "us" here would include him and so be inclusive, and if not, it would be exclusive.

#### Luke 1:2

##### were eyewitnesses and servants of the word

An "eyewitness" is a person who saw something happen, and a servant of the word is a person who serves God by telling people God's message. You may need to make it clear how they were servants of the word. Alternate translation: "saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

##### servants of the word

The word "word" is a synecdoche for a message made up of many words. Alternate translation: "servants of the message" or "servants of God's message"

#### Luke 1:3

##### accurately investigated

"carefully researched." Luke was careful to find out exactly what happened. He probably talked to the different people who saw what happened to make sure that what he wrote down about these events was correct.

##### most excellent Theophilus

Luke said this to show honor and respect for Theophilus. This may mean that Theophilus was an important government official. This section should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to also put this greeting at the beginning and say, "To most excellent Theophilus" or "Dear most excellent Theophilus."

##### most excellent

"honorable" or "noble"

##### Theophilus

This name means "friend of God." It may describe this man's character or it may have been his actual name. Most translations have it as a name.

#### Luke 1:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 1:5

##### General Information:

Zechariah and Elizabeth are introduced. Verses 5-7 give background information about them.

##### Connecting Statement:

The angel prophesies the birth of John.

##### In the days of Herod, king of Judea

The phrase "In the days of" is used to indicate a new event. Alternate translation: "During the time that King Herod ruled over Judea"

##### there was a certain

"there was a particular" or "there was a." This is a way of introducing a new character in a story. Consider how your language does this.

##### division

It is understood that this refers to the priests. Alternate translation: "division of priests" or "group of priests"

##### of Abijah

"who descended from Abijah." Abijah was an ancestor of this group of priests and all of them were descended from Aaron, who was the first Israelite priest.

#### Luke 1:6

##### before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's opinion"

##### all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

#### Luke 1:7

##### But

This contrast word shows that what follows here is the opposite of what is expected. People expected that if they did what was right, God would allow them to have children. Although this couple did what was right, they did not have any children.

##### they were both advanced in their days

This is a euphemism that says that they were very old. Alternate translation: "they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

#### Luke 1:8

##### Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story from the background information to the participants.

##### Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties

It is implied that Zechariah was in God's temple and that these priestly duties were part of worshiping God.

##### in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

#### Luke 1:9

##### According to the customary way of choosing which priest would ... burn incense

This sentence gives us information about priestly duties.

##### the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

##### chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. The priests believed that God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

##### to burn incense

The priests were to burn sweet-smelling incense as an offering to God each morning and evening on a special altar inside the temple.

#### Luke 1:10

##### The whole crowd of people

"A large number of people" or "Many people"

##### outside

The courtyard was the enclosed area surrounding the temple. Alternate translation: "outside the temple building" or "in the courtyard outside the temple"

##### at the hour

"at the set time." It is unclear if this was the morning or evening time for the incense offering.

#### Luke 1:11

##### Connecting Statement:

While Zechariah does his duty in the temple, an angel comes from God to give him a message.

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

##### appeared to him

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah." This expresses that the angel was present with Zechariah, and not simply a vision.

#### Luke 1:12

##### Zechariah ... was troubled ... fear fell on him

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Zechariah was.

##### When Zechariah saw him

"When Zechariah saw the angel." Zechariah was afraid because the appearance of the angel was frightening. He had not done anything wrong, so he was not afraid that the angel would punish him.

##### fear fell on him

Fear is described as if it was something that attacked or overpowered Zechariah.

#### Luke 1:13

##### Do not be afraid

"Stop being afraid of me" or "You do not need to be afraid of me"

##### your prayer has been heard

This can be stated in active form. It is implied that God will give Zechariah what he has asked for. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer and will give you what you have asked for"

##### bear you a son

"have a son for you" or "give birth to your son"

#### Luke 1:14

##### You will have joy and gladness

The words "joy" and "gladness" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how great the joy will be. Alternate translation: "you will have great joy" or "you will be very glad"

##### at his birth

"because of his birth"

#### Luke 1:15

##### For he will be great

"This is because he will be great." Zechariah and the "many" will rejoice because John will be "great in the sight of the Lord." The rest of verse 15 tells how God wants John to live.

##### he will be great in the sight of the Lord

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

##### he will be filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him" Make sure it does not sound similar to what an evil spirit might do to a person.

##### from his mother's womb

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

#### Luke 1:16

##### Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God

Here "be turned" is a metaphor for a person repenting and worshiping the Lord. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

#### Luke 1:17

##### will go before the face of the Lord

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them.

##### the face of the Lord

Here "the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord"

##### in the spirit and power of Elijah

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word "spirit" does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

##### turn the hearts of the fathers to the children

"persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

##### turn the hearts

The heart is spoken of as if it were something that could be turned to go in a different direction. This refers to changing someone's attitude toward something.

##### the disobedient

Here this refers to people who do not obey the Lord.

##### make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him

What the people will be prepared to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "make ready for the Lord a people who are prepared to believe his message"

#### Luke 1:18

##### How can I know this?

"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" Here, "know" means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

##### my wife is advanced in her days

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 1:7]

#### Luke 1:19

##### I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God

This is stated as a rebuke to Zechariah. The presence of Gabriel, coming directly from God, should be enough proof for Zechariah.

##### who stands

"who serves"

##### I was sent to speak to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to speak to you"

#### Luke 1:20

##### Behold

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

##### silent, unable to speak

These mean the same thing, and are repeated to emphasize the completeness of his silence. Alternate translation: "completely unable to speak" or "not able to speak at all"

##### not believe my words

"not believe what I said"

##### at the right time

"at the appointed time"

#### Luke 1:21

##### Now

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "While the angel and Zechariah were talking"

#### Luke 1:22

##### They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent

These things probably happened at the same time, and Zechariah's signs helped the people understand that he had had a vision. It might be helpful to your audience to change the order to show that. Alternate translation: "He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. So they realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple"

##### a vision

The earlier description indicated that Gabriel actually came to Zechariah in the temple. The people, not knowing that, assumed Zechariah saw a vision.

#### Luke 1:23

##### It came about

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's service was ended.

##### he went to his house

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

#### Luke 1:24

##### After these days

The phrase "these days" refers to the time Zechariah was serving in the temple. It is possible to state more clearly what this refers to. Alternate translation: "After Zechariah's time of serving at the temple"

##### his wife

"Zechariah's wife"

##### kept herself hidden

"did not leave her house"

#### Luke 1:25

##### This is what the Lord has done for me

This phrase refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

##### This is what

This is a positive exclamation. She is very happy with what the Lord has done for her.

##### looked at me with favor

"to look at" here is an idiom that means "to treat" or "to deal with." Alternate translation: "regarded me kindly" or "had pity on me"

##### my shame

This refers to the shame she felt when she was not able to have children.

#### Luke 1:26

##### In the sixth month

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy." It may be necessary to state this clearly if it would be confused with the sixth month of the year.

##### the angel Gabriel was sent from God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God told the angel Gabriel to go"

#### Luke 1:27

##### a virgin engaged to ... Joseph

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Though they had not had sexual relations, Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

##### who was a descendant of David

"he belonged to the same tribe as King David"

##### the virgin's name was Mary

This introduces Mary as a new character in the story.

#### Luke 1:28

##### He came to her

"The angel came to Mary"

##### Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

##### you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

##### The Lord is with you

"with you" here is an idiom that implies support and acceptance. Alternate translation: "The Lord is pleased with you"

#### Luke 1:29

##### she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

#### Luke 1:30

##### Do not be afraid, Mary

The angel does not want Mary to be afraid of his appearance, because God sent him with a positive message.

##### you have found favor with God

The idiom "to find favor" means to be positively received by someone. The sentence can be altered to show God as the actor. Alternate translation: "God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

#### Luke 1:31

##### you will conceive in your womb and bear a son ... Jesus

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

#### Luke 1:32

##### the Son of the Most High

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

##### will be called

Possible meanings are 1) "people will call him" or 2) "God will call him"

##### Son of the Most High

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

#### Luke 1:33

##### there will be no end to his kingdom

The negative phrase "no end" emphasizes that it continues forever. It could also be stated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: "his kingdom will never end"

#### Luke 1:34

##### How will this happen

Though Mary did not understand how it could happen, she did not doubt that it would happen.

##### I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

#### Luke 1:35

##### The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

The process of Mary's conception would begin with the Holy Spirit coming to her.

##### the power of the Most High

It was God's "power" that would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

##### will overshadow you

"will cover you like a shadow"

##### So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the holy one who will be born they will call the Son of God" or "So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God"

##### the holy one

"the holy child" or "the holy baby"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Luke 1:36

##### See, your relative

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: your relative"

##### your relative Elizabeth

If you need to state a specific relationship, Elizabeth was probably Mary's aunt or great-aunt.

##### has also conceived a son in her old age

"Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son even though she is already very old" or "Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old when they conceived.

##### the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

#### Luke 1:37

##### For nothing

"Because nothing" or "This shows that nothing"

##### nothing will be impossible for God

Elizabeth's pregnancy was proof that God was able to do anything—even enable Mary to become pregnant without her sleeping with a man. The double negatives in this statement can be stated with positive terms. Alternate translation: "everything will be possible for God" or "God can do anything"

#### Luke 1:38

##### See, I am the female servant

"Here I am, the female servant" or "I am glad to be the female servant." She is responding humbly and willingly.

##### I am the female servant of the Lord

Choose an expression that shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

##### Let it be for me

"Let this happen to me." Mary was expressing her willingness for the things to happen that the angel had told her were about to happen.

#### Luke 1:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Mary goes to visit her relative Elizabeth, who is going to give birth to John.

##### arose

This idiom means she not only stood up, but also "got ready." Alternate translation: "started out" or "got ready"

##### the hill country

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

#### Luke 1:40

##### She went

It is implied that Mary finished her journey before she went in to Zechariah's house. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "When she arrived, she went"

#### Luke 1:41

##### Now it happened

The phrase is used to mark a new event in this part of the story.

##### in her womb

"in Elizabeth's womb"

##### jumped

moved suddenly

#### Luke 1:42

##### cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

##### Blessed are you among women

The idiom "among women" means "more than any other woman"

##### the fruit of your womb

Mary's baby is spoken of as if it is the fruit that a plant produces. Alternate translation: "the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

#### Luke 1:43

##### Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth is not asking for information. She was showing how surprised and happy she was that the mother of the Lord had come to her. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

##### the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

#### Luke 1:44

##### For see

This phrase alerts Mary to pay attention to Elizabeth's surprising statement that follows.

##### when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

Hearing a sound is spoken of as if the sound came to the ears. Alternate translation: "when I heard the sound of your greeting"

##### jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "turned forcefully because he was so happy"

#### Luke 1:45

##### Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

##### Blessed is she who believed

The passive verb can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless her because she believed"

##### there would be a fulfillment of the things

"the things would actually happen" or "the things would come true"

##### the things that were told her from the Lord

The word "from" is used here instead of "by" because it was the angel Gabriel whom Mary actually heard speak

#### Luke 1:46

##### General Information:

Mary begins a song of praise to the Lord her Savior.

##### My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

#### Luke 1:47

##### my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

##### has rejoiced in

"has felt very joyful about" or "was very happy about"

##### God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

#### Luke 1:48

##### For he

"This is because he"

##### looked at

"looked at with concern" or "cared about"

##### low condition

"poverty." Mary's family was not rich.

##### For see

This phrase calls attention to the statement that follows.

##### from now on

"now and in the future"

##### all generations

"the people in all generations"

#### Luke 1:49

##### the Mighty One has

"God, the Powerful One, has"

##### his name

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: "he"

#### Luke 1:50

##### His mercy

"God's mercy"

##### from generation to generation

"from one generation to the next generation" or "throughout every generation" or "to people in every time period"

#### Luke 1:51

##### displayed strength with his arm

Here "his arm" is a metonym that stands for God's power. Alternate translation: "shown that he is very powerful"

##### has scattered those ... hearts

"has caused those ... hearts to run away in different directions"

##### who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. Alternate translation: "who were proud in their thoughts" or "who were proud"

#### Luke 1:52

##### He has thrown down princes from their thrones

A throne is a chair that a ruler sits on, and it is a symbol of his authority. If a prince is brought down from his throne, it means he no longer has the authority to reign. Alternate translation: "He has taken away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers stop ruling"

##### raised up those of low condition

In this word picture, people who are important are higher than people who are less important. Alternate translation: "has has made humble people important" or "has given honor to people whom others have not honored"

##### of low condition

"in poverty." See how you translated this in Luke 1:48.

#### Luke 1:53

##### He has filled the hungry ... the rich he has sent away empty

The contrast between these two opposite actions should be made clear in the translation if possible.

##### filled the hungry with good things

Possible meanings are 1) "given the hungry good food to eat" or 2) "given the needy good things."

#### Luke 1:54

##### General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

##### He has given help to

"The Lord has helped"

##### Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

##### so as to

"in order to"

##### to remember

God cannot forget. When God "remembers," it is an idiom that means God acts upon his earlier promise.

#### Luke 1:55

##### General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged, as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

##### as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do." This phrase supplies background information about God's promise to Abraham. Alternate translation: "because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

##### his descendants

"Abraham's descendants"

#### Luke 1:56

##### returned to her house

"Mary returned to her (Mary's) house" or "Mary returned to her own house"

#### Luke 1:57

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### deliver her baby

"give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 1:58

##### Her neighbors and her relatives

"Elizabeth's neighbors and relatives"

##### shown his great mercy to her

"been very kind to her"

#### Luke 1:59

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### on the eighth day

Here "eighth day" refers to the time after the birth of the baby, counted from the first day, which was the day he was born. Alternate translation: "on the eighth day of the baby's life"

##### they came to circumcise the child

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

##### They would have called him

"They were going to name him" or "They wanted to give him the name"

##### after the name of his father

"his father's name"

#### Luke 1:60

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 1:61

##### by this name

"by that name" or "by the same name"

#### Luke 1:62

##### They

This refers to the people who were there for the circumcision ceremony.

##### made signs

"motioned." Either Zechariah was unable to hear, as well as unable to speak, or the people assumed that he could not hear.

##### to his father

"to the baby's father"

##### how he wanted him to be named

"what name Zechariah wanted to give the baby"

#### Luke 1:63

##### His father asked for a writing tablet

Since he could not speak, it may be helpful to state this differently. Alternate translation: "His father indicated that he wanted them to give him a writing tablet" or "His father showed that he wanted a writing tablets"

##### a writing tablet

"something on which to write"

##### astonished

greatly surprised or amazed

#### Luke 1:64

##### his mouth was opened ... his tongue was freed

These two phrases are word pictures that together emphasize that Zechariah was suddenly able to speak.

##### his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God opened his mouth and freed his tongue"

#### Luke 1:65

##### Fear came on all who lived around them

"All who lived around Zechariah and Elizabeth were afraid." It may be helpful to state clearly why they were afraid. Alternate translation: "All who lived around them were in awe of God because he had done this to Zechariah"

##### all who lived around them

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who lived around them" or "many who lived in that area"

##### All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea

The phrase "these matters were spread" is a metaphor for people talking about them. The passive verb here can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "All these matters were talked about by people throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People throughout the hill country of Judea talked about all these matters"

#### Luke 1:66

##### All who heard them

"All who heard about these matters"

##### stored them in their hearts

People carefully remembering things so that they can think about them later is spoken of as if they were putting those things safely in their hearts. Alternate translation: "kept them in mind" or "thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

##### hearts, saying

"hearts. They asked"

##### What then will this child become?

"What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" It is also possible that this question was meant to be a statement of their surprise at what they had heard about the baby. Alternate translation: "What a great man this child will be!"

##### the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

#### Luke 1:67

##### Connecting Statement:

Zechariah tells what will happen with his son John.

##### His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled his father Zechariah, and Zachariah prophesied"

##### His father

John's father

##### prophesied, saying

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotes in your language. Alternate translation: "prophesied and said" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

#### Luke 1:68

##### the God of Israel

"Israel" here refers to the nation of Israel. The relationship between God and Israel could be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom Israel worships"

##### his people

"God's people"

#### Luke 1:69

##### He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

The horn of an animal is a symbol of its power to defend itself. To raise up here is to bring into existence or to enable to act. The Messiah is spoken of as if he were a horn with the power to save Israel. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone who is in the house of his servant David with the power to save us"

##### in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

#### Luke 1:70

##### as he spoke

"just as God said"

##### he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

#### Luke 1:71

##### salvation from our enemies

The abstract noun "salvation" can be expressed with the verbs "save" or "rescue." Alternate translation: "who will save us from our enemies"

##### our enemies ... all who hate us

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how strongly their enemies are against them.

##### hand

The hand is a metonym for the power that the person uses the hand to exercise. Alternate translation: "power" or "control"

#### Luke 1:72

##### to show mercy to

"to be merciful to" or "to act according to his mercy toward"

##### remember

Here the word "remember" means to keep a commitment or fulfill something.

#### Luke 1:73

##### the oath that he swore

These words refer to "his holy covenant" (Luke 1:72).

#### Luke 1:74

##### to grant to us

"to make it possible for us"

##### that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that after he rescued us from the hand of our enemies we would serve him without fear"

##### out of the hand of our enemies

Here "hand" refers to the control or power a person. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the control of our enemies"

##### without fear

This refers back to the fear of their enemies. Alternate translation: "without being afraid of our enemies"

#### Luke 1:75

##### in holiness and righteousness

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "holiness" and "righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) we would serve God in holy and righteous ways. Alternate translation: "doing what is holy and righteous" or 2) we would be holy and righteous. Alternate translation: "being holy and righteous"

##### before him

This is an idiom which means "in his presence"

#### Luke 1:76

##### Yes, and you

Zechariah uses this phrase to begin his direct address to his son. You may have a similar way to direct speech in your language.

##### you, child, will be called a prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet"

##### of the Most High

These words are a euphemism for God. Alternate translation: "who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

##### will go before the face of the Lord

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them. See how you translated this in Luke 1:17.

##### the face of the Lord

"the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord" See how you translated this in [Luke 1:17]

##### to prepare his paths

This is a metaphor that means that John will prepare the people to listen to and believe the Lord's message.

#### Luke 1:77

##### to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

The phrase "give knowledge" is a metaphor for teaching. The abstract nouns "salvation" and "forgiveness" can be expressed with the verbs "save" and "forgive." Alternate translation: "to teach his people salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach his people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

#### Luke 1:78

##### because of the tender mercy of our God

It might be helpful to state that God's mercy helps people. Alternate translation: "because God is compassionate and merciful to us"

##### the sunrise from on high

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the Savior giving spiritual truth to people is spoken of as if he were a sunrise that shines light on the earth. Alternate translation: "the Savior, who is like a sunrise, will come from on high"

##### from on high

"from heaven"

#### Luke 1:79

##### to shine

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth that the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth

##### shine on

"give knowledge to" or "give spiritual light to"

##### those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death

Darkness is here a metaphor for the absence of spiritual truth. Here, people who lack spiritual truth are spoken of as if they are sitting in darkness. Also "shadow of death" represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who do not know the truth and are in spiritual darkness and fear dying"

##### guide our feet into the path of peace

Here "guide" is a metaphor for teaching, and "path of peace" is a metaphor for living at peace with God. The phrase "our feet" is a synecdoche that represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "teach us how to live at peace with God"

#### Luke 1:80

##### General Information:

This tells briefly about John's growing years.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of his ministry as an adult.

##### became strong in spirit

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

##### was in the wilderness

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

##### until

This does not necessarily mark a stopping point. John continued to live out in the desert even after he started preaching publicly.

##### the day of his public appearance

"when he began to preach in public"

##### the day

This is used here in the general sense of "the time" or "the occasion."

## Chapter 2

# Luke 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 2:14, 29-32.

#### Luke 2:1

##### General Information:

This gives background to show why Mary and Joseph have to move at the time of Jesus's birth.

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### it came about that

This phrase is used to show that this is the beginning of an account. If your language has a way of showing the start of an account, you may use that. Some versions do not include this phrase.

##### Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." Augustus was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

##### sent out a decree ordering

This command was probably carried by messengers throughout the empire. Alternate translation: "sent messengers with a decree ordering"

##### that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they register all the people living in the world" or "that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

##### the world

Here the word "world" represents only the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

#### Luke 2:2

##### Quirinius

Quirinius was appointed to be the governor of Syria.

#### Luke 2:3

##### everyone went

"everyone started off" or "everyone was going"

##### his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. People may have lived in a different city. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived"

##### to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

#### Luke 2:4

##### General Information:

The UDB rearranges verses 4 and 5 into a verse bridge in order to make it easier to shorten the sentences.

##### Joseph also

This introduces Joseph as a new participant in the story.

##### to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

The phrase "the city of David" was a name for Bethlehem that tells why Bethlehem was important. Although it was a small town, King David was born there, and there was a prophecy that the Messiah would be born there. Alternate translation: "to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David was born"

##### because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

#### Luke 2:5

##### to register

This means to report to the officials there so they could include him in the count. Use a term for an official government count if possible.

##### along with Mary

Mary traveled with Joseph from Nazareth. It is likely that women were also taxed, so Mary would have needed to travel and be registered as well.

##### who was engaged to him

"his fiancee" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but there would not have been physical intimacy between them.

#### Luke 2:6

##### General Information:

The UDB rearranges verses 6 and 7 into a verse bridge in order to keep together the details about the place they stayed.

##### Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### while they were there

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

##### the time came for her to deliver her baby

"it was time to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 2:7

##### wrapped him in long strips of cloth

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

##### laid him in a manger

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. It was most likely clean and may have had something soft and dry like hay in it as a cushion for the baby. Animals were often kept near the home to keep them secure and to feed them easily. Mary and Joseph stayed in a room that was used for animals.

##### there was no room for them in the inn

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room." This was probably because so many people went to Bethlehem to register. Luke adds this as background information.

#### Luke 2:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 2:9

##### An angel of the Lord

"An angel from the Lord" or "An angel who served the Lord"

##### appeared to them

"came to the shepherds"

##### the glory of the Lord

The source of the bright light was the glory of the Lord, which appeared at the same time as the angel.

#### Luke 2:10

##### Do not be afraid

"Stop being afraid"

##### that will bring great joy to all the people

"that will make all the people very happy"

##### all the people

Some understand this to refer to the Jewish people. Others understand it to refer to all people.

#### Luke 2:11

##### the city of David

This refers to Bethlehem.

#### Luke 2:12

##### This is the sign that will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you this sign" or "You will see this sign from God"

##### the sign

"the proof." This could either be a sign to prove that what the angel was saying was true, or it could be a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby.

##### wrapped in strips of cloth

This was the normal way that mothers protected and cared for their babies in that culture. See how you translated this in [Luke 2:7]

##### lying in a manger

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

#### Luke 2:13

##### a great multitude from heaven

These words could refer to a literal army of angels, or it could be a metaphor for an organized group of angels. Alternate translation: "a large group of angels from heaven"

##### praising God

"giving praise to God"

#### Luke 2:14

##### Glory to God in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

##### may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

#### Luke 2:15

##### It came about

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story to what the shepherds did after the angels left.

##### from them

"from the shepherds"

##### to each other

"to one another"

##### Let us ... to us

Since the shepherds were speaking to one another, languages that have inclusive forms for "we" and "us" should use the inclusive form here.

##### Let us

"We should"

##### this thing that has happened

This refers to the birth of the baby, and not to the appearance of the angels.

#### Luke 2:16

##### lying in a manger

A manger is a box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

#### Luke 2:17

##### what had been said to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the angels had told the shepherds"

##### this child

"the baby"

#### Luke 2:18

##### what was spoken to them by the shepherds

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the shepherds told them"

#### Luke 2:19

##### treasuring them in her heart

A person who thinks is something is very valuable or precious is "treasuring" it. Mary considered the things she was told about her son to be very precious. Alternate translation: "carefully remembering them" or "joyfully remembering them"

#### Luke 2:20

##### shepherds returned

"shepherds went back to the sheep"

##### glorifying and praising God

These are very similar and emphasize how excited they were about what God had done. Alternate translation: "talking about and praising God's greatness"

#### Luke 2:21

##### General Information:

The laws God gave the Jewish believers told them when to circumcise a boy baby and what sacrifice the parents had to bring.

##### When it was the end of the eighth day

This phrase shows the passing of time before this new event.

##### the end of the eighth day

"the end of the eighth day of his life." The day he was born was counted as the first day.

##### he was named

Joseph and Mary gave him his name.

##### the name he had been given by the angel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the name the angel had called him"

#### Luke 2:22

##### When the required number ... had passed

This shows the passing of time before this new event.

##### the required number of days

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the number of days that God required"

##### for their purification

"for them to become ceremonially clean." You can also state God's role. Alternate translation: "for God to consider them clean again"

##### they brought him up to the temple

"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

##### to present him to the Lord

"to bring him to the Lord" or "to bring him into the Lord's presence." This was a ceremony acknowledging God's claim on the firstborn children who were male.

#### Luke 2:23

##### As it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As Moses wrote" or "They did this because Moses wrote"

##### Every male who opens the womb

This is an idiom meaning the first male born into a family. This referred to both animals and people. Alternate translation: "The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

#### Luke 2:24

##### what was said in the law of the Lord

"that which the law of the Lord also says." This is a different place in the law. It refers to all males, whether firstborn or not.

#### Luke 2:25

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### was righteous and devout

These abstract terms can be expressed as actions. Alternate translation: "did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

##### consolation of Israel

The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. To "console" someone is to give them comfort, or "consolation." The words "consolation of Israel" are a metonym for the Christ or Messiah who would comfort or bring consolation to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

##### the Holy Spirit was upon him

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with him in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction in his life.

#### Luke 2:26

##### It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

##### he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ

"he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

#### Luke 2:27

##### Led by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As the Holy Spirit directed him"

##### came

Some languages may say "went."

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests could enter the temple building.

##### the parents

"Jesus's parents"

##### the custom of the law

"the custom of the law of God"

#### Luke 2:28

##### he took him into his arms

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

#### Luke 2:29

##### Now let your servant depart in peace

"I am your servant; let me depart in peace." Simeon was referring to himself.

##### depart

This is a euphemism meaning "die"

##### according to your word

"Word" here is a metonym for "promise." Alternate translation: "as you have promised"

#### Luke 2:30

##### my eyes have seen

This expression means, "I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

##### your salvation

This expression refers to the person who would bring salvation—the infant Jesus—whom Simeon was holding. Alternate translation: "the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save"

#### Luke 2:31

##### which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

##### have prepared

"have planned" or "caused to happen"

#### Luke 2:32

##### A light for revelation to the Gentiles

This metaphor means that the child will help people to understand God's will. The Gentiles understanding God's will is spoken of as if they were people using physical light to see a solid object. You may need to make explicit what it is that the Gentiles will see. Alternate translation: "This child will enable the Gentiles to understand God's will as light allows people to see clearly"

##### for revelation

It may be necessary to state what is to be revealed. Alternate translation: "that will reveal God's truth"

##### glory to your people Israel

"he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

#### Luke 2:33

##### what was said about him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Simeon said about him"

#### Luke 2:34

##### said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

##### Behold

Simeon used this expression to tell Mary that what he is about to say is extremely important to her.

##### this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

The words "downfall" and "rising up" express turning away from God and drawing closer to God. Alternate translation: "this child will cause many people in Israel to fall away from God or to rise closer to God"

#### Luke 2:35

##### a sword will pierce your own soul

This metaphor describes the deep sadness that Mary would feel. Alternate translation: "your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

##### the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "he may reveal what many people secretly think"

#### Luke 2:36

##### A prophetess named Anna was there

This introduces a new participant into the story.

##### Phanuel

This is a man's name.

##### She was advanced in her days

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luk 2:7]

##### seven years

"7 years"

##### after her virginity

"after she married him"

#### Luke 2:37

##### a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she had been a widow for 84 years or 2) she was a widow and was now 84 years old.

##### never left the temple

This is probably an exaggeration meaning that she spent so much time in the temple that it seemed as though she never left it. Alternate translation: "was always at the temple" or "was often at the temple"

##### with fastings and prayers

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering many prayers"

#### Luke 2:38

##### came near to them

"approached them" or "went to Mary and Joseph"

##### the redemption of Jerusalem

Here the word "redemption" is used to refer to the person who would do it. Alternate translation: "the one who would redeem Jerusalem" or "the person who would bring God's blessings and favor back to Jerusalem"

#### Luke 2:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Mary, Joseph, and Jesus leave the town of Bethlehem and return to the city of Nazareth for his childhood.

##### they were required to do according to the law of the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the law of the Lord required them to do"

##### their own town of Nazareth

This phrase means they lived in Nazareth. Make sure it does not sound like they owned the town. Alternate translation: "the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

#### Luke 2:40

##### full of wisdom

"becoming wiser" or "learning what was wise"

##### the grace of God was upon him

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

#### Luke 2:41

##### His parents went ... Festival of the Passover

This is background information.

##### His parents

"Jesus's parents"

#### Luke 2:42

##### they again went up

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

##### at the customary time

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

##### the festival

The Festival of the Passover, which involved eating a ceremonial meal.

#### Luke 2:43

##### After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast

"When the entire time for celebrating the feast was over" or "After celebrating the feast for the required number of days"

#### Luke 2:44

##### They assumed

"They thought"

##### they traveled a day's journey

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

#### Luke 2:45

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 2:46

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### in the temple

This refers to the courtyard around the temple. Only the priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

##### in the middle of

This does not mean the exact center. Rather, it means "among" or "together with" or "surrounded by."

##### the teachers

"the religious teachers" or "those who taught people about God"

#### Luke 2:47

##### All who heard him were amazed

They could not understand how a twelve-year-old boy with no religious education could answer so well.

##### at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much about God"

##### his answers

"at how well he answered them" or "that he answered their questions so well"

#### Luke 2:48

##### When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

##### why have you treated us this way?

This was an indirect rebuke because he had not gone with them on the way back home. This caused them to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have done this to us!"

##### Look

This word is often used to show the beginning of a new or important event. It also can be used to show where the action begins. If your language has a phrase that is used in this way, consider whether it would be natural to use it here.

#### Luke 2:49

##### Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents, and to begin to tell them that he had a purpose from his heavenly Father that they did not understand. Alternate translation: "You did not need to be concerned about me."

##### Did you not know ... business?

Jesus uses this second question to try to say that his parents should have known about the purpose for which his Father sent him. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

##### about my Father's business

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus meant these words literally, to indicate that he was doing the work that his Father had given him, or 2) these words are an idiom that indicate where Jesus was, "in my Father's house." Since the next verse says that his parents did not understand what he was telling them, it would be best not to explain it more.

##### my Father's business

At age 12, Jesus, the Son of God, understood that God was his real Father

#### Luke 2:50

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 2:51

##### he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

##### was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

##### treasured all these things in her heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "carefully remembered all these things"

#### Luke 2:52

##### grow in wisdom and stature

"become wiser and stronger." These refer to mental and physical growth.

##### increased in favor with God and people

This refers to spiritual and social growth. These could be stated separately. Alternate translation: "God blessed him more and more, and people liked him more and more"

## Chapter 3

# Luke 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:4-6, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Justice

John's instructions to the soldiers and tax collectors in this chapter are not complicated. They are things that should have been obvious to them. He instructed them to live justly. (See: justice and [Luke 3:12-15](./12.md))

#### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list which records a person's ancestors or descendants. Such lists were very important in determining who had the right be king, because the king's authority was usually passed down or inherited from his father. It was also common for other important people to have a recorded genealogy.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Prophecy often involves the use of metaphors to express its meaning. Spiritual discernment is needed for proper interpretation of the prophecy. The prophecy of Isaiah is an extended metaphor describing the ministry of John the Baptist

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "(Herod) had John locked up in prison"

This event can cause confusion because the author says John was imprisoned and then says he was baptizing Jesus. The author probably uses this phrase in anticipation of Herod's imprisonment of John. This would mean that this statement is still in the future at the time of the narrative.

#### Luke 3:1

##### General Information:

Verses 1-3 give background information to tell what is happening when Jesus's cousin John begins his ministry.

##### Connecting Statement:

As the prophet Isaiah had foretold, John begins to preach good news to the people.

##### Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

##### Iturea and Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of territories.

#### Luke 3:2

##### during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were serving together as the high priest." Annas was the high priest, and the Jews continued to recognize him as such even after the Romans appointed his son-in-law, Caiaphas, to replace him as high priest.

##### the word of God came

The writer speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: "God spoke his message"

#### Luke 3:3

##### preaching a baptism of repentance

The terms "baptism" and "repentance" could be stated as actions. Alternate translation: "and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

##### for the forgiveness of sins

They would repent so that God would forgive their sins. The term "forgiveness" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

#### Luke 3:4

##### General Information:

The author, Luke, quotes a passage from Isaiah the prophet concerning John the Baptist.

##### As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

These words introduce a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. They can be stated in active form, and the missing words can be supplied. Alternate translation: "This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

##### A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight

The second command explains or adds more detail to the first.

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

##### the way

"the path" or "the road"

#### Luke 3:5

##### Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they cut down the high places and fill in the low places so that the road will be level. This is part of the metaphor started in the previous verse.

##### Every valley will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every low place in the road"

##### every mountain and hill will be made low

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will level every mountain and hill" or "they will remove every high place in the road"

#### Luke 3:6

##### see the salvation of God

This can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "learn how God saves people from sin"

#### Luke 3:7

##### to be baptized by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

##### You offspring of vipers

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring of" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes

##### Who warned you ... coming?

He was not really expecting them to answer. John was rebuking the people because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

##### from the wrath that is coming

The word "wrath" is used here to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

#### Luke 3:8

##### produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

In this metaphor, a person's behavior is compared to fruit. Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the kind of fruit that shows that you have repented" or "do the good things that show that you have turned away from your sin"

##### to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may also add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

##### raise up children for Abraham

"create children for Abraham"

##### from these stones

John was probably referring to the actual stones along the Jordan River.

#### Luke 3:9

##### the ax is set against the root of the trees

The ax that is in position so it can cut the roots of a tree is a metaphor for the punishment that is about to begin. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is like the man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

##### every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"fire" here is a metaphor for punishment. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

#### Luke 3:10

##### asking him, saying

"asking him and said" or "asking John"

#### Luke 3:11

##### Connecting Statement:

John begins to respond to questions that people in the crowd ask him.

##### answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

##### do the same

This refers back to giving to someone what he needs. Alternate translation: "give food to someone who does not have any" or "share extra food just as you shared the extra tunic"

#### Luke 3:12

##### to be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

#### Luke 3:13

##### Do not collect more money

"Do not ask for more money" or "Do not demand more money." Tax collectors had been collecting more money than they should have been collecting. John tells them to stop doing that.

##### than you have been ordered to collect

This is passive to show that the tax collector's authority comes from Rome. Alternate translation: "than what the Romans have authorized you to take"

#### Luke 3:14

##### What about us? What must we do?

"How about us soldiers, what must we do?" John is not included in the words "us" and "we." The soldiers have implied that John had told the crowd and the tax collector what they must do and want to know what they as soldiers are to do.

##### do not accuse anyone falsely

It seems that the soldiers were making false charges against people in order to get money. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "in the same way, do not accuse anyone falsely in order to get money from them" or "do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

##### Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

#### Luke 3:15

##### as the people

"because the people." This refers to the same people who came to John.

##### everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.

"everyone was unsure what to think about John; they asked themselves, 'Could he be the Christ?'" or "no one was sure what to think about John because they were wondering whether he might be the Christ."

#### Luke 3:16

##### John answered by saying to them all

John's answer about a greater person coming clearly implies that John is not the Christ. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience. Alternate translation: "John clarified that he was not the Christ by saying to them all"

##### I baptize you with water

"I baptize using water" or "I baptize by means of water"

##### not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This metaphor compares literal baptism that brings a person into contact with water to a spiritual baptism that brings them into contact with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

##### fire

Here the word "fire" may refer to 1) judgment or 2) purification. It is preferred to leave it as "fire"

#### Luke 3:17

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

"He is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready." John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as if he were a farmer who is ready to separate wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is ready to judge people like a farmer who is ready"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar to a pitchfork.

##### to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To "clear off" the floor is to finish threshing the grain. Alternate translation: "to finish threshing his grain"

##### to gather the wheat

The wheat is the acceptable harvest that is kept and stored.

##### will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

#### Luke 3:18

##### With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

#### Luke 3:19

##### General Information:

Verses 19 and 20 tell what is going to happen to John but has not happened at this time.

##### Herod the tetrarch

Herod was a tetrarch, not a king. He had only limited rule over the region of Galilee.

##### When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

It is implied that John reproved Herod. This can also be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved by John" or "When John reproved Herod the tetrarch" )

##### for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he married his brother's wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive"

#### Luke 3:20

##### he locked John up in prison

Because Herod was tetrarch, he probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock John up. Alternate translation: "he had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

#### Luke 3:21

##### General Information:

The previous verse says that Herod put John in prison. It might be helpful to make it clear that the account starting in verse 21 happened before John was arrested. The UDB does this by starting verse 21 with "But before John was put in prison."

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins his ministry with his baptism.

##### Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### when all the people were baptized

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people present with John.

##### Jesus also was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized Jesus also"

##### the heavens opened

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds, but it's not clear what it means. It possibly means that a hole appeared in the sky.

#### Luke 3:22

##### the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

##### a voice came from heaven

Here "a voice came from heaven" represents people on earth hearing God in heaven speaking. It can be made clear that God spoke to Jesus. Alternate translation: "a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

##### my beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Luke 3:23

##### General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of his supposed father, Joseph.

##### When

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jesus's age and ancestors.

##### thirty years of age

"30 years old"

##### He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph"

#### Luke 3:24

##### the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph

This continues the list that begins with the words "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli" in verse 24. Consider how people normally list ancestors in your language. You should use the same wording throughout the whole list. Possible formats are 1) "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli, who was the son of Matthat, who was the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph" or 2) "He was the son ... of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Heli. Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph" or 3) "His father ... was Joseph. Joseph's father was Heli. Heli's father was Matthat. Matthat's father was Levi. Levi's father was Melchi. Melchi's father was Jannai. Jannai's father was Joseph"

#### Luke 3:25

##### the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos ... Naggai

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:26

##### the son of Maath ... Joda

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:27

##### Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa ... Neri

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that begins in [Luke 3:23]

##### the son of Salathiel

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel (as some versions have it), but identification is difficult.

#### Luke 3:28

##### the son of Melchi ... Er

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:29

##### the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer ... Levi

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:30

##### the son of Simeon, the son of Judah ... Eliakim

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:31

##### the son of Melea ... David

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:32

##### the son of Jesse ... the son of Nahshon

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:33

##### the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin ... Judah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:34

##### the son of Jacob ... Nahor

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:35

##### the son of Serug ... Shelah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:36

##### the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad ... Lamech

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:37

##### the son of Methuselah ... Cainan

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

#### Luke 3:38

##### the son of Enos ... Adam

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

##### Adam, the son of God

"Adam, created by God" or "Adam, who was from God" or "Adam, the son, we could say, of God"

## Chapter 4

# Luke 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:10-11, 18-19, which is from the Old Testament.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Jesus was tempted by the devil

While it is true that the devil sincerely believed that he could persuade Jesus to obey him, it is important not to imply that Jesus actually ever really wanted to obey him.

#### Luke 4:1

##### Then Jesus

After John had baptized Jesus.

##### was led by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led him"

#### Luke 4:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus fasts for 40 days, and the devil meets him to try to persuade him to sin.

##### for forty days he was tempted

Most versions say that the temptation was throughout the forty days. The UDB states "While he was there, the devil kept tempting him" to make this clear.

##### forty days

"40 days"

##### he was tempted by the devil

This can be stated in active form, and you can make explicit what it was the devil tempted him to do. Alternate translation: "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

##### He ate nothing

The word "he" refers to Jesus.

#### Luke 4:3

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

##### this stone

The devil either holds a stone in his hand or points to a nearby stone.

#### Luke 4:4

##### Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone.'"

Jesus's rejection of the devil's challenge is clearly implied in his answer. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'No, I will not do that because it is written ... alone."'"

##### It is written

The quotation is from Moses's writings in the Old Testament. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food as compared to God, by itself, is not enough to sustain a person. Jesus quotes the scripture to say why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live on just bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live" or "God says there are more important things than food"

#### Luke 4:5

##### Then the devil led Jesus up ... world

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." It is uncertain where the devil led Jesus and how he showed all the kingdoms of the world to him.

##### in an instant of time

"in an instant" or "instantly"

#### Luke 4:6

##### they have been given to me

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are that "them" refers to 1) the authority and splendor of the kingdoms or 2) the kingdoms. Alternate translation: "God has given them to me"

#### Luke 4:7

##### if you will bow down ... worship me

These two phrases are very similar. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "if you will bow down in worship to me"

##### it will be yours

"I will give you all these kingdoms, with their splendor"

#### Luke 4:8

##### It is written

Jesus refused to do what the devil asked. It may be helpful to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not worship you, because it is written"

##### answered and said to him

"responded to him" or "replied to him"

##### It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

##### You will worship the Lord your God

Jesus was quoting a command from the scriptures to say why he would not worship the devil.

##### You

This refers to the people in the Old Testament who received God's Law. You could use the singular form of 'you' because each person was to obey it, or you could use the plural form of 'you' because all of the people were to obey it.

##### him

The word "him" refers to the Lord God.

#### Luke 4:9

##### the very highest point

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil is challenging Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### throw yourself down

"jump down to the ground"

#### Luke 4:10

##### For it is written

The devil implies that his quote from the Psalms means Jesus will not be hurt if he is the Son of God. This can be stated clearly, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

##### it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer has written"

##### He will give orders

"He" refers to God. The devil partially quoted from the Psalms in an effort to persuade Jesus to jump off the building.

#### Luke 4:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 4:12

##### It is said

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. His refusal to do it can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because it is said"

##### It is said

Jesus quotes from the writings of Moses in Deuteronomy. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has said" or "Moses has said in the scriptures"

##### Do not put the Lord your God to the test

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus should not test God by jumping off the temple, or 2) the devil should not test Jesus to see if he is the Son of God. It is best to translate the verse as stated rather than to try to explain the meaning.

#### Luke 4:13

##### until another time

"until another occasion"

##### had finished tempting Jesus

This does not imply that the devil was successful in his temptation—Jesus resisted every attempt. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

#### Luke 4:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to Galilee, teaches in the synagogue (4:15), and tells the people there that he is fulfilling scripture of Isaiah the prophet (4:17-21).

##### Then Jesus returned

This begins a new event in the story.

##### in the power of the Spirit

"and the Spirit was giving him power." God was with Jesus in a special way, enabling him to do things that humans usually could not.

##### news about him spread

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus" or "knowledge about him was passed on from person to person." Those who heard Jesus told other people about him, and then those other people told even more people about him.

##### throughout the entire surrounding region

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

#### Luke 4:15

##### he was praised by all

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

#### Luke 4:16

##### where he had been raised

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he lived when he was a child" or "where he grew up"

##### as was his custom

"as he did each Sabbath." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 4:17

##### The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

##### scroll of the prophet Isaiah

This refers to the book of Isaiah written on a scroll. Isaiah had written the words many years before, and someone else had copied them onto a scroll.

##### the place where it was written

"the place in the scroll with these words." This sentence continues on into the next verse.

#### Luke 4:18

##### The Spirit of the Lord is upon me

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way." When someone says this, he is claiming to speak the words of God.

##### he anointed me

In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person when they were given power and authority to do a special task. Jesus uses this metaphor to refer to the Holy Spirit being on him to prepare him for this work. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit is upon me to empower me" or "the Holy Spirit gave me power and authority"

##### the poor

"the poor people"

##### proclaim freedom to the captives

"tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "set free the prisoners of war"

##### recovery of sight to the blind

"give sight to the blind" or "make the blind be able to see again"

##### set free those who are oppressed

"set free those who are treated harshly"

#### Luke 4:19

##### to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor

"tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

#### Luke 4:20

##### rolled up the scroll

A scroll was closed by rolling it like a tube to protect the writing inside it.

##### attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

##### sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

##### were fixed on him

This idiom means "were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

#### Luke 4:21

##### this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

Jesus was saying that he was fulfilling that prophecy by his actions and speech at that very time. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now as you are listening to me"

##### in your hearing

This idiom means "while you are listening to me"

#### Luke 4:22

##### amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

"surprised about the gracious things that he was saying." Here "gracious" may refer to 1) how well or how persuasively Jesus spoke, or 2) that Jesus spoke words about God's grace.

##### Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

#### Luke 4:23

##### Surely

"Certainly" or "There is no doubt that"

##### Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be able to heal diseases that he himself has, there is no reason to believe he is really a doctor. People will speak this proverb to Jesus to say that they will only believe he is a prophet if they see him do what they have heard that he did in other places.

##### Whatever we heard ... do the same in your hometown

The people of Nazareth do not believe Jesus is a prophet because of his low status as Joseph's son. They will not believe unless they personally see him do miracles.

#### Luke 4:24

##### Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true." This is an emphatic statement about what follows.

##### no prophet is received in his own hometown

Jesus makes this general statement in order to rebuke the people. He means that they are refusing to believe the reports of his miracles in Capernaum. They think they already know all about him.

##### own hometown

"homeland" or "native city" or "country where he grew up"

#### Luke 4:25

##### General Information:

Jesus reminds the people who are listening to him in the synagogue about Elijah and Elisha

##### But in truth I tell you

"I tell you truthfully." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

##### widows

Widows are women whose husbands have died and who have not married again.

##### during the time of Elijah

The people to whom Jesus was speaking would have known that Elijah was one of God's prophets. If your readers would not know that, you can make this implicit information explicit as in the UDB. Alternate translation: "when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

##### when the sky was shut up

This is a metaphor. The sky is pictured as a ceiling that was closed, and so no rain would fall from it. Alternate translation: "when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

##### a great famine

"a serious lack of food." A famine occurs when the crops do not produce enough food for the people for a long period of time.

#### Luke 4:26

##### to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there

The people living in the town of Zarephath were Gentiles, not Jews. The people listening to Jesus would have understood that the people of Zarephath were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in Zarephath in Sidon"

#### Luke 4:27

##### none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian

This double negative emphasizes that Naaman was the only one who was cleansed. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman"

##### were cleansed

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

##### Naaman the Syrian

A Syrian is a person from the country of Syria. The people of Syria were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "the Gentile Naaman from Syria"

#### Luke 4:28

##### All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things

The people of Nazareth were deeply offended that Jesus had cited scriptures where God had helped Gentiles instead of Jews.

#### Luke 4:29

##### forced him out of the town

"forced him to leave the town" or "shoved him out of the city"

##### cliff of the hill

"edge of the cliff"

#### Luke 4:30

##### through the middle of them

"through the middle of the crowd" or "between the people who were trying to kill him."

##### he went to another place

"he went away" or "he went on his way" Jesus went where he had planned to go instead of where the people were trying to force him to go.

#### Luke 4:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus then goes to Capernaum, teaches the people in the synagogue there, and commands a demon to leave a man (4:35).

##### Then he

"Then Jesus." This indicates a new event.

##### went down to Capernaum

The phrase "went down" is used here because Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

##### Capernaum, a city in Galilee

"Capernaum, another city in Galilee"

#### Luke 4:32

##### astonished

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

##### he spoke with authority

"he spoke as one with authority" or "his words had great power"

#### Luke 4:33

##### Now ... there was a man

This phrase is used to mark the introduction of a new character into the story; in this case, a demon-possessed man.

##### who had the spirit of an unclean demon

"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

##### he cried out with a loud voice

"he shouted loudly"

#### Luke 4:34

##### What do we have to do with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common" or "What right do you have to bother us"

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

This question could be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What do you, Jesus of Nazareth, have to do with us!" or We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

#### Luke 4:35

##### Jesus rebuked the demon, saying

"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

##### Come out of him

He commanded the demon to stop controlling the man. Alternate translation: "Leave him alone" or "Do not live in this man any longer"

#### Luke 4:36

##### What kind of words are these?

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These are amazing words!" or "His words are amazing!"

##### He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power

"He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

#### Luke 4:37

##### So news about him began to spread ... the surrounding region

This is a comment about what happened after the story. The spread of the news was caused by the events within the story itself.

##### news about him began to spread

"reports about Jesus began to spread" or "people began to spread the news about Jesus"

#### Luke 4:38

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus is still in Capernaum, but he is now at the house of Simon.

##### Then Jesus left

This introduces a new event.

##### Simon's mother-in-law

"the mother of Simon's wife"

##### was suffering with

This is an idiom that means "was very sick with"

##### a high fever

"very hot skin"

##### pleaded with him on her behalf

This means they asked Jesus to heal her from the fever. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "asked Jesus to heal her from the fever" or "asked Jesus to cure her fever"

#### Luke 4:39

##### So he stood

The word "So" makes it clear that he did this because the people pleaded with him on behalf of Simon's mother-in-law.

##### stood over her

"went to her and leaned over her"

##### rebuked the fever, and it left her

"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did." It may be helpful to state clearly what he told the fever to do. Alternate translation: "commanded that her skin should become cool, and it did" or "commanded the sickness to leave her, and it did"

##### rebuked the fever

"rebuked the hotness"

##### started serving them

Here this means she began to prepare food for Jesus and the other people in the house.

#### Luke 4:40

##### laid his hands on

"placed his hands on" or "touched"

#### Luke 4:41

##### Demons also came out

It is implied that Jesus made the demons leave the demon-possessed people. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus also forced demons to come out"

##### crying out and saying

These mean about the same thing, and probably refer to cries of fear or anger. Some translations use only one term. Alternate translation: "screaming" or "shouting"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### rebuked the demons

"spoke sternly to the demons"

##### would not let them

"did not allow them to"

#### Luke 4:42

##### Connecting Statement:

Though the people want Jesus to stay in Capernaum, he goes to preach in other Judean synagogues.

##### When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

##### a solitary place

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

#### Luke 4:43

##### to many other cities

"to the people in many other cities"

##### this is the reason I was sent here

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is the reason God sent me here"

#### Luke 4:44

##### throughout Judea

Since Jesus had been in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time. Alternate translation: "where the Jews lived"

## Chapter 5

# Luke 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "You will catch men"

Peter, James, and John were fishermen. When Jesus told them that they would catch men, he was using a metaphor to tell them he wanted them to help people believe the good news about him.

#### Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

#### Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Irony

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees. This passage includes "people in good health" and "righteous people." This does not mean that there are people who do not need Jesus. There are no "righteous people." Everybody needs Jesus. (See: and [Luke 5:31-32](./31.md))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

In several parts of this chapter the author left out some implicit information that his original readers would have understood and thought about. Modern readers might not know some of those things, so they might have trouble understanding all that the author was communicating. The UDB often shows how that information can be presented so that modern readers will be able to understand those passages.

#### Past Events

Parts of this chapter are sequences of events that have already happened. In a given passage, Luke sometimes writes as if the events have already happened while other events are still in progress (even though they are complete at the time he writes). This can cause difficulty in translation by creating an illogical order of events. It may be necessary to make these consistent by writing as if all the events have already happened.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### Luke 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus preaches from Simon Peter's boat at the lake of Gennesaret.

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### listening to the word of God

Possible meanings are 1) "listening to the message God wanted them to hear" or 2) "listening to Jesus's message about God"

##### the lake of Gennesaret

These words refer to the Sea of Galilee. Galilee was on the west side of the lake, and the land of Gennesaret was on the east side, so it was called by both names. Some English versions translate this as the proper name of the body of water, "the Lake of Gennesaret."

#### Luke 5:2

##### washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

#### Luke 5:3

##### one of the boats, which was Simon's, and

"the boat belonging to Simon and"

##### asked him to put it out in the water

"asked Simon to move the boat"

##### he sat down and taught the people

Sitting was the normal position for a teacher.

##### taught the people out of the boat

"taught the people while he sat in the boat." Jesus was in the boat a short distance from the shore and he was speaking to the people who were on the shore.

#### Luke 5:4

##### When he had finished speaking

"When Jesus had finished teaching the people"

#### Luke 5:5

##### at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

#### Luke 5:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 5:7

##### motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

##### they began to sink

"the boats began to sink." The reason could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the boats began to sink because the catch of fish was so heavy" or "the boats began to sink because there were so many fish"

#### Luke 5:8

##### fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

##### sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

#### Luke 5:9

##### the catch of fish

"the large number of fish"

#### Luke 5:10

##### partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in his fishing business"

##### you will catch men

The image of catching fish is being used as a metaphor for gathering people to follow Christ. Alternate translation: "you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples"

#### Luke 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 5:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a leper in a different city that is not named.

##### It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

##### a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." This introduces a new character in the story.

##### he fell on his face

Here "fell on his face" is an idiom that means to bow down. Alternate translation: "he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

##### if you are willing

"if you want to"

##### you can make me clean

It is understood that he was asking Jesus to heal him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able"

##### make me clean

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "heal me from leprosy so I will be clean"

#### Luke 5:13

##### Be clean

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Be healed"

##### the leprosy left him

"he no longer had leprosy"

#### Luke 5:14

##### He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way

Jesus's instruction can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way"

##### to tell no one

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to not tell anyone that he had been healed"

##### sacrifice for your cleansing

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean, and able to again participate in religious rituals.

##### for a testimony

"as proof of your healing"

##### to them

Possible meanings are 1) "to the priests" or 2) "to all the people."

#### Luke 5:15

##### the report about him

"the news about Jesus." This could mean either "the report about Jesus's healing the man with leprosy" or "the report about Jesus's healing people."

##### the report about him spread even farther

"the report about him went out even farther." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people kept telling the news about him in other places"

#### Luke 5:16

##### the deserted places

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

#### Luke 5:17

##### Connecting Statement:

One day when Jesus was teaching in a building, some men brought a paralyzed man for Jesus to heal.

##### It came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

#### Luke 5:18

##### Now some men came

These are new people in the story. Your language may have a way of showing that these are new people.

##### mat

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

##### was paralyzed

"could not move himself"

#### Luke 5:19

##### They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so

In some languages it might be more natural to reorder this. Alternate translation: "But because of the crowd of people, they could not find a way to bring the man inside. So"

##### because of the crowd

It is clear that the reason they could not enter was that the crowd was so large that there was no room for them.

##### they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

##### right in front of Jesus

"directly in front of Jesus" or "immediately in front of Jesus"

#### Luke 5:20

##### Seeing their faith, Jesus said

It is understood that they believe Jesus can heal the paralyzed man. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him"

##### Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

##### your sins are forgiven you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 5:21

##### question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this." What they questioned can be stated. Alternate translation: "discuss whether or not Jesus had authority to forgive sins"

##### Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This question shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The implied information is that if a person claims to forgive sins he says he is God. This can be written as a clear statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

#### Luke 5:22

##### Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

##### in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings.

#### Luke 5:23

##### Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

##### easier to say

The unspoken implication is that one thing is easier to say because no one will know what has happened, but the other thing is harder to say because everyone will know what has happened. People could not see if the man's sins were forgiven, but they would all know he was healed if he got up and walked.

#### Luke 5:24

##### you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees. The word "you" is plural.

##### the Son of Man

Jesus was referring to himself.

##### I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man. The word "you" is singular.

#### Luke 5:25

##### Immediately he got up

"At once he got up" or "Right away he got up"

##### he got up

It may be helpful to clearly say that he was healed. Alternate translation: "the man was healed! He got up"

#### Luke 5:26

##### filled with fear

"very afraid" or "filled with awe"

##### extraordinary things

"amazing things" or "strange things"

#### Luke 5:27

##### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus leaves the house, he calls Levi, the Jewish tax collector, to follow him.

##### After these things happened

The phrase "these things" refers to what happened in the previous verses. This signals a new event.

##### saw a tax collector

"looked at a tax collector with attention" or "looked carefully at a tax collector"

##### Follow me

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple. Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

#### Luke 5:28

##### followed him, leaving everything behind

"followed him and left his work as a tax collector"

#### Luke 5:29

##### in his house

"in Levi's house"

##### reclining at the table

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "eating together" or "eating at the table"

#### Luke 5:30

##### to his disciples

"to Jesus's disciples"

##### Why do you eat ... sinners?

The Pharisees and scribes ask this question to express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

##### you eat and drink with ... sinners

The Pharisees and scribes believed that religious people should separate themselves from people they consider to be sinners. The word "you" is plural.

#### Luke 5:31

##### Connecting Statement:

At the meal, Jesus speaks with the Pharisees and scribes.

##### People who are well ... sick

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

##### physician

"doctor"

##### only those who are sick

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted. Alternate translation: "only those who are sick need a physician"

#### Luke 5:32

##### I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Phraisees because they think of themselves as righteous. Anyone who wants to follow Jesus has to think of himself as a sinner, not as righteous. Jesus does not mean that he thinks there are righteous people who do not need to repent.

##### the righteous

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "righteous people"

#### Luke 5:33

##### They said to him

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

#### Luke 5:34

##### Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about a situation that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

##### wedding attendants

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

##### the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast

Fasting is a sign of sadness. The religious leaders understood that the wedding attendants would not fast while the bridegroom was with them.

#### Luke 5:35

##### the days will come when

"soon" or "some day"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

Jesus is comparing himself to the bridegroom, and the disciples to the wedding attendants. He does not explain the metaphor, so the translation should explain it only if necessary.

#### Luke 5:36

##### General Information:

Jesus tells a story to the scribes and pharisees who were at Levi's house.

##### No one tears ... uses it ... he ... he

"No one rips ... uses it ... he ... he" or "People never tear ... use it ... they ... they"

##### mend

repair

##### will not fit with

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

#### Luke 5:37

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "bags made of skin."

##### the new wine will burst the skins

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out. Jesus's audience would have understood how wine expands when it ferments.

##### the wine will be spilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the wine will spill out of the bags"

#### Luke 5:38

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to new wineskins, unused.

#### Luke 5:39

##### drinking old wine ... wants the new

This metaphor contrasts the old teaching of the religious leaders against the new teaching of Jesus. The point is that people who are used to the old teaching are not willing to listen to the new things that Jesus is teaching.

##### for he says, 'The old is better.'

It may be helpful to add the implicit information. Alternate translation: "for he says, 'The old is better,' and he is therefore not willing to try the new wine."

## Chapter 6

# Luke 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Luke 6:20-49 contains many blessings and woes that appear to correspond to Matthew 5-7. This part of Matthew has traditionally been called the "Sermon on the Mount." In Luke, they are not as connected to a teaching on the kingdom of God as they are in Matthew's gospel. (See: kingdomofgod)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Eating the grain"

When the disciples plucked and ate the grain in a field they were walking through on the Sabbath ([Luke 6:1](../../luk/06/01.md)), the Pharisees said that they were breaking the law of Moses. The Pharisees said that the disciples were doing work by picking the grain and so disobeying God's command to rest and not work on the Sabbath.

The Pharisees did not think the disciples were stealing. That is because the law of Moses required farmers to allow travelers to pluck and eat small amounts of grain from plants in fields they traveled through or near. (See: lawofmoses and works and sabbath)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. Jesus used a metaphor of a generous grain merchant to teach his people to be generous

#### Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are questions to which the speaker already knows the answer. The Pharisees scolded Jesus by asking him a rhetorical question when they thought he was breaking the Sabbath

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Luke wrote that the disciples were rubbing the heads of grain between their hands, he expected his reader to know that they were separating the part they would eat from what they would throw away

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

#### Luke 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are walking through grainfields, some Pharisees begin to question the disciples about what they are doing on the Sabbath, which, in God's law, has been set aside for God.

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you can consider using it here.

##### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

##### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. It holds the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

##### grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating

They did this to separate the grain seeds. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "grain. They rubbed them in their hands to separate the grains from the husks and ate"

#### Luke 6:2

##### General Information:

The word "you" here is plural, and refers to the disciples.

##### Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

They asked this question to accuse the disciples of breaking the law. It can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Picking grain on the Sabbath is against God's law!"

##### doing something

The Pharisees considered even the small action of rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "doing work"

#### Luke 6:3

##### Have you not even read ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read ... him!" or "Certainly you have read ... him!"

#### Luke 6:4

##### the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of Yahweh's presence" or "the bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread"

#### Luke 6:5

##### The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

##### is Lord of the Sabbath

The title "Lord" here emphasizes his authority over the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath!"

#### Luke 6:6

##### General Information:

It is now another Sabbath day and Jesus is in the synagogue.

##### Connecting Statement:

The scribes and Pharisees watch as Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath.

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### A man was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

##### hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It was probably almost bent into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

#### Luke 6:7

##### were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

##### so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

#### Luke 6:8

##### in the middle of everyone

"in front of everyone." Jesus wanted the man to stand where everyone there could see him.

#### Luke 6:9

##### to them

"to the Pharisees"

##### I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?

Jesus asks this question to force the Pharisees to admit that he was right to heal on the Sabbath. The intent of the question is thus rhetorical: to get them to admit what they all know is true rather than to obtain information. However, Jesus says, "I ask you," so this question is not like other rhetorical questions that might need to be translated as statements. This should be translated as a question.

##### to do good or to do harm

"to help someone or to harm someone"

#### Luke 6:10

##### Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

##### restored

healed

#### Luke 6:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 6:12

##### General Information:

Jesus chooses twelve apostles after he prays all night.

##### It happened in those days

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### in those days

"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

##### he went out

"Jesus went out"

#### Luke 6:13

##### When it was day

"When it was morning" or "The next day"

##### he chose twelve of them

"he chose twelve of the disciples"

##### whom he also named apostles

"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

#### Luke 6:14

##### The names of the apostles were

Luke wrote a list of the names of the apostles. The ULB uses these words to introduce the list.

##### his brother Andrew

"Simon's brother, Andrew"

#### Luke 6:15

##### the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that indicates he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that indicates he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

#### Luke 6:16

##### became a traitor

It may be necessary to explain what "traitor" means in this context. Alternate translation: "betrayed his friend" or "turned his friend over to enemies"

#### Luke 6:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Though Jesus especially addresses his disciples, there are many people around who listen.

##### with them

"with the twelve he had chosen" or "with his twelve apostles"

#### Luke 6:18

##### to be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Jesus to heal them"

##### People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits"

##### troubled with unclean spirits

"bothered by unclean spirits" or "controlled by evil spirits"

#### Luke 6:19

##### power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

#### Luke 6:20

##### Blessed are you

Jesus speaks this phrase three times. Each time, it indicates that God gives favor to certain people or that their situation is positive or good.

##### Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

##### for yours is the kingdom of God

Languages that do not have a word for kingdom might say, "for God is your king" or "because God is your ruler."

##### yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you." This could mean 1) "you belong to God's kingdom" or 2) "you will have authority in God's kingdom."

#### Luke 6:21

##### you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

#### Luke 6:22

##### Blessed are you

"You receive God's favor" or "You benefit" or "How good it is for you"

##### exclude you

"reject you"

##### because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject the Son of Man"

#### Luke 6:23

##### in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

##### leap for joy

This idiom means "be extremely joyful"

##### a great reward

"a large payment" or "good gifts"

#### Luke 6:24

##### woe to you

"how terrible it is for you." Jesus speaks this phrase three times. It is the opposite of "blessed are you." Each time, it indicates that God's anger is directed at the people, or that something negative or bad awaits them.

##### woe to you who are rich

"how terrible it is for you who are rich" or "trouble will come to you who are rich"

##### your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

#### Luke 6:25

##### who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now" or "who eat much now"

##### who laugh now

"who are happy now"

#### Luke 6:26

##### Woe to you

"How terrible it is for you" or "How sad you should be"

##### when all men speak

Here "men" is used in the generic sense the includes all people. Alternate translation: "when all people speak" or "when everyone speaks"

##### that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

#### Luke 6:27

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples and the crowd who is listening to him as well.

##### to you who are listening

Jesus now begins to speak to the entire crowd, rather than just to his disciples.

##### love ... do good

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

##### love your enemies and

This does not mean those listening were to only love their enemies and not their friends. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "love your enemies, not only your friends, and"

#### Luke 6:28

##### Bless ... pray

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

##### Bless those

God is the one who blesses. This can made explicit. Alternate translation: "Ask God to bless those"

##### those who curse you

"those who habitually curse you"

##### those who mistreat you

"those who habitually mistreat you"

#### Luke 6:29

##### To him who strikes you

"If anyone hits you"

##### on the one cheek

"on one side of your face"

##### offer him also the other

It may be helpful to state what the attacker will do to the person. Alternate translation: "turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also"

##### do not withhold

"do not prevent him from taking"

#### Luke 6:30

##### Give to everyone who asks you

"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

##### do not ask him to give

"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

#### Luke 6:31

##### As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them

In some languages it may be more natural to reverse the order. Alternate translation: "You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people they way you want them to treat you"

#### Luke 6:32

##### what reward is there for you?

"what reward will you receive?" or "what praise will you receive for doing that?" This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that." or "God will not reward you for that."

#### Luke 6:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 6:34

##### people from whom you hope to be repaid

Here the word "hope" means to confidently expect that what one desires will happen. The person who hopes in this way believes that what he desires will happen. The verb "to be repaid" can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "people whom you expect will repay you" or "people whom you believe will repay you"

##### to receive back the same amount

The law of Moses commanded the Jews not to receive interest on money they loaned to other Jews.

#### Luke 6:35

##### expecting nothing in return

"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

##### your reward will be great

"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

##### you will be sons of the Most High

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

##### sons of the Most High

Make sure that the word "sons" is plural so it is not confused with Jesus's title "The Son of the Most High."

##### unthankful and evil people

"people who do not thank him and who are evil"

#### Luke 6:36

##### your Father

This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 6:37

##### Do not judge

"Do not judge people" or "Do not harshly criticize people"

##### and you

"and as a result you"

##### you will not be judged

Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

##### Do not condemn

"Do not condemn people"

##### you will not be condemned

Jesus does not say who will not condemn. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not condemn you" or 2) "no one will condemn you"

##### you will be forgiven

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

#### Luke 6:38

##### it will be given to you

Jesus does not say exactly who will give. Possible meanings are 1) "someone will give it to you" or 2) "God will give it to you"

##### A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap

Jesus speaks either of God or of people giving generously as if he were speaking of a generous grain merchant. Alternate translation: "God will pour into your lap a generous amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over" or "Like a generous grain merchant who presses down the grain and shakes it together and pours in so much grain that it spills over, they will give generously to you"

##### A good amount

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

##### it will be measured back to you

Jesus does not say exactly who will measure. Possible meanings are 1) "they will measure things back to you" or 2) "God will measure things back to you"

#### Luke 6:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus includes some examples to make his point.

##### Can a blind person guide another blind person?

Jesus used this question to get the people to think about something that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We all know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

##### blind person

The person who is "blind" is a metaphor for a person who has not been taught as a disciple.

##### If he did

Some languages might prefer, "if one did."

##### they would both fall into a pit, would they not?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "both of them would fall into a hole."

#### Luke 6:40

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple does not surpass his teacher." Possible meanings are 1) "A disciple does not have more knowledge than his teacher" or 2) "A disciple does not have more authority than his teacher."

##### everyone when he is fully trained

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every disciple whose teacher has fully taught him"

#### Luke 6:41

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

##### do not notice the log that is in your own eye

"do not notice that you have a log in your own eye"

##### the log that is in your own eye

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

##### log

"beam" or "plank"

#### Luke 6:42

##### How can you say ... eye?

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... eye."

#### Luke 6:43

##### General Information:

People can tell if a tree is good or bad, and what type of tree it is, by the fruit it produces. Jesus uses this as an unexplained metaphor—we know what kind of person someone is when we see his actions.

##### For there is

"This is because there is." This indicates that what follows is the reason why we should not judge our brother.

##### good tree

"healthy tree"

##### rotten fruit

fruit that is decaying or bad or worthless

#### Luke 6:44

##### each tree is known

People recognize the kind of tree by the fruit it bears. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people know the type of a tree" or "people recognize a tree"

##### thornbush

a plant or shrub that has thorns

##### briar bush

a vine or shrub that has thorns

#### Luke 6:45

##### General Information:

Jesus compares the thoughts of a person to his good or evil treasure. When a good person has good thoughts, he engages in good actions. When an evil person thinks evil thoughts, he engages in evil actions.

##### The good man

The word "good" here means righteous or moral.

##### good man

The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female. Alternate translation: "good person"

##### the good treasure of his heart

Here the good thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were treasures stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the good things he values very intensely"

##### produces what is good

Producing what is good is a metaphor for doing what is good. Alternate translation: "does what is good"

##### the evil treasure of his heart

Here the evil thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were evil things stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the evil things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the evil things he values very intensely"

##### out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks

Here "heart" represents the person's mind or inner being. The phrase "his mouth" represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth" or "a person will speak aloud what truly values inside of himself"

#### Luke 6:46

##### Lord, Lord

Here the repetition of these words is used as an exclamation. People repeat a name or title in this way when trying to find someone or to get someone's attention.

#### Luke 6:47

##### General Information:

In verse 47-48 Jesus compares the person who obeys his teaching to a man who builds a house on rock where it will be safe from floods.

##### Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like

It may be clearer to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

#### Luke 6:48

##### dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock

"dug down deep into the ground until he found a large, solid rock. Then he built his house on that rock so that it would be strong and stable." Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a house and may need to use another image for a stable foundation.

##### torrent of water

"fast-moving water" or "river"

##### flowed against

"crashed against"

##### shake it

Possible meanings are 1) "cause it to shake" or 2) "destroy it."

##### because it had been well built

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the man had built it well"

#### Luke 6:49

##### General Information:

Jesus compares the person who hears but does not obey his teaching to a man who builds a house that has no foundation and so will collapse when the flood comes.

##### But the person

"But" shows a strong contrast to the previous person who built with a foundation.

##### on top of the ground without a foundation

Some cultures may not know that a house with a foundation is stronger. Additional information may be helpful. Alternate translation: "but he did not dig down and build first a foundation"

##### torrent of water

"fast-moving water" or "river"

##### flowed against

"crashed against"

##### collapsed

fell down or came apart

##### the ruin of that house was complete

"that house was completely destroyed"

## Chapter 7

# Luke 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 7:27.

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Centurion

The centurion who asked Jesus to heal his slave ([Luke 7:2](../../luk/07/02.md) was doing many unusual things. A Roman soldier would almost never go to a Jew for anything, and most wealthy people did not love or care for their slaves. (See: centurion and faith)

#### John's Baptism

John baptized people to show that those he was baptizing knew they were sinners and were sorry for their sin. (See: repent and sin)

#### "Sinners"

Luke refers to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders considered these people to be hopelessly ignorant of the law of Moses, and so called them "sinners." In reality, the leaders were sinful. This situation can be taken as irony.

#### "Feet"

The feet of the people in the ancient Near East were very dirty because they wore sandals and the roads and trails were dusty and muddy. Only slaves washed other people's feet. The woman who washed Jesus's feet was showing him great honor.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### Luke 7:1

##### General Information:

Jesus enters Capernaum, where he heals a centurion's servant.

##### in the hearing of the people

The idiom "in the hearing" emphasizes that he wanted them to hear what he said. Alternate translation: "to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were present" or "for the people to hear"

##### he entered Capernaum

This begins a new event in the story.

#### Luke 7:2

##### who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

#### Luke 7:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 7:4

##### asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

##### He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

#### Luke 7:5

##### our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

#### Luke 7:6

##### continued on his way

"went along"

##### not far from the house

"near the house"

##### do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

##### come under my roof

This phrase is an idiom that means "come into my house." If your language has an idiom that means "come into my house," think about whether it would be good to use here.

#### Luke 7:7

##### just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Here "word" refers to a command. Alternate translation: "just give the order"

##### my servant will be healed

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young or show the centurion's affection for him.

#### Luke 7:8

##### I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

##### under me

"under my authority"

##### to my servant

The word that is translated here as "servant" is the typical word for a servant.

#### Luke 7:9

##### he was amazed at him

"he was amazed at the centurion"

##### I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

##### not even in Israel have I found such faith.

The implication is that Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. You may need to add this implied information. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

#### Luke 7:10

##### those who had been sent

It is understood that these were the people the centurion sent. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

#### Luke 7:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus goes to the city of Nain, where he heals a man who had died.

##### Nain

This is the name of a city.

#### Luke 7:12

##### behold, a man who had died

The word "behold" alerts us to the introduction of the dead man into the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a dead man who"

##### a man who had died was being carried out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

##### carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd." This is background information about the dead man and his mother.

##### widow

a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried

#### Luke 7:13

##### was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

#### Luke 7:14

##### he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

##### the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed used to move the body to the burial place. It did not have to be something in which the body was buried. Other translations may have the less common "bier" or "funeral couch."

##### I say to you, arise

Jesus says this to emphasize that the young man needs to obey him. "Listen to me! Arise"

#### Luke 7:15

##### The dead man

The man was not still dead; he was now alive. It may be necessary to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

#### Luke 7:16

##### Connecting Statement:

This tells what happens as a result of Jesus healing the man who had died.

##### fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they all became very afraid"

##### A great prophet has been raised among us

They were referring to Jesus, not to some unidentified prophet. "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to become." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has caused one of us to become a great prophet"

##### looked upon

This idiom means "cared for"

#### Luke 7:17

##### This news about Jesus spread

"This news" refers to the things people were saying in verse 16. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People spread this report about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

##### This news

"This report" or "This message"

#### Luke 7:18

##### John's disciples told him about all these things

This introduces a new event in the story.

##### told him

"told John"

##### all these things

"all the things Jesus was doing"

#### Luke 7:19

##### Connecting Statement:

John sends two of his disciples to question Jesus.

#### Luke 7:20

##### the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be rewritten so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

#### Luke 7:21

##### In that hour

"At that time"

##### from evil spirits

It may be helpful to restate the healing. Alternate translation: "he healed them from evil spirits" or "he set people free from evil spirits"

#### Luke 7:22

##### said to them

"said to John's messengers" or "said to the messengers that John sent"

##### report to John

"tell John"

##### people who have died are being raised back to life

"dead people are being caused to live again"

##### the poor

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "poor people"

#### Luke 7:23

##### The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

##### The person who does not ... is blessed

"People who do not ... are blessed" or "Anyone who does not ... is blessed" or "Whoever does not ... is blessed." This is not a specific person.

##### does not stop believing in me because of

"continues to believe in me despite"

##### believing in me

"trusting me completely"

#### Luke 7:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks rhetorical questions to lead them to think about what John the Baptist is really like.

##### What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

##### A reed shaken by the wind

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) a person who easily changes his mind, as reeds are easily moved by the wind, or 2) a person who talks a lot but does not say anything important, as reeds rattle when the wind blows.

#### Luke 7:25

##### But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?

This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

##### dressed in soft clothes

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing expensive clothing"

##### kings' palaces

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

#### Luke 7:26

##### But what did you go out to see? A prophet?

This expects a positive answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a prophet? Of course you did!" or "But you actually went out to see a prophet!"

##### Yes, I say to you

Jesus says this to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

##### more than a prophet

This phrase means that John was indeed a prophet, but that he was even greater than a typical prophet. Alternate translation: "not just an ordinary prophet" or "much more important than a normal prophet"

#### Luke 7:27

##### This is he of whom it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John is the one the prophets wrote about long ago"

##### See, I am sending

In this verse, Jesus is quoting the prophet Malachi and saying that John is the messenger of which Malachi spoke.

##### before your face

This idiom means "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

##### your

The word "your" is singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

#### Luke 7:28

##### I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" is plural. Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the truth of the surprising thing he is about to say next.

##### among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This is a metaphor that refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

##### none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

##### the one who is least in the kingdom of God

This refers to anyone who is part of the kingdom that God will establish.

##### is greater than he is

The spiritual state of people in the kingdom of God will be higher than that of the people before the kingdom was established. Alternate translation: "has higher spiritual status than John"

#### Luke 7:29

##### General Information:

Luke, the author of this book, comments on how people responds to John and Jesus.

##### When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This verse could be reordered to be more clear. Alternate translation: "When all the people who had been baptized by John, including the tax collectors, heard this, they declared that God is righteous"

##### they declared that God is righteous

"they said that God had shown himself to be righteous" or "they declared that God had acted righteously"

##### because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

#### Luke 7:30

##### rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

##### they had not been baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

#### Luke 7:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

##### To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

##### I compare ... What are they like

These are two ways of saying that this is a comparison.

##### the people of this generation

The people living when Jesus spoke.

#### Luke 7:32

##### They are like

These words are the beginning of Jesus's comparison. Jesus is saying that the people are like children who are never satisfied with the way other children act.

##### marketplace

a large, open-air area where people come to sell their goods

##### and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

##### and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

#### Luke 7:33

##### eating no bread

Possible meanings are 1) "frequently fasting" or 2) "not eating normal food."

##### you say, 'He has a demon.'

Jesus was quoting what people were saying about John. This can be stated without the direct quote. Alternate translation: "you say that he has a demon." or "you accuse him of having a demon."

#### Luke 7:34

##### The Son of Man came

Jesus expected the people to understand that he was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

##### you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

This can be translated as an indirect quote. If you translated "The Son of Man" as "I, the Son of man," you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: "you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

##### he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

##### a drunkard

"a drunk" or "he continually drinks too much alcohol"

#### Luke 7:35

##### wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

#### Luke 7:36

##### General Information:

It was a custom in that time for onlookers to attend dinners without eating.

##### Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

##### Now one of the Pharisees

The marks the beginning of a new part of the story and introduces the Pharisee into the story.

##### reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table for the meal." It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

#### Luke 7:37

##### Behold, there was a woman

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life." She may have been a prostitute.

##### an alabaster jar

"a jar made of soft stone." Alabaster is a soft, white rock. People stored precious things in alabaster jars.

##### of perfumed oil

"with perfume in it." The oil had something in it that made it smell nice. People rubbed it on themselves or sprinkled their clothing with it in order to smell nice.

#### Luke 7:38

##### anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

#### Luke 7:39

##### he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

##### If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him. Alternate translation: "Apparently Jesus is not a prophet, because a prophet would know that this woman who is touching him is a sinner"

##### that she is a sinner

Simon assumed that a prophet would never allow a sinner to touch him. This part of his assumption can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that she is a sinner, and he would not allow her to touch him"

#### Luke 7:40

##### Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

#### Luke 7:41

##### General Information:

To emphasize what he is going to tell Simon the Pharisee, Jesus tells him a story.

##### A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

##### five hundred denarii ... fifty

"500 days' wages ... 50." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius." A "denarius" was a silver coin.

##### the other fifty

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the other debtor owed fifty denarii" or "the other debtor owed 50 days' wages"

#### Luke 7:42

##### he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

#### Luke 7:43

##### I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

##### You have judged correctly

"You are right"

#### Luke 7:44

##### Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

##### You gave me no water for my feet

It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

##### You ... but she

Jesus twice uses these phrases to contrast Simon's lack of courtesy with the woman's extreme actions of gratitude.

##### she has wet my feet with her tears

The woman used her tears in place of the missing water.

##### wiped them with her hair

The woman used her hair in place of the missing towel.

#### Luke 7:45

##### You did not give me a kiss

A good host in that culture would greet his guest with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

##### did not stop kissing my feet

"has continued to kiss my feet"

##### kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

#### Luke 7:46

##### You did not ... but she

Jesus continues to contrast Simon's poor hospitality with the actions of the woman.

##### anoint my head with oil

"put oil on my head." This was the custom to welcome an honored guest. Alternate translation: "welcome me by anointing my head with oil"

##### anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

#### Luke 7:47

##### I say to you

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

##### her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has forgiven her many sins"

##### for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her" or "for she loves God very much"

##### the one who is forgiven little

"anyone who is forgiven only a few things." In this sentence Jesus states a general principle. However, he expected Simon to understand that he showed very little love for Jesus.

#### Luke 7:48

##### Then he said to her

"Then he said to the woman"

##### Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 7:49

##### reclining together

"reclining together around the table" or "eating together"

##### Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins and did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably intended to be an accusation. Alternate translation: "Who does this man think he is? Only God can forgive sins!" or "Why is this man pretending to be God, who alone can forgive sins?"

#### Luke 7:50

##### Your faith has saved you

"Because of your faith, you are saved." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "Because you believe, you are saved"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

## Chapter 8

# Luke 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Miracles

Jesus made a storm stop by speaking to it, he made a dead girl alive by speaking to her, and he made evil spirits leave a man by speaking to them. (See: miracle)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Luke 8:4-15](./04.md)).

#### Luke 8:1

##### General Information:

These verses give background information about Jesus's preaching while traveling.

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

#### Luke 8:2

##### who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

##### Mary

One of the "certain women."

##### Mary who was called Magdalene ... seven demons had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, whom people called Magdalene ... Jesus had driven out seven demons"

#### Luke 8:3

##### Joanna ... Susanna

Two of the "certain women"

##### Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager. "Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza"

##### provided for their needs

"financially supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

#### Luke 8:4

##### General Information:

Jesus tells the parable of the soils to the crowd. He explains its meaning to his disciples in 8:11:15.

##### coming to him

"coming to Jesus"

#### Luke 8:5

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

##### some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

##### it was trampled underfoot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

##### birds of the sky

This idiom can be translated simply as "birds" or as "birds flew down and" to keep the sense of "sky."

##### devoured it

"ate it all" or "ate them all"

#### Luke 8:6

##### it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

##### it had no moisture

"it was too dry" or "they were too dry." The cause can also be stated. Alternate translation: "the ground was too dry"

#### Luke 8:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable to the crowd.

##### choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

#### Luke 8:8

##### produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

##### a hundred times greater

This means a hundred times more than the seeds that were sown.

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" or "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Luke 8:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 8:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to his disciples.

##### The knowledge of ... God has been given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has given to you the knowledge of ... God" or "God has made you able to understand ... God"

##### the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but that Jesus is now revealing them.

##### for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

##### seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

##### hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth"

#### Luke 8:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parable that he told in [Luke 8:5-8](./05.md).

##### The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

#### Luke 8:12

##### The ones along the road are those

"The seeds that fell along the path are those." Jesus tells what happens to the seeds as it relates to people. Alternate translation: "The seeds that fell along the road represent people" or "In the parable, the seeds that fell along the road represent people"

##### are those who

Jesus speaks of the seeds showing something about people as if the seeds were the people. Alternate translation: "show what happens to people who"

##### the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their inner thoughts"

##### takes away

In the parable this was a metaphor of a bird snatching away the seeds. Try to use words in your language that keep that image.

##### hearts so they may not believe and be saved.

This is the devil's purpose. Alternate translation: "hearts because the devil thinks, 'They must not believe and they must not be saved.'" or "hearts so it will not be that they believe and God saves them."

#### Luke 8:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 8:14

##### The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people" or "In the parable the seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

##### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

##### cares

things that people worry about

##### pleasures of this life

"the things in this life that people enjoy"

##### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature

This metaphor refers to the way weeds cut off light and nutrients from plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares, riches, and pleasures of this life keep these people from becoming mature"

##### their fruit does not mature

"they do not bear ripe fruit." Mature fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "so like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

#### Luke 8:15

##### the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people" or "in the parable the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

##### hearing the word

"hearing the message"

##### with an honest and good heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "with an honest and good desire"

##### bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort." Fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

#### Luke 8:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

##### No one

This marks the beginning of another parable.

#### Luke 8:17

##### nothing is hidden that will not be made known

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "everything that is hidden will be made known"

##### nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

#### Luke 8:18

##### to the one who has, more will be given to him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

##### the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever does not have understanding will lose even what understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

#### Luke 8:19

##### brothers

These were Jesus's younger brothers—the sons of Mary and Joseph who were born after Jesus. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was Joseph, they were technically his half-brothers. This detail is not normally translated.

#### Luke 8:20

##### He was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People told him" or "Someone told him"

##### wanting to see you

"and they want to see you"

#### Luke 8:21

##### My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

This metaphor expresses that the people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

##### the word of God

"the message God has spoken"

#### Luke 8:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples use a boat to cross Lake Genneseret. The disciples learn more about Jesus's power through the storm that arises.

##### the lake

This is the lake of Genneseret, which is also called the Sea of Galilee.

##### They set sail

This expression means they began to travel across the lake in their sailboat.

#### Luke 8:23

##### as they sailed

"as they went"

##### fell asleep

"began to sleep"

##### A terrible windstorm came down

"A storm of very strong winds began" or "Very strong winds suddenly began to blow"

##### their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves which pushed water over the sides of the boat. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the winds caused high waves that started to fill up their boat with water"

#### Luke 8:24

##### rebuked

spoke sharply to

##### the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

##### they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

#### Luke 8:25

##### Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

##### Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

#### Luke 8:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples come ashore at Gerasa, where Jesus removes many demons from a man.

##### the region of the Gerasenes

Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

##### across the lake from Galilee

"on the other side of the lake from Galilee"

#### Luke 8:27

##### a certain man from the city

"a man from the city of Gerasa"

##### a certain man from the city who had demons

The man had demons; it was not the city that had demons. Alternate translation: "a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

##### who had demons

"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

##### For a long time he had worn no clothes ... but among the tombs

This is background information about the man who had demons.

##### he had worn no clothes

"he had not worn clothes"

##### tombs

These are places where people put dead bodies, possibly caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

#### Luke 8:28

##### When he saw Jesus

"When the man who had the demon saw Jesus"

##### he cried out

"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

##### fell down before him

"lay down on the ground before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

##### he said with a loud voice

"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

##### What have you to do with me

This idiom means "Why are you bothering me?"

##### Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:29

##### many times it had seized him

"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

##### though he was bound ... and kept under guard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

##### he would be driven by the demon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the demon would make him go"

#### Luke 8:30

##### Legion

Translate this with a word that refers to a large number of soldiers or people. Some other translations say "Army." Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade"

#### Luke 8:31

##### kept begging him

"kept begging Jesus"

#### Luke 8:32

##### Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside

This is supplied as background information to introduce the pigs.

##### was there feeding on the hillside

"was nearby eating grass on a hill"

#### Luke 8:33

##### So the demons came out

The word "so" is used here to explain that the reason the demons came of out the man was because Jesus had told them that they could go into the pigs.

##### rushed

ran very fast

##### the herd ... was drowned

"the herd ... drowned." No one caused the pigs to drown once they were in the water.

#### Luke 8:34

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 8:35

##### found the man from whom the demons had gone out

"saw the man whom the demons had left"

##### in his right mind

"sane" or "behaving normally"

##### sitting at the feet of Jesus

"sitting at the feet" here is an idiom that means "sitting humbly nearby" or "sitting in front of." Alternate translation: "sitting on the ground in front of Jesus"

##### they were afraid

It may be helpful to state explicitly that they were afraid of Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of Jesus"

#### Luke 8:36

##### those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

##### the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

#### Luke 8:37

##### the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26 Luke 8:26

##### they were overwhelmed with great fear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were very afraid"

##### and returned

This is not the last thing that Jesus did in that place, so this can also be stated as "in order to return" or "to go back."

##### returned

The destination can be stated. Alternate translation: "returned across the lake"

#### Luke 8:38

##### The man

The events in these verses happened before Jesus left in the boat. It may be helpful to state this clearly at the beginning. Alternate translation: "Before Jesus and his disciples left, the man" or "Before Jesus and his disciples set sail, the man"

#### Luke 8:39

##### your home

"your household" or "your family"

##### give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

#### Luke 8:40

##### Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples return to Galilee on the other side of the lake, he heals the 12-year-old daughter of the ruler of the synagogue as well as a woman who has been bleeding for 12 years (8:43-48).

##### the crowd welcomed him

"the crowd joyfully greeted him"

#### Luke 8:41

##### one of the leaders of the synagogue

"one of the leaders at the local synagogue" or "a leader of the people who met at the synagogue in that city"

##### fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:42

##### was dying

"was about to die"

##### As Jesus was on his way

Some translators may need to first say that Jesus had agreed to go with Jairus. Alternate translation: "So Jesus agreed to go with him. As he was on his way"

##### the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

#### Luke 8:43

##### a woman was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

##### had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### and could not be healed by anyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but no one could heal her"

#### Luke 8:44

##### touched the edge of his coat

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes as a part of their ceremonial dress as commanded in God's Law. This is likely what she touched.

#### Luke 8:45

##### the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you

By saying this, Peter was implying that anyone could have touched Jesus. This implicit information can be made explicit if necessary. Alternate translation: "there are many people crowding around you and pressing in against you, so any one of them might have touched you"

#### Luke 8:46

##### Someone did touch me

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional "touch" from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

##### I know that power has gone out from me

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I felt my power heal someone"

#### Luke 8:47

##### that she could not escape notice

"that she could not keep secret what she had done." It may be helpful to state what she did. Alternate translation: "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

##### she came trembling

"she came trembling with fear"

##### fell down before him

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

##### In the presence of all the people

"In the sight of all the people"

#### Luke 8:48

##### Daughter

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

##### your faith has made you well

"because of your faith, you have become well." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "because you believe, you are healed"

##### Go in peace

This idiom is a way of saying, "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

#### Luke 8:49

##### While he was still speaking

"While Jesus was still speaking to the woman"

##### synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

##### Do not trouble the teacher

This statement implies that Jesus will not be able to do anything to help now that the girl is dead.

##### the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Luke 8:50

##### she will be healed

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

#### Luke 8:51

##### When he came to the house

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

##### he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter ... mother

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom Jesus allowed to enter. This could be stated positively. Alternate translation: "he allowed only Peter ... mother to enter with him"

##### the father of the child

This refers to Jairus.

#### Luke 8:52

##### all were mourning and wailing for her

This was the normal way of showing grief in that culture. Alternate translation: "all the people there were showing how sad they were and crying loudly because the girl had died"

#### Luke 8:53

##### began to mock him, knowing that she

"laughed at him because they knew the girl"

#### Luke 8:54

##### he took her by the hand

"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

#### Luke 8:55

##### Her spirit returned

"Her spirit returned to her body." The Jews understood that life was the result of the spirit coming into a person. Alternate translation: "She started breathing again" or "She came back to life" or "She became alive again"

#### Luke 8:56

##### to tell no one

This could be stated differently. Alternate translation: "not to tell anyone"

## Chapter 9

# Luke 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "To preach the kingdom of God"

No one knows for sure what the words "kingdom of God" here refer to. Some say it refers to the reign of God on earth, and others say it refers to the gospel message that Jesus died to pay for his people's sins. It is best to translate this as "to preach about the kingdom of God" or "to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king."

#### Elijah

God had promised the Jews that the prophet Elijah would return before the Messiah came, so some people who saw Jesus do miracles thought Jesus was Elijah ([Luke 9:9](../../luk/09/09.md), [Luke 9:19](../../luk/09/19.md)). However, Elijah did come to earth to speak with Jesus ([Luke 9:30](../../luk/09/30.md)). (See: prophet and christ and elijah)

#### "Kingdom of God"

The term "kingdom of God" is used in this chapter to refer to a kingdom that was still in the future when the words were spoken. (See: kingdomofgod)

#### Glory

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Luke says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. An example in this chapter is: "Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it." ([Luke 9:24](../../luk/09/24.md)).

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### "Receiving"

This word appears several times in this chapter and means different things. When Jesus says, "If someone receives a little child like this in my name, he also is receiving me, and if someone receives me, he is also receiving the one who sent me" ([Luke 9:48](../../luk/09/48.md)), he is speaking of people serving the child. When Luke says, "the people there did not receive him" ([Luke 9:53](../../luk/09/53.md)), he means that the people did not believe in or accept Jesus. (See: believe)

#### Luke 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus reminds his disciples not to depend on money and their things, gives them power, and then sends them out to various places.

##### power and authority

These two terms are used together to show that the twelve had both the ability and the right to heal people. Translate this phrase with a combination of words that include both of these ideas.

##### all demons

Possible meanings are 1) "every demon" or 2) "every kind of demon."

##### diseases

sicknesses

#### Luke 9:2

##### sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

#### Luke 9:3

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve." It may be helpful to state that this happened before they went out. Alternate translation: "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

##### Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

##### staff

large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against attackers

##### wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

##### bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

#### Luke 9:4

##### Whatever house you enter

"Any house you enter"

##### stay there

"remain there" or "temporarily live in that house as a guest"

##### until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

#### Luke 9:5

##### Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where people do not receive you: When you leave"

##### shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

To "shake off the dust from your feet" was an expression of strong rejection in that culture. It showed they did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

#### Luke 9:6

##### they departed

"they left the place were Jesus was"

##### healing everywhere

"healing wherever they went"

#### Luke 9:7

##### General Information:

Verses 7-9 interrupt the story to give information about Herod.

##### Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Herod.

##### Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

##### perplexed

unable to understand, confused

##### it was said by some

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some people said"

#### Luke 9:8

##### still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

The word "said" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

#### Luke 9:9

##### I beheaded John. Who is this

Herod assumes that it is impossible for John to rise from the dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

##### I beheaded John

Herod's soldiers would have carried out executions. Alternate translation: "I commanded my soldiers to cut off John's head"

#### Luke 9:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Though the disciples return to Jesus and they go to Bethsaida to spend time together, the crowds follow Jesus for healing and to listen to his teaching. He performs a miracle to provide bread and fish to the crowds as they return home.

##### apostles returned

"apostles came back to where Jesus was"

##### everything they had done

This refers to the teaching and healing that they did when they went to the other cities.

##### Bethsaida

This is the name of a city.

#### Luke 9:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:12

##### the day was about to come to an end

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day." The end of the day was at sunset. Alternate translation: "it was almost sunset"

##### an isolated place

This was a place far away from where people lived. Alternate translation: "a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

#### Luke 9:13

##### five loaves of bread

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

##### two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people

If "unless" is difficult to understand in your language, you could make a new sentence. "two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

#### Luke 9:14

##### about five thousand men

"about 5,000 men." This number does not include the women and children who might have been present.

##### Have them sit down

"Tell them to sit down"

##### fifty each

"50 each"

#### Luke 9:15

##### So they did this

"This" refers to what Jesus told them to do Luke 9:14. They told the people to sit down in groups of about fifty people.

#### Luke 9:16

##### Taking the five loaves

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

##### up to heaven

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky.

##### he blessed them

This refers to the loaves of bread and the fish.

##### to set before

"to pass out to" or "to give to"

#### Luke 9:17

##### were satisfied

This idiom means they ate enough food so they were not hungry. Alternate translation: "they had as much as they wanted to eat"

#### Luke 9:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus is praying, with only his disciples near him, and they begin to talk about who Jesus is. Jesus tells them that he will soon die and resurrect and urges them to follow him even if it becomes very hard to do that.

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying personally and privately by himself.

#### Luke 9:19

##### John the Baptist

It may be helpful to restate part of the question here. Alternate translation: "The crowds say you are John the Baptist"

##### that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

It may be helpful to clarify how this answer relates to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen"

##### has risen

"has come back to life"

#### Luke 9:20

##### Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Luke 9:21

##### he warned and instructed them

The combination of "warned" and "instructed" is a hendiadys that means "strongly warned" or "strictly instructed." Alternate translation: "he strongly warned them" or he strictly instructed them"

##### them to tell this to no one.

"not to tell anyone." or "that they should not tell anyone." This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "them, 'Do not tell anyone.'"

#### Luke 9:22

##### The Son of Man must suffer many things

"People will cause the Son of Man to suffer greatly"

##### The Son of Man ... and he will

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... and I will"

##### be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

##### he will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will kill him"

##### on the third day

"three days after he dies" or "on the third day after his death"

##### be raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

#### Luke 9:23

##### he said

"Jesus said"

##### to them all

This refers to the disciples who were with Jesus.

##### come after me

Coming after Jesus represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross daily and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me every day." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. To follow Jesus represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "must obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

#### Luke 9:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:25

##### What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

The implied answer to this question is that it is not good. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

##### to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

##### lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

#### Luke 9:26

##### my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

##### of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

##### the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

##### the Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Luke 9:27

##### But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

##### there are some standing here who will not taste death

"some of you who are standing here will not taste death"

##### before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "before you see"

##### will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"Taste death" is an idiom that means "die." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

#### Luke 9:28

##### Connecting Statement:

Eight days after Jesus tells his disciples that some would not die before they saw the kingdom of God, Jesus goes up the mountain to pray with Peter, James, and John, who all fall asleep while Jesus is changed to a dazzling appearance.

##### these words

This refers to what Jesus said to his disciples in the preceding verses.

#### Luke 9:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:30

##### Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

#### Luke 9:31

##### who appeared in glory

This phrase gives information about how Moses and Elijah looked. Some languages would translate it as a separate clause. Alternate translation: "and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

##### his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world." This was a polite way of talking about his death. Alternate translation: "his death"

#### Luke 9:32

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells about Peter, James, and John.

##### heavy with sleep

This idiom means "very sleepy."

##### they saw his glory

This refers to the brilliant light that surrounded them. Alternate translation: "they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

##### the two men who were standing with him

This refers to Moses and Elijah.

#### Luke 9:33

##### As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Luke 9:34

##### As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

##### they were afraid

These adult disciples were not afraid of clouds. This phrase indicates that some kind of unusual fear came over them with the cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

##### they entered into the cloud

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

#### Luke 9:35

##### A voice came out of the cloud

It is understood that the voice could only have belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### the one who is chosen

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "the one I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

#### Luke 9:36

##### They kept silent ... what they had seen

This is information that tells what happened after the story as a result of the events in the story itself.

##### kept silent ... told no one

The first phrase refers to their immediate response, and the second refers to what they did in the following days.

#### Luke 9:37

##### Connecting Statement:

The next day after Jesus's dazzling appearance, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy that the disciples were unable to make better.

#### Luke 9:38

##### Behold, a man from the crowd

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There was a man in the crowd who"

#### Luke 9:39

##### You see, a spirit

The phrase "You see" introduces us to the evil spirit in the man's story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There is an evil spirit that"

##### he foams at the mouth

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

#### Luke 9:40

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:41

##### Jesus answered and said

"Jesus answered by saying"

##### You unbelieving and perverse generation

Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered, and not to his disciples.

##### perverse generation

"corrupt generation"

##### how long must I be with you and put up with you?

Here "you" is plural. Jesus uses these questions to express his sadness that the people do not believe. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

##### Bring your son here

Here "your" is singular. Jesus is speaking directly to the father who addressed him.

#### Luke 9:42

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:43

##### they were all amazed at the greatness of God

Jesus performed the miracle, but the crowd recognized that God was the power behind the healing.

##### everything he was doing

"everything Jesus was doing"

#### Luke 9:44

##### Let these words go deeply into your ears

This is an idiom that means they should pay attention. Alternate translation: "Listen carefully and remember" or "Do not forget this"

##### The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

This can be stated with an active clause. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men"

##### The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. The word "hands" is a synecdoche for the people whose hands they are or a metonym for the power that uses those hands. You may need to make explicit who these men are. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men" or "The Son of Man will be betrayed into the power of his enemies" or "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed to my enemies"

#### Luke 9:45

##### It was hidden from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God hid the meaning from them"

#### Luke 9:46

##### General Information:

The disciples begin to argue about who will be the most powerful among them.

##### among them

"among the disciples"

#### Luke 9:47

##### knowing the reasoning in their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for their minds. Alternate translation: "knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

#### Luke 9:48

##### in my name

This refers to a person doing something as a representative of Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me"

##### in my name welcomes me

This metaphor could also be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "in my name, it is like he is welcoming me"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who sent me"

##### the one who is great

"the one whom God considers to be most important"

#### Luke 9:49

##### John answered

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus." John was responding to what Jesus had said about being the greatest. He was not answering a question.

##### we saw

John speaks of himself but not Jesus, so "we" here is exclusive.

##### in your name

This means the person was speaking with the power and authority of Jesus.

#### Luke 9:50

##### Do not stop him

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Allow him to continue"

##### whoever is not against you is for you

Some modern languages have sayings that mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "if a person does not keep you from working, it is as if he were helping you" or "if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

#### Luke 9:51

##### General Information:

It is now obvious that Jesus has decided to go to Jerusalem.

##### When the days drew near for him to be taken up

Here "be taken up" implies that Jesus will be taken up to heaven. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the time was coming for him to go up heaven" or "When it was almost time for him to leave this world"

##### set his face

This idiom means he "firmly decided." Alternate translation: "made up his mind" or "decided"

#### Luke 9:52

##### to prepare everything for him

This means to make arrangements for his arrival there, possibly including a place to speak, a place to stay, and food.

#### Luke 9:53

##### did not welcome him

"did not want him to stay"

##### because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem

The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other. Therefore the Samaritans would not help Jesus on his journey to Jerusalem, the Jewish capital.

#### Luke 9:54

##### saw this

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

##### command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them

James and John suggested this method of judgment because they knew that this was how the prophets such as Elijah had judged people who rejected God.

#### Luke 9:55

##### he turned and rebuked them

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John." Jesus did not condemn the Samaritans as the disciples expected.

#### Luke 9:56

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 9:57

##### someone

This was not one of the disciples.

#### Luke 9:58

##### Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being Jesus's disciple. Jesus implies that if the man were to follow him, that man too might not have a home. Alternate translation: "Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head. So do not expect that you will have a home"

##### Foxes

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

##### birds in the sky

"birds that fly in the air"

##### the Son of Man has ... his head

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"nowhere to rest my head" or "nowhere to sleep." Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that he has no permanent home and that people did not often invite him to stay with them.

#### Luke 9:59

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk with the people along the road.

##### Follow me

By saying this Jesus is asking the person to become his disciple and to go with him.

##### first let me go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

##### first let me go

"before I do that, let me go"

#### Luke 9:60

##### Leave the dead to bury their own dead

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead" are 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

##### the dead

This refers to dead people in general. Alternate translation: "the dead people"

#### Luke 9:61

##### I will follow you

"I will join you as a disciple" or "I am ready to follow you"

##### first let me say goodbye to those in my home

"before I do that, let me tell my people at my home that I am leaving"

#### Luke 9:62

##### No one ... fit for the kingdom of God

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being his disciple. Jesus means that a person is not suitable for the kingdom to God if he focuses on people in his past instead of following Jesus.

##### No one who puts his hand to the plow

Here "puts his hand to" something is an idiom that means the person starts to do something. Alternate translation: "No one who starts to plow his field"

##### looks back

Anyone who is looking back while plowing cannot guide the plow where it needs to go. That person must focus on looking forward in order to plow well.

##### fit for the kingdom of God

"useful for the kingdom of God" or "suitable for the kingdom of God"

## Chapter 10

# Luke 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Harvest can also refer to the food that is gathered. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: harvest and faith)

#### Neighbor

A neighbor is anyone who lives nearby. The Jews helped their Jewish neighbors who needed help, and they expected their Jewish neighbors to help them. Jesus wanted them to understand that people who were not Jews were also their neighbors, so he told them a parable

#### Luke 10:1

##### General Information:

Jesus sends out 70 more people ahead of him.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### seventy

"70." Some versions say "seventy-two" or "72." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

#### Luke 10:2

##### He said to them

This was before the men actually went out. Alternate translation: "He had said to them" or "Before they went out he told them"

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go teach and help the people.

#### Luke 10:3

##### Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

##### I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill sheep. This metaphor therefore means that there are people who would attempt to harm the disciples that Jesus is sending out. The names of other animals could be substituted. Alternate translation: "when I send you out, people will want to harm you, as wolves attack sheep"

#### Luke 10:4

##### Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals

"Do not take with you a bag, a traveler's bag, or sandals"

##### greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was emphasizing that they should go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

#### Luke 10:5

##### May peace be on this house

This was both a greeting and a blessing. Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

#### Luke 10:6

##### a son of peace

The phrase "son of peace" here is a metaphor for a person who wants peace with God and with people. Alternate translation: "a peaceful person"

##### your peace will rest upon him

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose where to stay. Alternate translation: "he will have the peace you blessed him with"

##### if not

It may be helpful to restate the entire phrase. Alternate translation: "if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

##### it will return to you

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose to leave. Alternate translation: "you will have that peace" or "he will not receive the peace you blessed him with"

#### Luke 10:7

##### Remain in that same house

Jesus was not saying that they should stay in the house all day, but that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

##### for the laborer is worthy of his wages

This is a general principle that Jesus was applying to the men he was sending out. Since they would be teaching and healing the people, the people should provide them with a place to stay and with food.

##### Do not move around from house to house

Moving around from house to house means going to different houses. It can be made clear that he was talking about staying overnight at different houses. "Do not go sleep at a different house each night"

#### Luke 10:8

##### and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

##### eat what is set before you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "eat whatever food they give you"

#### Luke 10:9

##### the sick

This refers to sick people in general. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

##### The kingdom of God has come close to you

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." Possible meanings are 1) the kingdom of God will begin soon. Alternate translation: "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or 2) the activities of kingdom of God are happening all around you. Alternate translation: "The proof that God is reigning is all around you"

#### Luke 10:10

##### and they do not receive you

"and the people of the city reject you"

#### Luke 10:11

##### Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we thoroughly reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

##### we wipe off

Since Jesus was sending these people out in groups of two, it would be two people saying this. So languages that have a dual form of "we" would use it.

##### But know this: The kingdom of God is near

The phrase "But know this" emphasizes the importance of what is said next. Alternate translation: "But be aware that the kingdom of God is near" or "But be sure of this: The kingdom of God is near"

##### The kingdom of God is near

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." See how you translated a similar sentence in [Luke 10:8]

#### Luke 10:12

##### I say to you

Jesus was saying this to the 70 people he was sending out. He said this to show that he was about to say something very important.

##### that day

The disciples would have understood that this refers to the time of final judgment of sinners. Alternate translation: "judgment day"

##### it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"God will not judge Sodom as severely as he will judge that town." Alternate translation: "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

#### Luke 10:13

##### Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida are there listening to him, but they are not.

##### If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past but did not. Alternate translation: "If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

##### they would have repented long ago, sitting

"the wicked people who lived there would have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting"

##### sitting in sackcloth and ashes

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes"

#### Luke 10:14

##### But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you

It may be helpful to clearly state the reason for their judgment. Alternate translation: "But because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles, God will judge you more severely than he will judge the people of Tyre and Sidon"

##### at the judgment

"on that final day when God judges everyone"

#### Luke 10:15

##### You, Capernaum

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they are listening to him, but they are not.

##### do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. The expression "exalted to heaven" means "greately exalted" or "honored." Alternate translation: "you will certainly not go up to heaven!" or "God will not honor you!"

##### you will be brought down to Hades

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

#### Luke 10:16

##### The one who listens to you listens to me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

##### the one who rejects you rejects me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

##### the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting the one who sent me"

##### the one who sent me

This refers to God the Father, who appointed Jesus for this special task. Alternate translation: "God, who sent me"

#### Luke 10:17

##### The seventy returned

Some languages will need to say that the seventy actually went out first, as the UDB does. This is implicit information that can be made explicit.

##### seventy

You may want to add a footnote: "Some versions have '72' instead of '70.'"

##### in your name

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

#### Luke 10:18

##### I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning

Jesus used a simile to compare how God was defeating Satan when his 70 disciples were preaching in the towns to the way lightning strikes.

##### fall from heaven as lightning

Possible meanings are 1) fall as quickly as lighting strikes, or 2) fall down from heaven as lightning strikes downward. Since both meaning are possible, it may be best to keep the image.

#### Luke 10:19

##### authority to tread on serpents and scorpions

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions." Possible meanings are 1) snakes and scorpions are a metaphor for evil spirits. Alternate translation: "the right to defeat evil spirits" or 2) this refers to actual snakes and scorpions.

##### tread on serpents and scorpions

This implies that they would do this and not be injured. Alternate translation: "walk on snakes and scorpions, which will not hurt you,"

##### scorpions

Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail.

##### over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

#### Luke 10:20

##### do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven

"do not rejoice only because the spirits submit to you" can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "rejoice that your names are written in heaven even more than you rejoice that the spirits submit to you"

##### your names are engraved in heaven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of people who are citizens of heaven"

#### Luke 10:21

##### that same hour

"that same time"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### Lord of heaven and earth

The phrase "heaven" and earth" represents everything that exists. Alternate translation: "Master over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

##### these things

This refers to Jesus's previous teaching about the authority of the disciples. It may be best to simply say "these things" and let the reader determine the meaning.

##### the wise and understanding

The words "wise" and "understanding" are nominal adjectives that refer to people with these qualities. Because God had concealed truth from them, these people were not actually wise and understanding, even though they thought they were. Alternate translation: "from people who think they are wise and have understanding"

##### those who are untaught, like little children

This refers to those who may not have much education but who are willing to accept Jesus's teachings in the same way that little children willingly listen to those they trust. Alternate translation: "people who may have little education, but who listen to God as little children do"

##### for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

#### Luke 10:22

##### All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has handed everything over to me"

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### no one knows who the Son is except the Father

This double negative emphasizes that the Father is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

##### knows ... knows

The word that is translated as "knows" means to know from personal experience. God the Father knows Jesus in this way.

##### the Son

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

##### no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

This double negative emphasizes that the Son is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son"

##### those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son desires to show the Father to"

#### Luke 10:23

##### Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately

The word "privately" indicates that he was alone with his disciples. Alternate translation: "Later, when he was alone with his disciples, he turned to them and said"

##### Blessed are those who see the things that you see

This probably refers to the good works and miracles that Jesus was doing. Alternate translation: "How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

#### Luke 10:24

##### and they did not see them

This implies that Jesus was not yet doing those things. Alternate translation: "but they could not see them because I was not doing them yet"

##### the things that you hear

This probably refers to the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "the things that you have heard me say"

##### and they did not hear them

This implies that Jesus was not yet teaching. Alternate translation: "but they could not hear them because I had not yet started to teach"

#### Luke 10:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus replies with a story to a Jewish teacher who wants to test Jesus.

##### Behold, an expert in the law

This alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

##### stood up

This is an idiom that probably here means "began to act." Your language may have a different way of showing that the expert in the law had been present, listening to Jesus, and was now beginning to act. He was not necessarily sitting before he "stood up" and began to speak.

##### test him

"challenge Jesus"

#### Luke 10:26

##### What is written in the law? How do you read it?

Jesus is not seeking information. He uses these questions to test the Jewish teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

##### What is written in the law?

This can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What did Moses write in the law?"

##### How do you read it?

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

#### Luke 10:27

##### You will love ... neighbor as yourself

The man is quoting what Moses wrote in the law.

##### with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind

Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

##### your neighbor as yourself

This simile can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

#### Luke 10:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 10:29

##### But he, desiring to justify himself, said

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

##### Who is my neighbor?

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Whom should I consider to be my neighbor and love as I love myself?" or "Which people are my neighbors that I should love?"

#### Luke 10:30

##### Jesus answered him and said

Jesus answers the man by telling a parable. Alternate translation: "In response, Jesus told him this story"

##### A certain man

This introduces a new character in the parable.

##### He fell among robbers, who

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

##### stripped him of his belongings

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

##### half dead

This idiom means "almost dead."

#### Luke 10:31

##### By chance

This was not something that any person had planned.

##### a certain priest

This expression introduces a new person in the story, but does not identify him by name.

##### and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man." A priest is a very religious person, so the audience would assume that he would help the injured man. Since he did not, this phrase could be stated as "but when he saw him" to call attention to this unexpected result.

##### he passed by on the other side

It is implied that he did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the injured man but instead walked past him on the other side of the road"

#### Luke 10:32

##### a Levite ... the other side

The Levite served in the temple. He would be expected to help his fellow Jewish man. Since he did not, it may are helpful to state that. Alternate translation: "a Levite ... the other side and did not help him"

#### Luke 10:33

##### But a certain Samaritan

This introduces a new person in the story without giving his name. We know only that he was from Samaria.

##### a certain Samaritan

The Jews despised the Samaritans and would have assumed that he would not help the injured Jewish man.

##### When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

##### he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

#### Luke 10:34

##### bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

##### pouring oil and wine on them

Wine was used to clean the wound, and oil was probably used to prevent infection. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "pouring oil and wine on them to help heal them"

##### his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It was probably a donkey.

#### Luke 10:35

##### two denarii

"two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

##### the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

##### whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

This could be reordered. Alternate translation: "when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

#### Luke 10:36

##### Which of these three do you think ... robbers?

This could be written as two questions. Alternate translation: "What do you think? Which of these three men ... robbers?"

##### was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

##### to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

#### Luke 10:37

##### He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

"The expert in the law said, 'The one who showed mercy to him.'"

##### Go and do the same

Here "do the same" refers to showing mercy to others. Alternate translation: "In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help" or "In the same way, go and help everyone you can"

#### Luke 10:38

##### General Information:

Jesus comes to Martha's house, where her sister Mary listens to Jesus with great attention.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event.

##### as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

##### a certain village

This introduces the village as a new location, but does not name it.

##### a certain woman named Martha

This introduces Martha as a new character. Your language may have a way of introducing new people.

#### Luke 10:39

##### sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

##### heard his word

This refers to everything that Jesus taught while at Martha's house. Alternate translation: "listened to the Lord teach"

#### Luke 10:40

##### overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

##### do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. She respects the Lord, so she uses a rhetorical question to make her complaint more polite. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

#### Luke 10:41

##### Martha, Martha

Jesus repeats Martha's name for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Dear Martha" or "You, Martha"

#### Luke 10:42

##### only one thing is necessary

Jesus is contrasting what Mary is doing with what Martha is doing. It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "the only thing that is really necessary is to listen to my teaching" or "listening to my teaching is more necessary than preparing a meal"

##### which will not be taken away from her

Possible meanings are 1) "and I will not take this opportunity away from her" or 2) "and she will not lose what she has gained as she was listening to me"

## Chapter 20

# Luke 20 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 20:17, 42-43, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Using questions to trap people

When Jesus asked the Pharisees who gave John the authority to baptize ([Luke 20:4](../../luk/20/04.md)), they could not answer because any answer they gave would give someone a reason to say that they were wrong ([Luke 20:5-6](./05.md)). They thought that they would be able to say that Jesus was wrong when they asked him if people should pay taxes to Caesar ([Luke 20:22](../../luk/20/22.md)), but Jesus gave them an answer that they had not thought of.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. In this chapter, Jesus quotes a psalm that records David calling his son "Lord," that is, "master." However, to the Jews, ancestors were greater than their descendants. In this passage, Jesus is trying to lead his hearers to the true understanding that the Messiah will himself be divine, and that he himself is the Messiah. ([Luke 20:41-44](./41.md)).

#### Luke 20:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The chief priests, scribes, and elders question Jesus in the temple.

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

#### Luke 20:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 20:3

##### General Information:

Jesus responds to the chief priests, scribes, and elders.

##### He answered and said to them

"Jesus replied"

##### I will also ask you a question, and you tell me

The words "I will ... ask you a question" are a statement. The words "you tell me" are a command.

#### Luke 20:4

##### Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus knows that John's authority comes from heaven, so he is not asking for information. He asks the question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. This question is rhetorical, but you will probably have to translate it as a question. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

##### from heaven

"from God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him.

#### Luke 20:5

##### They reasoned

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

##### with themselves

"among themselves" or "with each other"

##### If we say, 'From heaven,' he

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "If we say that John's authority is from heaven, he"

##### From heaven

"From God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him. See how these words are translated in [Luke 20:4]

##### he will say

"Jesus will say"

#### Luke 20:6

##### if we say, 'From men,'

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "if we say that John's authority is from men,"

##### stone us

"kill us by throwing stones on us." God's Law commanded that his people stone those of his people who mocked him or his prophets.

#### Luke 20:7

##### So they answered

"So the chief priests, scribes and elders answered." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they had reasoned with themselves ([Luke 20:5-6](./05.md)), and they did not have an answer they wanted to say.

##### they answered that they did not know where it came from.

This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

##### where it came from

"where John's baptism came from." Alternate translation: "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

#### Luke 20:8

##### Neither will I tell you

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

#### Luke 20:9

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the temple courtyard.

##### rented it out to vine growers

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

##### vine growers

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

#### Luke 20:10

##### the appointed time

"the time they had agreed to pay him." This would have been at the harvest time.

##### of the fruit of the vineyard

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard." It could also refer to the things they made from grapes or the money they earned by selling the grapes.

##### sent him away empty-handed

An empty hand is a metaphor for "nothing." Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without the grapes"

#### Luke 20:11

##### beat him

"beat that servant"

##### treated him shamefully

"humiliated him"

##### sent him away empty-handed

Having an empty hand is a metaphor for having nothing. Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without any grapes"

#### Luke 20:12

##### yet a third

"even a third servant" or "yet another servant." The word "yet" hints at the fact that the landowner should not have had to send the second servant, but he went beyond that and sent a third servant.

##### wounded him

"injured that servant"

##### threw him out

"threw him out of the vineyard"

#### Luke 20:13

##### What will I do?

This question emphasizes that the vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: "Here is what I will do:"

#### Luke 20:14

##### when the vine growers saw him

"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

##### Let us kill him

They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the heir.

#### Luke 20:15

##### They threw him out of the vineyard

"The vine growers forced the son out of the vineyard"

##### What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?

Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

#### Luke 20:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his parable to the crowd.

##### May it never be

"May it never happen"

#### Luke 20:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

##### But Jesus looked at them

"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

##### What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

##### that which is written

"this scripture"

##### The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone

This is the first of three metaphors in a prophecy from the book of Psalms. This one refers to the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use, but that God made the most important stone.

##### The stone that the builders rejected

"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

##### the builders

This refers to the religious rulers who are rejecting Jesus as Messiah.

##### the cornerstone

"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

#### Luke 20:18

##### Everyone who falls ... broken to pieces

This second metaphor speaks of people who reject the Messiah as if they fall over a stone and are injured.

##### will be broken to pieces

This is a result of falling onto the stone. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will break up into pieces"

##### the one on whom it falls

"the one that stone falls on." This third metaphor speaks about the Messiah judging those who reject him as if he were a large stone that would crush them.

#### Luke 20:19

##### sought to lay hands on him

In this verse, to "lay hands on" someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

##### in that very hour

"immediately"

##### they were afraid of the people

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him. Alternate translation: "they did not arrest him because they were afraid of the people"

#### Luke 20:20

##### they sent out spies

"the scribes and chief priests sent spies to watch Jesus"

##### that they might find fault with his speech

"because they wanted to accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

##### to the rule and to the authority of the governor

"Rule" and "authority" are two ways of saying that they wanted the governor to judge Jesus. It can be translated with one or both expressions. Alternate translation: "so that the governor would punish Jesus"

#### Luke 20:21

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the next event in the story. Some time has passed since Jesus was questioned in the temple by the chief priests. The spies are now questioning Jesus.

##### They asked him

"The spies asked Jesus"

##### Teacher, we know ... way of God

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

##### we know

"we" refers only to the spies.

##### are not partial to anyone

Possible meanings are 1) "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or 2) "you do not favor one person over another"

##### but you teach the truth about the way of God

This is part of what the spies were saying that they knew about Jesus.

#### Luke 20:22

##### Is it lawful ... or not?

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

##### Is it lawful

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

##### Caesar

Because Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government, they could refer to the Roman government by Caesar's name.

#### Luke 20:23

##### But Jesus understood their craftiness

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him." The word "their" refers to the spies.

#### Luke 20:24

##### a denarius

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

##### Whose image and name is on it?

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose image and name do you see on it?"

##### image and name

"picture and name"

#### Luke 20:25

##### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to them"

##### Caesar

Here "Caesar" refers to the Roman government.

##### and to God

The word "give" is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

#### Luke 20:26

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of this event about the spies and the part of the story which began in Luke 20:1.

##### They were not able to find fault with what he had said

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what he said"

##### but marveling at his answer, they were silent

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

#### Luke 20:27

##### General Information:

We do not know where this takes place, though it possibly takes place in the temple courtyard. Jesus is talking with some Sadducees.

##### the ones who say that there is no resurrection

This phrase identifies the Sadducees as being the group of Jews that say that no one would rise from the dead. It does not imply that some Sadducees believed that there is a resurrection and some did not.

#### Luke 20:28

##### if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children"

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

##### raise up children for his brother

The Jews considered the first son born to a woman who married her dead husband's brother as if he were the son of the woman's first husband. This son inherited the property of his mother's first husband and carried on his name.

#### Luke 20:29

##### General Information:

The Sadducees tell Jesus a short story in verses 29-32. This is a story they made up as an example. In verse 33, they ask Jesus a question about the story they told.

##### There were seven brothers

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that they made up to test Jesus.

##### the first

"brother number one" or "the oldest"

##### died childless

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

#### Luke 20:30

##### the second as well

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second married her and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married her and died without having any children"

##### the second

"brother number two" or "the oldest brother who was still alive"

#### Luke 20:31

##### The third took her

"The third married her"

##### The third

"Brother number three" or "The oldest brother who was still alive"

##### and in the same way the seven also left no children and died

The speakers kept the story short by omitting details. Alternate translation: "in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

##### the seven

"all seven of the brothers" or "each of the seven brothers"

#### Luke 20:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Luke 20:33

##### Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees finish asking Jesus their question.

##### In the resurrection

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again." Some languages have a way of showing that the Sadducees did not believe that there would be a resurrection, such as "In the supposed resurrection" or "When dead people are supposedly raised from the dead."

#### Luke 20:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to answer the Sadducees.

##### The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

##### marry and are given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "get married"

#### Luke 20:35

##### those who are regarded as worthy in that age

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people in that age whom God will consider to be worthy"

##### to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To receive resurrection from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### will neither marry nor be given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not marry" or "will not get married." This is after the resurrection.

#### Luke 20:36

##### Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

##### are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has brought them back from the dead"

#### Luke 20:37

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes answering the Sadducees.

##### But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees might not have been surprised that some scriptures say that the dead are raised, but they did not expect Moses to have written something like that. Alternate translation: "But even Moses showed that dead people rise from the dead"

##### the dead are raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God causes the dead to live again"

##### in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord

The implied information can be supplied. Alternate translation: "in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being"

##### the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

#### Luke 20:38

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Jesus explains how this story proves that people rise from the dead.

##### he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

These two phrases have similar meaning. They are used together for emphasis. Some languages have different ways of showing emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Lord is the God of living people only"

##### but of the living

"but the God of living people." Since these people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually. Alternate translation: "but the God of people whose spirits are alive, even though their bodies may have died"

##### because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because their spirits are alive in God's presence"

#### Luke 20:39

##### Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

#### Luke 20:40

##### For they

It is unclear if this refers to the scribes, or the Sadducees, or both. It is best to keep the statement general.

##### they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." They understood that they did not know as much as Jesus did, but they did not want to say that. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they did not ask him any more tricky questions because they feared that his wise answers would make them appear foolish again"

#### Luke 20:41

##### General Information:

Jesus asks the scribes a question.

##### How do they say ... son?

"Why do they say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

##### they say

The prophets, the religious rulers, and the Jewish people in general knew that the Messiah was the son of David. Alternate translation: "everyone says" or "people say"

##### David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

#### Luke 20:42

##### The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord" or "God said to my Lord"

##### my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

##### Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Luke 20:43

##### until I make your enemies your footstool

The Messiah's enemies are spoken of as if they were furniture on which he would rest his feet. This was an image of submission. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you" or "until I conquer your enemies for you"

#### Luke 20:44

##### David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'

In the culture of that time, a father was more respected than a son. David's us of the title 'Lord' for the Christ implies that he was greater than David.

##### so how is he David's son?

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "and this shows that the Christ is not merely David's descendant"

#### Luke 20:45

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus now directs his attention to his disciples and speaks mainly to them.

#### Luke 20:46

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who desire to walk in long robes

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

#### Luke 20:47

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also eat up widows' houses." The scribes are spoken of as if they were hungry animals that eat up the widows' houses. The word "houses" is a synecdoche for both where the widow lives and all the possessions she puts in her home. Alternate translation: "They also take away from widows all their possessions"

##### for a show they make long prayers

"they pretend to be righteous and make long prayers" or "they make long prayers so that people will see them"

##### Men like this will receive greater condemnation

"They will receive a more severe judgment." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them very severely"

## Chapter 1

# John 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:23, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "The Word"

John uses the phrase "the Word" to refer to Jesus ([John 1:1, 14](./01.md)). John is saying that God's most important message to all people is actually Jesus, a person with a physical body. (See: wordofgod)

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

#### "Children of God"

When people believe in Jesus, they go from being "children of wrath" to "children of God." They are adopted into the "family of God." This is an important image that is used many times in the New Testament. (See: believe and adoption)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

John uses the metaphors of light and darkness and of the Word to tell the reader that he will be writing more about good and evil and about what God wants to tell people through Jesus.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "In the beginning"

Some languages and cultures speak of the world as if it has always existed, as if it had no beginning. But "very long ago" is different from "in the beginning," and you need to be sure that your translation communicates correctly.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### John 1:1

##### In the beginning

This refers to the very earliest time before God created the heavens and the earth.

##### the Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word."

#### John 1:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:3

##### All things were made through him

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God made all things through him"

##### without him there was not one thing made that has been made

This can be translated with an active verb. If your language does not permit double negatives, these words should communicate that the opposite of "all things were made through him" is false. Alternate translation: "God did not make anything without him" or "with him there was every thing made that has been made" or "God made with him every thing that God has made"

#### John 1:4

##### In him was life, and the life was the light of men

"In him was life" is a metonym for causing everything to live. And, "light" here is a metaphor for "truth." Alternate translation: "He is the one who caused everything to live. And he revealed to people what is true about God"

##### In him

Here "him" refers to the one who is called the Word.

##### life

Here use a general term for "life." If you must be more specific, translate as "spiritual life."

#### John 1:5

##### The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it

Here "light" is a metaphor for what is true and good. Here "darkness" is a metaphor what is false and evil. Alternate translation: "The truth is like a light shining into a dark place, and no one in the dark place could put out the light"

#### John 1:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:7

##### testify about the light

Here "light" is a metaphor for the revelation of God in Jesus. Alternate translation: "show how Jesus is like the true light of God"

#### John 1:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:9

##### The true light

Here light is a metaphor that represents Jesus as the one who both reveals the truth about God and is himself that truth.

#### John 1:10

##### He was in the world, and the world was made through him, and the world did not know him

"Even though he was in this world, and God created everything through him, people still did not recognize him"

##### the world did not know him

The "world" is a metonym that stands for all the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "the people did not know who he really was"

#### John 1:11

##### He came to his own, and his own did not receive him

"He came to his own fellow countrymen, and his own fellow countrymen did not accept him either"

##### receive him

"accept him." To receive someone is to welcome him and treat him with honor in hopes of building a relationship with him.

#### John 1:12

##### believed in his name

The word "name" is a metonym that stands for Jesus's identity and everything about him. Alternate translation: "believed in him"

##### he gave the right

"he gave them the authority" or "he made it possible for them"

##### children of God

The word "children" is a metaphor that represents our relationship to God, which is like children to a father.

#### John 1:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:14

##### The Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word." See how you translated this in John 1:1.

##### became flesh

Here "flesh" represents "a person" or "a human being." Alternate translation: "became human" or "became a human being"

##### the one and only who came from the Father

The phrase "the one and only" means that he is unique, that no one else is like him. The phrase "who came from the Father" means that he is the Father's child. Alternate translation: "the unique Son of the Father" or "the only Son of the Father"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### full of grace

"full of kind acts towards us, acts we do not deserve"

#### John 1:15

##### He who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### is greater than I am

"is more important than I am" or "has more authority than I have"

##### for he was before me

Be careful not to translate this in a way that suggests that Jesus is more important because he is older than John in human years. Jesus is greater and more important than John because he is God the Son, who has always been alive.

#### John 1:16

##### fullness

This word refers to God's grace that has no end.

##### grace after grace

"blessing after blessing"

#### John 1:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:18

##### the only God

This phrase refers to God the Son. Alternate translation: "the only Son, who is himself God"

##### the only God

The Greek word that is translated here as "only" is translated by some as "only begotten." This means the only one that comes or procedes from God. The phrases "Son" and "procedes from" can be used to express some of the meaning of the word "begotten." Alternate translation: "the only begotten God" or "the only begotten Son, who is himself God" or "the only Son who proceeds from God and is himself God"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 1:19

##### the Jews sent

The word "Jews" here represents the "Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders sent"

#### John 1:20

##### He confessed—he did not deny, but confessed

The phrase "he did not deny" says in negative terms the same thing that "He confessed" says in positive terms. This emphasizes that John was telling the truth and was strongly stating that he was not the Christ. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

#### John 1:21

##### What are you then?

"What then is the case, if you are not the Messiah?" or "What then is going on?" or "What then are you doing?"

#### John 1:22

##### Connecting Statement:

John continues to speak with the priests and Levites.

##### they said to him

"the priests and Levites said to John"

##### we ... us

the priests and Levites, not John

#### John 1:23

##### He said

"John said"

##### I am a voice, crying in the wilderness

John is saying that Isaiah's prophecy is about himself. The word "voice" here refers to the person who is crying out in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "I am the one calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make the way of the Lord straight

Here the word "way" is used as a metaphor. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord's arrival the same way that people prepare the road for an important person to use"

#### John 1:24

##### Now some from the Pharisees

This is background information about the people who questioned John.

#### John 1:25

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:26

##### General Information:

Verse 28 tells us background information about the setting of the story.

#### John 1:27

##### who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### me, the strap of whose sandal I am not worthy to untie

Untying sandals was the work of a slave or servant. These words are a metaphor for the most unpleasant work of a servant. Alternate translation: "me, whom I am not worthy to serve in even the most unpleasant way" or "me. I am not even worthy to untie the strap of his sandal"

#### John 1:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:29

##### Lamb of God

This is a metaphor that represents God's perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

##### world

The word "world" is a metonym and refers to all the people in the world.

#### John 1:30

##### The one who comes after me is more than me, for he was before me

See how you translated this in John 1:15.

#### John 1:31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:32

##### like a dove

Possible meanings: 1) the Spirit descended in the form of a dove or 2) the Spirit descended in the way a dove descends.

##### heaven

The word "heaven" refers to the "sky."

#### John 1:33

##### The one on whom

"The one upon whom"

##### he is the one who will baptize with the Holy Spirit

"he is the one who will baptize in the Holy Spirit"

#### John 1:34

##### the Son of God

Some copies of this text say "Son of God"; others say "chosen one of God."

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### John 1:35

##### Again, the next day

This is another day. It is the second day that John sees Jesus.

#### John 1:36

##### Lamb of God

This is a metaphor that represents God's perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. See how you translated this same phrase in [John 1:29]

#### John 1:37

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:38

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:39

##### tenth hour

"hour 10." This phrase indicates a time in the afternoon, before dark, at which it would be too late to start traveling to another town, possibly around 4 p.m.

#### John 1:40

##### General Information:

These verses give us information about Andrew and how he brought his brother Peter to Jesus. This happened before they went and saw where Jesus was staying in John 1:39.

#### John 1:41

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:42

##### son of John

This is not John the Baptist. "John" was a very common name.

#### John 1:43

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:44

##### Now Philip was from Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter

This is background information about Philip.

#### John 1:45

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:46

##### Nathaniel said to him

"Nathaniel said to Philip"

##### Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?

This remark appears in the form of a question in order to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "No good thing can come out of Nazareth!"

#### John 1:47

##### in whom is no deceit

This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "a completely truthful man"

#### John 1:48

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 1:49

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### John 1:50

##### Because I said to you, 'I ... tree,' do you believe?

This remark appears in the form of a question to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "You believe only because I said, 'I ... tree'!"

#### John 1:51

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

## Chapter 2

# John 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Wine

The Jews drank wine at many meals and especially when they were celebrating special events. They did not believe that it was a sin to drink wine.

#### Driving out the money changers

When Jesus drove the money changers out of the temple, he showed that he had authority over the temple and over all of Israel.

#### "He knew what was in man"

Jesus knew what other people were thinking only because he was and is the Son of Man and the Son of God.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "His disciples remembered"

John used this phrase to stop telling the main history and to tell about something that happened much later. It was right after he scolded the pigeon sellers ([John 2:16](../../jhn/02/16.md)) that the Jewish authorities spoke to him. It was after Jesus became alive again that his disciples remembered what the prophet had written long before and that Jesus had talkid about the temple of his body ([John 2:17](../../jhn/02/17.md) and [John 2:22](../../jhn/02/22.md)).

#### John 2:1

##### General Information:

Jesus and his disciples are invited to a wedding. These verse give background information about the setting of the story.

##### Three days later

Most interpreters read this as on the third day after Jesus called Philip and Nathaniel to follow him. The first day occurs in John 1:35 and the second in John 1:43.

#### John 2:2

##### Jesus and his disciples were invited to the wedding

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "Someone invited Jesus and his disciples to the wedding"

#### John 2:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 2:4

##### Woman

This refers to Mary. If it is impolite for a son to call his mother "woman" in your language, use another word that is polite, or leave it out.

##### why do you come to me?

This question is asked to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "this has nothing to do with me." or "you should not tell me what to do."

##### My time has not yet come

The word "time" is a metonym that represents the right occasion for Jesus to show that he is the Messiah by working miracles. Alternate translation: "It is not yet the right time for me to perform a mighty act"

#### John 2:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 2:6

##### two to three metretes

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "75 to 115 liters"

#### John 2:7

##### to the brim

This means "to the very top" or "completely full."

#### John 2:8

##### the head waiter

This refers to the person in charge of the food and drink.

#### John 2:9

##### but the servants who had drawn the water knew

This is background information.

#### John 2:10

##### drunk

unable to tell the difference between cheap wine and expensive wine because of drinking too much alcohol

#### John 2:11

##### Connecting Statement:

This verse is not part of the main story, but rather it gives a comment about the story.

##### Cana

This is a place name.

##### revealed his glory

Here "his glory" refers to the mighty power of Jesus. Alternate translation: "showed his power"

#### John 2:12

##### went down

This indicates that they went from a higher place to a lower place. Capernaum is northeast of Cana and is at a lower elevation.

##### his brothers

The word "brothers" includes both brothers and sisters. All Jesus's brothers and sisters were younger than he was.

#### John 2:13

##### General Information:

Jesus and his disciples go up to Jerusalem to the temple.

##### went up to Jerusalem

This indicates that he went from a lower place to a higher place. Jerusalem is built on a hill.

#### John 2:14

##### were sitting there

The next verse makes it clear that these people are in the temple courtyard. That area was intended for worship and not for commerce.

##### sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons

People are buying animals in the temple courtyard to sacrifice them to God.

##### money changers

Jewish authorities required people who wanted to buy animals for sacrifices to exchange their money for special money from the "money changers."

#### John 2:15

##### So

This word marks an event that happens because of something else that has happened first. In this case, Jesus has seen the money changers sitting in the temple.

#### John 2:16

##### Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace

"Stop buying and selling things in my Father's house"

##### the house of my Father

This is a phrase Jesus uses to refer to the temple.

##### my Father

This is an important title that Jesus uses for God.

#### John 2:17

##### it was written

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "someone had written"

##### your house

This term refers to the temple, God's house.

##### consume

The word "consume" points to the metaphor of "fire." Jesus's love for the temple is like a fire that burns within him.

#### John 2:18

##### sign

This refers to an event that proves something is true.

##### these things

This refers to Jesus's actions against the money changers in the temple.

#### John 2:19

##### Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up

Jesus dared them to destroy the temple so that he could raise it up in three days. That would be the sign that he had authority to drive the sellers and animals out of the temple area. Jesus knew that they would not destroy the temple building. You can translate the words "destroy" and "raise" using the usual words for tearing down and rebuilding a building. If a command form in your language would indicate that Jesus truly intended for them to destroy the temple, it can be translated as a condition with the word "if" instead. Alternate translation: "If you destroy this temple, I will rebuild it in three days"

##### raise it up

"cause it to stand"

#### John 2:20

##### forty-six years ... three days

"46 years ... 3 days"

##### you will raise it up in three days?

The Jewish authorities misunderstood Jesus's words and thought that Jesus wanted to tear down the literal temple and build it again in three days. "Raise" is an idiom for "rebuild." Alternate translation: "you will rebuild it in three days?" or "you cannot possibly rebuild it in three days!"

#### John 2:21

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a comment on the story. It tells about something that happens later.

#### John 2:22

##### General Information:

This is the end of a comment on the story. It tells about something that happens later.

##### believed

Here "believe" means to accept something or trust that it is true.

##### this statement

This refers back to Jesus's statement in John 2:19.

#### John 2:23

##### Now when he was in Jerusalem

The word "now" introduces us to a new event in the story.

##### believed in his name

Here "name" is a metonym that represents the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "believed in him" or "trusted in him"

##### the signs that he did

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 2:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 2:25

##### about man, for he knew what was in man

Here the word "man" represents people in general. Alternate translation: "about people, for he knew what was in people"

## Chapter 3

# John 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### John 3:1

##### General Information:

Nicodemus comes to see Jesus.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story and to introduce Nicodemus.

#### John 3:2

##### we know

Here "we" is exclusive, referring only to Nicodemus and the other members of the Jewish council.

#### John 3:3

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and Nicodemus continue talking.

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### born again

"born from above" or "born of God"

##### he cannot see the kingdom of God

Possible meanings of seeing the kingdom of God are 1) seeing the place God rules over or 2) knowing what God's kingdom is like or 3) belonging to the kingdom of God.

#### John 3:4

##### How can a man be born when he is old?

Nicodemus uses this question to emphasize that this cannot happen. Alternate translation: "A man certainly cannot be born again when he is old!"

##### He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?

Nicodemus also uses this question to emphasize his belief that a second birth is impossible. "Certainly, he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb!

##### a second time

"again" or "twice"

##### womb

the part of a woman's body where a baby grows

#### John 3:5

##### Truly, truly

You can translate this in the same way you did in John 3:3.

##### born of water and the Spirit

There are two possible meanings: 1) "baptized in water and in the Spirit" or 2) "born physically and spiritually"

##### he cannot enter into the kingdom of God

Entering God’s kingdom means that the people belong to God, God rules over them, and they will live with him forever. AT: "he cannot belong to the kingdom of God"

#### John 3:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 3:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to Nicodemus.

##### You must be born again

"You must be born from above"

#### John 3:8

##### The wind blows wherever it wishes

In the source language, wind and Spirit are the same word. The speaker here refers to the wind as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit is like a wind that blows wherever it wants"

#### John 3:9

##### How can these things be?

This question adds emphasis to the statement. Alternate translation: "This cannot be!" or "This is not able to happen!"

#### John 3:10

##### Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things?

Jesus knows that Nicodemus is a teacher. He is not looking for information. Alternate translation: "You are a teacher of Israel, so I am surprised you do not understand these things!" or "You are a teacher of Israel, so you should understand these things!"

##### Are you a teacher ... yet you do not understand

The word "you" is singular and refers to Nicodemus.

#### John 3:11

##### you do not accept

The word "you" is plural and refers either the Pharisees [John 3:1]

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### we speak

When Jesus said "we," he was not including Nicodemus.

#### John 3:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues responding to Nicodemus.

##### I told you ... you do not believe ... how will you believe if I tell you

In all three places "you" is plural and refers to Jews in general.

##### how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things?

This question emphasizes the disbelief of Nicodemus and the Jews. Alternate translation: "you certainly will not believe if I tell you about heavenly things!"

##### heavenly things

spiritual things

#### John 3:13

##### No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven

This double negative emphasizes that he who descended from heaven is the only one who has ascended into heaven. Alternate translation: "The only one who has ascended into heaven is he who descended from heaven"

#### John 3:14

##### Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up

This figure of speech is called a simile. Some people will "lift up" Jesus just as Moses "lifted up" the bronze serpent in the wilderness.

##### in the wilderness

The wilderness is a dry, desert place, but here it refers specifically to the place where Moses and the Israelites walked around for forty years.

#### John 3:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 3:16

##### God so loved the world

Here "world" is a metonym that refers to everyone in the world.

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 3:17

##### For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him

These two clauses mean nearly the same thing, said twice for emphasis, first in the negative and then in the positive. Some languages may indicate emphasis in a different way. Alternate translation: God""'s real reason for sending his Son into the world was to save it"

##### to condemn

"to punish." Usually "punish" implies that the person who has been punished is then accepted by God. When a person is condemned, he is punished but never accepted by God.

#### John 3:18

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### John 3:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to Nicodemus.

##### The light has come into the world

The word "light" is a metaphor for God's truth that is revealed in Jesus. Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. If your language does not allow people to speak of themselves in the third person, you may need to specify who the light is. The "world" is a metonym for all of the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "The one who is like a light has revealed God's truth to all people" or "I, who am like a light, have come into the world"

##### men loved the darkness

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for evil.

#### John 3:20

##### so that his deeds will not be exposed

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that the light will not show the things he does" or "so that the light does not make clear his deeds"

#### John 3:21

##### plainly seen that his deeds

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "people may clearly see his deeds" or "everyone may clearly see the things he does"

#### John 3:22

##### After this

This refers to after Jesus had spoken with Nicodemus. See how you translated this in John 2:12.

#### John 3:23

##### Aenon

This word means "springs," as of water.

##### Salim

a village or town next to the Jordan River

##### because there was much water there

"because there were many springs in that place"

##### were being baptized

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "John was baptizing them" or "he was baptizing them"

#### John 3:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 3:25

##### Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew

This can be stated in an active form for clarity. Alternate translation: "Then John's disciples and a Jew began to argue"

##### a dispute

a fight using words

#### John 3:26

##### you have testified, look, he is baptizing,

In this phrase, "look" is a command meaning "pay attention!" Alternate translation: "you have testified, 'Look! He is baptizing,'" or "you have testified. 'Look at that! He is baptizing,'"

#### John 3:27

##### A man cannot receive anything unless

"Nobody has any power unless"

##### it has been given to him from heaven

Here "heaven" is used as a metonym to refer to God. This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has given it to him"

#### John 3:28

##### You yourselves

This "You" is plural and refers to all the people John is talking to. Alternate translation: "You all" or "All of you"

##### I have been sent before him

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to arrive before him"

#### John 3:29

##### Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist continues speaking.

##### The bride belongs to the bridegroom

Here the "bride" and "bridegroom" are metaphors. Jesus is like the "bridegroom" and John is like the friend of the "bridegroom."

##### This, then, is my joy made complete

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So then I rejoice greatly" or "So I rejoice much"

##### my joy

The word "my" refers to John the Baptist, the one who is speaking.

#### John 3:30

##### He must increase

"He" refers to the bridegroom, Jesus, who will continue to grow in importance.

#### John 3:31

##### He who comes from above is above all

"He who comes from heaven is more important than anyone else"

##### He who is from the earth is from the earth and speaks about the earth

John means that Jesus is greater than he is since Jesus is from heaven, and John was born on the earth. Alternate translation: "He who is born in this world is like everyone else who lives in the world and he speaks about what happens in this world"

##### He who comes from heaven is above all

This means the same thing as the first sentence. John repeats this for emphasis.

#### John 3:32

##### He testifies about what he has seen and heard

John is speaking about Jesus. Alternate translation: "The one from heaven tells about what he has seen and heard in heaven"

##### no one accepts his testimony

Here John exaggerates to emphasize that only a few people believe Jesus. Alternate translation: "very few people believe him"

#### John 3:33

##### He who has received his testimony

"Anyone who believes what Jesus says"

##### has confirmed

"proves" or "agrees"

#### John 3:34

##### Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist finishes speaking.

##### For the one whom God has sent speaks

"This Jesus, whom God has sent to represent him, speaks"

##### For he does not give the Spirit by measure

"For he is the one to whom God gave all the power of his Spirit"

#### John 3:35

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### given ... into his hand

This means to be put in his power or control.

#### John 3:36

##### He who believes

"A person who believes" or "Anyone who believes"

##### the wrath of God stays on him

The abstract noun "wrath" can be translated with the verb "punish." Alternate translation: "God will continue to punish him"

## Chapter 4

# John 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

John 4:4-38 forms one story centered on the teaching of Jesus as the "living water," the one who gives eternal life to all who believe in him. (See: believe)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "It was necessary for him to pass through Samaria"

Jews avoided traveling through the region of Samaria because the Samaritans were descendants of ungodly people. So Jesus had to do what most Jews did not want to do. (See: godly and kingdomofisrael)

#### "The hour is coming"

Jesus used these words to begin prophecies about times that could be shorter or longer than sixty minutes. "The hour" in which true worshipers will worship in spirit and truth is longer than sixty minutes.

#### The proper place of worship

Long before Jesus lived, the Samaritan people had broken the law of Moses by setting up a false temple in their land ([John 4:20](../../jhn/04/20.md)). Jesus explained to the woman that it was no longer important where people worshiped ([John 4:21-24](./21.md)).

#### Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: faith)

#### "The Samaritan woman"

John probably told this story to show the difference between the Samaritan woman, who believed, and the Jews, who did not believe and later killed Jesus. (See: believe)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "In spirit and truth"

The people who truly know who God is and enjoy worshiping him and love him for who he is are the ones who truly please him. Where they worship is not important.

#### John 4:1

##### General Information:

John 4:1-6 gives the background to the next event, Jesus's conversation with a Samaritan woman.

##### Connecting Statement:

A long sentence begins here.

##### Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John

"Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John. When he knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was doing this"

##### Now when Jesus knew

The word "now" is used here to mark a break in the main events. Here John starts to tell a new part of the narrative.

#### John 4:2

##### Jesus himself was not baptizing

The reflexive pronoun "himself" adds emphasis that it was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples.

#### John 4:3

##### he left Judea and went back again to Galilee

You may need to rearrange the entire sentence that begins with the words "Now when Jesus" in verse 1. "Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John (although Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were). The Pharisees heard that Jesus was doing this. When Jesus knew that the Pharisees learned what he was doing, he left Judea and went back again to Galilee"

#### John 4:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:7

##### Give me some water

This is a polite request, not a command.

#### John 4:8

##### For his disciples had gone

He did not ask his disciples to draw water for him because they had gone.

#### John 4:9

##### Then the Samaritan woman said to him

The word "him" refers to Jesus.

##### How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking me, being a Samaritan woman, for something to drink?

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the Samaritan woman's surprise that Jesus asked her for a drink. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe that you, being a Jew, are asking me, a Samaritan woman, for a drink!"

##### have no dealings with

"do not associate with"

#### John 4:10

##### living water

Jesus uses the metaphor "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit, who works in a person to transform and bring new life.

#### John 4:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:12

##### You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob ... livestock?

This remark occurs in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "You are not greater than our father Jacob ... livestock!"

##### our father Jacob

"our ancestor Jacob"

##### drank from it

"drank water that came from it"

#### John 4:13

##### will be thirsty again

"will need to drink water again"

#### John 4:14

##### the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him

Here the word "fountain" is a metaphor for life-giving spring of water. Alternate translation: "the water that I will give him will become like a spring of water in him"

##### eternal life

Here "life" refers to the "spiritual life" that only God can give.

#### John 4:15

##### Sir

In this context, the Samaritan woman is addressing Jesus as "Sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

##### draw water

"get water" or "pull water up from the well" using a container and rope

#### John 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:17

##### You have said correctly

"You spoke well when you said" or "You chose your words skillfully when you said." Jesus is acknowledging that what she had said was strictly true but was hiding a fact about her that she expected Jesus to disapprove of. He was saying neither that it was a good thing that she had no husband nor that her answer showed that she was morally good.

#### John 4:18

##### What you have said is true

Jesus said this to emphasize the words "You are right in saying, 'I have no husband'" in verse 17. He wanted the woman to know that he knew she was telling the truth.

#### John 4:19

##### Sir

In this context the Samaritan woman is addressesing Jesus as "sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

##### I see that you are a prophet

"I can understand that you are a prophet"

#### John 4:20

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

#### John 4:21

##### Believe me

To believe someone is to acknowledge what the person has said is true.

##### you will worship the Father

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 4:22

##### You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know

Jesus means that God revealed himself and his commands to the Jewish people, not to the Samaritans. Through the Scriptures the Jewish people know who God is better than the Samaritans.

##### for salvation is from the Jews

This means that God has chosen the Jews as his special people who will tell all other people about his salvation. It also means that the Christ, the one who will save the world, will be a Jew. It does not mean the Jewish people will save others from their sins. Alternate translation: "for all people will know about God's salvation because of the Jews"

##### salvation is from the Jews

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

#### John 4:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Samaritan woman.

##### However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will

"However, it is now the right time for true worshipers to"

##### the Father

This is an important title for God.

##### in spirit and truth

Possible meanings are the "spirit" here is 1) the inner person, the mind and heart, what a person thinks and what he loves, different from where he goes to worship and what ceremonies he performs, or 2) the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "in the Spirit and in truth" or "with the Spirit's help and in truth"

##### in ... truth

thinking correctly of what is true about God

#### John 4:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:25

##### I know that the Messiah ... Christ

Both of these words mean "God's promised king."

##### he will explain everything to us

This statement implies that he will tell them everything they need to know. Alternate translation: "he will tell us everything we need to know"

#### John 4:26

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:27

##### At that moment his disciples returned

"Just as Jesus was saying this, his disciples returned from town"

##### Now they were wondering why he was speaking with a woman

It was very unusual for a Jew to speak with a woman he did not know, especially if that woman was a Samaritan.

##### no one said, "What ... looking for?" or "Why ... her?"

Possible meanings are 1) "no one asked Jesus, 'What ... looking for?' or 'Why ... her?'" or 2) "no one asked the woman, 'What ... looking for?' or asked Jesus, 'Why ... her?'"

#### John 4:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:29

##### Come, see a man who told me everything that I have ever done

The Samaritan woman exaggerates to show that she is impressed by how much Jesus knows about her. Alternate translation: "Come see a man who knows very much about me, even though I have never met him before"

##### This could not be the Christ, could it?

The woman is not sure that Jesus is the Christ, so she asks a question that expects "no" for an answer, but she also asks a question instead of making a statement because she wants the people to decide for themselves.

#### John 4:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:31

##### In the meantime

"While the woman was going into town"

##### the disciples were urging him

"the disciples were telling Jesus" or "the disciples were encouraging Jesus"

#### John 4:32

##### I have food to eat that you do not know about

Here Jesus is not talking about literal "food," but is preparing his disciples for a spiritual lesson in John 4:34.

#### John 4:33

##### No one has brought him anything to eat, have they?

The disciples think Jesus is talking about literal "food." They begin asking each other this question, expecting a "no" response. Alternate translation: "Surely no one brought him any food while we were in town!"

#### John 4:34

##### My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to complete his work

Here "food" is a metaphor that represents "obeying God's will." Alternate translation: "Just as food satisfies a hungry person, obeying God's will is what satisfies me"

#### John 4:35

##### Do you not say

"Is this not one of your popular sayings"

##### look up and see the fields, for they are already ripe for harvest

The words "fields" and "ripe for harvest" are metaphors. The "fields" represent people. The words "ripe for harvest" mean that people are ready to receive the message of Jesus, like fields that are ready to be harvested. Alternate translation: "look up and see the the people! They are ready to believe my message, like crops in the fields that are ready for people to harvest them"

#### John 4:36

##### and gathers fruit for everlasting life

Here "fruit for everlasting life" is a metaphor that represents people who believe Christ's message and receive eternal life. Alternate translation: "and the people who believe the message and receive eternal life are like the fruit that a harvester gathers"

#### John 4:37

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

##### One sows, and another reaps

The words "sows" and "reaps" are metaphors. The one who "sows" shares the message of Jesus. The one who "reaps" helps the people to receive the message of Jesus. Alternate translation: "One person plants the seeds, and another person reaps the crops"

#### John 4:38

##### you have entered into their labor

"you are now joining in their work"

#### John 4:39

##### believed in him

To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. Here this also means that they believed he was the Son of God.

##### He told me everything that I have done

This is an exaggeration. The woman was impressed by how much Jesus knew about her. Alternate translation: "He told me many things about my life"

#### John 4:40

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:41

##### his word

Here "word" is a metonym that stands for the message that Jesus proclaimed. Alternate translation: "his message"

#### John 4:42

##### world

The "world" is a metonym for all the believers throughout the world. Alternate translation: "all the believers in the world"

#### John 4:43

##### General Information:

Jesus goes down to Galilee and heals a boy. Verse 44 gives us background information about something Jesus had said previously.

##### from there

from Judea

#### John 4:44

##### For Jesus himself declared

The reflexive pronoun "himself" is added to emphasize that Jesus had "declared" or said this.. You can translate this in your language in a way that will give emphasis to a person.

##### a prophet has no honor in his own country

"people do not show respect or honor to a prophet of their own country" or "a prophet is not respected by the people in his own community"

#### John 4:45

##### at the festival

Here the festival is the Passover.

#### John 4:46

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author starts a new part of the story. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

##### royal official

someone who is in the service of the king

#### John 4:47

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:48

##### Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe

"Unless ... not believe" here is a double negative. In some languages it is more natural to translate this statement in a positive form. Alternate translation: "You will believe only if you see a signs and wonders"

#### John 4:49

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:50

##### believed the word

Here "word" is a metonym that refers to the message that Jesus spoke. Alternate translation: "believed the message"

#### John 4:51

##### While

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. As the official was going home, his servants were coming to meet him on the road.

#### John 4:52

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 4:53

##### So he himself and his whole household believed

The reflexive pronoun "himself" is used here to emphasize the word "he." If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

#### John 4:54

##### sign

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

## Chapter 5

# John 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Healing water

Many of the Jews believed that God would heal people who got into some of the pools in Jerusalem when the waters were "stirred up."

#### Testimony

Testimony is what one person says about another person. What a person says about himself is not as important as what other people say about that person. Jesus told the Jews that God had told them who Jesus was, so he did not need to tell them who he was. This was because God had told the writers of the Old Testament what his Messiah would do, and Jesus had done everything they had written that he would do.

#### The resurrection of life and the resurrection of judgment

God will make some people alive again and because he gives them his grace, they will live with him forever. But he will make some people alive again and because he will treat them justly, they will live apart from him forever.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The Son, the Son of God, and the Son of Man

Jesus refers to himself in this chapter as the "Son"

#### John 5:1

##### General Information:

This is the next event in the story, in which Jesus goes up to Jerusalem and heals a man. These verses give background information about the setting of the story.

##### After this

This refers to after Jesus healed the official's son. See how you translated this in John 3:22.

##### there was a Jewish festival

"the Jews were celebrating a festival"

##### went up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem is located on the top of a hill. Roads to Jerusalem went up and down smaller hills. If your language has a different word for going up a hill than for walking on level ground, you may use it here.

#### John 5:2

##### pool

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework.

##### Bethesda

a place name

##### roofed porches

roofed structures with at least one wall missing and attached to buildings

#### John 5:3

##### A large number of people

"Many people"

#### John 5:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:5

##### General Information:

Verse 5 introduces the man lying beside the pool to the story.

##### was there

"was at the Bethesda pool" (John 5:1)

##### thirty-eight years

"38 years"

#### John 5:6

##### he realized

"he understood" or "he found out"

##### he said to him

"Jesus said to the paralyzed man"

#### John 5:7

##### Sir, I do not have

Here the word "sir" is a polite form of address.

##### when the water is stirred up

This can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "when the angel moves the water"

##### into the pool

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework. See how you translated "pool" in John 5:2.

##### another steps down before me

"someone else always goes down the steps into the water before me"

#### John 5:8

##### Get up

"Stand up"

##### take up your bed, and walk

"pick up your sleeping mat, and walk"

#### John 5:9

##### the man was healed

"the man became healthy again"

##### Now that day

The writer uses the word "now" to show that the words that follow are background information.

#### John 5:10

##### So the Jews said to him

The Jews (especially the leaders of the Jews) became angry when they saw the man carrying his mat on the Sabbath.

##### It is the Sabbath

"It is God's Day of Rest"

#### John 5:11

##### He who made me healthy

"The man who made me well"

#### John 5:12

##### They asked him

"The Jewish leaders asked the man who was healed"

#### John 5:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:14

##### Jesus found him

"Jesus found the man he had healed"

##### See

The word "See" is used here to draw attention to the words that follow.

#### John 5:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:16

##### Now

The writer uses the word "now" to show that the words that follow are background information.

##### the Jews

Here "the Jews" is a synecdoche which represent the "Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

#### John 5:17

##### is working

This refers to doing labor, including anything that is done to serve other people.

##### My Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 5:18

##### making himself equal to God

"saying that he was like God" or "saying that he had as much authority as God"

#### John 5:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jewish leaders.

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### whatever the Father is doing, the Son does in the same way

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him.

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God.

#### John 5:20

##### you will be amazed

"you will be surprised" or "you will be shocked"

##### For the Father loves the Son

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him.

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 5:21

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### life

This refers to "spiritual life."

#### John 5:22

##### For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son

The word "for" marks a comparison. The Son of God carries out judgment for God the Father.

#### John 5:23

##### honor the Son just as ... the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father

God the Son must be honored and worshiped just like God the Father. If we fail to honor God the Son, then we also fail to honor God the Father.

#### John 5:24

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### he who hears my word

Here "word" is a metonym that represents the message of Jesus. Alternate translation: "anyone who hears my message"

##### will not be condemned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he will not receive condemnation" or "God will not condemn him"

#### John 5:25

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live

The voice of Jesus, the Son of God, will raise dead people from the grave.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### John 5:26

##### For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has also given to the Son so that he has life in himself

The word "For" marks a comparison. The Son of God has the power to give life, just as the Father does.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### life

This means spiritual life.

#### John 5:27

##### Father ... Son of Man

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### the Father has given the Son authority to carry out judgment

The Son of God has the authority of God the Father to judge.

#### John 5:28

##### Do not be amazed at this

"This" refers to the fact that Jesus, as the Son of Man, has the power to give eternal life and to carry out judgment.

##### hear his voice

"hear my voice"

#### John 5:29

##### to the resurrection of life

This tells what will happen to those who have done good. Alternate translation: "will rise to live" or "will rise and live"

##### to the resurrection of judgment

This tells what will happen to those who have done evil. Alternate translation: "will rise to be judged" or "will rise and be judged"

#### John 5:30

##### the will of him who sent me

The word "him" refers to God the Father.

#### John 5:31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:32

##### There is another who testifies about me

"There is someone else who tells people about me"

##### another

This refers to God.

##### the testimony that he gives about me is true

"what he tells people about me is true"

#### John 5:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:34

##### the testimony that I receive is not from man

"I do not need people's testimony"

##### that you might be saved

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so God can save you"

#### John 5:35

##### John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while

Here "lamp" and "light" are metaphors. John taught the people about God and this was like a lamp shining its light into the dark. Alternate translation: "John taught you about God and this was like a lamp shining its light. And for a while what John said made you happy"

#### John 5:36

##### the works that the Father has given me to accomplish ... that the Father has sent me

God the Father has sent God the Son, Jesus, to earth. Jesus completes what the Father gives him to do.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### the very works that I do, testify about me that the Father has sent me

Here Jesus says that the miracles "testify" or "tell the people" about him. Alternate translation: "what I do, shows the people that God has sent me"

#### John 5:37

##### The Father who sent me has himself testified

The reflexive pronoun "himself" emphasizes that it is the Father, not someone less important, who has testified.

#### John 5:38

##### You do not have his word remaining in you, for you are not believing in the one whom he has sent

"You do not believe in the one he has sent. That is how I know that you do not have his word remaining in you"

##### You do not have his word remaining in you

Jesus speaks of people living according to God's word as if they were houses and God's word were a person that lived in houses. Alternate translation: "You do not live according to his word" or "You do not obey his word"

##### his word

"the message he spoke to you"

#### John 5:39

##### in them you have eternal life

"you will find eternal life if you read them" or "the scriptures will tell you how you can have eternal life"

#### John 5:40

##### you are not willing to come to me

"you refuse to believe my message"

#### John 5:41

##### receive glory

The word "glory" here is a metonym for the praise that people give to a person who has glory or is glorious. Alternate translation: "receive praise"

##### receive

accept

#### John 5:42

##### you do not have the love of God in yourselves

This can mean 1) "you really do not love God" or 2) "you have really not received God's love."

#### John 5:43

##### in my Father's name

Here the word "name" is a metonym that represents God's power and authority. Alternate translation: "with my Father's authority"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### receive

welcome as a friend

##### If another should come in his own name

The word "name" is a metonym that represents authority. Alternate translation: "If another should come in his own authority"

#### John 5:44

##### How can you believe, you who accept glory ... God?

This remark appears in the form of a question in order to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "There is no way you can believe because you accept glory ... God!"

##### believe

This means to trust in Jesus.

##### accept glory ... seeking the glory

The word "glory" here is a metonym for the praise that people give to a person who has glory or is glorious. Alternate translation: "accept praise ... seeking the praise"

#### John 5:45

##### in whom you have hoped

Here the word "hope" means "expect" or "trust," and the person who hopes in this way believes that he will receive what he hopes for. It can be stated clearly what they hoped for in Moses. Alternate translation: "whom you expect to help you" or "whom you trust to defend you before the Father you"

#### John 5:46

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 5:47

##### If you do not believe his writings, how are you going to believe my words?

This remark appears in the form of a question to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "You do not believe his writings, so you will never believe my words!"

##### my words

"what I say"

## Chapter 6

# John 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### King

The king of any nation was the richest and most powerful person in that nation. The people wanted Jesus to be their king because he gave them food and so they thought he would make the Jews into the richest and most powerful nation in the world. They did not understand that Jesus came to die so God could forgive his people's sins and that the world would persecute his people.

### Important metaphors in this chapter

#### Bread

Bread was the most common and important food in Jesus's day, and so the word "bread" was their general word for "food." It is often difficult to translate the word "bread" into the languages of people who do not eat bread because the general word for food in some languages refers to food that did not exist in Jesus's culture. Jesus used the word "bread" to refer to himself. He wanted them to understand that they need him so they can have eternal life.

#### Eating the flesh and drinking the blood

When Jesus said, "Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you will not have life in yourselves," he knew that before he died he would tell his followers to do this by eating bread and drinking wine. In the event this chapter describes, he expected that his hearers would understand that he was using a metaphor but would not understand what the metaphor referred to. (See: flesh and blood)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Parenthetical Ideas

Several times in this passage, John explains something or gives the reader some context to better understand the story. These explanation are intended to give the reader some additional knowledge without interrupting the flow of the narrative. The information is placed inside parentheses.

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### John 6:1

##### General Information:

Jesus has traveled from Jerusalem to Galilee. A crowd has followed him up a mountainside. These verses tell the setting of this part of the story.

##### After these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the events in John 5:1-46 and introduces the event that follows.

##### Jesus went away

It is implied in the text that Jesus traveled by boat and took his disciples with him. Alternate translation: "Jesus traveled by boat with his disciples"

#### John 6:2

##### A great crowd

"A large number of people"

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over everything.

#### John 6:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:4

##### Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about when the events happened.

#### John 6:5

##### General Information:

The action in the story begins in verse 5.

#### John 6:6

##### But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to explain why Jesus asked Philip where to buy bread.

##### for he himself knew

The reflexive pronoun "himself" makes it clear that the word "he" refers to Jesus. Jesus knew what he would do.

#### John 6:7

##### Two hundred denarii worth of bread

The word "denarii" is the plural of "denarius." Alternate translation: "The amount of bread that costs two hundred days' wages"

#### John 6:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:9

##### loaves

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that are shaped and baked. These were probably small dense, round loaves.

##### what are these among so many?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that they do not have enough food to feed everyone. Alternate translation: "these few loaves and fishes are not enough to feed so many people!"

#### John 6:10

##### sit down

"lie down"

##### Now there was much grass in the place

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about the place where this event happens.

##### So the men sat down, about five thousand in number

While the crowd probably included women and children ([John 6:4-5](./04.md)), here John is counting only the men.

#### John 6:11

##### giving thanks

Jesus prayed to God the Father and thanked him for the fish and the loaves.

##### he gave it

"he" here represents "Jesus and his disciples." Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples gave it"

#### John 6:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:13

##### General Information:

Jesus withdraws from the crowd. This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus feeding the crowd on the mountain.

##### they gathered

"the disciples gathered"

##### left over

the food that no one had eaten

#### John 6:14

##### this sign

Jesus feeding the 5,000 people with five barley loaves and two fish

##### the prophet

the special prophet who Moses said would come into the world

#### John 6:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:16

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the story. Jesus's disciples go out onto the lake in a boat.

#### John 6:17

##### It was dark by this time, and Jesus had not yet come to them

Use your language's way of showing that this is background information.

#### John 6:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:19

##### they had rowed

Boats usually had two, four, or six people rowing with rowers on each side working together. Your culture may have different ways of making a boat go across a large body of water.

##### about twenty-five or thirty stadia

A "stadium" is 185 meters. Alternate translation: "about five or six kilometers"

#### John 6:20

##### Do not be afraid

"Stop being afraid!"

#### John 6:21

##### they were willing to receive him into the boat

It is implied that Jesus gets into the boat. Alternate translation: "they gladly received him into the boat"

#### John 6:22

##### the sea

"the Sea of Galilee"

##### there was no other boat there except the one

This double negative emphasizes that the one boat is the only one that was there. Alternate translation: "there was only that one boat there"

#### John 6:23

##### However, there were ... the Lord had given thanks

Use your language's way of showing that this is background information.

##### boats that came from Tiberias

Here, John provides more background information. The next day, after Jesus fed the people, some boats with people from Tiberius came to see Jesus. However, Jesus and his disciples had left the night before.

#### John 6:24

##### General Information:

The people go to Capernaum to find Jesus. When they see him, they start asking him questions.

#### John 6:25

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:26

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

#### John 6:27

##### eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him

God the Father has given his approval to Jesus, the Son of Man, to give eternal life to those who believe in him.

##### Son of Man ... God the Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God.

##### has set his seal on him

To "set a seal" on something means to place a mark on it to show to whom it belongs. This means that the Son belongs to the Father and that the Father approves of him in every way.

#### John 6:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:31

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

##### heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### John 6:32

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### it is my Father who is giving you the true bread from heaven

The "true bread" is a metaphor for Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Father gives to you the Son as the true bread from heaven"

##### my Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 6:33

##### gives life to the world

"gives spiritual life to the world"

##### the world

Here the "world" is a metonym for all of the people in the world who trust in Jesus.

#### John 6:34

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:35

##### I am the bread of life

Through metaphor, Jesus compares himself with bread. Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for our spiritual life. Alternate translation: "Just as food keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life"

##### believes in

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and to live in a way that honors him.

#### John 6:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:37

##### Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me

God the Father and God the Son will save forever those who believe in Jesus.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "I will keep everyone who comes to me"

#### John 6:38

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd.

##### him who sent me

"my Father, who sent me"

#### John 6:39

##### I would lose not one of all those

Here litotes is used to emphasize that Jesus will keep everyone that God gives to him. Alternate translation: "I should keep all of them"

##### will raise them up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "will cause them to live again"

#### John 6:40

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:41

##### Connecting Statement:

The Jewish leaders interrupt Jesus as he is speaking to the crowd.

##### grumbled

talked unhappily

##### I am the bread

Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for our spiritual life. See how you translated this in [John 6:35]

#### John 6:42

##### Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders believe that Jesus is no one special. Alternate translation: "This is just Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know!

##### How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus came from heaven. Alternate translation: "He is lying when he says that he came from heaven!"

#### John 6:43

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd and now also to the Jewish leaders.

#### John 6:44

##### raise him up

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "cause him to live again"

##### draws

This can mean 1) "pulls" or 2) "attracts."

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 6:45

##### It is written in the prophets

This is a passive statement that can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote"

##### Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father comes to me

The Jews thought Jesus was the "son of Joseph" (John 6:42), but he is the Son of God because his Father is God, not Joseph. Those who truly learn from God the Father believe in Jesus, who is God the Son.

#### John 6:46

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus now continues speaking to the crowd and the Jewish leaders.

##### Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God—he has seen the Father

"I am not saying that anyone has seen the Father. Only he who is from God-he has seen the Father"

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 6:47

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### he who believes has eternal life

God gives "eternal life" to those who trust in Jesus, the Son of God.

#### John 6:48

##### I am the bread of life

Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for our spiritual life. See how you translated this in [John 6:35]

#### John 6:49

##### Your fathers

"Your forefathers" or "Your ancestors"

##### died

This refers to physical death.

#### John 6:50

##### This is the bread

Here "bread" is a metaphor that points to Jesus who is the one who gives spiritual life just as bread sustains physical life. Alternate translation: "I am like the true bread"

##### not die

"live forever." Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death.

#### John 6:51

##### living bread

This means "the bread that causes people to live" (John 6:35).

##### for the life of the world

Here "the world" is a metonym that represents the lives of all the people in the world. Alternate translation: "that will give life to all the people in the world"

#### John 6:52

##### Connecting Statement:

Some Jews who are present begin to argue among themselves and Jesus responds to their question.

##### How can this man give us his flesh to eat?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders are reacting negatively to what Jesus has said about "his flesh." Alternate translation: "There is no way that this man can give us his flesh to eat!"

#### John 6:53

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood

Here the phrases "eat the flesh" and "drink his blood" are a metaphor that shows how trusting in Jesus, the Son of Man, is like receiving spiritual food and drink. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor clearer than Jesus did.

##### you will not have life in yourselves

"you will not receive eternal life"

#### John 6:54

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to all those listening to him.

##### Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has everlasting life

The phrases "eats my flesh" and "drinks my blood" are a metaphor for trusting Jesus. Just as people need food and drink in order to live, people need to trust Jesus in order to have eternal life. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did.

##### raise him up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "cause him to live again"

##### at the last day

"on the day when God judges everyone"

#### John 6:55

##### my flesh is true food ... my blood is true drink

The phrases "true food" and "true drink" are a metaphor that means Jesus gives life to those who trust in him. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor clearer than Jesus did.

#### John 6:56

##### remains in me, and I in him

"has a close relationship with me"

#### John 6:57

##### so he who eats me

The phrase "eats me" is a metaphor for trusting Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor clearer than Jesus did.

##### living Father

Possible meanings are 1) "the Father who gives life" or 2) "the Father who is alive."

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 6:58

##### This is the bread that has come down from heaven

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I am the bread that has come down from heaven"

##### This is the bread that has come down from heaven

The bread is a metaphor for what gives life. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor clearer than Jesus did.

##### He who eats this bread will live forever

Jesus spoke about himself as "this bread." Alternate translation: "He who eats me, the bread, will live forever"

##### He who eats this bread

Here "eats this bread" is a metaphor for trusting Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor clearer than Jesus did.

##### the fathers

"the forefathers" or "the ancestors"

#### John 6:59

##### Jesus said these things in the synagogue ... in Capernaum

Here John gives background information about when this event happened.

#### John 6:60

##### Connecting Statement:

Some of the disciples ask a question and Jesus responds, as he continues speaking to the crowd.

##### who can hear it?

The disciples use this question to emphasize that they cannot do this. Alternate translation: "no one can hear it!" or "it is too hard to hear!"

##### hear it

Possible meanings are 1) "hear it" is a synecdoche for "understand it" or 2) "hear it" is a synecdoche for "agree with it"

#### John 6:61

##### Does this offend you?

"Does this shock you?" or "Does this upset you?"

#### John 6:62

##### Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before?

Jesus offers this remark in the form of a question to emphasize that his disciples will see other things that are also hard to understand. Alternate translation: "Then you will not know what to think when you see me, the Son of Man, going up into heaven!"

#### John 6:63

##### profits

The word "profit" means to cause good things to happen.

##### words

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus's words in [John 6:32-58]

##### The words that I have spoken to you

"What I have told you"

##### are spirit, and they are life

Possible meanings are 1) "are about the Spirit and eternal life" or 2) "are from the Spirit and give eternal life" or 3) "are about spiritual things and life."

#### John 6:64

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

##### For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones ... who it was who would betray him

Here John gives background information about what Jesus knew would happen.

#### John 6:65

##### no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father

Whoever wants to believe must come to God through the Son. Only God the Father allows people to come to Jesus.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### come to me

"follow me and receive eternal life"

#### John 6:66

##### no longer walked with him

Jesus went from one place to another by walking, so it is literally true that they did not walk where and when he walked, but the reader should also be able to understand that this metaphor indicates that they no longer wanted to hear what he had to say.

##### his disciples

Here "his disciples" refers to the general group of people who followed Jesus.

#### John 6:67

##### the twelve

This is an ellipsis for "the twelve disciples," a specific group of twelve men who followed Jesus for his entire ministry. Alternate translation: "the twelve disciples"

#### John 6:68

##### Lord, to whom would we go?

Simon Peter gives this remark in the form of a question to emphasize that he desires to follow only Jesus. Alternate translation: "Lord, we could never follow anyone but you!"

#### John 6:69

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 6:70

##### Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?

Jesus gives this remark in the form of a question to draw attention to the fact that one of the disciples will betray him. Alternate translation: "I chose you all myself, yet one of you is a servant of Satan!"

#### John 6:71

##### General Information:

Verse 71 is not part of the main story. Here John comments on what Jesus said.

## Chapter 7

# John 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This whole chapter concerns the concept of believing Jesus to be the Messiah. Some people believed this to be true while others rejected it. Some were willing to recognize his power and even the possibility that he was a prophet, but most were unwilling to believe that he was the Messiah. (See: christ and prophet)

Translators may wish to include a note at verse 53 to explain to the reader why they have chosen or chosen not to translate verses 7:53-8:11.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "My time has not yet come"

This phrase and "his hour had not yet come" are used in this chapter to indicate that Jesus is in control of the events unfolding in his life.

#### "Living water"

This is an important image used in the New Testament. It is a metaphor. Because this metaphor is given in a desert environment, it probably emphasizes that Jesus is able to give life sustaining nourishment.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Prophecy

Jesus gives a prophecy about his life without an explicit statement in [John 7:33-34](./33.md).

#### Irony

Nicodemus explains to the other Pharisees that the Law requires him to hear directly from a person before making a judgment about them. The Pharisees in turn made a judgment about Jesus without speaking to Jesus.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Did not believe in him"

Jesus's brothers did not believe Jesus was the Messiah. (See: believe)

#### "The Jews"

This term is used in two different ways in this passage. It is used specifically in reference to the Jewish leaders who were trying to kill him ([John 7:1](../../jhn/07/01.md)). It is also used in reference to the people of Judea in general who had a positive opinion of Jesus ([John 7:13](../../jhn/07/13.md)). The translator may wish to use the terms "Jewish leaders" and "Jewish people" or "Jews (leaders)" and "Jews (in general)."

#### John 7:1

##### General Information:

Jesus is in Galilee speaking to his brothers. These verses tell about when this event occurred.

##### After these things

These words tell the reader that the writer will begin talking about a new event. "After he finished speaking with the disciples" (John 6:66-71) or "Some time later"

##### traveled

The reader should understand that Jesus is probably walking rather than riding on an animal or in a vehicle.

##### the Jews were seeking to kill him

Here "the Jews" is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders were making plans to kill him"

#### John 7:2

##### Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near

"Now the time for the festival of the Jews was near" or "Now it was almost time for the Jewish festival of Shelters"

#### John 7:3

##### brothers

This refers to the actual younger brothers of Jesus, the sons of Mary and Joseph.

##### the works that you do

The word "works" refers to the miracles that Jesus had performed.

#### John 7:4

##### he himself

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that emphasizes the word "he."

##### the world

Here "the world" is a metonym for all of the people in the world. Alternate translation: "all people" or "everyone"

#### John 7:5

##### For even his brothers did not believe in him

This sentence is a stop from the main story. Here John gives background information about the brothers of Jesus.

##### his brothers

All of Jesus's brothers were younger than he was. This can be made explicit in the translation as long as it does not suggest that Jesus also had older brothers. Alternate translation: "his younger brothers"

#### John 7:6

##### My time has not yet come

The word "time" is a metonym. Jesus is implying that it is not the right time for him to bring his ministry to a close. Alternate translation: "It is not the right time for me to end my work"

##### your time is always ready

"any time is good for you"

#### John 7:7

##### The world cannot hate you

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "The people in the world cannot hate you"

##### I testify about it that its works are evil

"I tell them that what they are doing is evil"

#### John 7:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his brothers.

##### my time has not yet been fulfilled

Here Jesus is implying that if he goes to Jerusalem, he will bring his work to an end. Alternate translation: "It is not the right time for me to go to Jerusalem"

#### John 7:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 7:10

##### General Information:

The setting of the story has changed. Jesus and his brothers are now at the festival.

##### when his brothers

All of Jesus's brothers were younger than he was. This can be made explicit in the translation as long as it does not suggest that Jesus also had older brothers. Alternate translation: "when his younger brothers"

##### he also went up

Jerusalem is at a higher elevation than Galilee where Jesus and his brothers were previously.

##### not publicly but in secret

These two phrases mean the same thing. The idea is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "very secretly"

#### John 7:11

##### The Jews were looking for him

Here the word "Jews"is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." The word "him" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders were looking for Jesus"

#### John 7:12

##### he leads the crowds astray

Here "leads ... astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "he deceives the people"

#### John 7:13

##### fear

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

##### the Jews

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche for the leaders of the Jews who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

#### John 7:14

##### General Information:

Jesus is now teaching the Jews in the temple.

#### John 7:15

##### How does this man know so much?

The remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize the Jewish leaders' surprise that Jesus has so much knowledge. Alternate translation: "It is amazing how much he knows about the scriptures!"

#### John 7:16

##### but is of him who sent me

"but comes from God, the one who sent me"

#### John 7:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

#### John 7:18

##### but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him

"when a person only seeks to honor the one who sent him, that person is speaking the truth. He does not lie"

#### John 7:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

##### Did not Moses give you the law?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "It was Moses who gave you the law"

##### keeps the law

"obeys the law"

##### Why do you seek to kill me?

Jesus questions the motives of the Jewish leaders who want to kill him for breaking the law of Moses. He implies that the leaders themselves do not keep that same Law. Alternate translation: "You break the Law yourselves and yet you want to kill me!"

#### John 7:20

##### You have a demon

"This shows that you are crazy, or maybe a demon is controlling you!"

##### Who seeks to kill you?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "No one is trying to kill you!"

#### John 7:21

##### one work

"one miracle" or "one sign"

##### you all marvel

"you all are shocked"

#### John 7:22

##### not that it is from Moses, but from the ancestors

Here John provides additional information about circumcision.

##### on the Sabbath you circumcise a man

Jesus implies that the act of circumcision also involves work. Alternate translation: "you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath. That is working too"

##### on the Sabbath

"on the Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 7:23

##### If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken

"If you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath so that you do not break the law of Moses"

##### why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "you should not be angry with me because I made a man completely well on the Sabbath!"

##### on the Sabbath

"on the Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 7:24

##### Do not judge according to appearance, but judge righteously

Jesus implies that the people should not decide what is right, based only on what they can see. Behind the action is a motive that cannot be seen. Alternate translation: "Stop judging people according to what you see! Be more concerned with what is right according to God"

#### John 7:25

##### Is not this the one they seek to kill?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "This is Jesus whom they are seeking to kill!"

#### John 7:26

##### they say nothing to him

This implies that the Jewish leaders are not opposing Jesus. Alternate translation: "they say nothing to oppose him"

##### It cannot be that the rulers indeed know that this is the Christ, can it?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Maybe they have decided that he is truly the Messiah!"

#### John 7:27

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 7:28

##### cried out

"spoke in a loud voice"

##### in the temple

Jesus and the people were actually in the courtyard of the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"

##### You both know me and know where I come from

John uses irony in this statement. The people believe that Jesus is from Nazareth. They do not know that God sent him from heaven and that he was born in Bethlehem. Alternate translation: "You all know me and you think you know where I come from"

##### of myself

"on my own authority." See how you translated "of himself" in John 5:19.

##### he who sent me is true

"God is the one who sent me and he is true"

#### John 7:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 7:30

##### his hour had not yet come

The word "hour" is a metonym that represents the right time for Jesus to be arrested, according to God's plan. Alternate translation: "it was not the right time to arrest him"

#### John 7:31

##### When the Christ comes, will he do more signs than what this one has done?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "When the Christ comes, surely he will not be able to do more signs than this man has done!"

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that prove that Jesus is the Christ.

#### John 7:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 7:33

##### I am still with you for a short amount of time

"I will remain with you for only a short period of time"

##### then I go to him who sent me

Here Jesus refers to God the Father, who sent him.

#### John 7:34

##### where I go, you will not be able to come

"you will not be able to come to the place where I am"

#### John 7:35

##### The Jews therefore said among themselves

The "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the leaders of the Jews who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said among themselves"

##### the dispersion

This refers to the Jews that were spread all across the Greek world, outside of Palestine.

#### John 7:36

##### What is this word that he said

This "word" is a metonym which stands for the meaning of the message that Jesus had shared, which the Jewish leaders had failed to understand. Alternate translation: "What is he talking about when he said"

#### John 7:37

##### General Information:

Some time has passed. It is now the last day of the festival and Jesus speaks to the crowd.

##### great day

It is "great" because it is the last, or most important, day of the festival.

##### If anyone is thirsty

Here the word "thirsty" is a metaphor that means one's great desire for the things of God, just as one "thirsts" for water. Alternate translation: "Anyone who desires the things of God like a thirsty man desires water"

##### let him come to me and drink

The word "drink" is a metaphor that means to receive the spiritual life that Jesus provides. Alternate translation: "let him come to me and quench his spiritual thirst"

#### John 7:38

##### He who believes in me, just as the scripture says

"As the scripture says about anyone who believes in me"

##### rivers of living water will flow

The "rivers of living water" is a metaphor that represents the life that Jesus provides for those who are spiritually "thirsty." Alternate translation: "spiritual life will flow like rivers of water"

##### living water

Possible meanings are 1) "water that gives life" or 2) "water that causes people to live."

##### from his belly

Here the belly represents the inside of a person, specifically the non-physical part of a person. Alternate translation: "from inside of him" or "from his heart"

#### John 7:39

##### General Information:

In this verse the author gives information to clarify what Jesus is talking about.

##### But he

Here "he" refers to Jesus.

##### the Spirit had not yet been given

John implies that the Spirit would later come to live in those who trusted Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Spirit had not yet come to live in the believers"

##### because Jesus was not yet glorified

Here the word "glorified" refers to the time when God would honor the Son after his death and resurrection.

#### John 7:40

##### This is indeed the prophet

By saying this, the people are indicating that they believe Jesus is the prophet like Moses that God had promised to send. Alternate translation: "This is indeed the prophet who is like Moses that we have been waiting for"

#### John 7:41

##### Does the Christ come from Galilee?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "The Christ cannot come from Galilee!"

#### John 7:42

##### Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "The scriptures teach that Christ will come from the line of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was!"

##### Have the scriptures not said ... was?

The scriptures are referred to as if they were actually speaking as a person speaks. Alternate translation: "Did the prophets not write in the scriptures ... was?" or "The prophets wrote in the scriptures ... was."

##### where David was

"where David lived"

#### John 7:43

##### So there arose a division in the crowds because of him

The crowds could not agree about who or what Jesus was.

#### John 7:44

##### but no one laid hands on him

To lay hands on someone is an idiom which means to grab him or to hold onto him. Alternate translation: "but no one grabbed him to arrest him"

#### John 7:45

##### the officers

"the temple guards"

#### John 7:46

##### Never has anyone spoken like this

The officers exaggerate to show how impressed they are by what Jesus said. You may need to make explicit that the officers were not claiming to know everything that every person in all times and places had ever said. Alternate translation: "We have never heard anyone say such amazing things as this man!"

#### John 7:47

##### So the Pharisees

"Because they said that, the Pharisees"

##### answered them

"answered the officers"

##### Have you also been deceived?

The remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. The Pharisees are shocked at the response of the officers. Alternate translation: "You have been deceived too!"

#### John 7:48

##### Have any of the rulers believed in him, or any of the Pharisees?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "None of the rulers or Pharisees have believed in him!"

#### John 7:49

##### the law

This is a reference to the law of the Pharisees and not the law of Moses.

##### But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed

"As for this crowd that does not know the law, God will cause them to perish!"

#### John 7:50

##### one of the Pharisees, who came to him earlier

John provides this information to remind us of who Nicodemus is. Your language may have a special way to mark background information.

#### John 7:51

##### Does our law judge a man ... what he does?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Our Jewish law does not allow us to judge a man ... what he does!"

##### Does our law judge a man ... does?

Here Nicodemus speaks of the law as if it were a person. If this is not natural in your language, you may translate it with a personal subject. Alternate translation: "Do we judge a man ... does?" or "We do not judge a man ... does."

#### John 7:52

##### Are you also from Galilee?

The Jewish leaders know that Nicodemus is not from Galilee. They ask this question as a way of scoffing at him. Alternate translation: "You must also be one of those inferior persons from Galilee!"

##### Search and see

This is an ellipsis. You may wish to include the information that does not appear. Alternate translation: "Search carefully and read what is written in the Scriptures"

##### no prophet comes from Galilee

This probably refers to the belief that Jesus was born in Galilee.

#### John 7:53

##### General Information:

The best early texts do not have 7:53-8:11. The ULB has set them apart in square brackets

## Chapter 8

# John 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Translators may wish to include a note at verse 1 to explain to the reader why they have chosen to translate or to not translate verses 8:1-11.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### A light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: light and darkness and righteous)

#### I AM

John records Jesus as saying these words four times in this book, three times in this chapter. They stand alone as a complete sentence, and they literally translate the Hebrew word for "I AM," by which Yahweh identified himself to Moses. For these reasons, many people believe that when Jesus said these words he was claiming to be Yahweh. (See: yahweh).

#### The Scribes and Pharisees' trap

The Scribes and Pharisees wanted to trick Jesus. They wanted him to say either that they should keep the law of Moses by killing a woman whom they had found committing adultery or that they should disobey the law of Moses and forgive her sin. Jesus knew that they were trying to trick him and that they did not really want to keep the law of Moses. He knew this because the law said that both the woman and the man should die, but they did not bring the man to Jesus. (See: adultery)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### John 8:1

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

##### Connecting Statement:

Verse 1 tells us where Jesus went at the end of the previous chapter.

#### John 8:2

##### all the people

This is a general way of speaking. It means "many people."

#### John 8:3

##### The scribes and the Pharisees brought

Here the phrase "the scribes and the Pharisees" is a synecdoche that represents some of the members of these two groups. Alternate translation: "Some scribes and Pharisees brought" or "Some men who taught the Jewish laws and some who were Pharisees brought"

##### a woman caught in the act of adultery

This is a passive statement. You may translate it in an active form. Alternate translation: "a woman whom they had found committing adultery"

#### John 8:4

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

#### John 8:5

##### such people

"people like that" or "people who do that"

##### what do you say about her?

"so you tell us. What should we do about her?"

#### John 8:6

##### to trap him

This means to use a trick question.

##### so that they might have something to accuse him about

What they would accuse him of can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "so that they could accuse him of saying something wrong" or "so that they could accuse him of not obeying the law of Moses or the Roman law"

#### John 8:7

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

##### When they continued

The word "they" refers to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### The one among you who has no sin

The abstract noun "sin" can be expressed with the verb sin. Alternate translation: "The one among you is has never sinned" or "If any one of you has never sinned"

##### let him

"let that person"

#### John 8:8

##### he stooped down

"he bent down"

#### John 8:9

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

##### one by one

"one after another"

#### John 8:10

##### Woman, where are your accusers

When Jesus called her "woman," he was not trying to make her feel insignificant. If people in your language group would think that he was doing that, this can be translated without the word "Woman."

#### John 8:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 8:12

##### General Information:

Jesus is speaking to a crowd near the treasury in the temple after either the events of [John 7:1-52]

##### I am the light of the world

Here the "light" is a metaphor for the revelation that comes from God. Alternate translation: "I am the one who gives light to the world"

##### the world

This is a metonym for the people. Alternate translation: "the people of the world"

##### he who follows me

This is an idiom that means "everyone who does what I teach" or "everyone who obeys me"

##### will not walk in the darkness

To "walk in darkness" is a metaphor for living a sinful life. Alternate translation: "will not live as if he were in the darkness of sin"

##### light of life

The "light of life" is a metaphor for the truth from God that gives spiritual life. Alternate translation: "truth that brings eternal life"

#### John 8:13

##### You testify about yourself

"You are just saying these things about yourself"

##### your testimony is not true

The Pharisees are implying that the witness of only one person is not true because it cannot be verified. Alternate translation: "you cannot be your own witness" or "what you say about yourself may not be true"

#### John 8:14

##### Even if I testify about myself

"Even if I say these things about myself"

#### John 8:15

##### the flesh

"human standards and the laws of men"

##### I judge no one

Possible meanings are 1) "I do not judge anyone yet" or 2) "I am not judging anyone now."

#### John 8:16

##### if I judge

Possible meanings are 1) "if I judge people" or 2) "whenever I judge people"

##### my judgment is true

Possible meanings are 1) "my judgment will be right" or 2) "my judgment is right."

##### I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me

Jesus, the Son of God, has authority because of his special relationship with his Father.

##### I am not alone

The implied information is that Jesus is not alone in his judgment. Alternate translation: "I am not alone in how I judge" or "I do not judge alone"

##### I am with the Father who sent me

The Father and the Son judge together. Alternate translation: "the Father who sent me also judges with me" or "the Father who sent me judges as I do"

##### the Father

This is an important title for God. If your language must state whose Father this is, you could say "my Father" since Jesus switches to that in the following verses.

#### John 8:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Pharisees and other people about himself.

##### Yes, and in your law

The word "Yes" shows that Jesus is adding to what he was saying before.

##### it is written

This is a passive phrase. You may translate it in an active form with a personal subject. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote"

##### the testimony of two men is true

The logic implied here is that one person can verify the words of another. Alternate translation: "if two men say the same thing, then people know it is true"

#### John 8:18

##### I am he who testifies about myself

Jesus testifies about himself. Alternate translation: "I give evidence to you about myself"

##### the Father who sent me testifies about me

The Father also testifies about Jesus. You could make it explicit that this means Jesus's testimony is true. Alternate translation: "my Father who sent me also brings evidence about me. So you should believe that what we tell you is true"

##### the Father

This is an important title for God. If your language must state whose Father this is, you could say "my Father" since Jesus switches to that in the following verses.

#### John 8:19

##### You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also

Jesus indicates that to know him is to also know the Father. Both Father and Son are God. "Father" is an important title for God.

##### my Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 8:20

##### General Information:

Here there is a break in Jesus's speaking where the author give us background information regarding where Jesus had been teaching. Some languages may require the information about the setting to be placed at the beginning of this part of the story in [John 8:12]

##### his hour had not yet come

The word "hour" is a metonym for the time for Jesus to die. Alternate translation: "it was not yet the right time for Jesus to die"

#### John 8:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd.

##### die in your sin

Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death. Alternate translation: "die while you are still sinful" or "you will die while you are sinning"

##### you cannot come

"you are not able to come"

#### John 8:22

##### The Jews said

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said" or "The Jewish authorities said"

#### John 8:23

##### You are from below

"You were born in this world"

##### I am from above

"I came from heaven"

##### You are of this world

"You belong to this world"

##### I am not of this world

"I do not belong to this world"

#### John 8:24

##### you will die in your sins

"you will die without God's forgiving your sins"

##### that I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus expects the people to understand that he is referring to what he already has already said about himself: "I am from above."

#### John 8:25

##### They said

The word "They" refers to the Jewish leaders (John 8:22).

#### John 8:26

##### these things I say to the world

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "these things I say to all the people"

#### John 8:27

##### the Father

This is a special title for God. Some languages may require the use of a possessive before the noun. Alternate translation: "his Father"

#### John 8:28

##### When you have lifted up

This refers to placing Jesus on the cross to kill him.

##### lifted up the Son of Man

Jesus used the title "Son of Man" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "lifted me, the Son of Man, up"

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

##### As the Father taught me, I speak these things

"I am only saying what my Father taught me to say." The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 8:29

##### He who sent me

The word "He" refers to God.

#### John 8:30

##### As Jesus was saying these things

"As Jesus spoke these words"

##### many believed in him

"many people trusted him"

#### John 8:31

##### remain in my word

This is an idiom that means "to obey Jesus." Alternate translation: "obey what I have said"

##### my disciples

"my followers"

#### John 8:32

##### the truth will set you free

This is personification. Jesus speaks of "the truth" as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "if you obey the truth, God will set you free"

##### the truth

This refers to what Jesus reveals about God. Alternate translation: "what is true about God"

#### John 8:33

##### how can you say, 'You will be set free'?

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the Jewish leaders' shock at what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "We do not need to be set free!"

#### John 8:34

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### is the slave of sin

Here the word "slave" is a metaphor. This implies that "sin" is like a master for the one who sins. Alternate translation: "is like a slave to sin"

#### John 8:35

##### in the house forever

Here "house" is a metonym for "family." Alternate translation: "as a permanent member of a family"

##### the son remains forever

This is an ellipsis. You may translate it by including the implied words. Alternate translation: "the son is a member of the family forever"

#### John 8:36

##### if the Son sets you free, you will be truly free

It is implied that Jesus is talking about freedom from sin, which is a metaphor for being able not to sin. Alternate translation: "if the Son sets you free, you will truly be able to refrain from sin"

##### if the Son sets you free

"Son" is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "If I, the Son, set you free"

#### John 8:37

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

##### my word has no place in you

Here "word" is a metonym for the "teachings" or "message" of Jesus, which the Jewish leaders do not accept. Alternate translation: "you do not accept my teachings" or "you do not allow my message to change your life"

#### John 8:38

##### I say what I have seen with my Father

"I am telling you about the things I saw when I was with my Father"

##### you also do what you heard from your father

The Jewish leaders do not understand that by "your father" Jesus is referring to the devil. Alternate translation: "you also continue doing what your father has told you to do"

#### John 8:39

##### father

forefather

#### John 8:40

##### Abraham did not do this

"Abraham never tried to kill anyone who told him the true revelation from God"

#### John 8:41

##### You do the works of your father

Jesus implies that their father is the devil. Alternate translation: "No! You are doing the things that your real father did"

##### We were not born in sexual immorality

Here the Jewish leaders imply that Jesus does not know who his real father is. Alternate translation: "We do not know about you, but we are not illegitimate children" or "We were all born from proper marriages"

##### we have one Father: God

Here the Jewish leaders claim God as their spiritual Father. This is an important title for God.

#### John 8:42

##### love

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

#### John 8:43

##### Why do you not understand my words?

Jesus is using this question mainly to rebuke the Jewish leaders for not listening to him. Alternate translation: "I will tell you why you do not understand what I say!"

##### It is because you cannot hear my words

Here "words" is a metonym for the "teachings" of Jesus. Alternate translation: "It is because you will not accept my teachings.

#### John 8:44

##### You are of your father, the devil

"You belong to your father, Satan"

##### the father of lies

Here "father" is a metaphor for the one who originates all lies. Alternate translation: "he is the one who created all lies in the beginning"

#### John 8:45

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

##### because I speak the truth

"because I tell you true things about God"

#### John 8:46

##### Which one of you convicts me of sin?

Jesus uses this question to emphasize that he has never sinned. Alternate translation: "None of you can show that I have ever sinned!"

##### If I speak the truth

"If I say things that are true"

##### why do you not believe me?

Jesus uses this question to scold the Jewish leaders for their unbelief. Alternate translation: "you have no reason for not believing in me!"

#### John 8:47

##### the words of God

Here "words" is a metonym for the "message" of God. Alternate translation: "the message of God" or "the truth that comes from God"

#### John 8:48

##### The Jews

The "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders"

##### Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?

The Jewish leaders use this question to accuse Jesus and to dishonor him. Alternate translation: "We are certainly right in saying that you are a Samaritan and that a demon lives in you!"

#### John 8:49

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 8:50

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues answering the Jews.

##### there is one seeking and judging

This refers to God.

#### John 8:51

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### keeps my word

Here "word" is a metonym for the "teachings" of Jesus. Alternate translation: "obeys my teachings" or "does what I say"

##### see death

This is an idiom that means to experience death. Here Jesus is referring to spiritual death. Alternate translation: "die spiritually"

#### John 8:52

##### Jews

Here "Jews" is a metonym for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jewish leaders"

##### If anyone keeps my word

"If anyone obeys my teaching"

##### taste death

This is an idiom that means to experience death. The Jewish leaders mistakenly assume that Jesus is speaking only about physical death. Alternate translation: "die"

#### John 8:53

##### You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you?

The Jewish leaders use this question to emphasize that Jesus is not greater than Abraham. Alternate translation: "You are certainly not greater than our father Abraham who indeed died!"

##### father

forefather

##### Who do you make yourself out to be?

The Jews use this question to rebuke Jesus for thinking that he is more important than Abraham. Alternate translation: "You should not think that you are so important!"

#### John 8:54

##### it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God

The word "Father" is an important title for God. No one knows God the Father like Jesus, the Son of God. Alternate translation: "it is my Father who honors me, and you say that he is your God"

#### John 8:55

##### keep his word

Here "word" is a metonym for what God says. Alternate translation: "I obey what he says to do"

#### John 8:56

##### my day

This is a metonym for what Jesus would accomplish during his life. Alternate translation: "what I would do during my life"

##### he saw it and was glad

"he foresaw my coming through God's revelation and he rejoiced"

#### John 8:57

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus speaking with the Jews in the temple, which began in John 8:12.

##### The Jews said to him

Here the "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said to him"

##### You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?

The Jewish leaders use this question to express their shock that Jesus claims to have seen Abraham. Alternate translation: "You are less than fifty years old. You could not have seen Abraham!"

#### John 8:58

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "before Abraham existed, I existed."

#### John 8:59

##### Then they picked up stones to throw at him

The Jewish leaders are outraged at what Jesus has said. Here it is implied that they wanted to kill him because he had made himself equal to God. Alternate translation: "Then they picked up stones to kill him because he claimed to be equal with God"

## Chapter 9

# John 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Who sinned?"

Many of the Jews of Jesus's time believed that if a person was blind or deaf or crippled, it was because he or his parents or someone in his family had sinned. This was not the teaching of the law of Moses. (See: sin and lawofmoses)

#### "He does not keep the Sabbath"

The Pharisees thought that Jesus was working, and so breaking the Sabbath, by making mud. (See: sabbath)

### Important metaphors in this chapter

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

#### Seeing and being blind

Jesus calls the Pharisees blind because they see that Jesus is able to heal blind people but they still do not believe that God sent him

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

#### John 9:1

##### General Information:

As Jesus and his disciples are walking along, they come across a blind man.

##### Now

This word shows that the author is about to describe a new event.

##### as Jesus passed by

Here "Jesus" is a synecdoche for Jesus and the disciples. Alternate translation: "as Jesus and his disciples passed by"

#### John 9:2

##### who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind?

This question reflects the ancient Jewish belief that sin caused all illnesses and other deformities. The rabbis also taught that it was possible for a baby to sin while still in the womb. Alternate translation: "Teacher, we know that sin causes a person to be blind. Whose sin caused this man to be born blind? Did this man himself sin, or was it his parents who sinned?"

#### John 9:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:4

##### We

This "We" includes both Jesus and the disciples he is talking to.

##### day ... Night

Here "day" and "night" are metaphors. Jesus is comparing the time when people can do God's work to daytime, the time when people normally work, and nighttime to when they cannot do God's work.

#### John 9:5

##### in the world

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "living among the people of this world"

##### the light of the world

Here "light" is a metaphor for the true revelation of God. Alternate translation: "the one who shows what is true, just as light allows people to see what is in the darkness"

#### John 9:6

##### made mud with the saliva

Jesus used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva. Alternate translation: "and used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva to make mud"

##### smeared the mud on his eyes

"smeared the mud on the man's eyes"

#### John 9:7

##### wash ... washed

You may need to make explicit that Jesus wanted him to wash the mud off of his eyes in the pool and that that is what the man did.

##### which is translated "Sent"

A brief stop occurs here in the story. Here John explains to his readers what "Siloam" means. Alternate translation: "which means 'Sent'"

#### John 9:8

##### Is not this the man that used to sit and beg?

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the surprise of the people. Alternate translation: "This man is the one who used to sit and beg!"

#### John 9:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:10

##### Connecting Statement:

The neighbors of the man who had been blind continue to speak to him.

##### Then how were your eyes opened?

"Then what caused you to be able to see?" or "How is it that you can see now?"

#### John 9:11

##### smeared it on my eyes

"used his fingers to cover my eyes with mud." See how you translated a similar phrase in John 9:6.

#### John 9:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:13

##### They brought the man who used to be blind to the Pharisees

The people insisted that the man go with them to the Pharisees. They did not physically force him to go.

#### John 9:14

##### General Information:

This verse tells background information about when Jesus healed the man.

##### Sabbath day

"Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 9:15

##### Then again the Pharisees asked him

"So the Pharisees also asked him"

#### John 9:16

##### he does not keep the Sabbath

This means Jesus does not obey the law about doing no work on the Jewish Day of Rest.

##### How can a man who is a sinner do such signs?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that Jesus's signs prove he is not a sinner. Alternate translation: "A sinner can not do such signs!"

##### signs

This is another word for miracles. "Signs" give evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 9:17

##### He is a prophet

"I think he is a prophet"

#### John 9:18

##### General Information:

Here John stops the main story. Here here provides background information about the Jews' disbelief.

##### Now the Jews still did not believe

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Now the Jewish leaders still did not believe"

#### John 9:19

##### They asked the parents

"They" refers to the Jewish leaders.

#### John 9:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:21

##### he is an adult

"he is a man" or "he is no longer a child"

#### John 9:22

##### General Information:

In this verse there is a stop from the main story. Here John provides background information about the man's parents being afraid of the Jews.

##### they were afraid of the Jews

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of what the Jewish leaders might do to them"

##### afraid

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to oneself or others.

##### would confess him to be the Christ

"would say that Jesus is the Christ"

##### he would be thrown out of the synagogue

Here "be thrown out of the synagogue" is a metaphor for no longer being allowed to go into the synagogue and no longer belonging to the group of people who attend services at the synagogue. Alternate translation: "he would not be allowed to go into the synagogue" or "he would no longer belong to the synagogue"

#### John 9:23

##### He is an adult

"he is a man" or "he is no longer a child." See how you translated this in John 9:21.

#### John 9:24

##### they called the man

Here, "they" refers to the Jews. (John 9:18)

##### Give glory to God

This is an idiom that people used when taking an oath. Alternate translation: "In the presence of God, tell the truth" or "Speak the truth before God"

##### this man

This refers to Jesus.

#### John 9:25

##### that man

This refers to the man who had been blind.

#### John 9:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The Jews continue to speak to the man who had been blind.

#### John 9:27

##### Why do you want to hear it again?

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the man's amazement that the Jewish leaders have asked him to tell them again what happened. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that you want to hear again what happened to me!"

##### You do not want to become his disciples too, do you?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add irony to the man's statement. He knows that the Jewish leaders do not want to follow Jesus. Here he ridicules them. Alternate translation: "It sounds like you also want to become his disciples!"

#### John 9:28

##### You are his disciple

"You are following Jesus!"

##### but we are disciples of Moses

The pronoun "we" is exclusive. The Jewish leaders are speaking only of themselves. Alternate translation: "but we are following Moses"

#### John 9:29

##### We know that God has spoken to Moses

"We are sure that God has spoken to Moses"

##### we do not know where this one is from

Here the Jewish leaders are referring to Jesus. They imply that he has no authority to call disciples. Alternate translation: "we do not know where he comes from or where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:30

##### that you do not know where he is from

The man is surprised that the Jewish leaders question Jesus's authority when they know he has the power to heal. Alternate translation: "that you do not know where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:31

##### does not listen to sinners ... he listens to him

"does not answer the prayers of sinners ... God answers his prayers"

#### John 9:32

##### Connecting Statement:

The man who had been blind continues speaking to the Jews.

##### Since the world began

"Since the beginning of time" or "As far back as anyone can remember"

##### it has never been heard that anyone opened

This is a passive statement. You can translate it in an active form. Alternate translation: "no one has ever heard of anyone who healed a man who was blind from birth"

#### John 9:33

##### If this man were not from God, he could do nothing

This sentence uses a double negative pattern. Alternate translation: "Only a man from God could do something like that"

#### John 9:34

##### You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. It also implies that the man was born blind because of the sins of his parents. Alternate translation: "You were born as a result of your parents' sins. You are not qualified to teach us!"

##### they threw him out

"they threw him out of the synagogue"

#### John 9:35

##### General Information:

Jesus finds the man whom he healed ([John 9:1-7](./01.md)) and begins to speak to him and the crowd.

##### believe in the Son of Man

This means to "believe in Jesus," to believe that he is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and live in a way that honors him.

##### the Son of Man

Here the reader needs to understand that Jesus was speaking as if "the Son of Man" were another person. The man who had been born blind did not realize that Jesus was speaking of himself when he spoke of "the Son of Man." You should translate so that the man does not learn that Jesus is the Son of Man until verse 37.

#### John 9:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:37

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:38

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 9:39

##### came into this world

The "world" is a metonym for "the people who live in the world." Alternate translation: "came to live among the people of this world"

##### so that those who do not see may see

Here "seeing" is a metaphor for being able to understand spiritual things. Alternate translation: "so that those who do not see spiritually may see spiritually"

##### so that those who see

When Jesus speaks here of those that see, he is speaking of those who think that they understand spiritual things. Alternate translation: "so that those who think that they see spiritually"

##### may become blind

Here "blind" is a metaphor for not being able to understand spiritual things. Alternate translation: "may never see spiritually"

#### John 9:40

##### and asked him, "Are we also blind?"

Here "blind" is a metaphor for not understanding spiritual things. The Pharisees do not believe that they are spiritually blind, but they realize that Jesus might saying that they are spiritually blind, so they use this question to challenge him. Alternate translation: "and said to him, 'Are you saying that we are blind?'" or "and said to him, 'You seem to be saying that we, too, are blind.'"

#### John 9:41

##### If you were blind, you would have no sin

Blindness is a metaphor for not understanding spiritual things, and having sin is a metonym for being guilty of sin. Alternate translation: "If you truly were spiritually blind, you would not be guilty of your sin"

##### but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains

Here "seeing" is a metaphor for understanding spiritual things, and "sin remaining" is a metonym for continuing to be guilty of one's sin. Alternate translation: "but since you think that you understand spiritual truth, you remain guilty of your sin"

## Chapter 10

# John 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Blasphemy

When a person claims that he is God or that God has told him to speak when God has not told him to speak, this is called blasphemy. The law of Moses commanded the Israelites to kill blasphemers by stoning them to death. When Jesus said, "I and the Father are one," the Jews thought he was blaspheming, so they took up stones to kill him. (See: blasphemy and lawofmoses)

### Important metaphors in this chapter

#### Sheep

Jesus spoke of people as sheep because sheep do not see well, they do not think well, they often walk away from those who care for them, and they cannot defend themselves when other animals attack them. God's people also rebel against him and do not know when they are doing wrong.

#### Sheep pen

A sheep pen was a space with a stone wall around it in which shepherds would keep their sheep. Once they were inside the sheep pen, the sheep could not run away, and animals and thieves could not easily get inside to kill or steal them.

#### Laying down and taking up life

Jesus speaks of his life as if it were a physical object that he could lay down on the ground, a metaphor for dying, or pick up again, a metaphor for becoming alive again.

#### John 10:1

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to speak in parables.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to the Pharisees. This is the same part of the story which began in John 9:35.

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### sheep pen

This is a fenced area where a shepherd keeps his sheep.

##### a thief and a robber

This is the use of two words with similar meanings to add emphasis.

#### John 10:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 10:3

##### The gatekeeper opens for him

"The gatekeeper opens the gate for the shepherd"

##### The gatekeeper

This is a hired man who watches the gate of the sheep pen at night while the shepherd is away.

##### The sheep hear his voice

"The sheep hear the shepherd's voice"

#### John 10:4

##### he goes ahead of them

"he walks in front of them"

##### for they know his voice

"because they recognize his voice"

#### John 10:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 10:6

##### they did not understand

Possible meanings: 1) "the disciples did not understand" or 2) "the crowd did not understand."

##### this parable

This is an illustration from the work of shepherds, using metaphors. The "shepherd" is a metaphor for Jesus. The "sheep" represent those who follow Jesus, and the "strangers" are the Jewish leaders, including the Pharisees, who try to deceive the people.

#### John 10:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parables he had spoken.

##### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### I am the gate of the sheep

Here "gate" is a metaphor that means Jesus provides access into the sheepfold where God's people dwell in his presence. Alternate translation: "I am like the gate that the sheep use to enter into the sheepfold"

#### John 10:8

##### Everyone who came before me

This refers to other teachers who have taught the people, including the Pharisees and other Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "All of the teachers who came without my authority"

##### a thief and a robber

These words are metaphors. Jesus calls those teachers "a thief and a robber" because their teachings were false, and they were trying to lead God's people while not understanding the truth. As a result, they deceived the people.

#### John 10:9

##### I am the gate

Here "gate" is a metaphor. By referring to himself as "the gate," Jesus is showing that he offers a true way to enter the kingdom of God. Alternate translation: "I myself am like that gate"

##### pasture

The word "pasture" means a grassy area where sheep eat.

#### John 10:10

##### does not come except to steal and kill and destroy

In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "comes only to steal, kill, and destroy"

##### steal and kill and destroy

Here the implied metaphor is "sheep," which represents God's people. Alternate translation: "steal and kill and destroy the sheep"

##### so that they will have life

The word "they" refers to the sheep. "Life" refers to eternal life. Alternate translation: "so that they will really live, lacking nothing"

#### John 10:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his parable about the good shepherd.

##### I am the good shepherd

Here "good shepherd" is a metaphor that represents Jesus. Alternate translation: "I am like a good shepherd"

##### lays down his life

To lay down something means to give up control of it. To lay down one's life is a mild way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: "dies"

#### John 10:12

##### The hired servant

The "hired servant" is a metaphor that represents the Jewish leaders and teachers. Alternate translation: "The one who is like a hired servant"

##### abandons the sheep

Here the word "sheep" is a metaphor that represents God's people. Like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:13

##### does not care for the sheep

Here the word "sheep" is a metaphor that represents God's people. Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers are like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, and they do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:14

##### I am the good shepherd

Here the "good shepherd" is a metaphor for Jesus. Alternate translation: "I am like a good shepherd"

#### John 10:15

##### The Father knows me, and I know the Father

God the Father and God the Son know each other unlike anyone else knows them. "Father" is an important title for God.

##### I lay down my life for the sheep

This is a mild way for Jesus to say that he will die to protect his sheep. Alternate translation: "I die for the sheep"

#### John 10:16

##### I have other sheep

Here "other sheep" is a metaphor for followers of Jesus who are not Jews.

##### one flock and one shepherd

Here "flock" and "shepherd" are metaphors. All of Jesus's followers, Jews and non-Jews, will be like one flock of sheep. He will be like a shepherd who cares for all of them.

#### John 10:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

##### This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life

God's eternal plan was for God the Son to give his life to pay for the sins of humanity. Jesus's death on the cross reveals the intense love of the Son for the Father and of the Father for the Son.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

##### I lay down my life so that I may take it again

This is a mild way for Jesus to say he will die and then will become alive again. Alternate translation: "I allow myself to die in order that I may bring myself back to life"

#### John 10:18

##### I lay it down of myself

The reflexive pronoun "myself" is used here to emphasize that Jesus lays down his own life. No one takes it from him. Alternate translation: "I myself lay it down"

##### I have received this command from my Father

"This is what my Father has commanded me to do." The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 10:19

##### Connecting Statement:

These verses tell how the Jews responded to what Jesus had said.

#### John 10:20

##### Why do you listen to him?

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize the point that the people should not listen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not listen to him!"

#### John 10:21

##### Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Certainly a demon cannot cause a blind man to see!" or "Certainly a demon cannot give sight to blind people!"

#### John 10:22

##### General Information:

During the Festival of Dedication, some Jews begin to question Jesus. Verses 22 and 23 give background information about the setting of the story.

##### It was winter

Winter is the coldest time of the year. You may use your language's term for the coldest season if your reader understands that in Israel this was in December, not in June.

##### Festival of the Dedication

This is an eight-day winter holiday Jews use to remember a miracle where God made a small amount of oil remain lit in a lampstand for eight days. They lit the lampstand to dedicate the Jewish temple to God. To dedicate something is to promise to use it for a special purpose.

#### John 10:23

##### Jesus was walking in the temple

The area where Jesus was walking was actually a courtyard that was outside the temple building. Alternate translation: "Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard"

##### porch

This is a structure attached to the entrance of a building; it has a roof and it may or may not have walls.

#### John 10:24

##### Then the Jews surrounded him

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Then the Jewish leaders surrounded him"

##### hold us doubting

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "keep us wondering" or "keep us from knowing for sure"

#### John 10:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to respond to the Jews.

##### in the name of my Father

Here "name" is a metonym for the power of God. Here "Father" is an important title for God. Jesus performed miracles through his Father's power and authority. Alternate translation: "through my Father's power" or "with my Father's power"

##### these testify concerning me

His miracles offer proof about him like a person who testifies would offer proof in a court of law. Alternate translation: "these offer proof concerning me"

#### John 10:26

##### not my sheep

The word "sheep" is a metaphor for the followers of Jesus. Alternate translation: "not my followers" or "not my disciples"

#### John 10:27

##### My sheep hear my voice

The word "sheep" is a metaphor for the followers of Jesus. The metaphor of Jesus as the "shepherd" is also implied. Alternate translation: "Just as sheep obey the voice of their true shepherd, my followers heed my voice"

#### John 10:28

##### no one will snatch them out of my hand

Here the word "hand" is a metonym that represents the protective care of Jesus. Alternate translation: "no one will steal them away from me" or "they will remain secure forever in my care"

#### John 10:29

##### My Father, who has given them to me

The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### snatch them out of the hand of the Father

The word "hand" is a metonym that represents God's possession and protective care. Alternate translation: "steal them from my Father"

#### John 10:30

##### I and the Father are one

Here "are one" means they are completely united and alike. It does not mean they are the same person. Alternate translation: "I and the Father are completely united" or "I and the Father are exactly alike"

##### Father

The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 10:31

##### Then the Jews took up stones again

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Then the Jewish leaders started picking up stones again"

#### John 10:32

##### Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father

Jesus performed the miracles by the power of God. The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### For which of those works are you stoning me?

This question uses irony. Jesus knows the Jewish leaders do not want to stone him because he has done good works.

#### John 10:33

##### The Jews answered him

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish opponents replied" or "The Jewish leaders answered him"

##### making yourself God

"claiming to be God"

#### John 10:34

##### Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods"'?

Jesus uses a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders should know that this is written in scripture. Alternate translation: "You should already know that it is written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods."'"

##### You are gods

Here Jesus quotes a scripture where God calls his followers "gods," perhaps because he has chosen them to represent him on earth.

#### John 10:35

##### the word of God came

Jesus speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: "God spoke his message"

##### the scripture cannot be broken

Possible meanings are 1) "no one can change the scripture" or 2) "the scripture will always be true."

#### John 10:36

##### do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'?

Jesus used this question to rebuke his opponents for saying that he was blaspheming when he called himself "the Son of God." Alternate translation: "you should not say to the very one whom the Father set apart to send into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' when I say that I am the Son of God!"

##### You are blaspheming

"You are insulting God." Jesus's opponents understood that when said that he is the Son of God, he was implying that he is equal with God.

##### Father ... Son of God

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### John 10:37

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Jews.

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

##### believe me

Here the word "believe" means to accept or trust what Jesus said is true.

#### John 10:38

##### believe in the works

Here "believe in" is to acknowledge that the works Jesus does are from the Father.

##### the Father is in me and that I am in the Father

These are idioms that express the close personal relationship between God and Jesus. Alternate translation: "my Father and I are completely joined together as one"

#### John 10:39

##### went away out of their hand

The word "hand" is a metonym that represents the custody or possession of the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "got away from them again"

#### John 10:40

##### beyond the Jordan

Jesus had been on the west side of the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "to the east side of the Jordan River"

##### he stayed there

Jesus remained on the east side of Jordan for a short period of time. Alternate translation: "Jesus stayed there for several days"

#### John 10:41

##### John indeed did no signs, but all the things that John has said about this man are true

"It is true that John did no signs, but he certainly did speak the truth about this man, who does signs."

##### signs

These are miracles that prove that something is true or that give someone credibility.

#### John 10:42

##### believed in

Here "believed in" means accepted or trusted what Jesus said was true.

## Chapter 20

# John 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([John 20:1](../../jhn/20/01.md)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

#### "Receive the Holy Spirit"

If your language uses the same word for "breath" and "spirit," be sure that the reader understands that Jesus was performing a symbolic action by breathing, and that what the disciples received was the Holy Spirit, not Jesus's breath. (See: and holyspirit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Rabboni

John used Greek letters to describe the sound of the word, and then he explained that it means "Teacher." You should do the same, using the letters of your language.

#### Jesus's resurrection body

No one is sure what Jesus's body looked like after he became alive again. His disciples knew it was Jesus because they could see his face and touch the places where the soldiers had put the nails through his hands and feet, But he could also walk through solid walls and doors. It is best not to try to say more than what the ULB says.

#### Two angels in white

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](../../mat/28/01.md) and [Mark 16:5](../../mrk/16/05.md) and [Luke 24:4](../../luk/24/04.md) and [John 20:12](../../jhn/20/12.md))

#### John 20:1

##### General Information:

This is the third day after Jesus was buried.

##### first day of the week

"Sunday"

##### she saw the stone rolled away

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "she saw that someone had rolled away the stone"

#### John 20:2

##### disciple whom Jesus loved

This phrase appears to be the way that John refers to himself throughout his book. Here the word "love" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### They took away

The author uses the word "they" here to show that Mary Magdalene did not know who took the Lord away. She was probably thinking of the Jews or Romans, but it would be best to translate using your language's way of leaving the actor or actors unknown.

##### the Lord ... laid him

These words are metonyms for Jesus's dead body. Alternate translation: "the Lord's dead body ... laid it"

#### John 20:3

##### the other disciple

John apparently shows his humility by referring to himself here as "the other disciple," rather than including his name.

#### John 20:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 20:5

##### linen cloths

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus.

#### John 20:6

##### linen cloths

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus. See how you translated this in John 20:5.

#### John 20:7

##### cloth that had been on his head

Here "his head" refers to "Jesus's head." You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "cloth that someone had used to cover Jesus's face"

##### but was folded up in a place by itself

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but someone had folded it and put it aside, separate from the linen cloths"

#### John 20:8

##### the other disciple

John apparently expresses his humility by referring to himself as "the other disciple," rather than including his name in this book.

##### he saw and believed

Until he saw that the tomb was empty, he did not believe that Jesus had risen from the dead, but when he saw that the tomb was empty, he did believe. Alternate translation: "he saw these things and now believed that Jesus had risen from the dead"

#### John 20:9

##### they still did not know the scripture

These words refer to the disciples. Possible meanings are 1) they did not know that that scripture exists or 2) they did not understand that that scripture said that Jesus would come alive again.

##### rise

become alive again

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

#### John 20:10

##### went back home again

The disciples continued to stay in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "went back to where they were staying in Jerusalem"

#### John 20:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 20:12

##### She saw two angels in white

The angels were wearing white clothing. Alternate translation: "She saw two angels dressed in white clothing"

#### John 20:13

##### They said to her

"They asked her"

##### Because they took away my Lord, and I do not know where they have put him

The words "my Lord" here are a metonym for the Lord's body. Alternate translation: "Because they took away the body of my Lord, and I do not know where they have put it"

#### John 20:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 20:15

##### Jesus said to her

"Jesus asked her"

##### if you have taken him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him away

Here the word "him" is a metonym that refers to Jesus's dead body. Alternate translation: "if you have taken his dead body away, tell me where you have put it, and I will take it away"

#### John 20:16

##### Rabboni

The word "Rabboni" means "teacher" in Aramaic.

##### Aramaic

This was the language that the Jews in Judea spoke among themselves. Some translations say "Hebrew," following the form of the Greek word.

#### John 20:17

##### brothers

Jesus used the word "brothers" to refer to his disciples.

##### I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God

Jesus rose from the dead and then predicted he would go up into heaven, back to his Father, who is God. Alternate translation: "I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God"

##### my Father and your Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God, and between believers and God.

#### John 20:18

##### Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples

Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were staying and told them what she had seen and heard. Alternate translation: "Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were and told them"

#### John 20:19

##### General Information:

It is now evening and Jesus appears to the disciples.

##### that day, the first day of the week

This refers to Sunday.

##### the doors being locked where the disciples were

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the disciples had locked the doors where they were"

##### for fear of the Jews

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who might arrest the disciples. Alternate translation: "because they were afraid that the Jewish leaders might arrest them"

##### Peace to you

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

#### John 20:20

##### he showed them his hands and his side

Jesus showed the disciples his wounds. Alternate translation: "he showed them the wounds in his hands and his side"

#### John 20:21

##### Peace to you

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace."

##### Father

This is an important title for God.

#### John 20:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 20:23

##### they are forgiven

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive them"

##### whoever's sins you keep back

"If you do not forgive another's sins"

##### they are kept back

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive them"

#### John 20:24

##### Didymus

This is a male name that means "twin." See how this name is translated in [John 11:15]

#### John 20:25

##### disciples later said to him

The word "him" refers to Thomas.

##### Unless I see ... his side, I will not believe

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I will believe only if I see ... his side"

##### in his hands ... into his side

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

#### John 20:26

##### his disciples

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

##### while the doors were closed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "when they had locked the doors"

##### Peace to you

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

#### John 20:27

##### Do not be unbelieving, but believe

Jesus uses the double negative "Do not be unbelieving" to emphasize the words that follow, "but believe." If your language does not allow double negatives or the reader would not understand that Jesus is emphasizing the words that follow, you can leave these words untranslated. Alternate translation: "This is what is most important for you to do: you must believe"

##### believe

Here "believe" means to trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: "put your trust in me"

#### John 20:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### John 20:29

##### you have believed

Thomas believes that Jesus is alive because he has seen him. Alternate translation: "you have believed that I am alive"

##### Blessed are those

This means "God gives great happiness to those."

##### who have not seen

This means those who have not seen Jesus. Alternate translation: "who have not seen me alive"

#### John 20:30

##### General Information:

As the story is nearing the end, the author comments about the many things Jesus did.

##### signs

The word "signs" refers to miracles that show that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

##### signs that have not been written in this book

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "signs that the author did not write about in this book"

#### John 20:31

##### but these have been written

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "but the author wrote about these signs"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### life in his name

Here "life" is a metonym that means Jesus gives life. Alternate translation: "you may have life because of Jesus"

##### life

This refers to spiritual life.

## Chapter 1

# Acts 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter records an event, commonly known as the "Ascension," when Jesus returned to heaven after he became alive again. He will not come back until he returns at his "second coming." (See: heaven and resurrection)

The UDB has set the words "Dear Theophilus" apart from the other words. This is because English speakers often start letters this way. You might want to start this book the way people start letters in your culture.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the two quotes from Psalms in 1:20.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Baptize

The word "baptize" has two meanings in this chapter. It refers to the water baptism of John and to the baptism of the Holy Spirit ([Acts 1:5](../../act/01/05.md)). (See: baptize)

#### "He spoke about the kingdom of God"

Some scholars believe that when Jesus "spoke about the kingdom of God," he explained to the disciples why the kingdom of God did not come before he died. Others believe that the kingdom of God did begin while Jesus was alive and that here Jesus was explaining that it was beginning in a new form.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

#### Akeldama

This is a phrase in Hebrew or Aramaic. Luke used Greek letters so his readers would know how it sounded, and then he told what it means. You should probably spell it the way it sounds in your language and then explain the meaning.

#### Acts 1:1

##### The former account I wrote

The "former account" is the Gospel of Luke.

##### Theophilus

Luke wrote this book to a man named Theophilus. Some translations follow their own culture's way of addressing a letter and write "Dear Theophilus" at the beginning of the sentence. Theophilus means "friend of God"

#### Acts 1:2

##### until the day that he was taken up

This refers to Jesus's ascension into heaven. Alternate translation: "until the day on which God took him up to heaven" or "until the day that he ascended into heaven"

##### he had given commands through the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit had led Jesus to instruct his apostles on certain things.

#### Acts 1:3

##### After his suffering

This refers to Jesus's suffering and death on the cross.

##### he presented himself alive to them

Jesus appeared to his apostles and to many other disciples.

#### Acts 1:4

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Jesus. Except where otherwise noted, the word "you" in the book of Acts is plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the 40 days that Jesus appeared to his followers after he had risen from the dead.

##### When he was meeting together with them

"When Jesus was meeting together with his apostles"

##### the promise of the Father, about which he said

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised to send, about whom Jesus said"

#### Acts 1:5

##### John indeed baptized with water ... baptized with the Holy Spirit

Jesus contrasts how John baptized people in water with how God would baptize believers in the Holy Spirit.

##### John indeed baptized with water

"John indeed baptized people with water"

##### you will be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will baptize you"

#### Acts 1:6

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel

"will you now make Israel a great kingdom again"

#### Acts 1:7

##### the times or the seasons

Possible meanings are 1) the words "times" and "seasons" refer to different kinds of time. Alternate translation: "the general period of time or the specific date" or 2) the two words are basically synonymous. Alternate translation: "the exact time"

#### Acts 1:8

##### you will receive power ... and you will be my witnesses

The apostles will receive power that will enable them to be witnesses for Jesus. Alternate translation: "God will empower you ... to be my witnesses"

##### to the ends of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) "all over the world" or 2) "to the places on earth that are farthest away"

#### Acts 1:9

##### as they were looking up

"as they watched." The apostles "were looking" at Jesus because Jesus rose into the sky. Alternate translation: "as they were looking up at the sky"

##### he was raised up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he rose up into the sky" or "God raised him up into the sky"

##### a cloud hid him from their eyes

"a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him"

#### Acts 1:10

##### looking intensely to heaven

"staring at the sky" or "gazing at the sky"

#### Acts 1:11

##### of Galilee

"from Galilee"

##### will return in the same manner

Jesus ascended into the sky, through the clouds, and the clouds hid him [Acts 1:9](./09.md). He will return from the sky, through (or on) the clouds, and people will be able to see him.

#### Acts 1:12

##### Then they returned

"The apostles returned"

##### a Sabbath day's journey

This refers to the distance which, according to Rabbinical tradition, a person was allowed to walk on a Sabbath day. Alternate translation: "about one kilometer away"

#### Acts 1:13

##### When they arrived

"When they reached their destination." Verse 12 says they were returning to Jerusalem.

##### the upper chamber

"the room on the upper level of the house"

#### Acts 1:14

##### They all were devoted ... to prayer

They all spent much time ... praying

##### with one purpose

The phrase "with one purpose" translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 1:15

##### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the time that Peter and the other believers were staying together in the upper room.

##### In those days

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story. They refer to the period of time after Jesus ascended. On many days after Jesus ascended, the disciples met in the upper chamber. Alternate translation: "During that time"

##### 120 names

"one hundred and twenty names"

##### names

The word "names" is a metonym for the people whose names they were. Alternate translation: "people"

##### in the midst of the brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers and includes both men and women.

#### Acts 1:16

##### it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that we read about in scripture had to take place"

##### by the mouth of David

The word "mouth" refers to the words that David wrote. Alternate translation: "through the words of David"

#### Acts 1:17

##### General Information:

Although Peter is addressing the entire group of people, here the word "us" refers only to the apostles.

##### Connecting Statement:

In verse 17 Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

#### Acts 1:18

##### General Information:

The author begins to tell the reader background information about how Judas died and what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech.

##### Now this man

The words "this man" refers to Judas Iscariot.

##### the earnings he received for his wickedness

"the money that he earned from the evil thing that he did." The words "his wickedness" refer to Judas Iscariot's betraying Jesus to the people who killed him.

##### there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out

This suggests that Judas fell from a high place, rather than just falling down. The fall was severe enough to cause his body to burst open. Other passages of scripture mention that he hanged himself.

#### Acts 1:19

##### General Information:

The author finishes telling the reader background information about how Judas died and what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech.

##### Field of Blood

When the people living in Jerusalem heard of the way in which Judas died, they renamed the field.

#### Acts 1:20

##### General Information:

Based on the situation with Judas that Peter just recounted, he recalls two Psalms of David that relate to the incident. The quote ends at the end of this verse.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### For it is written in the Book of Psalms

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For David wrote in the Book of Psalms"

##### Let his field be made desolate, and do not let even one person live there

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words.

##### Let his field be made desolate

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "field" refers to the field where Judas died or 2) that the word "field" refers to Judas's dwelling place and is a metaphor for his family line.

##### be made desolate

"become empty"

#### Acts 1:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the apostles and does not include the audience to whom Peter is speaking.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### It is necessary, therefore

Based on the scriptures that he quoted and on what Judas had done, Peter tells the group what they must do.

##### the Lord Jesus went in and out among us

Going in and out among a group of people is a metaphor for openly being part of that group. Alternate translation: "the Lord Jesus lived among us"

#### Acts 1:22

##### beginning from the baptism of John ... become a witness with us of his resurrection

The qualification for the new apostle that began with the words "It is necessary ... that one of the men who accompanied us" in verse 21 ends here. The subject of the verb "become" is thus "one of the men." Here is a reduced form of the sentence: "It is necessary ... that one of the men who accompanied us ... beginning from the baptism of John ... must become a witness with us."

##### beginning from the baptism of John

The noun "baptism" can be translated as a verb. Possible meanings: 1) "beginning from when John baptized Jesus" or 2) "beginning from when John baptized people"

##### to the day that he was taken up from us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven" or "until the day that God took him up from us"

##### become a witness with us of his resurrection

"must begin to testify with us about his resurrection"

#### Acts 1:23

##### They put forward two men

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers who were present. Alternate translation: "They proposed two men who fulfilled the requirements that Peter listed"

##### Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus

This can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Joseph, whom people also called Barsabbas and Justus"

#### Acts 1:24

##### They prayed and said

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers, but it was probably one of the apostles who spoke these words. Alternate translation: "The believers prayed together and one of the apostles said"

##### You, Lord, know the hearts of all people

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: "You, Lord, know the thoughts and motives of everyone"

#### Acts 1:25

##### to take the place in this ministry and apostleship

Here the word "apostleship" defines what kind of "ministry" this is. Alternate translation: "to take Judas's place in this apostolic ministry" or "to take Judas's place in serving as an apostle"

##### from which Judas turned away

Here the expression "turned away" means that Judas stopped performing this ministry. Alternate translation: "which Judas stopped fulfilling"

##### to go to his own place

This phrase refers to Judas's death and likely to his judgment after death. Alternate translation: "to go where he belongs"

#### Acts 1:26

##### They cast lots for them

The apostles cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias.

##### the lot fell to Matthias

The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas.

##### he was numbered with the eleven apostles

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the believers considered him to be an apostle with the other eleven"

## Chapter 2

# Acts 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:17-21, 25-28, and 34-35.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 2:31.

The events described in this chapter are commonly called "Pentecost." Many people believe that the church began to exist when the Holy Spirit came to live inside believers at Pentecost.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Tongues

The word "tongues" has two meanings in this chapter. Luke describes what came down from heaven (Acts 2:3](../../act/02/03.md)) as tongues that looked like fire. This is different from "a tongue of flame," which is a fire that looks like a tongue. Luke also uses the word "tongues" to describe the languages that the people spoke after the Holy Spirit filled them ([Acts 2:4).

#### Last days

No one knows for sure when the "last days" ([Acts 2:17](../../act/02/17.md)) began. Your translation should not say more than the ULB does about this. (See: lastday)

#### Baptize

The word "baptize" in this chapter refers to Christian baptism (Acts 2:38-41). Though the event described in [Acts 2:1-11](./01.md) is the baptism of the Holy Spirit that Jesus promised in [Acts 1:5](../../act/01/05.md), the word "baptize" here does not refer to that event. (See: baptize)

#### The prophecy of Joel

Many of the things that Joel said would happen did happen on the day of Pentecost (Acts 2:17-18), but some things Joel spoke of have not happened yet (Acts 2:19-20). (See: prophet)

#### Wonders and signs

These words refer to things that only God could do, things that showed that Jesus was who the disciples said he was.

#### Acts 2:1

##### General Information:

This is a new event; it is now the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Passover. Here the word "they" refers to the apostles and the other 120 believers that Luke mentions in Acts 1:15.

#### Acts 2:2

##### Suddenly

This word explains that no one expected to hear the sound or to have it fill the house.

##### a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven

Possible meanings are 1) "heaven" refers to the place where God lives. Alternate translation: "a sound came from heaven" or 2) "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sound came from the sky"

##### the whole house

This may have been a house or a larger building.

#### Acts 2:3

##### There appeared to them tongues like fire

These might have been something that looked like tongues or like fire, not actual tongues or fire. Possible meanings are 1) tongues that looked like they were made of fire or 2) small flames of fire that looked like tongues. When fire burns in a small space, such as on a lamp, the flame can be shaped like a tongue.

##### that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them

This means that the "tongues like fire" spread out so that there was one on each person.

#### Acts 2:4

##### They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there and they"

##### speak in other tongues

They were speaking in languages that they did not already know.

##### as the Spirit gave them the ability

The Holy Spirit gave them the ability to speak; they were dependent on the Spirit to speak in different languages.

#### Acts 2:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to the believers; the word "his" refers to each person in the multitude. Verse 5 gives background information about the large number of Jews who were living in Jerusalem, many of whom were present during this event.

##### godly men

Here "godly men" refers to people who were devout in their worship of God and tried to obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### every nation under heaven

"every nation in the world." The word "every" is an exaggeration that emphasizes that the people came from many different nations. Alternate translation: "many different nations"

#### Acts 2:6

##### When this sound was heard

This refers to the sound that was similar to a strong wind. Alternate translation: "When they heard this sound"

##### the multitude

"the large crowd of people"

#### Acts 2:7

##### They were amazed and marveled

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of amazement. Alternate translation: "They were greatly amazed"

##### Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?

The people ask this question to express their amazement. The question could be changed to an exclamation. Alternate translation: "All of these Galileans could not possibly know our languages!"

#### Acts 2:8

##### Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses how amazed they were or 2) this is a real question for which the people wanted an answer.

##### in our own language in which we were born

"in our own languages that we have learned from birth"

#### Acts 2:9

##### Parthians ... Medes ... Elamites

These are names of people groups.

##### Mesopotamia ... Judea ... Cappadocia ... Pontus ... Asia

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:10

##### Phrygia ... Pamphylia ... Egypt ... Libya ... Cyrene

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:11

##### Cretans ... Arabians

These are names of people groups.

##### proselytes

converts to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 2:12

##### amazed and perplexed

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize that the people could not understand what was happening. Alternate translation: "surprised and confused"

#### Acts 2:13

##### They are full of new wine

Some people accuse the believers of having drunk too much wine. Alternate translation: "They are drunk"

##### new wine

This refers to wine that is in the process of fermentation.

#### Acts 2:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins his speech to the Jews who were there on the Day of Pentecost.

##### stood with the eleven

All the apostles stood up in support of Peter's statement.

##### raised his voice

This is an idiom for "spoke loudly."

##### declared to them

Made a formal, important speech to them. See how you translated "make declarations" in Acts 2:4.

##### let this be known to you

This means that Peter is about to explain the meaning of what the people had witnessed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "know this" or "let me explain this to you"

##### pay attention to my words

Peter was referring to what he was saying. Alternate translation: "listen carefully to what I am saying"

#### Acts 2:15

##### it is only the third hour of the day

"It is only nine o'clock in the morning." Peter expected his audience to know that people do not get drunk that early in the day.

#### Acts 2:16

##### General Information:

Here Peter tells them a passage about which the prophet Joel wrote in the Old Testament that relates to what is happening with the languages in which the believers spoke. This is written in the form of poetry as well as being a quotation.

##### this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what God told the prophet Joel to write" or "this is that which the prophet Joel spoke"

#### Acts 2:17

##### It will be

"This is what will happen" or "This is what I will do"

##### I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh

Here the words "pour out" mean to give generously and abundantly. Alternate translation: "I will give my Spirit abundantly to all flesh"

##### all flesh

This is a hyperbolic metonym that refers to all people by speaking of them as all living creatures, who have flesh. Alternate translation: "all people"

#### Acts 2:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to quote the prophet Joel.

##### my servants and my female servants

"both my male and my female servants." These words emphasize that God will pour out his Spirit on all of his servants, both men and women.

##### I will pour out my Spirit

Here the words "pour out" mean to give generously and abundantly. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:17]

#### Acts 2:19

##### vapor of smoke

"thick smoke" or "clouds of smoke"

#### Acts 2:20

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting the prophet Joel.

##### The sun will be turned to darkness

This means that the sun will appear to be dark instead of light. Alternate translation: "The sun will become dark"

##### the moon to blood

This means that the moon will appear to be red like blood. Alternate translation: "the moon will be turned to blood" or "the moon will appear to be red"

##### the great and remarkable day

The words "great" and "remarkable" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of greatness. Alternate translation: "the very great day"

##### remarkable

great and beautiful

#### Acts 2:21

##### everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord will save everyone who calls on him"

#### Acts 2:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### hear these words

"listen to what I am about to say"

##### accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs

This means that God proved that he had appointed Jesus for his mission, and proved who he was by his many miracles.

#### Acts 2:23

##### by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge

The nouns "plan" and "foreknowledge" can be translated as verbs. This means that God planned out and knew beforehand what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "because God planned out and knew beforehand everything that would happen"

##### This man was handed over

Possible meanings: 1) "you handed Jesus over into the hands of his enemies" or 2) "Judas betrayed Jesus to you."

##### you, by the hand of lawless men, put him to death by nailing him to a cross

Although "lawless men" actually crucified Jesus, Peter accuses the crowd of having killed him because they demanded his death.

##### by the hand of lawless men

Here "hand" refers to the actions of the lawless men. Alternate translation: "through the actions of lawless men" or "by what lawless men did"

##### lawless men

Possible meanings are 1) the unbelieving Jews who accused Jesus of crimes or 2) the Roman soldiers who performed the execution of Jesus.

#### Acts 2:24

##### But God raised him up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "But God caused him to live again"

##### freeing him from the agonies of death

He speaks of the agonies of dying as if God were freeing Christ from ropes that were binding Jesus. Alternate translation: "ending the pains of death"

##### for him to be held by it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for death to hold him"

##### for him to be held by it

Peter speaks of Christ remaining dead as if death were a person who held him captive. Alternate translation: "for him to remain dead"

#### Acts 2:25

##### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a passage that David wrote in a Psalm which relates to Jesus's crucifixion and resurrection. Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "I" and "my" refer to Jesus and the words "Lord" and "he" refer to God.

##### For David says about him, 'I saw

The context makes it plain that this is an elliptical way of saying that David was speaking as if David were the Messiah. Alternate translation: "For David spoke these words as if he were the Christ: 'I saw"

##### before my face

"in front of me." Alternate translation: "in my presence" or "with me"

##### beside my right hand

To be at someone's "right hand" often means to be in a position to help and sustain. Alternate translation: "right beside me" or "with me to help me"

##### I should not be moved

Here the word "moved" means to be troubled. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will not be able to cause me trouble" or "nothing will trouble me"

#### Acts 2:26

##### my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced

People consider the "heart" the center of emotions and the "tongue" voices those emotions. Alternate translation: "I was glad and rejoiced"

##### my flesh will live in hope

Possible meanings of the phrase "my flesh" are 1) it indicates that the writer is a mortal who will die. Alternate translation: "even though I am only mortal, I will live in hope" or 2) it is a synecdoche for the writer's entire person. Alternate translation: "I will live in hope"

##### will live in hope

Here the word "hope" refers to a person's confidence that what he desires will happen. Since the speaker hoped that God would rescue him, "in hope" could be translated as "in confidence in God." The phrase "live in hope" can also be translated with the phrases "confidently expect," "confidently wait," or "trust." Alternate translation: "will live with confidence in God" or "will confidently wait for God to rescue me"

#### Acts 2:27

##### General Information:

Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "my," "Holy One," and "me" refer to Jesus and the words "you" and "your" refer to God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting David.

##### neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay

The Messiah, Jesus, refers to himself with the words "your Holy One." Alternate translation: "neither will you allow me, your Holy One, to see decay"

##### to see decay

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. Alternate translation: "to decay"

#### Acts 2:28

##### the ways of life

"the ways that lead to life"

##### full of gladness with your face

Here the word "face" refers to the presence of God. Alternate translation: "very glad when I see you" or "very glad when I am in your presence"

##### gladness

joy, happiness

#### Acts 2:29

##### General Information:

The words "he" and "his" refer to David.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues the speech to the Jews that surround him and the other believers in Jerusalem, which he began in Acts 1:16.

##### Brothers, it

"My fellow Jews, it"

##### it is proper for me to speak

Or "it is possible." He is able to speak because it is proper for him to do so.

##### he both died and was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he died and people buried him"

#### Acts 2:30

##### he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne

"God would set one of David's fruit upon David's throne." Alternate translation: "God would appoint one of David's fruit to be king in David's place"

##### one of the fruit of his loins

This is a metaphor for a child or other descendant. Alternate translation: "one of his children" or "one of his descendants"

#### Acts 2:31

##### he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Neither did God abandon him to Hades nor did his flesh see decay" or "God did not abandon him to Hades, and his flesh did not see decay"

##### did his flesh see decay

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:27]

#### Acts 2:32

##### This Jesus—God raised him up

Peter talks again about Jesus. Alternate Translation: "It is this Jesus whom God raised up" or "God raised up this Jesus"

##### God raised him up

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "God caused him to live again"

#### Acts 2:33

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God has exalted Jesus up to his right hand"

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

"Right hand of God" here is an idiom that means that Christ will rule as God, with God’s authority. Alternate translation: "Christ is in the position of God"

##### he has poured out what

Here the words "poured out" mean that Jesus, who is God, made these events to happen. It is implicit that he did this by giving the Holy Spirit to the believers. Alternate translation: "he has caused to happen these things that"

##### has poured out

"has given generously and abundantly." See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 2:17. Alternate translation: "given abundantly"

#### Acts 2:34

##### General Information:

Peter again quotes one of David's Psalms. David is not speaking of himself in this Psalm. "The Lord" and "my" refer to God; "my Lord" and "your" refer to Jesus the Messiah.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Acts 2:35

##### until I make your enemies the footstool for your feet

This means that God will completely defeat the Messiah's enemies and make them subject to him. Alternate translation: "until I make you victorious over all of your enemies"

#### Acts 2:36

##### all the house of Israel

This refers to the entire nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "every Israelite"

#### Acts 2:37

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people in the crowd to whom Peter spoke.

##### Connecting Statement:

The Jews respond to Peter's speech and Peter answers them.

##### when they heard this

"when the people heard what Peter had said"

##### they were pierced in their hearts, and said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Peter's words pierced their hearts, and they said"

##### pierced in their hearts

This means that the people felt guilty and became very sad. Alternate translation: "deeply troubled"

#### Acts 2:38

##### be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "allow us to baptize you"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

"In the name of" here is a metonym for "by the authority of" Alternate translation: "by the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 2:39

##### all who are far off

This means either 1) "all people who live far away" or 2) "all people who are far from God."

#### Acts 2:40

##### he testified and exhorted them

"he seriously told them." Here the word "testified" and "begged" share similar meanings and emphasize that Peter urged them strongly to respond to what he was saying. Alternate translation: "he strongly urged them"

##### exhorted

or "pleaded with"

##### Be saved from this perverse generation

The implication is that God will punish "this perverse generation." Alternate translation: "Be saved from the punishment that these wicked people will suffer"

##### Be saved

Possible meanings are 1) Peter was urging people to let God save them. Alternate translation: "Let God save you," or 2) Peter was simply urging them in a general way to avoid being punished. Alternate translation: "Save yourselves" or "Flee" or "Escape"

#### Acts 2:41

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that happened on the Day of Pentecost.

##### they received his word

Here the word "received" means that they accepted what Peter said to be true. Alternate translation: "they believed what Peter said"

##### were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people baptized them"

##### there were added in that day about three thousand souls

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "about three thousand souls joined the believers on that day"

##### about three thousand souls

Here the word "souls" refers to people. Alternate translation: "about 3,000 people"

#### Acts 2:42

##### Connecting Statement:

This section explains how the believers continued to live after the Day of Pentecost.

##### the breaking of bread

Bread was part of their meals. These words could refer to 1) any meals they might eat together. Alternate translation: "eating meals together" or 2) meals they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "eating the Lord's Supper together"

#### Acts 2:43

##### Fear came upon every soul

Here the word "Fear" refers to deep respect and awe for God. The word "soul" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "Each person felt a deep respect and awe for God"

##### many wonders and signs were done through the apostles

Possible meanings are 1) "the apostles performed many wonders and signs" or 2) "God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles"

##### wonders and signs

"miraculous deeds and supernatural events." See how you translated this in Acts 2:22.

#### Acts 2:44

##### All who believed were together

Possible meanings are 1) "All of them believed the same thing" or 2) "All who believed were together in the same place."

##### had all things in common

"shared their belongings with one another"

#### Acts 2:45

##### property and possessions

"land and things they owned"

##### distributed them to all

Here the word "them" refers to the profit that they made from selling their property and possessions. Alternate translation: "distributed the proceeds to all"

##### according to the needs anyone had

They distributed the proceeds that they earned from selling their property and possessions to any believer who had a need.

#### Acts 2:46

##### they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted in this ellipse. What they devoted themselves to doing is stated in verse 42. Alternate translation: "they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching with one purpose in the temple"

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### They also broke bread in homes

Bread was part of their meals. Alternate translation: "They also ate meals together in their homes"

#### Acts 2:47

##### praising God and having favor with all the people

"praising God. All the people approved of them"

##### those who were being saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the Lord saved"

## Chapter 3

# Acts 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The covenant God made with Abraham

This chapter explains that Jesus came to the Jews because God was fulfilling part of the covenant he had made with Abraham. Peter thought that the Jews were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus, but he wanted them to understand that Jesus, by living and dying, had fulfilled God's promise to Abraham and that if they repented, God would forgive them.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "You delivered up"

The Romans were the ones who killed Jesus, but they killed him because the Jews captured him, brought him to the Romans, and told the Romans to kill him. For this reason Peter thought that they were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus. But he tells them that they are also the first ones to whom God has sent Jesus's followers to invite them to repent ([Acts 3:26](../../act/03/26.md)). (See: repent)

#### Acts 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

One day Peter and John go to the temple.

##### into the temple

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "to the temple courtyard" or "into the temple area"

#### Acts 3:2

##### a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people were carrying a man who was lame from from his mother's womb"

##### from his mother's womb

"ever since he was born"

##### the temple gate called Beautiful

This was one of the gates in the high, strong wall that surrounded the temple. People sometimes gathered near the gate.

##### lame

unable to walk

#### Acts 3:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 3:4

##### Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said

Both Peter and John looked at the man, but only Peter spoke.

##### fastening his eyes upon him

Possible meanings are 1) "looking directly at him" or 2) "looking intently at him"

#### Acts 3:5

##### The lame man looked at them

Here the word "looked" means to pay attention to something. Alternate translation: "The lame man paid close attention to them"

#### Acts 3:6

##### Silver and gold I do not have

"I do not own any silver or gold"

##### Silver and gold

These words refer to money.

##### what I do have

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man.

##### In the name of Jesus Christ

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "With the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 3:7

##### Peter raised him up

"Peter caused him to stand"

#### Acts 3:8

##### he entered ... into the temple

He did not go inside the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "he entered ... the temple area" or "he entered ... into the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 3:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 3:10

##### noticed that it was the man

"realized that it was the man" or "recognized him as the man"

##### the Beautiful Gate

This was the name of one of the entrances to the temple area. See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 3:2.

##### they were filled with wonder and amazement

Here the words "wonder" and "amazement" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of the people's amazement. Alternate translation: "they were extremely amazed"

#### Acts 3:11

##### General Information:

The phrase "in the porch that is called Solomon's" makes it clear that they were not inside the temple where only the priests were allowed to enter. Here the words "us" and "we" refer to Peter and John but not to the crowd to whom Peter is talking.

##### Connecting Statement:

After healing the man who could not walk, Peter talks to the people.

##### the porch that is called Solomon's

"Solomon's Porch." This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. It was in the temple courtyard.

##### greatly marveling

"extremely surprised"

#### Acts 3:12

##### When Peter saw this

Here the word "this" refers to the amazement of the people.

##### You Israelite men

"Fellow Israelites." Peter was addressing the crowd.

##### why do you marvel?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that they should not be surprised by what had happened. Alternate translation: "you should not be surprised."

##### Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that the people should not think that he and John had healed the man by their own abilities. This could be written as two statements. Alternate translation: "Do not fix your eyes on us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness."

##### fix your eyes on us

This means that they looked intently at them without stopping. Alternate translation: "stare at us" or "look at us"

#### Acts 3:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 3:12.

##### rejected before the face of Pilate

Here the phrase "before the face of" means "in the presence of." Alternate translation: "rejected in Pilate's presence"

##### when he had decided to release him

"when Pilate had decided to release Jesus"

#### Acts 3:14

##### for a murderer to be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Pilate to release a murderer to you"

#### Acts 3:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes just Peter and John.

##### the Founder of life

This refers to Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who gives people eternal life" or 2) "the ruler of life" or 3) "the one who leads people to life"

#### Acts 3:16

##### On the basis of faith in his name

Possible meanings are 1) this is the reason the man was made strong. Alternate translation: "Because of faith in his name" or 2) this is how the man was made strong. Alternate translation: "By faith in his name"

##### On the basis of faith in his name

The word "his" refers to the Founder of life, Jesus. The abstract noun "faith" can be translated with the verb "believe." Possible meanings are 1) the lame man had faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: "Because he believed in Jesus name" or 2) Peter and John, and perhaps the lame man, had faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: "Because we believed in Jesus's name"

##### his name

The phrase "his name" is a metonym either for Jesus or for Jesus's power.

##### made this man ... strong

"made this man ... well"

##### The faith that is through Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) this is the faith that Jesus enables people to have. Alternate translation: "The faith that comes from Jesus" or 2) this is faith in Jesus.

#### Acts 3:17

##### Now

Here Peter shifts the audience's attention from the lame man and continues to talk to them directly.

##### you acted in ignorance

Possible meanings are 1) that the people did not know that Jesus was the Messiah or 2) that the people did not understand the significance of what they were doing.

#### Acts 3:18

##### God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets

When the prophets spoke, it was as though God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "God foretold by telling all of the prophets what to speak"

##### God foretold

"God spoke about ahead of time" or "God told about before they happened"

##### the mouth of all the prophets

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of all the prophets"

#### Acts 3:19

##### and turn

"and turn to the Lord." Here "turn" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "and start obeying the Lord"

##### so that your sins may be blotted out

Here "blotted out" is a metaphor for forgiving. Sins are spoken of as if they are written in a book and God erases them from the book when he forgives them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God will forgive you for sinning against him"

#### Acts 3:20

##### times of refreshing

Possible meanings are 1) "times when God will strengthen your spirits" or 2) "times when God will revive you"

##### from the presence of the Lord

Here the words "presence of the Lord" is a metonym for the Lord himself. Alternate translation: "from the Lord"

##### that he may send the Christ

"that he may again send the Christ." This refers to Christ's coming again.

##### who has been appointed for you

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom he has appointed for you"

#### Acts 3:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues the speech that he began in Acts 3:12 to the Jews who stood in the temple area.

##### He is the One heaven must receive

"He is the One heaven must welcome." Peter speaks of heaven as if it were a person who welcomes Jesus into his home.

##### heaven must receive until

This means that it is necessary for Jesus to remain in heaven because that is what God has planned.

##### until the time of the restoration of all things

Possible meanings are 1) "until the time when God will restore all things" or 2) "until the time when God will fulfill everything that he foretold."

##### about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets

When the prophets spoke long ago, it was as if God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "about which things God spoke long ago by telling his holy prophets to speak about them"

##### the mouth of his holy prophets

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of his holy prophets"

#### Acts 3:22

##### General Information:

Peter begins to quote something Moses told the Israelites before the Messiah came.

##### will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers

"will cause one of your brothers to become a true prophet, and everyone will know about him"

##### your brothers

"your nation"

#### Acts 3:23

##### that prophet will be completely destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that prophet, God will completely destroy"

#### Acts 3:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 3:12.

##### Yes, and all the prophets

"In fact, all the prophets." Here the word "Yes" adds emphasis to what follows.

##### from Samuel and those who came after him

"beginning with Samuel and continuing with the prophets who lived after he did"

##### these days

"these times" or "the things that are happening now"

#### Acts 3:25

##### You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant

Here the word "sons" refers to heirs who will receive what the prophets and the covenant promised. Alternate translation: "You are the heirs of the prophets and heirs of the covenant"

##### In your seed

"Because of your offspring"

##### all the families of the earth will be blessed

Here the word "families" refers to people groups or nations. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bless all the people groups in the world"

#### Acts 3:26

##### After God raised up his servant

"After God caused Jesus to become his servant and made him famous"

##### his servant

This refers to the Messiah, Jesus.

##### turning every one of you from your wickedness

Here "turning ... from" is a metaphor for causing someone stop doing something. Alternate translation: "causing every one of you to stop doing wicked things" or "causing every one of you to repent from your wickedness"

## Chapter 4

# Acts 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 4:25-26.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Unity

The first Christians wanted very much to be united. They wanted to believe the same things and share everything they owned and help those who needed help.

#### "Signs and wonders"

This phrase refers to things that only God can do. The Christians wanted God to do what only he can do so that people would believe that what they said about Jesus was true.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Cornerstone

The cornerstone was the first piece of stone that people put down when they were building a building. This is a metaphor for the most important part of something, the part on which everything depends. To say that Jesus is the cornerstone of the church is to say that nothing in the church is more important than Jesus and that everything about the church depends on Jesus. (See: and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Name

"There is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved" ([Acts 4:12](../../act/04/12.md)). With these words Peter was saying that no other person who has ever been on the earth or will ever be on earth can save people.

#### Acts 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders arrest Peter and John after Peter's having healed the man who was born lame.

##### came upon them

"approached them" or "came to them"

#### Acts 4:2

##### They were deeply troubled

"They were very angry." The Sadducees, in particular, would have been angry about what Peter and John were saying because they did not believe in resurrection.

##### proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead

Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way as he had raised Jesus from among the dead. Translate this in a way that allows "the resurrection" to refer to both Jesus's resurrection and the general resurrection of other people.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 4:3

##### They laid hands on them

"The priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees arrested Peter and John"

##### since it was now evening

It was common practice not to question people at night.

#### Acts 4:4

##### the number of the men who believed

This refers only to men and does not include how many women or children believed.

##### was about five thousand

"grew to about five thousand"

#### Acts 4:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "their" refers to the Jewish people as a whole.

##### Connecting Statement:

The rulers question Peter and John, who answer without fear.

##### It came about ... that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### their rulers, elders, and scribes

This is a reference to the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling court, which consisted of these three groups of people.

#### Acts 4:6

##### John, and Alexander

These two men were members of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle.

#### Acts 4:7

##### By what power

"Who gave you power"

##### in what name

Here the word "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "by whose authority"

#### Acts 4:8

##### Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:4]

#### Acts 4:9

##### we are on trial today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are questioning us today"

##### by what means this man was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by what means we have made this man well"

#### Acts 4:10

##### let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May all of you and all of the people of Israel know this"

##### to you all and to all the people of Israel

"to you who are questioning us and to all the other people of Israel"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "by the power of Jesus Christ of Nazareth"

##### whom God raised from the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "whom God caused to live again"

#### Acts 4:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter completes his speech to the Jewish religious rulers that he began in Acts 4:8.

##### Jesus Christ is the stone ... which has been made the cornerstone

Peter is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God will made him the most important in his kingdom, as a cornerstone in a building is important.

##### you builders rejected

"you builders thought was worth nothing"

#### Acts 4:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Peter as well as those to whom he is speaking.

##### There is no salvation in any other person

The noun "salvation" can be translated as a verb. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "He is the only person who is able to save"

##### no other name under heaven given among men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no other name under heaven that God has given among men"

##### no other name ... given among men by which

The phrase "name ... given among men" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "no other person under heaven, who is given among men, by whom"

##### under heaven

This is a way of referring to everywhere in the world. Alternate translation: "in the world"

##### by which we must be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which can save us" or "who can save us"

#### Acts 4:13

##### General Information:

Here the second instance of "they" refers to Peter and John. All other occurrences of the word "they" in this section refer to the Jewish leaders.

##### the boldness of Peter and John

Here the abstract noun "boldness" refers to the way in which Peter and John responded to the Jewish leaders, and can be translated with an adverb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "how boldly Peter and John had spoken" or "how bold Peter and John were"

##### boldness

bravery, courage, lack of fear. A person with boldness is not afraid.

##### realized that they were ordinary, uneducated men

The Jewish leaders "realized" this because of the way Peter and John spoke.

##### and realized

"and understood"

##### ordinary, uneducated men

The words "ordinary" and "uneducated" share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law.

#### Acts 4:14

##### the man who was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the man whom Peter and John had healed"

##### nothing to say against this

"nothing to say against Peter and John's healing of the man." Here the word "this" refers to what Peter and John had done.

#### Acts 4:15

##### the apostles

This refers to Peter and John.

#### Acts 4:16

##### What should we do with these men?

The Jewish leaders ask this question out of frustration because they could not think of what to do with Peter and John. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that we can do with these men!"

##### For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God has done a remarkable sign through them, and everyone who lives in Jerusalem has seen it" or "For everyone who lives in Jerusalem knows that they have done a remarkable sign"

##### sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

##### everyone who lives in Jerusalem

This is a generalization. It may also be an exaggeration to show that the leaders think that this is a very big problem. Alternate translation: "many of the people who live in Jerusalem" or "people who live throughout Jerusalem"

#### Acts 4:17

##### in order that it spreads no further

Here the word "it" refers to any miracles or teaching Peter and John might continue to do. Alternate translation: "in order that news of this miracle spreads no further" or "in order that no more people hear about this miracle"

##### not to speak anymore to anyone in this name

Here the word "name" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "not to speak anymore to anyone about this person, Jesus"

#### Acts 4:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 4:19

##### Whether it is proper in the sight of God

Here the phrase "in the sight of God" refers to God's opinion. Alternate translation: "Whether God thinks it is right"

#### Acts 4:20

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Peter and John but not to those whom they are addressing.

#### Acts 4:21

##### After further warning

The Jewish leaders again threatened to punish Peter and John.

##### They were unable to find any excuse to punish them

Although the Jewish leaders threatened Peter and John, they could not find a reason to punish them without causing the people to riot.

##### for what had been done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for what Peter and John had done"

#### Acts 4:22

##### General Information:

This verse gives background information about the age of the lame man who was healed.

##### The man who had experienced this sign of healing

"The man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed"

##### this sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

#### Acts 4:23

##### came to their own people

The phrase "their own people" refers to the rest of the believers. Alternate translation: "went to the other believers"

#### Acts 4:24

##### General Information:

Speaking together, the people quote a Psalm of David from the Old Testament. Here the word "they" refers to the rest of the believers, but not to Peter and John.

##### they raised their voices with one purpose to God

To raise the voice is an idiom for speaking. "they began speaking with one purpose to God"

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 4:25

##### You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David

This means that the Holy Spirit caused David to speak or write down what God said.

##### through the mouth of your servant, our father David

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that David spoke or wrote down. Alternate translation: "by the words of your servant, our father David"

##### our father David

Here the word "father" refers to an ancestor.

##### Why did the Gentile nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things?

This is a rhetorical question that emphasizes the futility of opposing God. Alternate translation: "The Gentile nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things."

##### the peoples imagine useless things

These "useless things" consist of plans to oppose God. Alternate translation: "the peoples imagine useless things against God"

##### peoples

people groups

#### Acts 4:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete their quotation from King David in the Psalms that they began in Acts 4:25.

##### The kings of the earth set themselves together, and the rulers gathered together against the Lord

These two lines mean basically the same thing. The two lines emphasize the combined effort of the earth's rulers to oppose God.

##### set themselves together ... gathered together

These two phrases mean that they joined their armies together to fight a battle. Alternate translation: "set their armies together ... gathered their troops together"

##### against the Lord, and against his Christ

Here the word "Lord" refers to God. In the Psalms, the word "Christ" refers to the Messiah or God's anointed one.

#### Acts 4:27

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers continue praying.

##### in this city

"this city" refers to Jerusalem.

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully"

#### Acts 4:28

##### to do all that your hand and your plan had decided

Here the word "hand" is used to mean God's power. Additionally, the phrase "your hand and your desire decided" shows God's power and plan. Alternate translation: "to do all that you in your power had decided and planned they would do"

#### Acts 4:29

##### look upon their warnings

Here the words "look upon" are a request for God to take notice of the way in which the Jewish leaders threatened the believers. Alternate translation: "notice how they threaten to punish us"

##### speak your word with all boldness

The word "word" here is a metonym for God's message. The abstract noun "boldness" can be translated as an adverb. Alternate translation: "speak your message boldly" or "be bold when we speak your message"

#### Acts 4:30

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete the prayer that they began in Acts 4:24.

##### Stretch out your hand to heal and to give

Here the word "hand" refers to God's power. This is a request for God to show how powerful he is. Alternate translation: "Show your power by healing people and by giving"

##### through the name of your holy servant Jesus

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "through the power of your holy servant Jesus"

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully." See how you translated this in Acts 4:27.

#### Acts 4:31

##### the place ... was shaken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place ... shook"

##### they were all filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Acts 2:4. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit had filled them all" or "God had filled them all with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 4:32

##### were of one heart and soul

Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and the word "soul" refers to the emotions. Together they refer to the total person. Alternate translation: "thought the same way and wanted the same things"

##### they had everything in common

"they shared their belongings with one another." See how you translated this in Acts 2:44.

#### Acts 4:33

##### great grace was upon them all

Possible meanings are: 1) that God was greatly blessing the believers or 2) that the people in Jerusalem held the believers in very high esteem.

#### Acts 4:34

##### all who owned title to lands or houses

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many people who owned title to lands or houses" or "People who owned title to lands or houses"

##### owned title to lands or houses

"owned land or houses"

##### the money from the things that were sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the money that they received from the things that they sold"

#### Acts 4:35

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented the money to the apostles. Alternate translation: "presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

##### it was distributed to each one according to their need

The noun "need" can be translated with a verb. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they distributed the money to each believer who needed it"

#### Acts 4:36

##### General Information:

Luke introduces Barnabas into the story.

##### Son of Encouragement

The apostles used this name to show that Joseph was a person who encouraged others. "Son of" is an idiom used to describe a person's behavior or character. Alternate translation: "Encourager" or "one who encourages"

#### Acts 4:37

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35]

## Chapter 5

# Acts 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit"

No one knows for sure if Ananias and Sapphira were truly Christians when they decided to lie about the land that they sold (Acts 5:1-10), because Luke does not say. However, Peter knew that they lied to the believers, and he knew that they had listened to and obeyed Satan.

When they lied to the believers, they also lied to the Holy Spirit. This is because the Holy Spirit lives inside believers.

#### Acts 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Continuing the story of how the new Christians shared their belongings with other believers, Luke tells about two believers, Ananias and Sapphria.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story to tell a new part of the story.

#### Acts 5:2

##### his wife also knew it

"his wife also knew that he kept back part of the sale money"

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35]

#### Acts 5:3

##### General Information:

If your language does not use rhetorical questions, you may reword these as statements.

##### why has Satan filled your heart to lie ... land?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "you should not have let Satan fill your heart to lie ... land."

##### Satan filled your heart

Here the word "heart" is a metonym for the will and emotions. The phrase "Satan filled your heart" is a metaphor. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "Satan completely controlled you" or 2) "Satan convinced you"

##### to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price

This implies that Ananias had told the apostles that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land.

#### Acts 5:4

##### While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own ... authority?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "While it remained unsold, it was your own ... authority."

##### While it remained unsold

"Before you sold it"

##### after it was sold, was it not under your authority?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "after it was sold, you had control over the money that you received."

##### after it was sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after you sold it"

##### Why did you put it in your heart to do this?

Peter used this question to rebuke Ananias. Here the word "heart" refers to the will and emotions. Alternate translation: "You should not have thought of doing this thing." or "It is Satan who has put this activity in your heart."

#### Acts 5:5

##### fell down and breathed his last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed his final breath" and is a polite way of saying that he died. Ananias fell down because he died; he did not die because he fell down. Alternate translation: "died and fell to the ground"

#### Acts 5:6

##### The young men arose

This means that they began to act. This does not necessarily mean that they had been sitting or that Peter and Ananias had been at the front of the room or a meeting hall. If your language has a phrase that speaks of people responding to something by beginning to act, you may use it.

#### Acts 5:7

##### his wife came in

"Ananias' wife came in" or "Sapphira came in"

##### what had happened

"that her husband had died"

#### Acts 5:8

##### for so much

"for this much money." This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to both Ananias and Sapphira.

##### How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord?

Peter asks this question to rebuke Sapphira. Alternate translation: "You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!"

##### you have agreed together

"the two of you have agreed together"

##### to test the Spirit of the Lord

Here the word "test" means to challenge or to prove. They were trying to see if they could get away with lying to God without receiving punishment.

##### Look, the feet of the men

The word "Look" is an idiom for "Pay attention!" Peter is probably telling Sapphira to pay attention to the sound of the men's footsteps, which indicate that they are about to enter the building, not to look at their feet. Here the phrase "the feet" can be either a synecdoche for the men whose feet they are or a metonym for the sound that they make. Alternate translation: "Pay attention! The men" or "Listen! The footsteps of the men"

##### they will carry

"the men will carry"

#### Acts 5:10

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Ananias and Sapphira.

##### fell down at his feet

This means that when she died, she fell on the floor in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with falling down at a person's feet as a sign of humility.

##### breathed her last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed her final breath" and is a polite way of saying "she died." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 5:5]

#### Acts 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:12

##### General Information:

It is not clear whether here the word "They" refers to the believers or only to the apostles.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues to tell what happens in the early days of the church.

##### Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles

"Many signs and wonders took place among the people through the hands of the apostles." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people"

##### signs and wonders

"supernatural events and miraculous deeds." See how you translated these terms in Acts 2:22

##### through the hands of the apostles

Here the word "hands" refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: "through the apostles"

##### all together

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose. The people were more than just in the same place at the same time.

##### Solomon's Porch

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. See how you translated "the porch that is called Solomon's" in Acts 3:11.

#### Acts 5:13

##### General Information:

The words "them" and "they" refer to the apostles.

##### none of the rest

Possible meanings are 1) the apostles were in Solomon's Porch, but the rest of the believers were afraid to join them there, or 2) all the believers were in Solomon's Porch, and the word "none" is a hyperbole that means that most of the people who were not believers were afraid to join them.

##### they were held in high esteem by the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people held the believers in high esteem"

#### Acts 5:14

##### more believers were being added to the Lord

This could be stated in active form. See how you translated "were added" in [Acts 2:41]

#### Acts 5:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people who lived in Jerusalem.

##### his shadow might fall on some of them

It is implied that God would heal them if Peter's shadow touched them.

#### Acts 5:16

##### those afflicted with unclean spirits

"those whom unclean spirits had afflicted"

##### they were all healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God healed them all" or "the apostles healed them all"

#### Acts 5:17

##### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders began to persecute the believers.

##### But

This begins a contrasting story. You may translate this in the way that your language introduces a contrasting narrative.

##### the high priest rose up

Here the phrase "rose up" means that the high priest decided to take action, not that he stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: "the high priest took action"

##### they were filled with jealousy

The abstract noun "jealousy" can be translated as an adjective. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they became very jealous"

#### Acts 5:18

##### laid hands on

This means they had the believers arrested. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:3]

#### Acts 5:19

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:20

##### in the temple

This phrase here refers to the temple courtyard, not to the temple building, where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"

##### all the words of this life

The word "words" here is a metonym for the message that the apostles had already proclaimed. Possible meanings are 1) "all this message of eternal life" or 2) "the whole message of this new way of living"

#### Acts 5:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### into the temple

They went into the temple courtyard, not into the temple building, where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "into the temple courtyard"

##### about daybreak

"as it began to be light." Although the angel led them out of the jail during the night, the sun was rising by the time the apostles reached the temple courtyard.

##### sent to the prison to have the apostles brought

This implies someone went to the jail. Alternate translation: "sent someone to the jail to bring the apostles"

#### Acts 5:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:23

##### we found no one inside

Possible meanings are 1) they found no one inside the apostles' cell Alternate translation: "we did not find them inside" or 2) the apostles had been the only prisoners and now there were no prisoners at all in the jail.

#### Acts 5:24

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests.

##### they were much perplexed

"they were very puzzled" or "they were very confused"

##### concerning them

"concerning the words they had just heard" or "concerning these things"

##### as to what would come of it

"and what would happen as a result" or "what would happen next"

#### Acts 5:25

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests.

##### standing in the temple

They did not go into the part of the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "standing in the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 5:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The captain and the officers bring the apostles before the Jewish religious council.

##### brought them back

"brought the apostles back"

##### they feared the people, that they might be stoned

This can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "they feared that the people might stone them"

#### Acts 5:27

##### they had brought them, they set them ... interrogated them

"the captain and officers had brought the apostles, the captain and the officers set the apostles ... interrogated the apostles"

##### interrogated

questioned to find out what was true

#### Acts 5:28

##### We ... us

The speakers were referring to themselves, but not to the apostles, so these words are exclusive.

##### you ... your

These words refer to the apostles and so are plural.

##### in this name

Here the word "name" refers to the person of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:17]

##### you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching

Teaching many people in a city is spoken of as if they were filling the city with a teaching. Alternate translation: "you have taught many people in Jerusalem about him" or "you have taught about him throughout the Jerusalem"

##### desire to bring this man's blood upon us

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for death, and to bring someone's blood on people is a metaphor for saying that they are guilty of that person's death. Alternate translation: "desire to make us responsible for this man's death"

#### Acts 5:29

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the apostles, and not to the audience.

##### Peter and the apostles answered

Peter spoke on behalf of all of the apostles when he said the following words.

#### Acts 5:30

##### The God of our fathers raised up Jesus

Here "raised up" is an idiom. Alternate translation: "The God of our fathers caused Jesus to live again"

##### by hanging him on a tree

Here Peter uses the word "tree" to refer to the cross, which was made of wood. Alternate translation: "by hanging him on a cross"

#### Acts 5:31

##### God exalted him to his right hand

To be at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "God exalted him to the place of honor beside him"

##### give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins

The words "repentance" and "forgiveness" can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: "give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins"

##### Israel

The word "Israel" refers to the Jewish people.

#### Acts 5:32

##### those who obey him

"those who submit to God's authority"

#### Acts 5:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel addresses the council members.

##### Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people

Luke introduces Gamaliel and provides background information about him.

##### who was honored by all the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom all the people honored"

##### to take the men outside

The words "the men" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:35

##### pay close attention to

"think carefully about" or "be cautious about." Gamaliel was warning them not to do something that they would later regret.

#### Acts 5:36

##### Theudas rose up

Possible meanings are 1) "Theudas rebelled" or 2) "Theudas appeared."

##### claiming to be somebody

"claiming to be somebody important"

##### He was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People killed him"

##### all who had been obeying him were scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the people scattered who had been obeying him" or "all who had been obeying him went in different directions"

##### came to nothing

This means that they did not do what they had planned to do.

#### Acts 5:37

##### After this man

"After Theudas"

##### in the days of the census

"during the time of the census"

##### drew away some people after him

This means that he persuaded some people to rebel with him against the Roman government. Alternate translation: "caused many people to follow him" or "caused many people to join him in rebellion"

#### Acts 5:38

##### keep away from these men and let them alone

Gamaliel is telling the Jewish leaders not to punish the apostles any more and not to put them back in jail.

##### if this plan or work is of men

"if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

##### it will be overthrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will overthrow it"

#### Acts 5:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel finishes addressing the council members.

##### if it is of God

Here the word "it" refers to "this plan or work." Alternate translation: "if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work"

##### So they were persuaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Gamaliel persuaded them"

#### Acts 5:40

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the council members and all instances of "them" refer to the apostles.

##### they called the apostles in and beat them

The council members would have ordered the temple guards to do these things.

##### to speak in the name of Jesus

Here "name" refers to the authority of Jesus. See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 4:18. Alternate translation: "to speak anymore in the authority of Jesus"

#### Acts 5:41

##### General Information:

All instances of "they" refer to the apostles.

##### they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name

The apostles rejoiced because God had honored them by letting the Jewish leaders dishonor them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God had counted them worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name"

##### for the Name

Here "the Name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "for Jesus"

#### Acts 5:42

##### General Information:

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### Thereafter every day

"After that day, every day." This phrase marks what the apostles did every day through the following days.

##### in the temple and from house to house

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests went. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard and in different people's houses"

## Chapter 6

# Acts 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The distribution to the widows

The believers in Jerusalem gave help—probably money but possibly food—every day to women whose husbands had died. All of these widows had been raised as Jews, but some of them had lived in Judea and spoke Hebrew. Others had lived in Gentile areas and spoke Greek. Those who gave out the money or food gave it to the Hebrew-speaking widows but not to the Greek-speaking widows. To please God, the church leaders appointed Greek-speaking men to make sure the Greek-speaking widows received their share of help. One of these Greek-speaking men was Stephen.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "His face was like the face of an angel"

No one knows for sure what it was about Stephen's face that was like the face of an angel, because Luke does not tell us. It is best for the translation to say only what the ULB says about this.

#### Acts 6:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story. Luke gives important background information to understand the story.

##### Now in these days

Consider how new parts of a story are introduced in your language.

##### was multiplying

"was greatly increasing"

##### Grecian Jews ... Hebrews

These were both groups of Jews who had become believers. The writer assumes that the reader understands that these people were all believers because at this point all believers had grown up as Jews.

##### Grecian Jews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts living somewhere in the Roman Empire outside of Israel and speaking Greek. Their language and culture were somewhat different from those who had grown up in Israel.

##### the Hebrews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts in Israel speaking Hebrew or Aramaic.

##### widows

A widow is a woman who has not remarried since her husband died.

##### their widows were being overlooked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Hebrew believers were overlooking the Grecian widows"

##### being overlooked

"being ignored" or "being forgotten." There were so many who needed help that some were missed.

##### daily distribution of help

The disciples were able to help the widows because believers were giving money to the apostles Acts 4:34-35. Possible meanings are 1) the disciples used the money to buy food, which they would give to the widows, or 2) the disciples gave the money directly to the widows.

#### Acts 6:2

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the 12 apostles and not to their hearers, so it is exclusive.

##### The twelve

This refers to the eleven apostles plus Matthias, who was selected in Acts 1:26.

##### the multitude of the disciples

"all of the disciples" or "all the believers"

##### give up the word of God

This is an exaggeration in order to emphasize the importance of their task of teaching the word of God. Alternate translation: "stop preaching and teaching the word of God"

##### serve tables

This is a phrase meaning to serve food to the people.

#### Acts 6:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" refers to the believers and so is plural.

##### men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom

Possible meanings are 1) the men have three qualities—a good reputation, being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom or 2) the men have a reputation for two qualities—being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom .

##### men of good reputation

"men that people know are good" or "men whom people trust"

##### over this business

"to be responsible to do this task"

#### Acts 6:4

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the 12 apostles and not to their hearers, so it is exclusive.

##### the ministry of the word

"the ministry of teaching and preaching the message"

#### Acts 6:5

##### Their speech pleased the whole multitude

"All the disciples liked their suggestion"

##### Stephen ... Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus

These are Greek names, so it seems that all of the men elected were from the Grecian Jewish group of believers.

##### proselyte

a Gentile who converted to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 6:6

##### placed their hands upon them

This represented giving a blessing and imparting responsibility and authority for the work to the seven.

#### Acts 6:7

##### General Information:

This verse gives an update on the church's growth.

##### the word of God continued to spread

The writer speaks of the growing number of people who believed the word as if the word of God itself were covering a larger area. Alternate translation: "the number of people who believed the word of God increased" or "the number of people who believed the message from God increased"

##### became obedient to the faith

"followed the teaching of the new belief"

##### the faith

Possible meanings are 1) the gospel message of trust in Jesus or 2) the teaching of the church or 3) the Christian teaching.

#### Acts 6:8

##### General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Now Stephen

This introduces Stephen as the main character in this part of the story.

##### Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing

The words "grace" and "power" here refer to power from God. This could be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "God was giving Stephen power to do"

#### Acts 6:9

##### General Information:

The writer continues giving background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### there arose some people ... Asia. These people were debating with Stephen

The word "arose" is an idiom that represents beginning to act. These people did not begin to rise into the air, nor did they necessarily get up from a sitting position. Alternate translation: "some people ... Asia, began to debate against Stephen"

##### the synagogue of the Freedmen, of the Cyrenians and Alexandrians, and some from Cilicia and Asia

Possible meanings are 1) the Cyrenians, the Alexandrians and those from Cilicia and Asia were all members of the synagogue of the Freedmen; 2) the Cyrenians and the Alexandrians were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen, but those from Cilicia and Asia were not; or 3) there were three separate groups of people: those from the synagogue, those from Cyrene and Alexandria, and those from Cilicia and Asia.

##### synagogue of the Freedmen

"Freedmen" were probably ex-slaves from these different locations. It is unclear if the other people listed were part of the synagogue or just participated in the debate with Stephen.

##### the Cyrenians and Alexandrians

"people from Cyrene and Alexandria." Cyrene and Alexandria were cities in Northern Africa. They were south of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### some from Cilicia and Asia

Cilicia was a city and Asia was a Roman province, both north of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### debating with Stephen

"arguing with Stephen"

#### Acts 6:10

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer finishes giving background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### not able to stand against

This phrase means they could not prove false what he said. Alternate translation: "could not argue against"

##### Spirit

this refers to the Holy Spirit

#### Acts 6:11

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers only to the men they persuaded to lie. The word "they" refers back to the people from the synagogue of the freemen

##### some men to say

They were given money to give false testimony. Alternate translation: "some men to lie and say"

##### blasphemous words against

"bad things about"

#### Acts 6:12

##### General Information:

The word "they" most likely refers back to the people from the synagogue of the Freedmen (Acts 6:9). They were responsible for the false witnesses and for inciting the council, the elders, the scribes, and the other people.

##### stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes

"caused the people, the elders, and the scribes to be very angry at Stephen"

##### seized him

"grabbed him and held him so he could not get away"

#### Acts 6:13

##### General Information:

The word "they" most likely refers back to the people from the synagogue of the Freedmen (Acts 6:9).

##### does not stop speaking

"continually speaks"

#### Acts 6:14

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" refer only to the speakers, not to the hearers, and so is exclusive.

##### handed down to us

The phrase "handed down" means "passed on." Alternate translation: "taught our ancestors"

#### Acts 6:15

##### fixed their eyes on him

This is an idiom that means they looked intently at him. Here "eyes" is a metonym for sight. Alternate translation: "looked intently at him" or "stared at him"

##### was like the face of an angel

This phrase compares his face to that of an angel but does not say specifically what they have in common.

## Chapter 7

# Acts 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 7:42-43 and 49-50.

It appears that 8:1 is part of the narrative of this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Stephen said"

Stephen told the history of Israel very briefly. He paid special attention to the times that the Israelites had rejected the people God had chosen to lead them. At the end of the story, he said that the Jewish leaders he was talking to had rejected Jesus just as the evil Israelites had always rejected the leaders God had appointed for them.

#### "Full of the Holy Spirit"

The Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen so that he said only and all of what God wanted him to say.

#### Foreshadowing

When an author speaks of something that is not important at that time but will be important later in the story, this is called foreshadowing. Luke mentions Saul, also known as Paul, here, even though he is not an important person in this part of the story. This is because Paul is an important person in the rest of the Book of Acts.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Implied information

Stephen was talking to Jews who knew the law of Moses well, so he did not explain things that his hearers already knew. But you may need to explain some of these things so that your readers will be able to understand what Stephen was saying. For example, you may need to make explicit that when Joseph's brothers "sold him into Egypt"

#### Metonymy

Stephen spoke of Joseph ruling "over Egypt" and over all of Pharaoh's household. By this he meant that Joseph ruled over the people of Egypt and of the people and possessions in Pharaoh's household.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Background knowledge

The Jewish leaders to whom Stephen spoke already knew much about the events he was telling them about. They knew what Moses had written in the Book of Genesis. If the Book of Genesis has not been translated into your language, it may be difficult for your readers to understand what Stephen said.

#### Acts 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The part of the story about Stephen, which began in Acts 6:8, continues. Stephen begins his response to the high priest and the council by talking about things that happened in Israel's history. Most of this history comes from Moses's writings.

#### Acts 7:2

##### General Information:

The word "our" includes both Steven, the Jewish council to whom he spoke, and the entire audience.

##### Brothers and fathers, listen to me

Stephen was being very respectful to the council in greeting them as extended family.

#### Acts 7:3

##### General Information:

The word "your" refers to Abraham and so is singular.

#### Acts 7:4

##### General Information:

In verse 4 the words "he," "his," and "him" refer to Abraham. In verse 5 the words "He" and "he" refer to God, but the word "him" refers to Abraham. Here the word "you" refers to the Jewish council and audience.

#### Acts 7:5

##### He gave none of it

"He did not give any of it"

##### enough to set a foot on

Possible meanings for this phrase are 1) enough ground to stand on or 2) enough ground to take a step. Alternate translation: "a very tiny piece of ground"

##### as a possession to him and to his descendants after him

"for Abraham to own and to give to his descendants"

#### Acts 7:6

##### God was speaking to him like this

It may be helpful to state that this occurred later than the statement in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Later God told Abraham"

##### four hundred years

"400 years"

#### Acts 7:7

##### I will judge the nation

"nation" refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: "I will judge the people of the nation"

##### the nation that they serve

"the nation that they will serve"

#### Acts 7:8

##### gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision

The Jews would have understood that this covenant required Abraham to circumcise the males of his family. Alternate translation: "made a covenant with Abraham to circumcise the males of his family"

##### so Abraham became the father of Isaac

The story transitions to Abraham's descendants.

##### Jacob the father

"Jacob became the father." Stephen shortened this.

#### Acts 7:9

##### the patriarchs

"the founders of our tribes" or "our ancestors." A patriarch is a man who rules a family.

##### sold him into Egypt

The Jews knew their ancestors sold Joseph to be a slave in Egypt. Alternate translation: "sold him as a slave in Egypt"

##### was with him

This is an idiom for helping someone. Alternate translation: "helped him"

#### Acts 7:10

##### over Egypt

This refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "over all the people of Egypt"

##### all his household

This refers to all his possessions. Alternate translation: "everything he owned"

#### Acts 7:11

##### Now a famine and great tribulation came

"a famine came." The ground stopped producing food and this caused a terrible suffering.

##### our fathers

This refers Jacob and his sons, who were the ancestors of the Jewish people.

#### Acts 7:12

##### grain

Grain was the most common food at that time.

##### our fathers

Here this phrase refers to Joseph's older brothers, who were Jacob's sons.

#### Acts 7:13

##### On their second trip

"On their next trip"

##### made himself known

Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother.

##### Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family"

#### Acts 7:14

##### sent his brothers back

"sent his brothers back to Canaan" or "sent his brothers back home"

#### Acts 7:15

##### he died

Make sure it does not sound as though he died as soon as he arrived in Egypt. Alternate translation: "eventually Jacob died"

##### he and our fathers

"Jacob and his sons, who became our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:16

##### They were carried over ... and laid

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jacob's descendants carried Jacob's body and his son's bodies over ... and buried them"

##### for a price in silver

"with money"

#### Acts 7:17

##### As the time of the promise ... the people grew and multiplied

In some languages it may be helpful to say that the people increased in number before saying that the time of the promise arrived.

##### time of the promise approached

It was close to the time that God would fulfill his promise to Abraham.

#### Acts 7:18

##### there arose another king

"another king began to rule"

##### over Egypt

"Egypt" refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "over the people of Egypt"

##### who did not know about Joseph

"Joseph" refers to the reputation of Joseph. Alternate translation: "who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt"

#### Acts 7:19

##### General Information:

The word "our" includes Stephen and his audience.

#### Acts 7:20

##### At that time Moses was born

This introduces Moses into the story.

##### very beautiful before God

This phrase is an idiom that means Moses was very beautiful.

##### was nourished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his parents nourished him" or "his parents cared for him"

#### Acts 7:21

##### When he was placed outside

Moses was "placed outside" because of Pharaoh's command. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When his parents placed him outside" or "When they abandoned him"

##### Pharaoh's daughter ... raised him as her own son

She did for him every good thing a mother would do for her own son. Use your language's normal word for what a mother does to make sure her son becomes a healthy adult.

##### adopted him

If your language has a word for an informal procedure, not a formal legal procedure, in which one family takes a child in and raises him, you may want to use that here. Pharaoh's daughter did do for Moses what any mother would do for her child, but this involved no formal legal procedure.

##### as her own son

"as if he were her own son"

#### Acts 7:22

##### Moses was educated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Egyptians educated Moses"

##### all the wisdom of the Egyptians

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that he was trained in the best schools in Egypt.

##### mighty in his words and works

"effective in his speech and actions" or "influential in what he said and did"

#### Acts 7:23

##### it came into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for "mind." The phrase "it came into his heart" is an idiom that means to decide something. Alternate translation: "it came into his mind" or "he decided"

##### visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel

This refers to his people, and not just to his family. Alternate translation: "see how his own people, the children of Israel, were doing"

#### Acts 7:24

##### Seeing an Israelite being mistreated ... the Egyptian

This can be stated in active form by rearranging the order. Alternate translation: "Seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite, Moses defended and avenged the Israelite by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him"

##### striking the Egyptian

Moses hit the Egyptian so hard that he died.

#### Acts 7:25

##### he thought

"he imagined"

##### by his hand, was giving them salvation

Here "hand" refers to the actions of Moses. Alternate translation: "was giving them salvation through what he, Moses, was doing"

##### was giving them salvation

The abstract noun "salvation" can be translated using the verb "save." Alternate translation: "was saving them" or "was rescuing them"

#### Acts 7:26

##### when they were fighting

Some translations make it clear that two men were fighting. Alternate translation: "when two men of Israel were fighting"

##### make peace between them

"make them stop fighting"

##### Men, you are brothers

Moses was addressing the Israelites who were fighting.

##### why are you wronging one another?

Moses asked this question to encourage them to stop fighting. Alternate translation: "you should not do wrong to each other!"

#### Acts 7:27

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the Israelites but does not include Moses.

##### Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?

The man used this question to rebuke Moses. Alternate translation: "No one appointed you ruler or judge over us." or "You have no authority over us!"

#### Acts 7:28

##### Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?

The man used this question to warn Moses that he and probably others knew Moses had killed the Egyptian.

#### Acts 7:29

##### General Information:

Stephen's audience already knew that Moses had married a Midianite woman when he fled Egypt.

##### after hearing this

The implied information is that Moses understood that the Israelites knew that he had killed an Egyptian the day before (Acts 7:28).

#### Acts 7:30

##### When forty years were past

"After 40 years passed." This was the amount of time Moses had been in Midian. Alternate translation: "Forty years after Moses fled from Egypt"

##### an angel appeared

Stephen's audience knew that God spoke through the angel.

#### Acts 7:31

##### he marveled at the sight

Moses was surprised that the bush was not burning up in the fire. This was previously known by Stephen's audience. Alternate translation: "because the bush was not burning up"

##### as he approached to look at it

This may mean Moses initially drew close to the bush to investigate.

#### Acts 7:32

##### I am the God of your fathers

"I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped"

##### Moses trembled and did not dare to look

This may mean Moses drew back in fear when he heard the voice.

##### Moses trembled

Moses shook from fear. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Moses trembled with fear"

#### Acts 7:33

##### Take off the sandals

God told Moses this so he would honor God.

##### for the place where you are standing is holy ground

The implied information is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered holy or is made holy by God.

#### Acts 7:34

##### certainly seen

"seen for sure." The word "certainly" adds emphasis to "seen."

##### the oppression of my people

The abstract noun "oppression" can be translated using the verb "oppress." Alternate translation: "the way the Egyptians are oppressing my people"

##### my people

The word "my" emphasizes that these people belonged to God. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob"

##### I have come down to rescue them

"will personally cause their release"

##### now come

"get ready." God uses an order here.

#### Acts 7:35

##### General Information:

Verses 35-38 contain a series of connected phrases referring to Moses. Each phrase begins with statements such as "This Moses" or "This same Moses" or "This is the man" or "It is the same Moses." If possible, use similar statements to emphasize Moses. After the Israelites left Egypt, they spent 40 years wandering around the wilderness before God led them into the land he had promised them.

##### This Moses whom they rejected

This refers back to the events recorded in Acts 7:27-28.

##### deliverer

"rescuer"

##### by the hand of the angel ... bush

The hand is a metonym for the action performed by the person. In this case, the angel had commanded Moses to return to Egypt. Stephen speaks as if the angel had a physical hand. You may need to make explicit what action the angel did. Alternate translation: "by the action of the angel" or "by having the angel ... bush command him to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:36

##### during forty years

Stephen's audience knew about the forty years the Israelites spent in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "during the 40 years that the Israelite people lived in the wilderness"

#### Acts 7:37

##### raise up a prophet

"cause a man to be a prophet"

##### from among your brothers

"from among your own people"

#### Acts 7:38

##### This is the man who was in the assembly

"This is the man Moses who was among the Israelites"

##### This is the man

The phrase "This is the man" throughout this passage refers to Moses.

##### who received living words to give to us

God was the one who gave those words. Alternate translation: "to whom God spoke living words to give to us"

##### living words

Possible meanings are 1) "a message that endures" or 2) "words that give life."

#### Acts 7:39

##### pushed him away from themselves

This metaphor emphasizes their rejection of Moses. Alternate translation: "they rejected him as their leader"

##### in their hearts they turned back

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's thoughts. To do something in the heart means to desire do to something. Alternate translation: "they desired to turn back"

#### Acts 7:40

##### General Information:

The quotation in this verse is from the writings of Moses.

##### At that time

"When they decided to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:41

##### they made a calf

Stephen's audience knew the calf they made was a statue. Alternate translation: "they made a statue that looked like a calf"

##### a calf ... the idol ... the work of their hands

These phrases all refer to the same statue of the calf.

#### Acts 7:42

##### General Information:

Stephen's quotation here is from the prophet Amos.

##### God turned

"God turned away." This action expresses that God was not pleased with the people and no longer helped them. Alternate translation: "God stopped correcting them"

##### gave them up

"abandoned them"

##### the stars in the sky

Possible meanings for the original phrase are 1) the stars only or 2) the sun, moon, and stars.

##### the book of the prophets

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets into one scroll. It would also have included the writings of Amos.

##### Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices ... Israel?

God asked this question to show Israel they did not worship him with their sacrifices. Alternate translation: "You did not honor me when brought offerings and sacrifices ... Israel."

##### house of Israel

This refers to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "all you Israelites"

#### Acts 7:43

##### General Information:

The quotation from the prophet Amos continues here.

##### Connecting Statement:

Stephen continues his response to the high priest and the council which he began in Acts 7:2.

##### You accepted

It is implied that they took these idols with them as they traveled in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "you carried with you from place to place"

##### tabernacle of Molech

the tent that housed the false god Molech

##### the star of the god Rephan

the star that is identified with the false god Rephan

##### the images that you made

They made statues or images of the gods Molech and Rephan in order to worship them.

##### I will carry you away beyond Babylon

"I will remove you to places even farther than Babylon." This would be God's act of judgment.

#### Acts 7:44

##### the tabernacle of the testimony

The tent that housed the ark (a box) with the 10 commandments carved in stone inside it

#### Acts 7:45

##### our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them

The phrase "under Joshua" means that their ancestors did these things in obedience to Joshua's direction. Alternate translation: "our fathers, in accordance with Joshua's instructions, received the tabernacle and brought it with them"

##### God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers

This sentence tells why the ancestors were able to take possession of the land. Alternate translation: "God forced the nations to leave the land before the face of our fathers"

##### God ... drove them out before the face of our fathers

Here "the face of our fathers" refers to the presence of their ancestors. Possible meanings are 1) "As our ancestors watched, God ... drove them out" or 2) "When our ancestors came, God ... drove them out"

##### the nations

This refers to the people who lived in the land before Israel. Alternate translation: "the people who previously lived here"

##### drove them out

"forced them to leave the land"

#### Acts 7:46

##### he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob

Here "house" is probably a metonym for the ark of the covenant. David wanted to build a place for the ark, which represented God's presence, so people could go there to worship God. Alternate translation: "he might build a place where people could worship the God of Jacob"

##### the house of Jacob

Many versions read, "the God of Jacob."

#### Acts 7:47

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 7:48

##### made with hands

The hand is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "made by people"

#### Acts 7:49

##### General Information:

In verses 49 and 50, Stephen quotes from the prophet Isaiah. In the quotation, God is speaking about himself.

##### Heaven is my throne ... the earth is the footstool for my feet

The prophet is comparing the greatness of God's presence to how impossible it is for man to build a place for God to rest on earth since the whole earth is nothing but a place for God to rest his feet.

##### What kind of house can you build for me?

God asks this question to show how useless man's efforts are to take care of God. Alternate translation: "You can not build a house adequate enough for me!"

##### what is the place for my rest?

God asks this question to show man that he cannot provide God any rest. Alternate translation: "There is no place of rest good enough for me!"

#### Acts 7:50

##### General Information:

In verses 49 and 50, Stephen quotes from the prophet Isaiah. In the quotation, God is speaking about himself.

##### Did my hand not make all these things?

God asks this question to show that man did not create anything. Alternate translation: "My hand made all these things!"

#### Acts 7:51

##### Connecting Statement:

With a sharp rebuke, Stephen finishes his response to the high priest and the council, which he began in Acts 7:2.

##### You stiff-necked people

Stephen shifts from identifying with the Jewish leaders to rebuking them.

##### uncircumcised in heart and ears

The Jews regarded uncircumcised people as disobedient to God. Stephen uses "hearts and ears" to represent to the Jewish leaders who acted the way Gentiles act when they do not obey or listen to God. Alternate translation: "you refuse to obey and hear"

#### Acts 7:52

##### Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute?

Stephen asked this question to show them that they learned nothing from the errors of their forefathers. Alternate translation: "Your forefathers persecuted every prophet!"

##### Righteous One

This refers to the Christ, the Messiah.

##### you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also

"you have also betrayed and murdered him"

##### murderers of him

"murderers of the Righteous One" or "murderers of the Christ"

#### Acts 7:53

##### the law that angels had ordained

"the laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:54

##### Connecting Statement:

The council reacts to Stephen's words.

##### Now when the council members heard these things

This is the turning point; the sermon ends and the council members react.

##### they were furious in their hearts

This means that they were extremely angry.

##### ground their teeth at Stephen

This action expressed their strong anger at Stephen or hatred of Stephen. Alternate translation: "they became so angry that they ground their teeth together" or "moved their teeth back and forth as they looked at Stephen"

#### Acts 7:55

##### looked up intently into heaven

"stared up into heaven." It appears that only Stephen saw this vision and not anyone else in the crowd.

##### saw the glory of God

People normally experienced the glory of God as a bright light. Alternate translation: "saw a bright light from God"

##### and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God

To stand at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "and he saw Jesus standing in the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Acts 7:56

##### Son of Man

Stephen refers to Jesus by the title "Son of Man."

#### Acts 7:57

##### covered their ears

"put their hands on their ears." They did this to show that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 7:58

##### They forced him out of the city

"They seized Stephen and forcefully took him out of the city"

##### outer clothing

These are cloaks or robes they would wear outside to stay warm, similar in function to a jacket or coat.

##### at the feet

"in front of." They were placed there so Saul could watch them.

##### a young man

Saul was probably around 30 years old at the time.

#### Acts 7:59

##### receive my spirit

"take my spirit." It may be helpful to add "please" to show that this was a request. Alternate translation: "please receive my spirit"

#### Acts 7:60

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends the story of Stephen.

##### He knelt down

This is an act of submission to God.

##### do not hold this sin against them

This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "forgive them for this sin"

##### fell asleep

Here to fall asleep is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: "died"

## Chapter 8

# Acts 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 8:32-33.

The first sentence of verse 1 ends the description of the events in chapter 7. Luke begins a new part of his history with the words "So there began."

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Receiving the Holy Spirit

In this chapter for the first time Luke speaks of people receiving the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:15-19). The Holy Spirit had already enabled the believers to speak in tongues, to heal the sick, and to live as a community, and he had filled Stephen. But when the Jews started putting believers in prison, those believers who could leave Jerusalem did leave, and as they went, they told people about Jesus. When the people who heard about Jesus received the Holy Spirit, the church leaders knew that those people had truly become believers.

#### Proclaimed

This chapter more than any other in the Book of Acts speaks of the believers proclaiming the word, proclaiming the good news, and proclaiming that Jesus is the Christ. The word "proclaim" translates a Greek word that means to tell good news about something.

#### Acts 8:1

##### General Information:

It may be helpful to your audience to move these parts of the story about Stephen together by using a verse bridge as the UDB does.

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts from Stephen to Saul in these verses.

##### So there began ... except the apostles

This part of verse 1 is background information about the persecution that began after Stephen's death. This explains why Saul was persecuting the believers in verse 3.

##### that day

This refers to the day that Stephen died (Acts 7:59-60).

##### the believers were all scattered

The word "all" is a generalization to express that a large number of the believers left Jerusalem because of the persecution.

##### except the apostles

This statement implies that the apostles remained in Jerusalem even though they also experienced this great persecution.

#### Acts 8:2

##### Devout men

"God-fearing men" or "Men who feared God"

##### made great lamentation over him

"greatly mourned his death"

#### Acts 8:3

##### house after house

"houses one by one"

##### drag off both men and women

"took away both men and women by force." Saul forcefully took Jewish believers out of their homes and put them into prison.

##### men and women

This refers to men and women who believed in Jesus.

#### Acts 8:4

##### who had been scattered

The cause for the scattering, the persecution, was stated previously. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who had fled the great persecution"

##### the word

This is a metonym for "the message." You may need to make explicit that the message was about Jesus. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 8:5

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Philip, whom the people had chosen as a deacon.

##### went down to the city of Samaria

The phrase "went down" is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### the city of Samaria

Possible meanings are 1) Luke expected the readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: "the main city in Samaria" or 2) Luke did not expect his readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: "a city in Samaria"

##### proclaimed to them the Christ

The title "Christ" refers to Jesus, the Messiah. Alternate translation: "told them about Jesus Christ" or "told them about Jesus the Messiah"

#### Acts 8:6

##### Crowds of people

"Many people in the city of Samaria." The location was specified in Acts 8:5.

##### were giving close attention

The reason people paid attention was because of all the healing Philip did.

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 8:7

##### who were possessed

"who had them" or "who were controlled by them"

#### Acts 8:8

##### So there was much joy in that city

The phrase "that city" refers to the people who were rejoicing. Alternate translation: "So the people of the city were rejoicing"

#### Acts 8:9

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse gives the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

##### But there was a certain man ... named Simon

This is a way of introducing a new person into the story. Your language may use different wording to introduce a new person into the story.

##### the city

"the city in Samaria" (Acts 8:5)

#### Acts 8:10

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse continues to give the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

##### All the Samaritans

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many of the Samaritans" or "The Samaritans in the city"

##### from the least to the greatest

These two phrases refer to everyone from one extreme to the other. Alternate translation: "no matter how important they were"

##### This man is that power of God which is called Great

People were saying that Simon was the divine power known as "The Great Power."

##### that power of God which is called Great

Possible meanings are 1) the powerful representative of God or 2) God or 3) the most powerful man or 4) an angel. Since the term is unclear, it may be best to simply translate it as "the Great power of God."

#### Acts 8:11

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse ends the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

#### Acts 8:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 12 and 13 give more information about Simon and some of the Samaritans coming to believe in Jesus.

##### they were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized them" or "Philip baptized the new believers"

#### Acts 8:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 12 and 13 give more information about Simon and some of the Samaritans coming to believe in Jesus.

##### Simon himself believed

The word "himself" is here used to emphasize that Simon believed. Alternate translation: "Simon was also one of those who believed"

##### he was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized Simon"

#### Acts 8:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the news of what was happening in Samaria.

##### Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story of the Samaritans.

##### Samaria

This refers to the many people who had become believers throughout the district of Samaria.

##### had received

"had believed" or "had accepted"

#### Acts 8:15

##### When they had come down

"when Peter and John had come down"

##### come down

This phrase is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### they prayed for them

"Peter and John prayed for the Samaritan believers"

##### that they might receive the Holy Spirit

"that the Samaritan believers might receive the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 8:16

##### they had only been baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers"

##### they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus

Here "name" represents authority, and being baptized into his name represents being baptized in order to be under his authority. Alternate translation: "they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 8:17

##### Peter and John placed their hands on them

The word "them" refers to the Samaritan people who believed Stephen's message of the gospel.

##### placed their hands on them

This symbolic action shows that Peter and John wanted God to give the Holy Spirit to the believers.

#### Acts 8:18

##### the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the apostles gave the Holy Spirit by laying their hands on people"

#### Acts 8:19

##### that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit

"that I can give the Holy Spirit to anyone on whom I place my hands"

#### Acts 8:20

##### General Information:

Here the words him, your, you, and yours all refer to Simon.

##### May your silver perish along with you

"May you and your money be destroyed"

##### the gift of God

Here this refers to the ability of a person to give the Holy Spirit by laying his hands on someone.

#### Acts 8:21

##### You have no part or allotted portion in this matter

The words "part" and "allotted portion" mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You may not participate in this work"

##### your heart is not right

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or motives. Alternate translation: "you are not right in your heart" or "the motives of your mind are not right"

#### Acts 8:22

##### this wickedness

"these evil thoughts"

##### he might perhaps forgive

"he may be willing to forgive"

##### for the intention of your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts. Alternate translation: "for what you intended to do" or "for what you were thinking of doing"

#### Acts 8:23

##### in the poison of bitterness

Here "in the poison of bitterness" is a metaphor for being very envious. It speaks of envy as if it tastes bitter and poisons the person who is envious. Alternate translation: "very envious"

##### in the bonds of unrighteousness

The phrase "bonds of unrighteousness" is spoken as if unrighteousness could make Simon a prisoner. It is metaphor that means Simon is not able to stop himself from sinning. Alternate translation: "because you continue sinning you are like a prisoner" or "sin has made you its prisoner"

#### Acts 8:24

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" refers to Peter and John.

##### so that nothing you have said may happen to me

This refers to Peter's rebuke about Simon's silver perishing along with him.

##### nothing you have said may happen to me

This can be stated another way. Alternate translation: "the things you have said may not happen to me"

#### Acts 8:25

##### Connecting Statement:

This is concludes the part of the story about Simon and the Samaritans.

##### testified

Peter and John told what they personally knew about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### spoken the word of the Lord

Here "word" is a metonym for "message." Peter and John explained the message about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### to many villages of the Samaritans

Here "villages" refers to the people in them. Alternate translation: "to the people in many Samaritan villages"

#### Acts 8:26

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia.

##### Now

This marks a transition in the story.

##### Arise and go

These verbs work together to emphasize that he should get ready to start a long journey that will take some time. Alternate translation: "Get ready to travel"

##### goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza

The phrase "goes down" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Gaza.

##### This road is in a desert

Most scholars believe Luke added this comment to describe the area through which Philip would travel.

#### Acts 8:27

##### General Information:

This verse gives background information about the man from Ethiopia.

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### eunuch

The emphasis of "eunuch" here is about the Ethiopian's being a high government official, not so much his physical state of being castrated.

##### Candace

This was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the way the word Pharaoh was used for the kings of Egypt.

##### He had come to Jerusalem to worship

This implies that he was a Gentile who believed in God and had come to worship at the Jewish temple. Alternate translation: "He had come to worship God at the temple in Jerusalem"

#### Acts 8:28

##### chariot

Possibly "wagon" or "carriage" is more fitting in this context. Chariots are normally mentioned as a vehicle for war, not as a vehicle for long-distance travel. Also, people stood to ride in chariots.

##### reading the prophet Isaiah

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: "reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:29

##### stay close to this chariot

Philip understood that this meant he was to stay close to the person riding in the chariot. Alternate translation: "accompany the man in this chariot"

#### Acts 8:30

##### reading Isaiah the prophet

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: "reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

##### Do you understand what you are reading?

The Ethiopian was intelligent and could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Alternate translation: "Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?"

#### Acts 8:31

##### How can I, unless someone guides me?

This question was asked to state emphatically that he could not understand without help. Alternate translation: "I cannot understand unless someone guides me."

##### He invited Philip to ... sit with him

It is implied here that Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the scriptures.

##### He invited

Possible meanings are that 1) he offered a sincere invitation or 2) he made a sincere request.

#### Acts 8:32

##### General Information:

This a passage from the book of Isaiah. Here the word "he" refers to the Messiah.

##### like a lamb before his shearer is silent

A shearer is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used.

#### Acts 8:33

##### General Information:

This verse continues quoting a passage from the book of Isaiah. Here the words "his" and "him" refer to the Messiah.

##### In his humiliation justice was taken away from him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He was humiliated and they did not judge him fairly" or "He allowed himself to be humbled before his accusers and he suffered injustice"

##### Who can give a full account of his descendants?

This question was used to emphasize that he will not have descendants. Alternate translation: "No one will be able to speak about his descendants, for there will not be any."

##### his life was taken from the earth

This referred to his death. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "men killed him" or "men took his life from the earth"

#### Acts 8:34

##### I beg you

"Please tell me"

#### Acts 8:35

##### this scripture

This refers to Isaiah's writings in the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "the writings of Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:36

##### they went on the road

"they continued to travel along the road"

##### What prevents me from being baptized?

The eunuch uses this question as a way of asking Philip for permission to be baptized. Alternate translation: "Please allow me to be baptized."

#### Acts 8:37

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 8:38

##### commanded the chariot to stop

"told the driver of the chariot to stop"

#### Acts 8:39

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia. The story of Philip ends at Caesarea.

##### the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away

The words "took Philip away" imply that the Spirit took forceful, physical action, perhaps a miracle that moved Philip in an instant. The angel probably did not just suggest or even command that Philip leave the eunuch and go elsewhere.

##### the eunuch saw him no more

"the eunuch did not see Philip again"

#### Acts 8:40

##### Philip appeared at Azotus

There was no indication of Philip's traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He just suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus.

##### that region

This refers to the area around the town of Azotus.

##### to all the cities

"to all the cities in that region"

## Chapter 9

# Acts 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "The Way"

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers "followers of the Way." This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or "way." If this is true, the believers were "following the way of the Lord" by living in a way that pleased God.

#### "Letters for the synagogues in Damascus"

The "letters" Paul asked for were probably legal papers that permitted him to put Christians in prison. The synagogue leaders in Damascus would have obeyed the letter because it was written by the high priest. If the Romans had seen the letter, they also would have allowed Saul to persecute the Christians, because they permitted the Jews to do as they desired to people who broke their religious laws.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### What Saul saw when he met Jesus

It is clear that Saul saw a light and that it was because of this light that he "fell upon the ground." Some people think that Saul knew that it was the Lord speaking to him without seeing a human form, because the Bible often speaks of God as being light and living in light. Other people think that later in his life he was able to say, "I have seen the Lord Jesus" because it was a human form that he saw here.

#### Acts 9:1

##### General Information:

Verses 1-2 give background information telling us what Saul has been doing since the stoning of Stephen.

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts back to Saul and his salvation.

##### still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples

The noun "murder" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "still speaking threats, even to murder the disciples"

#### Acts 9:2

##### General Information:

Verses 1-2 give background information telling us what Saul has been doing since the stoning of Stephen. Here the word "him" refers to the high priest and "he" refers to Saul.

##### for the synagogues

This refers to the people in the synagogues. Alternate translation: "for the people in the synagogues" or "for the leaders in the synagogues"

##### if he found any

"when he found people" or "if he found people"

##### who belonged to the Way

"who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ"

##### the Way

This term appears to have been a title for Christianity at that time.

##### he might bring them bound to Jerusalem

"he might take them as prisoners to Jerusalem." Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them"

#### Acts 9:3

##### Connecting Statement:

After the high priest gave Saul the letters, Saul left for Damascus.

##### As he was traveling

Saul left Jerusalem and now travels to Damascus.

##### it happened that

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen.

##### there shone all around him a light out of heaven

"a light from heaven shone all around him"

##### out of heaven

Possible meanings are 1) out of heaven, where God lives or 2) out of the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

#### Acts 9:4

##### he fell upon the ground and heard

Possible meanings are that 1) "Saul threw himself to the ground and heard" or 2) "the light caused Saul to fall to the ground, and he heard" or 3) "Saul fell to the ground the way one who faints falls, and he heard"

##### why are you persecuting me?

This rhetorical question communicates a rebuke to Saul. Alternate translation: "You are persecuting me!" or "Stop persecuting me!"

#### Acts 9:5

##### General Information:

Every occurrence of the word "you" here is singular.

##### Who are you, Lord?

Saul was not acknowledging that Jesus is the Lord. He uses that title because he understood that he spoke to someone of supernatural power.

#### Acts 9:6

##### but rise, enter into the city

"get up and go into the city Damascus"

##### it will be told you

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "someone will tell you"

#### Acts 9:7

##### stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "stood speechless. They heard the voice, but they did not see anyone"

##### but seeing no one

"but they saw no one" or "but they did not see anyone." Apparently only Saul experienced the light.

#### Acts 9:8

##### when he opened his eyes

This implies that he had closed his eyes because the light was too bright.

##### he could see nothing

"he could not see anything." Saul was blind.

#### Acts 9:9

##### was without sight

"was blind" or "could not see anything"

##### he neither ate nor drank

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

#### Acts 9:10

##### General Information:

The story of Saul continues, and Luke introduces another man named Ananias. This is not the same Ananias who died earlier in Acts [Acts 5:3]

##### Now there was

This introduces Ananias as a new character.

##### He said

"Ananias said"

#### Acts 9:11

##### go to the street which is called Straight

"go to Straight Street"

##### house of Judas

This Judas was not the disciple who had betrayed Jesus. This Judas was owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying.

##### a man from Tarsus named Saul

"a man from the city of Tarsus named Saul" or "Saul of Tarsus"

#### Acts 9:12

##### laying his hands on him

This was a symbol of giving a spiritual blessing to Saul.

##### he might see again

"he might regain his ability to see"

#### Acts 9:13

##### your holy people in Jerusalem

Here "holy people" refers to Christians. Alternate translation: "the people in Jerusalem who believe in you"

#### Acts 9:14

##### authority ... to put in bonds everyone here

It is implied that the extent of the power and authority granted Saul was limited to the Jewish people at this point in time.

##### put in bonds

Putting someone in bonds is a metonym for arresting that person. Alternate translation: "arrest"

##### calls upon your name

Here "your name" refers to Jesus.

#### Acts 9:15

##### he is a chosen instrument of mine

"chosen instrument" refers to something that is set apart for service. Alternate translation: "I have chosen him to serve me"

##### to carry my name

This is an expression for identifying or speaking out for Jesus. Alternate translation: "in order that he might speak about me"

#### Acts 9:16

##### for the cause of my name

This is an expression meaning "for telling people about me."

#### Acts 9:17

##### General Information:

The word "you" here is singular and refers to Saul.

##### Connecting Statement:

Ananias goes to the house where Saul is staying. After Saul is healed, the story shifts from Ananias back to Saul.

##### So Ananias departed, and entered into the house

It may be helpful to state that Ananias went to the house before he entered into it. Alternate translation: "So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it"

##### Laying his hands on him

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul.

##### so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you"

#### Acts 9:18

##### something like scales fell

"something that appeared like fish scales fell"

##### he received his sight

"he was able to see again"

##### he arose and was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he got up and Ananias baptized him"

#### Acts 9:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 9:20

##### General Information:

Here the first "he" refers to Saul. The second "he" refers to Jesus, the Son of God.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Acts 9:21

##### General Information:

Here "him" and "He" refer to Saul.

##### All who heard him

The word "All" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Those who heard him" or "Many who heard him"

##### Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name?

This is a rhetorical and negative question that emphasizes that Saul was indeed the man who had persecuted the believers. Alternate translation: "This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name Jesus!"

##### this name

Here "name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "the name of Jesus"

#### Acts 9:22

##### causing distress among the Jews

They were distressed in the sense that they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Christ.

#### Acts 9:23

##### General Information:

The word "him" in this section refers to Saul.

##### the Jews

This refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 9:24

##### But their plan became known to Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But someone told their plan to Saul" or "But Saul learned about their plan"

##### They watched the gates

This city had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through the gates.

#### Acts 9:25

##### his disciples

people who believed Saul's message about Jesus and were following his teaching

##### let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket

"used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall"

#### Acts 9:26

##### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "him" refer to Saul.

##### but they were all afraid of him

Here "they were all" is a generalization, but it is possible that it refers to every person. Alternate translation: "but they were afraid of him"

#### Acts 9:27

##### General Information:

Here "him" refers to Saul and "he" refers to Barnabas.

##### had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus

This is a way of saying he preached or taught the gospel message of Jesus Christ without fear. Alternate translation: "had openly preached the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 9:28

##### He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem

Here the word "He" refers to Saul, and the word "them" probably refers to the apostles and other disciples in Jerusalem. This is an idiom meaning that Paul was able to associate freely with the believers in Jerusalem.

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) this simply refers to the Lord Jesus and tells who Paul spoke about. Alternate translation: "about the Lord Jesus" or 2) "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "under the authority of the Lord Jesus" or "with the authority that the Lord Jesus gave him"

#### Acts 9:29

##### debated with the Grecian Jews

Saul tried to reason with the Jews who spoke Greek.

#### Acts 9:30

##### the brothers

Here the words "the brothers" refer to the believers in Jerusalem.

##### brought him down to Caesarea

The phrase "brought him down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### sent him away to Tarsus

Caesarea was a seaport. They brothers probably sent Saul to Tarsus by ship.

#### Acts 9:31

##### General Information:

Verse 31 is a statement that gives an update on the church's growth.

##### the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria

This is the first use of the singular "church" to refer to more than one local congregation. Here it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Israel.

##### had peace

"lived peacefully." This means the persecution that started with the murder of Stephen was finished.

##### was built up

The agent was either God or the Holy Spirit. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God helped them grow" or "the Holy Spirit built them up"

##### walking in the fear of the Lord

"Walking" here is a metaphor for "living." Alternate translation: "living in obedience to the Lord" or "continuing to honor the Lord"

##### in the comfort of the Holy Spirit

"with the Holy Spirit strengthening and encouraging them"

#### Acts 9:32

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the story shifts from Saul to a new part of the story about Peter.

##### Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### throughout the whole region

This is an generalization for Peter's visiting the believers in many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria.

##### he came down

The phrase "came down" is used here because Lydda is lower in elevation than the other places where he was traveling.

##### Lydda

Lydda is a city located about 18 kilometers southeast of Joppa. This city is called Lod in the Old Testament and in modern Israel.

#### Acts 9:33

##### There he found a certain man

Peter was not intentionally searching for a paralyzed person, but happened upon him. Alternate translation: "There Peter met a man"

##### a certain man named Aeneas

This introduces Aeneas as a new character in the story.

##### who had been in his bed ... was paralyzed

This is background information about Aeneas.

##### paralyzed

This means he was unable to walk. He probably was unable to move any part of his body below his waist.

#### Acts 9:34

##### make your bed

"roll up your mat"

#### Acts 9:35

##### everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon

This is a generalization referring to many of the people there. Alternate translation: "those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon" or "many people who lived in Lydda and Sharon"

##### in Lydda and in Sharon

The city of Lydda was located in the Plain of Sharon.

##### saw the man

It may be helpful to state that they saw that he was healed. Alternate translation: "saw the man whom Peter had healed"

##### and they turned to the Lord

Here "turned to the Lord" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "and they repented of their sins and started obeying the Lord"

#### Acts 9:36

##### General Information:

Verses 36 and 37 give background information about the woman named Tabitha.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the story with a new event about Peter.

##### Now there was

This introduces a new part in the story.

##### Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman

Tabitha is her name in the Aramaic language, and Dorcas is her name in the Greek language. Both names mean "gazelle." Alternate translation: "Tabitha, which in the Greek language was Dorcas. This woman"

##### was full of good works and merciful deeds

"doing many good things and performed merciful deeds"

#### Acts 9:37

##### General Information:

Verses 36 and 37 give background information about the woman named Tabitha.

##### It came about in those days

This refers to the time when Peter was in Joppa. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "It came about while Peter was nearby"

##### washed her

This was washing to prepare for her burial.

##### they laid her in an upper room

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process.

#### Acts 9:38

##### they sent two men to him

"the disciples sent two men to Peter"

#### Acts 9:39

##### to the upper room

"to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying"

##### all the widows

It is possible that all the widows of the town were there since it was not a large town.

##### widows

women whose husbands had died and therefore needed help

##### while she had been with them

"while she was still alive with the disciples"

#### Acts 9:40

##### put them all out of the room

"told them all to leave the room." Peter had everyone leave so he could be alone to pray for Tabitha.

#### Acts 9:41

##### gave her his hand and raised her up

Peter took hold of her hand and helped her to sit up in the bed and then stand up on the floor.

##### God's holy people and the widows

The widows were possibly also believers but are mentioned specifically because Tabitha was so important to them.

#### Acts 9:42

##### Connecting Statement:

The story of Tabitha ends in verse 42. Verse 43 tells us what happens to Peter after the story ends.

##### This matter became known throughout all Joppa

This refers to the miracle of Peter's raising Tabitha from the dead. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter"

##### believed on the Lord

"believed in the gospel of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 9:43

##### Connecting Statement:

The story of Tabitha ends in verse 42. Verse 43 tells us what happens to Peter after the story ends.

##### It happened that

"It came about that." This introduces the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### Simon, a tanner

"a man named Simon who made leather from animal skins"

## Chapter 10

# Acts 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Unclean

The Jews believed that they could become unclean in God's sight if they visited or ate food with a Gentile. This was because the Pharisees had made a law against it because they wanted to keep people from eating foods that the law of Moses said were unclean. The law of Moses did say that some foods were unclean, but it did not say that God's people could not visit or eat with Gentiles. (See: clean and lawofmoses)

#### Baptism and the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit "fell on" those who were listening to Peter. This showed the Jewish believers that Gentiles could receive the word of God and receive the Holy Spirit just as the Jewish believers had. After that, the Gentiles were baptized.

#### Acts 10:1

##### General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about Cornelius.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the part of the story about Cornelius.

##### Now there was a certain man

This was a way of introducing a new person to this part of the historical account.

##### in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers

"from Caesarea whose name was Cornelius. He was an officer in charge of 60 soldiers from the Italian Company of Soldiers, in the Roman army"

#### Acts 10:2

##### General Information:

The writer finishes giving background information about Cornelius.

##### a devout man

a man who wanted to do what God expected of him

##### feared God

worshiped God with deep respect and awe

##### prayed to God constantly

The word "constantly" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "prayed to God often" or "he prayed to God regularly"

#### Acts 10:3

##### the ninth hour

"three o'clock in the afternoon." This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews.

##### he clearly saw

"Cornelius clearly saw"

#### Acts 10:4

##### Your prayers and your alms have gone up ... into God's presence

It is implied that his gifts and prayers had been accepted by God. Alternate translation: "God is pleased by your prayers and alms. They have gone up ... to him"

#### Acts 10:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 10:6

##### a tanner

a person who makes leather from animal skins

#### Acts 10:7

##### When the angel who spoke to him had left

"When Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended."

##### a devout soldier

a soldier who wanted to do what God expected of him. See how you translated "devout" in [Acts 10:2](./02.md).

#### Acts 10:8

##### told them all that had happened

Cornelius explained his vision to his two servants and to one of his soldiers.

##### sent them to Joppa

"sent two of his two servants and the one soldier to Joppa."

#### Acts 10:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Cornelius' two servants and the soldier under Cornelius' command (Acts 10:7).

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts away from Cornelius to tell us what God is doing with to Peter.

##### about the sixth hour

"around noon"

##### up upon the housetop

The roofs of the houses were flat, and people often did many different activities on them.

#### Acts 10:10

##### while the people were cooking some food

"before the people finished cooking the food"

##### a trance came on him

This metaphor means that Peter went into the trance without expecting it or desiring it. Alternate translation: "he went into a trance"

##### trance

Peter saw things in his mind, not with his physical eyes.

#### Acts 10:11

##### he saw the sky open

This was the beginning of Peter's vision. It can be a new sentence.

##### something like a large sheet ... four corners

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth.

##### let down by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it"

#### Acts 10:12

##### things that crawled on the earth

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals"

#### Acts 10:13

##### a voice spoke to him

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God.

#### Acts 10:14

##### Not so

"I will not do that"

##### I have never eaten anything that was defiled and unclean

It is implied that some of the "four-footed animals and things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky"

#### Acts 10:15

##### What God has made clean, you must not call defiled

This refers to the animals in the sheet.

##### What God has made clean

If God is the speaker, he is referring to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "What I, God, have made clean"

#### Acts 10:16

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here.

#### Acts 10:17

##### Peter was very confused

This means that Peter was having difficulty understanding what the vision meant.

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows, in this case, the two men standing at the gate.

##### stood before the gate

"stood before the gate to the house." It is implied that this house had a wall with a gate one would use to enter the property.

##### after they had asked their way to the house

This happened before they arrived at the house. This could be stated earlier in the verse, as the UDB does.

#### Acts 10:18

##### They called out

Cornelius' men remained outside the gate while asking about Peter.

#### Acts 10:19

##### thinking about the vision

"wondering about the meaning of the vision"

##### the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit"

##### Behold, three

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: three"

##### three men are looking for you

Some ancient texts have a different number of men.

#### Acts 10:20

##### go down

"go down from the roof of the house"

##### Do not hesitate to go with them

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with them, because they were strangers and they were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:21

##### I am he whom you are seeking

"I am the man you are looking for"

#### Acts 10:22

##### General Information:

The word "They" here refer to the two servants and the soldier from Cornelius (Acts 10:7).

##### A centurion named Cornelius ... listen to a message from you

This can be divided into several sentences and stated in active form as the UDB does.

##### fears God

worships God with deep respect and awe

##### all the nation of the Jews

This number of people is exaggerated with the word "all" to emphasize how widely this was known among the Jews.

#### Acts 10:23

##### General Information:

The word "them" here refer to the two servants and the soldier from Cornelius (Acts 10:7).

##### So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him

The journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon.

##### stay with him

"be his guests"

##### some of the brothers from Joppa

This refers to believers who lived in Joppa.

#### Acts 10:24

##### On the following day

This was the next day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day.

##### Cornelius was waiting for them

"Cornelius expected them"

#### Acts 10:25

##### when Peter entered

"when Peter entered the house"

##### fell down at his feet to worship him

"he knelt down and put his face close to Peter's feet." He did this to honor Peter.

##### fell down

He purposely did this to show that he was worshiping.

#### Acts 10:26

##### Stand up! I too am a man

Peter was rebuking Cornelius mildly for worshiping Peter. Alternate translation: "Do not worship me! I am only a man, as you are"

#### Acts 10:27

##### General Information:

The word "him" here refers to Cornelius, and "he" refers to Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter addresses the people who are gathered in Cornelius' house.

##### many people gathered together

"many Gentile people gathered together." It is implied that these people Cornelius had invited were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:28

##### General Information:

Here the words "You" and "yourselves" include Cornelius as well as the Gentiles who were present and so are plural.

##### it is not lawful for a Jewish man

"it is forbidden for a Jewish man." This refers to the Jewish religious law.

##### a foreigner

people who are not Jews

#### Acts 10:29

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "you" include Cornelius as well as the Gentiles who were present and so are plural.

#### Acts 10:30

##### General Information:

In verses 31 and 32 Cornelius quotes what the angel had said to him when he appeared to him at the ninth hour. The words "you" and "your" are all singular. The word "we" here does not include Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

Cornelius responds to Peter's question.

##### Four days ago

Cornelius is referring to the day before the third night before he is speaking to Peter. Biblical culture counts the current day, so the day before three nights ago is "four days ago." Current Western culture does not count the current day, so many Western translations read, "three days ago."

##### praying

Some ancient authorities say "fasting and praying" instead of simply "praying."

##### at the ninth hour

The normal afternoon time that the Jews pray to God.

#### Acts 10:31

##### your prayer has been heard by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer"

##### reminded God about you

"brought you to God's attention." This does not imply that God had forgotten.

#### Acts 10:32

##### call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter

"tell Simon who is also called Peter to come to you"

#### Acts 10:33

##### at once

"right away"

##### You are kind to have come

This expression is a polite way of thanking Peter for coming. Alternate translation: "I certainly thank you for coming"

##### we are all here

This refers to Cornelius and his family but not to Peter, so this is exclusive.

##### present in the sight of God

"present with God"

##### that you have been instructed by the Lord to say

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the Lord has told you to say"

#### Acts 10:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins speaking to everyone in the house of Cornelius.

##### opened his mouth

"began to speak"

##### Truly

This means that what he is about to say is especially important to know.

##### God is not partial

"God does not favor certain people"

#### Acts 10:35

##### anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him

"he accepts anyone who fears him and does what is right"

##### to him

to God

##### fears

worships with deep respect and awe

#### Acts 10:36

##### General Information:

All instances of "he" here refers to God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to talk to Cornelius and his guests.

##### who is Lord of all

Here "all" means "all people."

#### Acts 10:37

##### throughout all Judea

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "throughout Judea" or "in many places in Judea"

##### after the baptism that John announced

"after John preached to the people to repent and then baptized them"

#### Acts 10:38

##### the events ... and with power

This long sentence, which begins in verse 36, can be shortened into several sentences as in the UDB.

##### God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power

The Holy Spirit and God's power are spoken of as if they are something that can be poured out onto a person.

##### all who were oppressed by the devil

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil"

##### God was with him

The idiom "was with him" means "was helping him."

#### Acts 10:39

##### General Information:

The word "We" refer to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth, not to his hearers. The word "him" here refers to Jesus.

##### in the country of the Jews

This refers mainly to Judea at that time.

##### hanging him on a tree

This is another expression that refers to crucifixion. Alternate translation: "nailing him to a wooden cross"

#### Acts 10:40

##### General Information:

Both instances of "him" refer to Jesus.

##### God raised him up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "God caused him to live again"

##### the third day

"the third day after he died"

##### caused him to be seen

"permitted many people to see him after he was raised from the dead"

#### Acts 10:41

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth, not to his hearers. The words "him" and "he" here refers to Jesus.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

#### Acts 10:42

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" includes Peter and believers. It excludes his audience.

##### that this is the one who has been chosen by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God chose this Jesus"

##### the living and the dead

This refers to people who are still living and people who have died. Alternate translation: "the people who are alive and the people who are dead"

#### Acts 10:43

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to everyone in the house of Cornelius, which he began in [Acts 10:34](./34.md).

##### About him all the prophets testify

"All the prophets testify about Jesus"

##### everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive the sins of everyone who believes in Jesus because of what Jesus has done"

##### through his name

Here "his name" refers to the actions of Jesus. His name means God who saves. Alternate translation: "through what Jesus has done for them"

#### Acts 10:44

##### the Holy Spirit fell

Here the word "fell" indicates that the event happened suddenly. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit suddenly came"

##### all of those who were listening

Here "all" refers to all the Gentiles at the house who were listening to Peter.

#### Acts 10:45

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also poured out the Holy Spirit"

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit

That is, the Holy Spirit himself was the gift.

##### poured out

The Holy Spirit is spoken of as if he were something that could be poured out upon people. It implies a generous amount. Alternate translation: "generously given"

##### the gift

"the free gift"

##### also on the Gentiles

Here "also" refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 10:46

##### Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God

These were known spoken languages that caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Gentiles were indeed praising God.

##### speaking in tongues

Here "tongues" is a metonym for languages. Alternate translation: "speaking in other languages"

#### Acts 10:47

##### Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received ... we?

Peter uses this question to convince the Jewish Christians that the Gentile believers should be baptized. Alternate translation: "No one should keep water from these people! We should baptize them because they have received ... we!"

#### Acts 10:48

##### General Information:

The words "he" and "him" refer to Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Cornelius.

##### he commanded them to be baptized

It is implied that the Jewish Christians were the ones who would baptize them. Alternate translation: "Peter commanded the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" or "Peter commanded the Jewish Christians to baptize them"

##### be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ

Here "in the name of Jesus Christ" expresses that the reason for their baptism was that they believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: "be baptized as believers in Jesus Christ"

## Chapter 20

# Acts 20 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter Luke describes Paul's last visits to believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Asia before he went to Jerusalem.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Race

Paul spoke of living for Jesus as if he were running in a race. By this he meant that he needed to keep working hard even when things were difficult and he wanted to quit. (See: and discipline)

#### "Compelled by the Spirit"

Paul thought that the Holy Spirit wanted him to go to Jerusalem even if Paul did not want to go there. The same Holy Spirit told other people that when Paul arrived in Jerusalem, people would try to harm him.

#### Acts 20:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul leaves Ephesus and continues his travels.

##### After the uproar

"After the riot" or "Following the riot"

##### he said farewell

"he said goodbye"

#### Acts 20:2

##### had spoken many words of encouragement to them

"had greatly encouraged the believers" or "had said many things to encourage the believers"

#### Acts 20:3

##### After he had spent three months there

"After he had stayed there three months." This speaks about time as if it were something a person could spend.

##### a plot was formed against him by the Jews

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Jews formed a plot against him" or "the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him"

##### by the Jews

This means only some of the Jews. Alternate translation: "by some of the Jews"

##### as he was about to sail for Syria

"as he was ready to sail for Syria"

#### Acts 20:4

##### Accompanying him

"Traveling with him." Here the word "him" refers to Paul (Acts 20:1).

##### Sopater ... Pyrrhus ... Secundus ... Tychicus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Berea ... Derbe

These are names of places.

##### Aristarchus ... Gaius

These are names of men. See how you translated these names in Acts 19:29.

#### Acts 20:5

##### these men had gone before us

"these men had traveled ahead of us"

##### before us ... for us

Here "us" refers to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Troas

This is the name of a place.

#### Acts 20:6

##### General Information:

All instances of "we" refer to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### the days of unleavened bread

This refers to the Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. See how you translated this in Acts 12:3.

#### Acts 20:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: and [Acts 20:4-6](./04.md))

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about Paul's preaching in Troas and about what happened to Eutychus.

##### the next day

"when the sun came up again." If the writer was using the Jewish system of determining days, Paul was planning to travel after sunrise on "the first day of the week." If the writer was using the Greek system, Paul was planning to travel on the second day of the week.

##### to break bread

Bread was part of their meals. Possible meanings are 1) this refers simply to eating a meal together. Alternate translation: "to eat a meal" or 2) this refers to the meal they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "to eat the Lord's Supper"

##### he prolonged his message

"he continued to speak"

#### Acts 20:8

##### upper room

This may have been on the third floor of the house.

#### Acts 20:9

##### In the window

This was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough on which a person could sit.

##### Eutychus

This is the name of a man.

##### who fell into a deep sleep

This speaks about sleep as if it were a deep hole into which a person could fall. Alternate translation: "who slept soundly" or "who became more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly"

##### third story and was picked up dead

When they went down to check his condition, they saw he was dead. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "third story; and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead"

##### third story

This means two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the "second story."

#### Acts 20:10

##### on him ... embraced him ... he is alive

Here "him" and "he" refers to the young man, Eutychus.

##### he said

Here "he" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 20:11

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul's preaching at Troas and about Eutychus.

##### broke bread

Bread was a common food during meals. Here "broke bread" probably means that they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread.

##### he left

"he went away"

#### Acts 20:12

##### the boy

This refers to Eutychus (Acts 20:9). Possible meanings are 1) he was a young man over 14 years old or 2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old or 3) the word "boy" implies that he was a servant or a slave.

#### Acts 20:13

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his other companions continue their travels; however, Paul goes separately for part of the trip.

##### We ourselves went

The word "ourselves" adds emphasis and separates Luke and his traveling companions from Paul, who did not travel by boat.

##### sailed away to Assos

Assos is a town located directly below present day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

##### he himself desired

Here "he himself" refers to Paul. "Himself" is used to emphasize that this is what Paul wanted.

##### to go by land

"to travel on land"

#### Acts 20:14

##### he met ... took him

Here "he" and "him" refer to Paul.

##### met us ... we took

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### went to Mitylene

Mitylene is a town located in present day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

#### Acts 20:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul, the writer, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### opposite the island

"near the island" or "across from the island"

##### the island of Chios

Chios is an island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the Aegean Sea.

##### we touched at the island of Samos

"we arrived at the island of Samos"

##### island of Samos

Samos is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey.

##### the city of Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River.

#### Acts 20:16

##### For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus

Paul sailed south past the port city of Ephesus, further south in order to land at Miletus.

##### so that he would not spend any time

This speaks about "time" as if it were a commodity that a person could spend or use up. Alternate translation: "so that he would not have to remain for a time" or "so that he would not have a delay"

#### Acts 20:17

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul calls the elders of the church of Ephesus and begins to speak to them.

##### Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. See how you translated this in [Acts 20:15]

#### Acts 20:18

##### You yourselves

Here "yourselves" is used for emphasis.

##### I set foot in Asia

Here "foot" stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: "I entered Asia"

##### how I always spent my time with you

This speaks about time as if it were something that a person could spend. Alternate translation: "how I always conducted myself when I was with you"

#### Acts 20:19

##### lowliness of mind

This speaks about something humble as if it were low to the ground. The word "mind" stands for a person's inner attitude. Alternate translation: "humility" or "humbleness"

##### with tears

Here "tears" stands for feeling sad and crying. Alternate translation: "with crying as I served the Lord"

##### in trials that happened to me

"Trials" is an abstract noun. The meaning can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "while God was testing me"

##### of the Jews

This does not mean every Jew. This lets us know who plotted. Alternate translation: "of some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:20

##### You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you

"You know how I was never silent, but I always declared to you"

##### from house to house

"I also taught when I was in your homes"

#### Acts 20:21

##### about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus

The abstract nouns "repentance" and "faith" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### our Lord Jesus

The word "our" refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking.

#### Acts 20:22

##### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Paul.

##### compelled by the Spirit

They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the Spirit compels me to go there"

##### not knowing what will happen to me there

"and I do not know what will happen to me there"

#### Acts 20:23

##### chains and afflictions await me

Here "chains" refers to Paul's being arrested and put in prison. Alternate translation: "people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer"

#### Acts 20:24

##### if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus

This speaks about Paul's "race" and "ministry" as if they are objects that Jesus gives and Paul receives. Here "race" and "ministry" mean basically the same thing. Paul repeats this for emphasis. Alternate translation: "so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do"

##### finish the race

Paul speaks about completing the work that Jesus has commanded him to do as if he were running a race.

##### to testify to the gospel of the grace of God

"to tell people the good news about God's grace." This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus.

#### Acts 20:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to talk to the Ephesian elders (Acts 20:17).

##### Now look, I know

"Now, pay careful attention, because I know"

##### I know that you all

"I know that all of you"

##### among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom

Here "kingdom" stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "to whom I preached the message about God's reign as king" or "to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king"

##### will see my face no more

The word "face" here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "will not see me anymore on this earth"

#### Acts 20:26

##### I am innocent of the blood of any man

Here "blood" stands for a person's death, which, in this case, is not physical death but spiritual death when God declares a person guilty of sin. Paul had told them God's truth. Alternate translation: "I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus"

##### any man

Here this means any person whether male or female. Alternate translation: "any person"

#### Acts 20:27

##### For I did not hold back from declaring to you

"For I did not keep silent and not tell you." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For I certainly declared to you"

#### Acts 20:28

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true," referring to all that Paul has said so far in his speech about his leaving them.

##### the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God

Believers are likened to a "flock" of sheep here. Church leaders are entrusted by God with the care of the community of believers just as a shepherd would care for his flock of sheep and protect them from wolves. Alternate translation: "the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God"

##### the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood

The shedding of the blood of Christ here is likened to a payment to God for our sins. Alternate translation: "the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross"

##### his own blood

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death.

#### Acts 20:29

##### vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock

This is a picture of people who teach false doctrine and who harm the community of believers as though they were wolves that eat the sheep of the flock. Alternate translation: "many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers"

#### Acts 20:30

##### to draw away the disciples after them

A false teacher convincing believers to start believing his false teaching is spoken of as if he were leading sheep away from the flock to follow him. Alternate translation: "in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead"

#### Acts 20:31

##### be on guard. Remember

"be on guard and remember" or "be on guard as you remember"

##### be on guard

"be awake and alert" or "watch out." Christian leaders being alert about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army.

##### Remember that

"Continue to remember that" or "Do not forget that"

##### for three years I never stopped warning ... night and day

Paul taught them over the space of three years, but not necessarily every day for three years.

##### I never stopped warning ... you

This does not mean that the only words he spoke were words of warning. Rather, Paul is using hyperbole to remind them that he had told them often that evil men would try to deceive them. Alternate translation: "I warned ... you as often as I could"

##### with tears

Here "tears" refers to Paul's crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people.

#### Acts 20:32

##### I commit you to God and to the word of his grace

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "I ask God to take care of you and to help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace"

##### which is able to build you up

A person's faith becoming stronger is spoken of as if the person were a wall and someone were building him higher and stronger. Alternate translation: "which is able to make become stronger and stronger in your faith"

##### to give you the inheritance

This speaks about the "word of his grace" as if the word itself would give the inheritance to believers. Alternate translation: "God will give you the inheritance"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that God gives believers are spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father.

#### Acts 20:33

##### I coveted no man's silver

"I did not desire someone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

##### man's silver, gold, or clothing

Clothing was considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

#### Acts 20:34

##### You yourselves

The word "yourselves" is used here to add emphasis.

##### these hands served my own needs

The word "hands" here represents the entire person. Alternate translation: "I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses"

#### Acts 20:35

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to the elders of the church of Ephesus; he began to speak them in Acts 20:18.

##### you should help the weak by laboring

"you should work so as to have money to help people who cannot earn it for themselves"

##### the weak

You can state this nominal adjective as an adjective. Alternate translation: "weak persons" or "those who are weak"

##### weak

"sick"

##### the words of the Lord Jesus

Here "words" refers to what Jesus has said.

##### It is more blessed to give than to receive

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

#### Acts 20:36

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends his time with the elders of the church of Ephesus by praying with them.

##### he knelt down and prayed

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God.

#### Acts 20:37

##### embraced Paul

"hugged him closely" or "put their arms around him"

##### kissed him

Kissing someone on the cheek is an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

#### Acts 20:38

##### they would never see his face again

The word "face" here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "they would not see him anymore on this earth"

## Chapter 1

# Romans 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The first verse is a type of introduction. People in the ancient Mediterranean region often started their letters this way. Sometimes this is called a "salutation."

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The gospel

When Paul writes of "the gospel" in this chapter (verses 1, 2, 9, 15, 16, 17), he is referring to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus's sacrifice on the cross.

#### Harvest

This chapter uses the image of a harvest ([1:13](./13.md)) to speak of the Roman Christians doing good works because they believe what Paul has told them about Jesus. (See: fruit and faith and righteous)

#### Universal Condemnation and the Wrath of God

This chapter explains that everyone is without excuse. We all know about the true God, Yahweh, from his creation all around us. Because of our sin and our sinful nature, every person justly deserves the wrath of God. This wrath was satisfied by Jesus dying on a cross for those who believe in him. (See: believe and sin)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### "God gave them over"

Many scholars view the phrases "God gave them over" and "God gave them up" as theologically significant. In both cases, it means that God had stopped trying to teach the people the right way and had allowed them to do whatever they want, even though everything they wanted to do was evil.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Difficult phrases and concepts

This chapter has many difficult ideas in it. The way Paul writes makes many of the phrases in this chapter difficult to translate. The translator may need to use the UDB to understand the meaning of the phrases and then translate them in a way that is easy for people to understand. Some of the difficult phrases include: "obedience of faith," "whom I serve in my spirit," "from faith to faith" and "exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man."

#### Romans 1:1

##### Paul

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. You may also need to tell in this same verse who the people are to whom Paul wrote the letter

##### Christ, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Christ. God called me to be an apostle and chose me to tell people about the gospel"

##### called

appointed or chosen by God to be his child, to be his servant and proclaimer of his message of salvation through Jesus

#### Romans 1:2

##### which he promised beforehand by his prophets in the holy scriptures

God promised his people that he would set up his kingdom. He told the prophets to write these promises in the Scriptures.

#### Romans 1:3

##### concerning his Son

This refers to "the gospel of God," the good news that God promised to send his Son into the world.

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### who was a descendant of David according to the flesh

Here the word "flesh" refers to the physical body. Alternate translation: "who is a descendant of David according to the physical nature" or "who was born into the family of David"

#### Romans 1:4

##### he was declared with power to be the Son of God

The word "he" refers to Jesus Christ. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God declared him with power to be the Son of God"

##### by the resurrection from the dead

"by raising him from among the people who are dead." This expression speaks of all dead people together in the underworld, and coming alive again is spoken of as resurrection from among them.

##### Spirit of holiness

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

#### Romans 1:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks here about his obligation to preach.

##### we have received grace and apostleship

God has given Paul the gift of being an apostle. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God caused me to be an apostle. This is a special privilege"

##### for obedience of faith among all the nations, for the sake of his name

Paul uses the word "name" as a metonym to refer to Jesus. Alternate translation: "in order to teach all nations to obey because of their faith in him"

#### Romans 1:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 1:7

##### To all in Rome who are beloved of God and called to be his holy people

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I am writing this letter to all of you in Rome whom God loves and has chosen to become his people"

##### Grace to you and peace

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "May God give you grace and peace" or "May God bless you and give you inner peace"

##### God our Father

The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### Romans 1:8

##### the whole world

the world Paul and his readers knew and could travel in, which was the Roman Empire

#### Romans 1:9

##### For God is my witness

Paul emphasizes that he earnestly prays for them and that God has seen him praying. The word "for" is often left untranslated.

##### in my spirit

A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.

##### the gospel of his Son

The good news (gospel) of the Bible is that the Son of God has given himself as the Savior of the world.

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### I make mention of you

"I talk to God about you"

#### Romans 1:10

##### I always request in my prayers that ... I may at last be successful ... in coming to you

"Every time I pray, I ask God that ... I may succeed ... in coming to visit you"

##### by any means

"in whatever way God allows"

##### at last

"eventually" or "finally"

##### now by the will of God

"now, because God desires it,"

#### Romans 1:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues his opening statements to the people in Rome by stating his desire to see them in person.

##### For I desire to see you

"Because I really want to see you"

##### some spiritual gift, in order to strengthen you

Paul wants to strengthen the Roman Christians spiritually. Alternate translation: "some gift that will help you to grow spiritually"

#### Romans 1:12

##### That is, I long to be mutually encouraged among you, through each other's faith, yours and mine

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I mean that I want us to encourage each other by sharing our experiences of faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 1:13

##### I do not want you to be uninformed

Paul is emphasizing that he wanted them to have this information. You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I want you to know"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### I was hindered until now

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "something has always prevented me"

##### in order to have some fruit among you

The word "fruit" is a metaphor that represents people in Rome whom Paul wants to believe the gospel. Alternate translation: "that more people among you might trust in Jesus"

##### the rest of the Gentiles

the Gentiles in the other regions where he had gone

#### Romans 1:14

##### I am a debtor both to

Using the metaphor "debtor," Paul speaks of his duty to serve God as if he owed God a financial debt. Alternate translation: "I must take the gospel to"

#### Romans 1:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 1:16

##### I am not ashamed of the gospel

You can translate this in a positive form. Possible meanings are that 1) Paul is not ashamed of believing the gospel because he knows it is true. Alternate translation: "I am confident in the gospel" 2) Paul is not ashamed of preaching the gospel because he knows that is true. Alternate translation: "I confidently preach the gospel"

##### it is the power of God for salvation for everyone who believes

Here "believes" means that one puts his trust in Christ. Alternate translation: "it is through the gospel that God powerfully saves those who put their trust in Christ"

##### for the Jew first and for the Greek

"for Jewish people and also for Greek people"

##### first

Here "first" means coming before all others in order of time.

#### Romans 1:17

##### For in it

Here "it" refers to the gospel. Paul explains why he completely trusts in the gospel.

##### God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith

Paul speaks about the gospel message as if it were an object that God could physically show to people. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has told us that it is by faith from beginning to end that people become righteous"

##### as it has been written

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "as someone has written in the Scriptures"

##### The righteous will live by faith

Possible meanings are 1) the words "by faith" describe "righteous," and those who by faith are righteous will live, or 2) the words "by faith" describe "will live," and those who are righteous will live by faith.

##### The righteous

The word "righteous" can be written as an adjective. Alternate translation: "Righteous people" or "A person who is righteous"

#### Romans 1:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reveals God's great anger against sinful man.

##### For the wrath of God is revealed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For God shows how angry he is"

##### For

Paul uses the word "for" to show he is about to tell why people know that what he has said in Romans 1:17 is true.

##### the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of people

The words "ungodliness" and "unrighteousness" are abstract nouns that can be expressed using the adjectives "ungodly," which describes the people, and "unrighteous," which describes their deeds. These nouns are metonyms for the people with whom God is angry. You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "God reveals from heaven how angry he is with people because they are ungodly and do unrighteous deeds"

##### hold back the truth

Here "truth" refers to true information about God. Alternate translation: "hide the true information about God"

#### Romans 1:19

##### that which is known about God is visible to them

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "they can know about God because of what they can plainly see"

##### For God has enlightened them

Here "enlightened them" means God has shown them the truth about him. Alternate translation: "Because God has shown everyone what he is like"

#### Romans 1:20

##### world

This refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.

##### his invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen

Paul speaks of people understanding God's invisible qualities as if people have seen those qualities. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "people have clearly understood God's invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature"

##### divine nature

"all the qualities and characteristics of God" or "the things about God that make him God"

##### having been discerned

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "because people have discerned them" or "because people have understood them"

##### in the things that have been made

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "in the things that God has made"

##### they are without excuse

"people do not have an excuse" or "these people can never say that they did not know"

#### Romans 1:21

##### became foolish in their thoughts

"began to think foolish things"

##### their senseless hearts were darkened

Here "darkness" is a metaphor that represents the people's lack of understanding. Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "they became unable to understand what God wanted them to know"

#### Romans 1:22

##### They claimed to be wise, but they became foolish

"While they were claiming that they were wise, they became foolish"

##### They ... they

the people in Romans 1:18

#### Romans 1:23

##### exchanged the glory of the imperishable God

"traded the truth that God is glorious and will never die"

##### exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of

"stopped loving the glory of the God who never dies and instead chose to worship idols that looked like"

##### perishable man

"human beings, who will die"

##### of birds, of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things

"or that looked like birds, four-footed beasts, or creeping things"

#### Romans 1:24

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### God delivered them over to

"God allowed them to indulge in"

##### them ... their ... themselves

These words refer to the "people" of Romans 1:18.

##### the lusts of their hearts for uncleanness

Here "lusts of their hearts" is a synecdoche that represents the evil things they wanted to do. Alternate translation: "the morally impure things they desired greatly"

##### for their bodies to be dishonored among themselves

This is a euphemism that means they committed immoral sexual acts. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "and they committed sexually immoral and degrading acts"

#### Romans 1:25

##### they

This word refers to the "people" of Romans 1:18.

##### who worshiped and served the creation

Here "creation" refers to what God created. Alternate translation: "They worshiped things that God created"

##### instead of

"rather than"

#### Romans 1:26

##### Because of this

"Because of idolatry and sexual sin"

##### God delivered them over to dishonorable lusts

"God allowed them to do all the dishonorable things they very much wanted to do"

##### dishonorable lusts

"shameful sexual desires"

##### lusts, for their women

"lusts. For example, their women"

##### exchanged natural relations for those that were unnatural

The idea of relations "that were unnatural" is a euphemism for immoral sexuality. Alternate translation: "started practicing sexuality in a way God did not design"

#### Romans 1:27

##### men also left their natural relations with women

Here "natural relations" is a euphemism for sexual relationships. Alternate translation: "many men stopped having natural sexual desire for women"

##### burned in their lust for one another

"experienced strong sexual desire for other men"

##### committed shameless acts with men and

"committed acts with men for which they should have been ashamed. But they were not ashamed, and they"

##### men and received in themselves the penalty they deserved for their error

"men, and God has punished them justly for the error they committed"

##### error

moral wrong, not a mistake about facts

#### Romans 1:28

##### And just as they did not approve of having God in their awareness

"They did not think it was necessary to know God"

##### And just as

Possible meanings are 1) God "gave them up to a corrupted mind ... proper" (see the words in this verse) because they not only "exchanged the truth of God for a lie, and ... worshiped and served the creation" (Romans 1:25), but they also "did not approve ... awareness," or 2) God "gave them up ... proper" because "they did not approve ... awareness," in which case "And just as" should be translated "Because."

##### they ... their ... them

These words refer to the "people" of Romans 1:18.

##### he gave them up to a corrupted mind

Here "a corrupted mind" means a mind that thinks only about immoral things. Alternate translation: "God allowed their minds, which they had filled with worthless and immoral thoughts, to completely control them"

##### not proper

"disgraceful" or "sinful"

#### Romans 1:29

##### They have been filled with all

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "They have in them a strong desire for all" or "They strongly desire to do deeds of"

##### They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, and evil intentions

"Many are constantly envying other people ... Many constantly desire to murder people ... to cause arguments and quarrels among people ... to deceive others ... to speak hatefully about others"

#### Romans 1:30

##### slanderers

A slanderer says false things about another person in order to damage that person's reputation.

##### inventing ways of doing evil

"thinking of new ways to do evil things to others"

#### Romans 1:31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 1:32

##### They understand the ordinance of God, that

"They know how God wants them to live and that"

##### that those who practice such things

Here "practice" refers to continually or habitually doing things that are evil. Alternate translation: "that those who keep on doing wicked things"

##### are deserving of death

"deserve to die"

##### these things

"these kinds of evil things"

##### who do them

Here the verb "do" refers to continuing to do things that are evil. Alternate translation: "who keep on doing evil things"

## Chapter 2

# Romans 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter shifts its audience from Roman Christians to those who "judge" other people and do not believe in Jesus. (See: judge and believe)

#### "Therefore you are without excuse"

This phrase looks back at Chapter 1. In some ways, it actually concludes what Chapter 1 teaches. This phrase explains why everyone in the world must worship the true God.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Doers of the Law"

Those who try to obey the law will not be justified by trying to obey it. Those who are justified by believing in Jesus show that their faith is real by obeying God's commands. (See: justice and lawofmoses)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the readers see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See:, guilt and sin and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "You who judge"

At times, this could be translated in a simpler way. But it is translated in this relatively awkward way because when Paul refers to "people who judge" he is also saying that everyone judges. It is possible to translate this as "those who judge (and everyone judges)."

#### Romans 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul has stated that all people are sinners and continues to remind his readers that all people are wicked.

##### Therefore you are without excuse

The word "therefore" marks a new section of the letter. It also makes a concluding statement based on what Paul has said in [Romans 1:1-32]

##### you are

Paul is writing here as if he were addressing a Jewish person who is arguing with him. Paul is doing this to teach his audience that God will punish everyone who continually sins, whether Jew or Gentile.

##### you

Here the pronoun "you" is singular.

##### excuse, you person, you who judge, for in things for which you judge the other person, you condemn yourself

"excuse. You are just a human being, yet you judge others and say they deserve God's punishment. But you are only judging yourself because you do the same wicked deeds that they do"

##### you person

Another possible meaning is "whoever you are."

#### Romans 2:2

##### But we know

Here the pronoun "we" may include Christian believers and also Jews who are not Christians.

##### God's judgment is according to truth when it falls on those

Here Paul speaks of "God's judgment" as if it were alive and could "fall" on people. Alternate translation: "God will judge those people truly and fairly"

##### those who practice such things

"the people who do those wicked deeds"

#### Romans 2:3

##### But consider this

"So consider this" or "Therefore, consider this"

##### consider this

"think about what I am going to tell you"

##### you person

Use the phrase "you, whoever you are" or use "you," (with the comma), followed by a general word for a human being.

##### you who judge those who practice such things although you do the same things

"you who say someone deserves God's punishment while you do the same wicked deeds"

##### Will you escape from the judgment of God?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this question as a strong negative statement. Alternate translation: "You will certainly not escape God's judgment!"

#### Romans 2:4

##### Or do you think so little of the riches of his kindness, his delayed punishment, and his patience ... repentance?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You should not act like it does not matter that God is good and that he patiently waits a long time before he punishes people so that his goodness will cause them to repent!"

##### think so little of the riches ... patience

"consider the riches ... patience unimportant" or "consider ... patience not good"

##### Do you not know that his kindness is meant to lead you to repentance?

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You must know that God shows you he is good so that you might repent!"

#### Romans 2:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the people that all people are wicked.

##### But it is to the extent of your hardness and unrepentant heart

Paul uses a metaphor to compare a person who refuses to obey God to something hard, like a stone. He also uses the metonym "heart" to represent the person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "It is because you refuse to listen and repent"

##### hardness and unrepentant heart

This is a doublet that you can combine as "unrepentant heart."

##### you are storing up for yourself wrath

The phrase "storing up" implies a metaphor that usually refers to a person gathering his treasures and putting them in a safe place. Paul says, instead of treasures, that the person is gathering God's punishment. The longer they go without repenting, the more severe the punishment. Alternate translation: "you are making your punishment worse"

##### on the day of wrath ... the day of the revelation of God's righteous judgment

Both of these phrases refer to the same day. Alternate translation: "when God will show everyone that he is angry and that he judges all people fairly"

#### Romans 2:6

##### pay back

"give a fair reward or punishment"

##### to every person according to his actions

"each person according to what that person has done"

#### Romans 2:7

##### who according to the perseverance of good deeds have

who, by persevering and doing good deeds, have

##### have sought

have tried to get

##### glory, honor, and incorruptibility

They want God to praise and honor them, and they want to never die.

##### incorruptibility

This refers to physical, not moral, decay.

#### Romans 2:8

##### self-seeking

"selfish" or "only concerned with what makes themselves happy"

##### disobey the truth but obey unrighteousness

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the first.

##### wrath and fierce anger will come

The words "wrath" and "fierce anger" mean basically the same thing and emphasize God's anger. Alternate translation: "God will show his terrible anger"

##### wrath

Here the word "wrath" is a metonym that refers to God's severe punishment of wicked people.

#### Romans 2:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Though this section is speaking to the non-religious wicked person, Paul sums it up by stating both non-Jews and Jews are wicked before God.

##### tribulation and distress on

The words "tribulation" and "distress" mean basically the same thing here and emphasize how bad God's punishment will be. Alternate translation: "awful punishments to"

##### on every human soul

Here, Paul uses the word "soul" as a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "upon every person"

##### has practiced evil

"has continually done evil things"

##### evil, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"evil. He will judge the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

##### first

Possible meanings are 1) "first in order of time" or 2) "most certainly"

#### Romans 2:10

##### But glory, honor, and peace will come

"But God will praise, honor, and give peace"

##### practices good

"continually does what is good"

##### good, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"good. God will reward the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

##### first

You should translate this the same way you did in Romans 2:9.

#### Romans 2:11

##### For there is no partiality with God

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "For God treats all people the same"

#### Romans 2:12

##### For as many as have sinned

"For all those who have sinned"

##### without the law will also perish without the law

Paul repeats "without the law" to emphasize that it does not matter if people do not know the law of Moses. If they sin, God will judge them. Alternate translation: "without knowing the law of Moses will certainly still die spiritually"

##### as many as have sinned

"all those who have sinned"

##### with respect to the law will be judged by the law

God will judge sinful people according to his law. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "and who do know the law of Moses, God will judge them according to that law"

#### Romans 2:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to let the reader know that perfect obedience to God's law is required even for those who never had God's law.

##### it is not the hearers of the law

Here "the law" refers to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "it is not those who only hear the law of Moses"

##### who are righteous before God

"whom God considers righteous"

##### but it is the doers of the law

"but it is those who obey the law of Moses"

##### who will be justified

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom God will accept"

#### Romans 2:14

##### For

This verse is the beginning of an interruption of Paul's main argument, in which he gives the reader extra information. If you have a way to mark an interruption like this in your language, you can use it here.

##### a law to themselves ... do not have the law

This is an idiom that means that these people naturally obey God's laws. Alternate translation: "have God's laws already inside them ... actually do not have the law"

##### they do not have the law

Here "the law" refers to the law of Moses." Alternate translation: "they do not actually have the laws that God gave to Moses"

#### Romans 2:15

##### General Information:

This verse is the end of an interruption of Paul's main argument, in which he gives the reader extra information. If you have a way to mark an interruption like this in your language, you can use it here.

##### By this they show

"By naturally obeying the law they show"

##### that the actions required by the law are written in their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for the person's thoughts or inner person. The phrase "written in their hearts" is a metaphor for knowing something in their mind. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "that God has written on their hearts what the law requires them to do" or "that they know the actions that God wants them to do according to his law"

##### bears witness to them

Here "bears witness" refers to the knowledge they gain from the law that God has written in their hearts. Alternate translation: "tells them if they are disobeying or obeying God's law"

#### Romans 2:16

##### when God will judge

This finishes Paul's thought from Romans 2:13. You can put a period at the end of 2:15 and start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "This will happen when God judges"

#### Romans 2:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Here begins Paul's discussion that the law the Jews possess actually condemns them because they do not obey it.

##### if you say that you are a Jew

"since you call yourself a Jew" or "if you want people to think of you as a Jew"

##### rest upon the law

The phrase "rest upon the law" represents believing that they can become righteous by obeying the law. Alternate translation: "rely on the law of Moses"

#### Romans 2:18

##### know his will

"and know God's will"

##### because you have been instructed from the law

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because people have taught you what is right from the law" or "because you have learned from the law"

#### Romans 2:19

##### that you yourself are a guide to the blind, a light to those who are in darkness

Here "the blind" and "those who walk in darkness" represent people who do not understand the law. Alternate translation: "that because you teach the law, you yourself are like a guide to blind people, and you are like a light to people who are lost in the dark"

#### Romans 2:20

##### an instructor of the foolish

"you correct those who do wrong"

##### a teacher of little children

Here Paul compares those who do not know anything about the law to very small children. Alternate translation: "you teach those who do not know the law"

##### and that you have in the law the form of knowledge and of the truth

The knowledge of the truth that is in the law comes from God. Alternate translation: "and you are sure you understand the truth that God has given in the law"

#### Romans 2:21

##### You who teach others, do you not teach yourself?

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You teach others, but you do not teach yourself!" or "You teach others, but you do not do what you teach!"

##### You who preach against stealing, do you steal?

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You tell people not to steal, but you steal!"

#### Romans 2:22

##### You who say that one must not commit adultery, do you commit adultery?

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You tell people not to commit adultery, but you commit adultery!"

##### You who hate idols, do you rob temples?

Paul is using a question to scold his listener. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You say you hate idols, but you rob temples!"

##### do you rob temples

Possible meanings are 1) "do you steal items from local pagan temples to sell and make a profit" or 2) "do you keep back from the Jerusalem temple all the money that is due to God"

#### Romans 2:23

##### You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by transgressing the law?

Paul uses a question to scold his listener. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "It is wicked that you claim to be proud of the law while at the same time you disobey it and bring shame to God!"

#### Romans 2:24

##### the name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "many Gentiles blaspheme the name of God"

##### name of God

The word "name" is a metonym that refers to the entirety of God, not just his name.

#### Romans 2:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to show that God, by his law, condemns even the Jews who have God's law.

##### For circumcision is profitable to you

"I say all of this because it is good for you to be circumcised"

##### if you are a transgressor of the law

"if you do not obey the commandments found in the law"

##### your circumcision becomes uncircumcision

"it is as though you were no longer circumcised"

#### Romans 2:26

##### the uncircumcised person

"the person who is not circumcised"

##### keeps the requirements of the law

"obeys what God commands in the law"

##### will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision?

This is the first of two questions Paul asks here to emphasize that circumcision is not what makes one right before God. You can translate this question as a statement in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will consider him as circumcised."

#### Romans 2:27

##### And will not the one who is naturally uncircumcised condemn you ... the law?

This is the second of two questions that Paul asks here

#### Romans 2:28

##### outwardly

This refers to Jewish rituals, such as circumcision, which people can see.

##### merely outward in the flesh

This refers to the physical change to a man's body when someone circumcises him.

##### flesh

This is a synecdoche for the whole body. Alternate translation: "body"

#### Romans 2:29

##### he is a Jew who is one inwardly, and circumcision is that of the heart

These two phrases have similar meanings. The first phrase, "he is a Jew who is one inwardly," explains the second phrase, "circumcision is that of the heart."

##### inwardly

This refers to the values and motivations of the person whom God has transformed.

##### of the heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for the inner person.

##### in the Spirit, not in the letter

Here "letter" is a synecdoche that refers to written Scripture. Alternate translation: "through the work of the Holy Spirit, not because you know the Scriptures"

##### in the Spirit

This refers to the internal, spiritual part of a person that the Holy Spirit changes.

## Chapter 3

# Romans 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 4 and 10-18 of this chapter, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

Chapter 3 answers the question, "What advantage does being a Jew have over being a Gentile?" (See: lawofmoses and save)

#### "For all have sinned and come short of the glory of God"

Because God is holy, anyone with him in heaven must be perfect. Any sin at all will condemn a person. (See: heaven and condemn)

#### The purpose of the law of Moses

Obeying the law cannot make a person right with God. Obeying God's law is a way a person shows they believe in God. People have always been justified only by faith. (See: justice and faith)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul frequently uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the readers see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: and guilt)

#### Romans 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul proclaims the advantage that Jews have because God gave them his law.

##### Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?

Paul presents ideas that people might have after they hear what he wrote in chapter 2. He does this in order to respond to them in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Some people might say, 'Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?'" or "Some people might say, 'If that is true, then the Jews do not have any advantage, and there is no benefit in being circumcised.'"

#### Romans 3:2

##### It is great in every way

Paul now responds to the concerns brought up in verse 1. Here "It" refers to being a member of the Jewish people. Alternate translation: "But there is great advantage to being a Jew"

##### First of all

Possible meanings are 1) "First in order of time" or 2) "Most certainly" or 3) "Most importantly."

##### the Jews were entrusted with revelation from God

Here "revelation" refers to God's words and promises. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God gave his words that contain his promises to the Jews"

#### Romans 3:3

##### For what if some Jews were without faith? Will their unbelief nullify God's faithfulness?

Paul uses these questions to make people think. Alternate translation: "Some Jews have not been faithful to God. We should not conclude from this that God will not fulfill his promise."

#### Romans 3:4

##### May it never be

This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have an expression in your language that you could use here. "That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!"

##### Instead, let

"We should say this instead, let"

##### let God be found to be true

God will always be true and will keep his promises. Alternate translation: "God always does what he has promised"

##### even though every man is a liar

The words "every" and "liar" are exaggerations here to add emphasis that God alone is always true to his promises. Alternate translation: "even if every man were a liar"

##### As it has been written

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "The Scriptures themselves agree with what I am saying"

##### That you might be shown to be righteous in your words, and that you might prevail when you come into judgment

These two phrases have very similar meanings. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone must acknowledge that what you say is true, and you will always win your case when anyone accuses you"

#### Romans 3:5

##### But if our unrighteousness shows the righteousness of God, what can we say? Can we say that God is unrighteous to bring his wrath upon us?

Paul uses these questions to present what some people were arguing and to get his readers to think about whether or not this argument is true. Alternate translation: "Some people say that since our unrighteousness shows God's righteousness, then God is unrighteous when he punishes us."

##### to bring his wrath upon us

Here "wrath" is a metonym for punishment. Alternate translation: "to bring his punishment upon us" or "to punish us"

##### I am using a human argument

"I am saying here what some people say" or "This is what some people say"

#### Romans 3:6

##### May it never be

"We must never say that God is unrighteous"

##### For then how would God judge the world?

Paul uses this question to show that the arguments against the gospel are not valid, since the Jews believe that God will judge all people. Alternate translation: "We all know that God will in fact judge the world!"

##### the world

The "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "the people who live in the world"

#### Romans 3:7

##### But if through my lie the truth of God increases his glory, why am I still being judged as a sinner?

Here Paul imagines someone continuing to reject the Christian gospel. That adversary argues that his sin shows that God is righteous, so God should not declare that person guilty of sin on judgment day.

##### increases his glory

"causes people to praise God for his glory"

#### Romans 3:8

##### Why not say ... come"?

Here Paul raises a question of his own, to show how ridiculous the argument of his imaginary adversary is. Alternate translation: "I might as well be saying ... come!'"

##### as we are slandered as saying

"as some lie to others, claiming that this what we are saying"

##### evil ... good

These Greek words are plural: "evil deeds ... good things"

##### good may come

You may need to make explicit that the speakers expect to receive good things. Alternate translation: "good things may come to us" or "we may receive good things"

##### Their condemnation is just

God will be acting justly when he condemns these enemies of Paul for telling lies about what Paul has been teaching.

#### Romans 3:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul sums up that all are guilty of sin, none are righteous, and no one seeks God.

##### What then? Are we excusing ourselves?

Paul asks these questions to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "We Jews should not try to imagine we are going to escape God's judgment, just because we are Jewish!"

##### Not at all

These words are stronger than a simple "no," but not as strong as "absolutely not!"

#### Romans 3:10

##### This is as it is written

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "This is as the prophets have written in the Scriptures"

#### Romans 3:11

##### there is no one who understands

There is no one who understands what is right. Alternate translation: "no one really understands what is right"

##### there is no one who seeks God

Here the phrase "seeks after God" means tries to have a relationship with God. Alternate translation: "no one sincerely tries to have a right relationship with God"

#### Romans 3:12

##### They have all turned away

This is an idiom that means the people do not even want to think about God. They want to avoid him. Alternate translation: "They have all turned away from God"

##### together they have become useless

Since no one does what is good, they are useless to God. Alternate translation: "Everyone has become useless to God"

#### Romans 3:13

##### Their ... Their

The word "their" refers to the "Jews and Greeks" of Romans 3:9.

##### Their throat is an open grave

The word "throat" is a metonym for everything that people say. Here "open grave" is a metaphor that refers to the stench of dead bodies, a metaphor for the evil words of the people.

##### Their tongues have deceived

The word "tongues" is a metonym for the false words that people speak. Alternate translation: "People speak lies"

##### The poison of snakes is under their lips

Here "poison of snakes" is a metaphor that is used to represent the great harm of the evil words that the people speak. The word "lips" refers to the words of the people. Alternate translation: "Their evil words injure people just like the poison of a venomous snake"

#### Romans 3:14

##### Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness

Here "mouths" is a metonym that represents the evil words of the people. The word "full" exaggerates how often people speak bitterly and curse. Alternate translation: "They often speak curses and cruel words"

#### Romans 3:15

##### Their feet are swift to pour out blood

Here "feet" is a synecdoche that represents the people themselves. The word "blood" is a metaphor that refers to killing people. Alternate translation: "They are in a hurry to harm and murder people"

##### Their feet

The word "their" refers to the Jews and Greeks in Romans 3:9.

#### Romans 3:16

##### their paths

The word "their" refers to the Jews and Greeks in Romans 3:9.

##### Destruction and suffering are in their paths

Here "destruction and suffering" are metonyms that represent the harm that these people cause others to suffer. Alternate translation: "They try to destroy others and cause them to suffer"

#### Romans 3:17

##### These people

These words refer to the Jews and Greeks in Romans 3:9.

##### a way of peace

"how to live at peace with others." A "way" is a road or path.

#### Romans 3:18

##### their

This word refers to the Jews and Greeks in Romans 3:9.

##### There is no fear of God before their eyes

Here "fear" is a metonym that represents respect for God and willingness to honor him. Alternate translation: "They refuse to give God the respect he deserves"

#### Romans 3:19

##### whatever the law says, it speaks to

Paul speaks of the law here as if it were alive and had its own voice. Alternate translation: "everything that the law says people should do is for" or "all the commands that Moses wrote in the law are for"

##### the ones who are under the law

"those who must obey the law"

##### so that every mouth may be shut

Here "mouth" is a synecdoche that means the words people speak. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that no people will be able to say anything valid to defend themselves"

##### the whole world held accountable to God

Here "world" is a synecdoche that represents all the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "that God can declare everyone in the world guilty"

#### Romans 3:20

##### flesh

Here "flesh" refers to all human beings.

##### For through the law

Possible meanings are 1) "Therefore, through the law" or 2) "This is because through the law"

##### through the law comes the knowledge of sin

"when someone knows God's law, he realizes that he has sinned"

#### Romans 3:21

##### Connecting Statement:

The word "but" here shows Paul has completed his introduction and is now beginning to make his main point.

##### now

The word "now" refers to the time since Jesus came to the earth.

##### apart from the law the righteousness of God has been revealed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has made known a way to be right with him without obeying the law"

##### to which the Law and the Prophets bear witness

The words "the Law and the Prophets" refer to the parts of scripture that Moses and the prophets wrote. Paul describes them here as if they were people testifying in court. Alternate translation: "What Moses and the prophets wrote confirms this"

#### Romans 3:22

##### the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ

Here "righteousness" means being right with God. Alternate translation: "being right with God through trusting Jesus Christ"

##### For there is no distinction

Paul implies that God accepts all people in the same way. Alternate translation: "There is no difference at all between the Jews and the Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:23

##### come short of the glory of God

Here the "glory of God" is a metonym that refers to the image of God and his nature. Alternate translation: "have failed to be like God"

#### Romans 3:24

##### they are freely justified by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus

Here "justified" refers to being made right with God. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God makes them right with himself as a free gift, because Christ Jesus sets them free"

##### they are freely justified

This means that they are justified without having to earn or merit being justified. God freely justifies them. Alternate translation: "they are made right with God without earning it"

#### Romans 3:25

##### in his blood

This is a metonym for the death of Jesus as a sacrifice for sins. Alternate translation: "in his death as a sacrifice for sins"

##### his disregard

Possible meanings are 1) his ignoring or 2) his forgiving.

#### Romans 3:26

##### This was to show his righteousness at this present time

"God did this to show at this present time that he is righteous"

##### so he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"By this he shows that he is both just and the the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus"

##### the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"the one who declares everyone righteous who has faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 3:27

##### Where then is boasting? It is excluded

Paul asks this question to show that there is no reason for people to boast about obeying the law. Alternate translation: "So there is no way that we can boast that God favors us because we obeyed those laws. Boasting is excluded"

##### It is excluded

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "God does not allow it"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works? No, but through a law of faith

You may need to fill in the words omitted in the ellipsis. Alternate translation: "Through what kind of law is boasting excluded? Is it excluded through a law of works? No, it is excluded through a law of faith" You can also translate using active forms. Alternate translation: "On what grounds does God exclude boasting? Does he exclude it through a law of works? No, he excludes it through a law of faith" or "Why does God exclude boasting? Is it because of something that we have done? No, it is because we have believed"

##### Through what kind of law? ... through a law of

"On what grounds? ... on the grounds of"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works?

Paul asks these questions to get his readers ready to receive the point he is making. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you what kind of law he excludes it through. It is not through a law of works."

#### Romans 3:28

##### a person is justified by faith

This can be translated in active form. Here the words "by faith" refers to either 1) the means by which God justifies a person. Alternate translation: "God justifies a person through that person's faith" Or 2) the reason for which God justifies a person. Alternate translation: "God justifies a person because he has faith" Faith is not the actor that justifies a person.

##### without works of the law

"even if he has done no works of the law"

#### Romans 3:29

##### Or is God the God of Jews only?

Paul asks this question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You who are Jews certainly should not think that you are the only ones whom God will accept!"

##### Is he not also the God of Gentiles? Yes, of Gentiles also

Paul asks this question to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "He will also accept non-Jews, that is, Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:30

##### he will justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith

Here "circumcision" is a metonym that refers to Jews and "uncircumcision" is a metonym that refers to non-Jews. Alternate translation: "God will make both Jews and non-Jews right with himself through their faith in Christ"

#### Romans 3:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul confirms the law though faith.

##### Do we then nullify the law through faith?

Paul asks a question that one of his readers might have. Alternate translation: "Someone might say that we can ignore the law because we have faith."

##### May it never be

This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar express in your language that you could use here. Alternate translation: "This is certainly not true" or "Certainly not"

##### we uphold the law

"we obey the law"

##### we

This pronoun refers to Paul, other believers, and the readers.

## Chapter 4

# Romans 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 7-8 of this chapter, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The purpose of the law of Moses

Paul builds upon material from chapter 3. He explains how Abraham, the father of Israel, was justified. Even Abraham could not be justified by what he did. Obeying the law of Moses does not make a person right with God. Obeying God's commands is a way a person shows they believe in God. People have always been justified only by faith. (See: justice and lawofmoses and faith)

#### Circumcision

Circumcision was important to the Israelites. It identified a male as a descendant of Abraham. It was also a sign of the covenant between Abraham and Yahweh. However, no person was justified only by being circumcised. (See: circumcise and covenant)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the readers see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: and guilt and sin)

#### Romans 4:1

##### What then will we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, found?

Paul uses the question to catch the attention of the reader and to start talking about something new. Alternate translation: "This is what Abraham our physical ancestor found."

#### Romans 4:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 4:3

##### For what does the scripture say?

Paul uses this question to call attention to what he is about to say, not to receive an answer. He speaks of the Scriptures as if they were alive and could talk. Alternate translation: "For this is what is in the scripture:"

##### it was counted to him as righteousness

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God considered Abraham to be a righteous person because he believed"

#### Romans 4:4

##### his wage is not counted as a gift

"no one counts what his employer pays him as a gift from his employer"

##### but as what is owed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "but as what his employer owes him"

#### Romans 4:5

##### in the one who justifies

"in God, who justifies"

##### his faith is counted as righteousness

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God considers that person's faith as righteousness" or "God considers that person righteous because of his faith"

#### Romans 4:6

##### David also pronounces blessing on the man to whom God counts righteousness without works

"David also wrote about how God blesses the man whom God makes righteous without works"

#### Romans 4:7

##### whose lawless deeds are forgiven ... whose sins are covered

The same concept is stated in two different ways. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "who have broken the law, but the Lord has forgiven ... whose sins the Lord has covered"

#### Romans 4:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 4:9

##### Then is this blessing pronounced only on those of the circumcision, or also on those of the uncircumcision?

This remark appears in the form of a question to show that Paul is beginning a discussion about the relationship between blessing and circumcision. Alternate translation: "I want to show you how it is that God blesses not only those who are circumcised, but also those who are not circumcised"

##### those of the circumcision

This is a metonym that refers to the Jewish people. Alternate translation: "the Jews"

##### those of the uncircumcision

This is a metonym that refers to the people who are not Jews. Alternate translation: "the Gentiles"

##### For we say

Paul is going to show that because God counted Abraham as righteous by faith, we can infer that it is people who have faith that God counts righteous.

##### Faith was counted to Abraham as righteousness

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God considered the faith of Abraham as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:10

##### How was it counted to him? Was it before or after he had been circumcised? It was not after, but before!

Paul asks two questions to introduce the third sentence. If your language does not allow speakers to use questions to introduce what they are talking about, you may need to translate these all as statements. Alternate translation: "This is when righteousness was counted to him: it was not after he had been circumcised, but before!"

##### How was it counted to him?

Paul is asking in a general way about the circumstances in which God considered Abraham righteous. He is not asking what procedure God followed to consider Abraham righteous. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "How did God consider Abraham to be righteous?"

##### It was not after, but before

This can be stated with the words that have been omitted in the ellipsis. Alternate translation: "It happened before he was circumcised, not after he was circumcised"

#### Romans 4:11

##### a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while he was still uncircumcised

Here "righteousness that he had by faith" means that God considered him to be righteous because he had faith. Alternate translation: "a visible sign that God considered him righteous because he had believed in God before he was circumcised"

##### so that righteousness would be counted to them

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that God would consider them righteous"

#### Romans 4:12

##### General Information:

Paul is saying that circumcision alone does not make a man a descendant of Abraham, that is, a true Jew. A true Jew is one who has been circumcised and who lives by faith the way Abraham did.

##### He is also the father of the circumcised

Here "the circumcision" refers to Jews.

##### who also walk in the footsteps of the faith that our father Abraham had

Here "walk in the footsteps of the faith" is an idiom that means to follow someone's example. Alternate translation: "who follow our father Abraham's example in the faith that he had" or "who have faith as our father Abraham did"

#### Romans 4:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul confirms that even in the past believers were made right with God by faith and not by the law.

##### law but through the righteousness of faith

The words "the promise came" are understood from the first phrase. You can translate this by adding these implied words. Alternate translation: "law, but the promise came through faith, which God considers as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:14

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

##### if those who live by the law are to be the heirs

Here "live by the law" refers to obeying the law. Alternate translation: "if those who obey the law are the ones who will inherit the earth"

##### faith is made empty, and the promise does nothing

"faith has no value, and the promise is meaningless"

#### Romans 4:15

##### there is no transgression

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "transgression." Alternate translation: "no one has disobeyed the law" or "it is impossible to disobey the law"

#### Romans 4:16

##### For this reason

"So"

##### it is by faith

The word "it" refers to receiving what God had promised. Alternate translation: "it is by faith that we receive the promise" or "we receive the promise by faith"

##### in order that the promise may rest on grace

Here "the promise may rest on grace" represents God giving what he promised because of his grace. Alternate translation: "so that what he promised might be a free gift" or "so that his promise would be because of his grace"

##### those who are under the law

This refers to the Jewish people, who were obligated to obey the law of Moses.

##### those who share the faith of Abraham

This refers to those who have faith as Abraham did before he was circumcised. Alternate translation: "those who believe as Abraham did"

##### father of us all

Here the word "us" refers to Paul and includes all Jewish and non-Jewish believers in Christ. Abraham is the physical ancestor of the Jewish people, but he is also the spiritual father of those who have faith.

#### Romans 4:17

##### as it is written

Where it is written can be made explicit. You can also translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "as someone has written in the Scriptures"

##### I have appointed you

Here the word "you" is singular and refers to Abraham.

##### Abraham was in the presence of him whom he trusted, that is, God, who gives life to the dead

Here "of him whom he trusted" refers to God. Alternate translation: "Abraham was in the presence of God whom he trusted, who gives life to those who have died"

##### calls the things that do not exist into existence

"creates everything from nothing"

#### Romans 4:18

##### In hope he believed against hope

This idiom means that Abraham hoped and believed even though what he hoped for seemed to be impossible. That is, Abraham trusted God to give him many descendants, even though it seemed to be impossible for him to have children. Alternate translation: "Even though it seemed that there was no reason to hope, Abraham hoped and believed" or "Even though it seemed to be impossible for him to have descendants, Abraham believed God and confidently expected"

##### according to what he had been told

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "just as God said to Abraham"

##### So will your descendants be

The full promise God gave to Abraham can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "You will have more descendants than you can count"

#### Romans 4:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 4:20

##### did not hesitate in unbelief. Instead, he

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "kept on acting in faith. He"

##### he was strengthened in faith

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "he became stronger in his faith"

#### Romans 4:21

##### He was fully convinced

"Abraham was completely sure"

##### he was also able to accomplish

"God was able to do"

#### Romans 4:22

##### Therefore this was also "counted to him as righteousness."

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Therefore God counted Abraham's belief as righteousness" or "Therefore God considered Abraham righteous because Abraham believed him"

##### also "counted to him as righteousness."

"also, as the scripture says, 'counted to him as righteousness.'"

#### Romans 4:23

##### for his sake alone

"for Abraham only"

##### it was counted to him

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God counted righteousness to him" or "God considered him righteous"

#### Romans 4:24

##### for us

The word "us" refers to Paul and includes all believers in Christ.

##### They were written also for us

You can translate this without the passive form "written." Alternate translation: "Those words were also for us"

##### it will be counted to us who believe in him

The word "it" refers to righteousness. You can translate this with an active form. Alternate translation: "God will count righteousness to us who believe in him" or "God will consider us righteous if we believe in him"

##### him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead

"Raised ... from the dead" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." Alternate translation: "him who caused Jesus our Lord to live again"

#### Romans 4:25

##### who was delivered up for our trespasses and was raised for our justification

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom God gave over to enemies for our trespasses and whom God brought back to life so he could make us right with him"

## Chapter 5

# Romans 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Many scholars view verses 12-17 as some of the most important, but difficult, verses in Scripture to understand. Some of their richness and meaning has likely been lost while being translated from how the original Greek was constructed.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Results of justification

How Paul explains the results of our being justified is an important part of this chapter. These results include having peace with God, having access to God, being confident about our future, being able to rejoice when suffering, being eternally saved, and being reconciled with God. (See: justice)

#### "All sinned"

Scholars are divided over what Paul meant in verse 12: "And death spread to all people, because all sinned." Some believe that all of mankind was present in the "seed of Adam." So, as Adam is the father of all mankind, all of mankind was present when Adam sinned. Others believe that Adam served as a representative head for mankind. So when he sinned, all of mankind "fell" as a result. Whether people today played an active or passive role in Adam's original sin is one way these views differ. Other passages will help one decide.

#### The second Adam

Adam was the first man and the first "son" of God. He was created by God. He brought sin and death into the world by eating the forbidden fruit. Paul describes Jesus as the "second Adam" in this chapter and the true son of God. He brings life and overcame sin and death by dying on the cross. (See: sonofgod and death)

#### Romans 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to tell many different things that happen when God makes believers right with him.

##### Since we are justified

"Because we are justified"

##### we ... our

All occurrences of "we" and "our" refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### through our Lord Jesus Christ

"because of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### Lord

Here "Lord" means that Jesus is God.

#### Romans 5:2

##### Through him we also have our access by faith into this grace in which we stand

Here "by faith" refers to our trust in Jesus, which allows us to stand before God. Alternate translation: "Because we trust in Jesus, God allows us to come into his presence"

##### we boast in the hope of the glory of God

Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "confidently expect" or "confidently wait" or "trust." Alternate translation: "we rejoice because we confidently expect to share in the glory of God"

#### Romans 5:3

##### Not only this

The word "this" refers to the ideas described in [Romans 5:1-2](./01.md).

##### we ... our ... We

These words refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### tribulation brings about perseverance

"suffering helps us learn to endure"

#### Romans 5:4

##### Perseverance produces character

Perseverance is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb. Here it is a metonym for the person who endures. You may need to make explicit what it is that a person endures. Alternate translation: "We develop character when we endure hardship"

##### character

the desire and ability to do what is right

##### character produces hope

"having characer helps us to hope." Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen, and it refers to the confident expectation that God will fulfill all his promises. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "wait confidently" or "trust". Alternate translation: "character helps us to wait confidently" or "character helps us to trust God"

#### Romans 5:5

##### our ... us

These words refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### hope does not make ashamed

Paul uses personification here as he speaks of "hope" as if it were alive. "Hope" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "we are very confident that we will receive the things that we wait for"

##### make ashamed

"make us ashamed"

##### because the love of God has been poured into our hearts

Here "hearts" represents a person's thoughts, feelings, or inner person. The phrase "the love of God has been poured into our hearts" is a metaphor for God showing love to his people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because he has loved us greatly" or "because God has shown us how much he loves us"

#### Romans 5:6

##### we

The word "we" here refers to all believers and so should be inclusive.

#### Romans 5:7

##### For one will hardly die for a righteous person

"It is hard to find someone who is willing to die, even for a righteous person"

##### though perhaps someone would dare to die for a good person

"but you might find someone who is willing to die for such a good person"

#### Romans 5:8

##### proves

You can translate this verb in past tense using "demonstrated" or "showed."

##### us ... we

All occurrences of "us" and "we" refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

#### Romans 5:9

##### Much more, then, now that we are justified by his blood, we will be saved

Paul is saying that because we are justified by Christ's blood, we can be much more certain that Christ will save us. Alternate translation: "Now that we are justified by his blood, we will more certainly be saved"

##### now that we are justified by his blood

Here "justified" means that God puts us in a right relationship with himself. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "now that God has made us right with himself because of Christ's death"

##### blood

This is a metonym for the sacrificial death of Jesus on the cross.

##### saved

God forgives us and rescues us from being punished in hell for our sin.

##### the wrath of God

Here "wrath" is a metonym that refers to God's punishment of those who have sinned against him. Alternate translation: "God's punishment"

#### Romans 5:10

##### we were

All occurrences of "we" refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### his Son ... his life

"God's Son ... the life of God's Son"

##### we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son

The death of the Son of the God has provided eternal forgiveness and made all who believe in Jesus friends with God. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God allowed us to have a peaceful relationship with him because his Son died for us"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### after having been reconciled

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "now that God has made us his friends again"

#### Romans 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 5:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains why death happened even before God gave the law to Moses.

##### through one man sin entered ... death entered through sin

Paul describes sin as a dangerous thing that came into the world through the actions of "one man," Adam. This sin then became an opening through which death, pictured here as another dangerous thing, also came into the world.

#### Romans 5:13

##### For until the law, sin was in the world

This means that the people sinned before God gave the law. Alternate translation: "People in the world sinned before God gave his law to Moses"

##### but there is no accounting for sin when there is no law

This means that God did not charge the people with sinning before he gave the law. Alternate translation: "but God recorded no sin against the law before he gave the law"

#### Romans 5:14

##### Nevertheless, death

"Even though what I have just said is true, death" or "There was no written law from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, but death" (Romans 5:13).

##### death reigned from Adam until Moses

Paul is speaking of death as if it were a king who ruled. Alternate translation: "people continued to die from the time of Adam until the time of Moses as a consequence of their sin"

##### Moses, even over those who did not sin like Adam's disobedience, who is

"Moses. Even people whose sins were different from Adam's continued to die, Adam being"

##### who is a pattern of him who was to come

Adam was a pattern of Christ, who appeared much later. He had much in common with him.

#### Romans 5:15

##### how much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound for the many

Here "grace" refers to God's free gift that he made available to everyone through Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "even more through the man Jesus Christ, who died for us all, did God kindly offer us this gift of everlasting life, although we do not deserve it"

#### Romans 5:16

##### For the gift is not like the outcome of that one man's sin

Here "the gift" refers to God's freely erasing the record of our sins. Alternate translation: "The gift is not like the result of Adam's sin"

##### The judgment followed one trespass and brought condemnation

The abstract nouns "judgment," "trespass," and "condemnation," can be expressed with verbs. Alternate translation: "After one man trespassed, God judged all people and condemned them to be punished" or "God declared that all people deserved to have him punish them because one man committed one sin"

##### but the gift followed many trespasses and brought justification

The abstract nouns "gift," "trespass," and "justification" can be expressed as verbs. It is implied that God's gift of justification is greater than his judgement. Alternate translation: "but after people trespassed many times, God gave the gift and justified them" or "but the gift is greater because he gave it after many people had committed many sins, and by giving the gift he justified them"

#### Romans 5:17

##### trespass of the one

This refers to the sin of Adam.

##### death ruled

Here Paul speaks of "death" as a king who ruled. The "rule" of death causes everyone to die. Alternate translation: "everyone died"

#### Romans 5:18

##### as one trespass led to condemnation for all people

The abstract nouns "trespass" and "condemnation" can be expressed with the verbs "sin" and "condemn." Alternate translation: "as one trespass caused all people to be condemned" or "as all people are condemned because one person sinned against God"

##### one trespass

This refers to Adam's sin.

##### condemnation for all people

Here "condemnation" refers to God's punishment. Alternate translation: "all people deserve God's punishment for sin"

##### through the one act of righteousness came justification and life for all people

The abstract nouns "justification" and "life" can be expressed with the verbs "justify" and "live." Alternate translation: "one act of righteousness allows all people to be justified and live" or "all people can be justified and live because one person did that one righteous act"

##### the one act of righteousness

This refers to Jesus's obedience to God in dying for our sins.

#### Romans 5:19

##### one man's disobedience

the disobedience of Adam

##### the many were made sinners

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "many people sinned"

##### the obedience of the one

the obedience of Jesus

##### of the one will the many be made righteous

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "of the one, God will make many people right with him"

#### Romans 5:20

##### the law came in

Here Paul speaks of the law as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "God gave his law to Moses"

##### sin abounded

"sin increased"

##### grace abounded even more

Here "grace" refers to God's undeserved blessings. Alternate translation: "God continued to act even more kindly toward them, in a way that they did not deserve"

#### Romans 5:21

##### sin reigned in death ... grace might reign through righteousness for everlasting life

Here Paul speaks of sin as if it were a king who ruled over people and made them unable to obey God and ultimately killing them, and he speaks of grace as if it were a king who might rule over people and enable them to be right with God. Alternate translation: "as people obeyed their desire to sin and therefore had to die ... God might show grace to people and allow them to be right with him, resulting in everlasting life"

##### our Lord

Paul includes himself, his readers, and all believers.

## Chapter 6

# Romans 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul begins this chapter by answering how someone might object to what he taught in Chapter 5.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Against the Law

In this chapter, Paul refutes the teaching that Christians can live however they want after they are saved. Scholars call this "antinomianism" or being "against the law." To motivate godly living, Paul recalls the great price Jesus paid for a Christian to be saved. (See: save and godly)

#### Servants of sin

Before they believe in Jesus, people are servants of sin, that is, they are unable to resist their desire to sin. God frees Christians from serving sin. They are able to choose to serve Christ in their lives. Paul explains that when Christians choose to sin, they willingly choose to sin. (See: faith and sin)

#### Fruit

This chapter uses the imagery of fruit. The image of fruit usually refers to a person's faith producing good works in their life. (See: fruit and righteous)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the readers see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: and guilt and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Death

Paul uses "death" to refer to many different things in this chapter: physical death, spiritual death, sin reigning in the heart of man, and the end of something. He contrasts sin and death with the new life provided by Christ and the new way Christians are supposed to live after they are saved. (See: death)

#### Romans 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Under grace, Paul tells those who believe in Jesus to live a new life as though dead to sin and alive to God.

##### What then will we say? Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound?

Paul asks these rhetorical questions to get the attention of his readers. Alternate translation: "So, what should we say about all of this? We certainly should not keep on sinning so that God will give us more and more grace!

##### we say

The pronoun "we" refers to Paul, his readers, and other people.

#### Romans 6:2

##### We who died to sin, how can we still live in it?

Here "We who died to sin" refers to those who follow Jesus, who are now like dead people who cannot be affected by sin. Paul uses this rhetorical question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "We are now like dead people on whom sin has no effect! So we certainly should not keep on sinning!"

#### Romans 6:3

##### Do you not know that as many as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

Paul uses this question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Remember, when someone baptized us to show that we have a relationship with Christ, this also shows that we died with Christ on the cross!

#### Romans 6:4

##### We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death

Here Paul speaks of a believer's baptism in water as if it were a death and burial. Alternate translation: "When someone baptized us, it is just like that person buried us with Christ in the tomb"

##### just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life

To raise from the dead is an idiom for causing a person to live again. This compares a believer's new spiritual life to Jesus coming back to life physically. The believer's new spiritual life enables that person to obey God. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "just as the Father brought Jesus back to life after he died, we might have new spiritual life and obey God"

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To be raised from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Romans 6:5

##### become united with him in the likeness of his death ... be united with his resurrection

Paul compares our union with Christ to death. Those who are joined with Christ in death will share in his resurrection. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "died with him ... come back to life with him"

#### Romans 6:6

##### our old man was crucified with him

The "old man" is a metaphor that refers to the person before he believes in Jesus. Paul describes our old sinful person as dying on the cross with Jesus when we believe in Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "our sinful person died on the cross with Jesus"

##### old man

This means the person who once was, but who does not exist now.

##### the body of sin

This is a metonym that refers to the whole sinful person. Alternate translation: "our sinful nature"

##### might be destroyed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "might die"

##### we should no longer be enslaved to sin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "sin should no longer enslave us" or "we should no longer be slaves to sin"

##### we should no longer be enslaved to sin

Slavery to sin is a metaphor meaning having such a strong desire to sin that one is unable to stop himself from sinning. It is as if sin controls the person. Alternate translation: "we should no longer be controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:7

##### He who has died is declared righteous with respect to sin

Here "righteous" refers to being right with God. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "When God declares a person right with him, that person is no longer controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:8

##### we have died with Christ

Here "died" refers to the fact that believers are no longer controlled by sin.

#### Romans 6:9

##### We know that since Christ has been raised from the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "We know since God brought Christ back to life after he died"

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To be raised from among them is to become alive again.

##### death no longer rules over him

Here "death" is described as if it were a king or ruler that has power over people. Alternate translation: "He cannot ever die again"

#### Romans 6:10

##### he died once for all

Possible meanings are 1) he died once, and he will not die again, nor will anyone else need to die, or 2) it is true now and will be true for all time that he died.

#### Romans 6:11

##### In the same way, you also must consider

"For this reason consider"

##### consider yourselves to be

"think of yourselves as" or "see yourselves as"

##### dead to sin

Just as one cannot force a corpse to do anything, sin has no power to force believers to dishonor God. Alternate translation: "as if you were dead to the power of sin"

##### dead to sin, but alive to God

"dead to the power of sin, but living to honor God"

##### alive to God in Christ Jesus

"living to honor God through the power Christ Jesus gives you"

#### Romans 6:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds us that grace rules over us, not the law; we are not sin's slaves, but God's slaves.

##### do not let sin rule in your mortal body

Paul speaks of people sinning as if sin were their master or king that controlled them. Alternate translation: "Do not let sinful desires control you"

##### your mortal body

This phrase refers to the physical part of a person, which will die. Alternate translation: "you"

##### so that you obey its lusts

Obeying the mortal body's lusts would be the result of letting sin rule in the body. That is why Paul commands people not to let sin rule in their mortal body—so they they do not obey its lusts. Paul speaks of people doing the evil things they desire as if the body had evil desires and commanded people to do what it desires.

#### Romans 6:13

##### Do not present the members of your bodies to sin, to be tools used for unrighteousness

The picture is of the sinner offering his "members," the parts of his body to his master or king. One's "members" are a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "Do not offer yourselves to sin so that you do what is not right"

##### But present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life

Here the words "brought ... to life" refer to the believer's new spiritual life. Alternate translation: "But offer yourselves to God because he has given you new spiritual life" or "But offer yourselves to God as those who had died and are now alive"

##### present the members of your bodies to God as tools to be used for righteousness

Here "members" is a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "let God use you for what is pleasing to him"

#### Romans 6:14

##### Do not allow sin to rule over you

Paul speaks of "sin" here as if it were a king who rules over people. Alternate translation: "Do not let sinful desires control what you do" or "Do not allow yourselves to do the sinful things you want to do"

##### For you are not under law

To be "under law" means to be subject to its limitations and weaknesses. You can make the full meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "For you are no longer bound to the law of Moses, which could not give you the power to stop sinning"

##### but under grace

To be "under grace" means that God's free gift provides the power to keep from sinning. You can make the full meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "but you are bound to God's grace, which does give you the power to stop sinning"

#### Romans 6:15

##### What then? Are we to sin because we are not under law, but under grace? May it never be

Paul is using a question to emphasize that living under grace is not a reason to sin. Alternate translation: "However, just because we are bound to grace instead of the law of Moses certainly does not mean we are allowed to sin"

##### May it never be

"We would never want that to happen!" or "May God help me not to do that!" This expression shows an extremely strong desire that this does not take place. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated it in Romans 3:31.

#### Romans 6:16

##### Do you not know that if you present yourselves as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey?

Paul uses a question to scold anyone who may think God's grace is a reason to keep sinning. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that if you present yourselves as slaves to anyone, you are slaves to whomever you obey!"

##### which leads to death ... which leads to righteousness

"which results in death ... which results in righteousness"

#### Romans 6:17

##### But thanks be to God!

"But I thank God!"

##### For you were slaves of sin

Being "slaves of sin" is a metaphor meaning they have such a strong desire to sin that they are unable to keep from sinning. It is as if sin controls the person. Alternate translation: "you were like slaves of sin" or "you were unable to keep from sinning"

##### but you have obeyed from the heart

Here the word "heart" refers to having sincere or honest motives for doing something. Alternate translation: "but you truly obeyed"

##### the pattern of teaching that you were given

Here "pattern" refers to the way of living that leads to righteousness. The believers change their old way of living to match this new way of living that Christian leaders teach to them. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the teaching that Christian leaders gave you"

#### Romans 6:18

##### You have been made free from sin

Here "free from sin" is a metaphor for them no longer having a strong desire to sin and therefore being able to stop themselves from sinning. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Christ has freed you from sin" or "Your strong desire to sin has been taken away" or "You have been made free from sin's control over you" (See: and )

##### you have been made slaves of righteousness

Slavery of righteousness is a metaphor meaning having a strong desire to do what is right. It is as if righteousness controls the person. Alternate translation: "you have been made like slaves of righteousness" or "you are now controlled by righteousness"

##### you have been made slaves of righteousness

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ has made you slaves of righteousness" or "Christ has changed you so that now you are controlled by righteousness"

#### Romans 6:19

##### I speak like a man

Paul may have expected his readers to wonder why he was speaking of slavery and freedom. Here he is saying that he is using these ideas from their everyday experience to help them understand that people are controlled either by sin or by righteousness. Alternate translation: "I am speaking about this in human terms" or "I am using examples from everyday life"

##### because of the weakness of your flesh

Often Paul uses the word "flesh" as the opposite of "spirit." Alternate translation: "because you do not fully understand spiritual things"

##### presented the members of your bodies as slaves to uncleanness and to lawlessness

Here, the word "members" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "offered yourselves as slaves to everything that is evil and not pleasing to God"

##### present the members of your bodies as slaves to righteousness for sanctification

Here the word "members" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "offer yourselves as slaves to what is right before God so that he might set you apart and give you the power to serve him"

#### Romans 6:20

##### you were free from righteousness

Here "free from righteousness" is a metaphor for not having to do what is righteous. The people were living as though they thought that they did not have to do what was right. Alternate translation: "it was as though you were free from righteousness" or "you behaved as though you did not have to do what was right" or

#### Romans 6:21

##### At that time, what fruit then did you have of the things of which you are now ashamed?

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Paul is using a question to emphasize that sinning results in nothing good. Alternate translation: "Nothing good came from those things that now cause you shame." or "You gained nothing by doing those things that now cause you shame."

#### Romans 6:22

##### But now that you have been made free from sin and are enslaved to God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But now that you have become free from sin and have become God's slaves" or "But now that God has freed you from sin and made you his slaves"

##### But now that you have been made free from sin

Being "free from sin" is a metaphor for being able not to sin. Alternate translation: "But now that God has made you able not to sin"

##### and are enslaved to God

Being "enslaved" to God is a metaphor for being able to serve and obey God. Alternate translation: "and God has made you able to serve him"

##### you have your fruit for sanctification

Here "fruit" is a metaphor for "result" or "benefit." Alternate translation: "the benefit is your sanctification" or "the benefit is that you live in a holy way"

##### The result is eternal life

"The result of all of this is that you will live forever with God"

#### Romans 6:23

##### For the wages of sin are death

The word "wages" refers to a payment given to someone for their work. "For if you serve sin, you will receive spiritual death as payment" or "For if you continue sinning, God will punish you with spiritual death"

##### but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord

"but God gives eternal life to those who belong to Christ Jesus our Lord"

## Chapter 7

# Romans 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### "Or do you not know"

Paul uses this phrase to discuss a new topic and connects what follows with the previous teaching.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "We have been released from the law"

Paul explains that the law of Moses is no longer in effect. While this is true, the timeless principles behind the law reflect the character of God. (See: lawofmoses)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Marriage

Scripture commonly uses marriage as a metaphor. Here Paul uses it to describe how the church relates to the law of Moses and now to Christ.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive ("in the flesh"), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: flesh and sin)

#### Romans 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how the law controls those who want to live under the law.

##### Or do you not know, brothers ... that the law rules over a person for whatever time he lives?

Paul asks this question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "So you certainly know brothers ... that people have to obey laws only while they are alive"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### Romans 7:2

##### Connecting Statement:

This verse begins a description of what Paul means by "the law controls a person for as long as he lives" ([Romans 7:1](./01.md)).

##### the married woman is bound by law to the husband

Here "bound by law to the husband" is a metaphor for a woman being united to her husband according to the law of marriage. Alternate translation: "according to the law, the married woman is united to the husband"

##### the married woman

This refers to any woman who is married.

#### Romans 7:3

##### Connecting Statement:

This verse ends a description of what Paul means by "the law controls a person for as long as he lives" ([Romans 7:1](./01.md)).

##### she will be called an adulteress

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will consider her an adulteress" or "people will call her an adulteress"

##### she is free from the law

Here being free from the law means not having to obey the law. In this case, the woman does not have to obey the law that says that a married woman cannot marry another man. Alternate translation: "she does not have to obey that law"

#### Romans 7:4

##### Therefore, my brothers

This relates back to Romans 7:1.

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "you also died to the law when through Christ you died on the cross"

##### to him who was raised from the dead

"Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "to him who was caused to live again" or "to him whom God raised from the dead" or "to him whom God caused to live again"

##### we might produce fruit for God

Here "fruit" is a metaphor for actions that please God. Alternate translation: "we might be able to do things pleasing to God"

#### Romans 7:5

##### to bear fruit for death

Here "fruit" is a metaphor for a "result of one's actions" or "outcome of one's actions." Alternate translation: "which resulted in spiritual death" or "the outcome of which was our own spiritual death"

#### Romans 7:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds us that God does not make us holy by the law.

##### we have been released from the law

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has released us from the law"

##### we

This pronoun refers to Paul and the believers.

##### to that by which we were bound

This refers to the law. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to the law, which bound us"

##### the letter

This refers to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "the law of Moses"

#### Romans 7:7

##### What will we say then?

Paul is introducing a new topic.

##### May it never be

"Of course that is not true!" This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated this in Romans 9:14.

##### I would never have known sin, if it were not through the law

Paul is speaking of sin as if it were a person who can act.

##### sin

"my desire to sin"

#### Romans 7:8

##### But sin took the opportunity ... produced every kind of coveting

Paul continues comparing sin to a person who can act.

##### coveting

This word includes both the desire to have what belongs to other people and wrong sexual desire.

##### apart from the law, sin was dead

"if there were no law, there would be no breaking of the law, so there would be no sin"

#### Romans 7:9

##### sin regained life

This can mean 1) "I realized that I was sinning" or 2) "I strongly desired to sin"

#### Romans 7:10

##### The commandment that was to bring life turned out to be death for me

Paul speaks of God's condemnation as if it resulted primarily in physical death. Alternate translation: "God gave me the commandment so I would live, but it killed me instead"

#### Romans 7:11

##### For sin took the opportunity through the commandment and deceived me. Through the commandment it killed me

As in [Romans 7:7-8]

##### sin

"my desire to sin"

##### took the opportunity through the commandment

Paul is comparing sin to a person who can act. See how you translated this in [Romans 7:8]

##### it killed me

Paul speaks of God's condemnation on sinners as if it resulted primarily in physical death. Alternate translation: "it separated me from God"

#### Romans 7:12

##### the law is holy

Possible meanings are that it is holy because 1) it comes from God or 2) it reveals God's true nature.

#### Romans 7:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the struggle inside his inner man between sin in his inner man and his mind with the law of God—between sin and good.

##### So

Paul is introducing a new topic.

##### did what is good become death to me?

Paul uses this question to add emphasis.

##### what is good

This refers to God's law.

##### become death to me

"cause me to die"

##### May it never be

This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. Alternate translation: "Of course that is not true"

##### sin ... brought about death in me

Paul speaks of sin as though it were a person who could act.

##### brought about death in me

Paul speaks of being separated from God as if he were literally dead. Alternate translation: "separated me from God"

##### through the commandment

"because I disobeyed the commandment"

#### Romans 7:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 7:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the struggle inside his inner man between his flesh and the law of God—between sin and good.

##### For what I do, I do not really understand

"I am not sure why I do some of the things that I do"

##### For what I do

"Because what I do"

##### what I want to do, I do not do

The words "I do not do" are an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul does not do what he wants to do as often as he would like or that he does what he does not want to do too often. Alternate translation: "I do not always do what I want to do"

##### what I hate, I do

The words "I do," which implies that he always does what he hates to do, are an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul does what he does not want to do too often. Alternate translation: "the things that I know are not good are the things that I sometimes do"

#### Romans 7:16

##### But if I do

"However, if I do"

##### I agree with the law that the law is good

To agree with the law here is to agree with God about the law. Alternate translation: "I agree with God that the law is good"

#### Romans 7:17

##### the sin that lives in me

Paul describes sin as a living being that has the power to influence him.

#### Romans 7:18

##### my flesh

Here "flesh" is a metonym for the sinful nature. Alternate translation: "my sinful nature"

#### Romans 7:19

##### the good

"the good deeds" or "the good actions"

##### the evil

"the evil deeds" or "the evil actions"

#### Romans 7:20

##### rather sin that lives in me

Paul speaks of "sin" as if it were alive and living inside him.

#### Romans 7:21

##### this law: When I want to do good, evil is present with me

The words "this law" refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### evil is present with me

Paul speaks of evil here as if it were alive and living with him.

#### Romans 7:22

##### with my inner person

Here the phrase "inner person" refers to the personality, heart, or soul. Alternate translation: "with my heart" or "with my soul"

#### Romans 7:23

##### a different law in the members of my body ... fights against that new law in my mind

Paul has a desire to obey God, but at times he also has a desire to do things that God hates. He writes of the two desires he has as if they were two men fighting each other.

##### a different law

These words refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### in the members of my body

The phrase "the members of my body" is another way of saying "my flesh"

##### that new law in my mind

These words refer to the law of Moses, which was God's commands in written form ([Romans 7:22](./22.md)).

##### the law of sin that is in the members of my body

This "law of sin" is the same as the "different law," the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

#### Romans 7:24

##### Who will deliver me from this body of death?

Paul uses this question to express great emotion. If your language has a way of showing great emotion through an exclamation or a question, use it here. Alternate translation: "I want someone to set me free from the control of what my body desires!"

##### deliver me

"rescue me"

##### this body of death

This is a metaphor that means a body that will experience physical death.

#### Romans 7:25

##### But thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord

This is the answer to the question in [7:24](./24.md).

##### So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind. However, with the flesh I serve the law of sin

The law of God and the law of sin are spoken of as if they were masters whom Paul serves as a slave. With the mind or intellect Paul chooses to please and obey God, and with the flesh or physical nature he chooses to disobey God and to sin. Alternate translation: "My mind chooses to please God by obeying the law of Moses, but my flesh chooses to disobey God and sin"

##### the law of God

These words refer to the law of Moses, which was God's commands in written form.

##### the law of sin

These words refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

## Chapter 8

# Romans 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The first verse of this chapter is a transitional sentence. Paul concludes his teaching of Chapter 7 and leads into the words of Chapter 8.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with verse 36. Paul quotes these words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Indwelling of the Spirit

The Holy Spirit is said to live inside a person or inside their heart. If the Spirit is present, this signifies that a person is saved. (See: save)

#### "These are sons of God"

Jesus is the Son of God in a unique way. God also adopts Christians to be his children. (See: sonofgod and adoption)

#### Predestination

Twice in verses 29-30 Paul uses the word "predestined." Some take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen his own people to be eternally saved. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject. So translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter, especially with regards to elements of causation. (See: predestine and save)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Paul poetically presents his teaching in verses 38 and 39 in the form of an extended metaphor. He explains that nothing can separate a person from the love of God in Jesus.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### No condemnation

This phrase must be translated carefully to avoid doctrinal confusion. People are still guilty of their sin. God disapproves of sinful acts, even those that believers in Jesus commit. God still punishes the sins of believers, but Jesus has paid the punishment for their sin. This is what Paul expresses here. The word "condemn" has several possible meanings. Here Paul emphasizes that people who believe in Jesus are no longer punished eternally for their sin by being "condemned to hell." (See: guilt and faith and condemn)

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive ("in the flesh"), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: flesh)

#### Romans 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives the answer to the struggle he has with sin and good.

##### There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus

Here "condemnation" refers to the punishment of people. Alternate translation: "God will not condemn and punish those who are joined to Christ Jesus"

##### There is therefore now

"For that reason, there is now" or "Because what I have just told you is true, there is now"

#### Romans 8:2

##### the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus

This refers to God's Spirit. Alternate translation: "God's Spirit in Christ Jesus"

##### has set you free from the law of sin and death

Being free from the law of sin and death is a metaphor for not being controlled by the law of sin and death. Alternate translation: "has caused the law of sin and death to no longer control you"

##### the law of sin and death

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) the written law, which provokes people to sin, which in turn causes them to die. Alternate translation: "the law which causes sin and death" or 2) the "different law" (see Romans 7:23) that people sin and die.

#### Romans 8:3

##### For what the law was unable to do because it was weak through the flesh, God did

Here the law is described as a person who could not break the power of sin. Alternate translation: "For the law did not have the power to stop us from sinning, because the power of sin within us was too strong. But God did stop us from sinning"

##### through the flesh

"because of people's sinful nature"

##### He ... sent his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh ... an offering for sin ... he condemned sin

The Son of God forever satisfied God's holy anger against our sin by giving his own body and human life as the eternal sacrifice for sin.

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### in the likeness of sinful flesh

"who looked like a sinful human being"

##### to be an offering for sin

"so that he could die as a sacrifice for our sins"

##### he condemned sin in the flesh

Possible meanings are 1) "flesh" refers to our human nature or lives. Alternate translation: "he destroyed sin in our human nature" or 2) "flesh" refers to Christ's body, and "in the flesh" refers to Christ's death. Alternate translation: "in Christ's flesh God condemned sin" or "by Christ's death God condemned sin."

##### he condemned sin

In this verse, "condemned" is a metonym for "destroyed." Alternate translation: "he destroyed sin" or "he broke the power of the sin"

#### Romans 8:4

##### the requirements of the law might be fulfilled in us

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "we might fulfill what the law requires"

##### we who walk not according to the flesh

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. The flesh is an idiom for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: "we who do not obey our sinful desires"

##### but according to the Spirit

"but who obey the Holy Spirit"

#### Romans 8:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 8:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to contrast the flesh with the Spirit we now have.

##### the mind set on the flesh ... the mind set on the Spirit

Here Paul speaks of both the "flesh" and the "spirit" as if they were living persons. Alternate translation: "the way sinful people think ... the way people who listen to the Holy Spirit think"

##### death

Here this means the separation of a person from God.

#### Romans 8:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 8:8

##### Those who are in the flesh

This refers to people who do what their sinful nature tells them to do.

#### Romans 8:9

##### in the flesh

"acting according to your sinful natures." See how "the flesh" was translated in Romans 8:5.

##### in the Spirit

"acting according to the Holy Spirit"

##### Spirit ... God's Spirit ... Spirit of Christ

These all refer to the Holy Spirit.

##### if indeed

This phrase does not mean Paul doubts that some of them have God's Spirit. Paul wants them to realize that they all have God's Spirit. Alternate translation: "since" or "because"

#### Romans 8:10

##### If Christ is in you

How Christ lives in a person could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "If Christ lives in you through the Holy Spirit"

##### the body is dead with respect to sin

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually dead to the power of sin or 2) the physical body will still die because of sin.

##### the spirit is alive with respect to righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually alive because God has given him power to do what is right or 2) God will bring the person back to life after he dies because God is righteous and gives believers eternal life.

#### Romans 8:11

##### If the Spirit ... lives in you

Paul assumes that the Holy Spirit lives in his readers. Alternate translation: "Since the Spirit ... lives in you"

##### of him who raised ... from the dead lives

"of God, who raised ... from the dead, lives"

##### raised Jesus

Here to raise is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "caused Jesus to live again"

##### mortal bodies through his Spirit

"physical bodies through his Spirit" or "bodies, which will die someday, through his Spirit"

#### Romans 8:12

##### So then

"Because what I have just told you is true"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### we are debtors, but not to

Paul is speaking of obedience as if it were paying back a debt. Alternate translation: "we need to obey, but not"

##### but not to the flesh to live according to the flesh

Again Paul speaks of obedience as if it were paying back a debt. You can include the implied word "debtors." Alternate translation: "but we are not debtors to the flesh, and we do not have to obey our sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:13

##### For if you live according to the flesh

"Because if you live only to please your sinful desires"

##### you are about to die

"you will certainly be separated from God"

##### but if by the Spirit you put to death the body's actions

Paul speaks of the "old man," crucified with Christ, as the person who is responsible for his sinful desires. Alternate translation: "but if by the power of the Holy Spirit you stop obeying your sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:14

##### For as many as are led by the Spirit of God

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For all the people whom the Spirit of God leads"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:15

##### by which we cry

"who causes us to cry out"

##### Abba, Father

"Abba" is "Father" in the Aramaic language.

#### Romans 8:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 8:17

##### heirs of God

Paul speaks of the Christian believers as if they will inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "and we also will one day receive what God has promised us"

##### we are joint heirs with Christ

Paul speaks of the Christian believers as if they will inherit property and wealth from a family member. God will give to us what he gives to Christ. Alternate translation: "we will also receive what God has promised us and Christ together"

##### that we may also be glorified with him

God will honor Christian believers when he honors Christ. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "that God may glorify us along with him"

#### Romans 8:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### For

This emphasizes "I consider." It does not mean "because."

##### I consider that ... are not worthy to be compared with

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I cannot compare ... with"

##### will be revealed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will reveal" or "God will make known"

#### Romans 8:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### the eager expectation of the creation waits for

Paul describes everything that God created as a person who eagerly waits for something.

##### for the revealing of the sons of God

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "for the time when God will reveal his children"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus. You can also translate this as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:20

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### For the creation was subjected to futility

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For God caused what he had created to be unable to achieve what he intended"

##### not of its own will, but because of him who subjected it

Here Paul describes "creation" as a person who can desire. Alternate translation: "not because this is what the created things wanted, but because it is what God wanted"

##### in hope

Here the word "hope" is confident expectation that what one desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "confidently expect" or "confidently wait." God could be absolutely sure that what he intended would happen. Alternate translation: "confidently expecting" or "confidently waiting"

#### Romans 8:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### the creation itself will be delivered

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will save creation"

##### from slavery to decay

Here being in slavery to decay is a metaphor for being certain to decay. Alternate translation: "from being like a slave to decay"

##### that it will be brought into the freedom of the glory of the children of God

"Freedom" here is in contrast with slavery to decay. It is a metaphor meaning that the creation will not decay. Alternate translation: "that it will become gloriously free from decay like the children of God"

#### Romans 8:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### For we know that the whole creation groans and labors in pain together even now

The creation is compared to a woman groaning while giving birth to a baby. Alternate translation: "For we know that everything that God created wants to be free and groans for it the way a woman giving birth groans for her baby to be born"

#### Romans 8:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### as we wait eagerly for our adoption, the redemption of our body

The abstract nouns "adoption" and "redemption" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "as we wait eagerly for God to adopt us and redeem our bodies"

#### Romans 8:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### For in this hope we were saved

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "For God saved us so that we might have this hope" 2) "For God saved us because we have this hope"

##### in this hope we were saved

Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "confidently expect" or "confidently wait" or "trust." Alternate translation: "it was so that we might confidently wait for this that we were saved" or "we were saved that we might trust God to do this"

##### this hope

The phrase "this hope" refers to the hope of our adoption, the redemption of our bodies (8:23).

##### Now hope that is seen is not hope

"Hope that is seen" is hope that has already been fulfilled. Alternate translation: "If we already have what we hope for, that is not hope" or "If we have what we want, we would not say that we hope for it"

##### For who hopes for what he can see?

Paul uses a question to help his audience understand what "hope" is. Alternate translation: "No one hopes for what he already has." or "No one waits for what has already happened."

#### Romans 8:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes reminding the believers in Rome that sometime in the future, God will change their bodies in a glorious way.

##### if we hope for what we do not see

Here the word "hope" means confidently expect that what one desires will happen. The person who hopes in this way believes that what he desires will happen. Alternate translation: "If we confidently expect to receive what we do not see" or "if we trust God for what we do not see"

##### what we do not see

Not seeing what we hope for represents not yet having it or experiencing it. Alternate translation: "what we do not yet have" or "what has not yet happened"

##### we wait for it with patience

"we wait for it patiently"

#### Romans 8:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Though Paul has been emphasizing that there is a struggle in believers between the flesh and the Spirit, he affirms that the Spirit is aiding us.

##### inexpressible groans

"groanings that we cannot express in words"

#### Romans 8:27

##### He who searches out the hearts knows

Here "He" refers to God. Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's thoughts and emotions. The phrase "searches out the hearts" is a metaphor for examining thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "God, who knows what all our thoughts and feelings are, knows"

#### Romans 8:28

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers that nothing can separate them from God's love.

##### for those who are called

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "for those whom God chose"

#### Romans 8:29

##### those whom he foreknew

"those whom he knew before he even created them"

##### he also predestined to be conformed

"he also planned in advance that they would be conformed"

##### to be conformed to the image of his Son

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "that he would change them to be like his Son"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### that he might be the firstborn

"so that his Son would be the firstborn"

##### among many brothers

Here "brothers" refers to all believers, both male and female. Alternate translation: "among many brothers and sisters who belong to the family of God"

#### Romans 8:30

##### Those whom he predestined

"Those whom God made plans for in advance"

##### these he also justified

Here "justified" is in the past tense to emphasize that this will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "these he also put right with himself"

##### these he also glorified

The word "glorified" is in the past tense to emphasize that this will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "these he will also glorify"

#### Romans 8:31

##### What, therefore, can we say about these things? If God is for us, who is against us?

Paul uses questions to emphasize the main point of what he said previously. Alternate translation: "This is what we should know from all of this: since God is helping us, no one can defeat us."

#### Romans 8:32

##### He who did not spare his own Son

God the Father sent the Son of God, Jesus Christ, to the cross as the holy, infinite sacrifice necessary to satisfy God's infinite, holy nature against the sin of humanity. Here "Son" is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### but delivered him up

"but put him under the control of his enemies"

##### how will he not also with him freely give us all things?

Paul is using a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "he will certainly and freely give us all things!"

##### freely give us all things

"kindly give us all things"

#### Romans 8:33

##### Who will bring any accusation against God's chosen ones? God is the one who justifies

Paul uses a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "No one can accuse us before God because he is the one who makes us right with him"

#### Romans 8:34

##### Who is the one who condemns?

Paul uses a question for emphasis. He does not expect an answer. Alternate translation: "No one will condemn us!"

##### who is at the right hand of God

To be at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "who is at the place of honor beside God"

#### Romans 8:35

##### Who will separate us from the love of Christ?

Paul uses this question to teach that nothing can separate us from the love of Christ. Alternate translation: "No one will ever separate us from the love of Christ!" or "Nothing will ever separate us from the love of Christ!"

##### Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?

The words "shall separate us from the love of Christ" are understood from the previous question. Alternate translation: "Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword separate us from the love of Christ?"

##### Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that even these things cannot separate us from the love of Christ. Alternate translation: "Even tribulation, distress, persecution, hunger, nakedness, danger, and sword cannot separate us from the love of Christ."

##### Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?

The abstract nouns can be expressed with verb phrases. Here "sword" is a metonym that represents being killed violently. Alternate translation: "Even if people cause us trouble, hurt us, take away our clothes and food, or kill us, they cannot separate us from the love of Christ."

##### Tribulation, or distress

These words both mean the same thing.

#### Romans 8:36

##### For your benefit

Here "your" is singular and refers to God. Alternate translation: "For you"

##### we are killed all day long

Here "we" refers to the writer and to other people, but not his audience, who was God. The phrase "all day long" is an exaggeration to emphasize how much danger they are in. Paul uses this part of Scripture to show that all who belong to God should expect difficult times. This can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "our enemies continually seek to kill us"

##### We were considered as sheep for the slaughter

Here Paul compares to livestock those whom people kill because they are loyal to God. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Our lives have no more value to them than the sheep they kill"

#### Romans 8:37

##### we are more than conquerors

"we have complete victory"

##### through the one who loved us

You can make explicit the kind of love that Jesus showed. Alternate translation: "because of Jesus, who loved us so much he was willing to die for us"

#### Romans 8:38

##### I have been convinced

"I am convinced" or "I am confident"

##### governments

Possible meanings are 1) demons or 2) human kings and rulers.

##### nor powers

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual beings with power or 2) human beings with power.

#### Romans 8:39

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 9

# Romans 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Paul changes what he is teaching about. In Chapters 9-11, he focuses on the nation of Israel.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 25-29 and 33 of this chapter. Paul quotes all of these words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Flesh

Paul uses the word "flesh" in this chapter only to refer to Israelites, people physically descending from Abraham through Jacob, whom God named Israel. (See: flesh)

In other chapters, Paul uses the word "brother" to mean fellow Christians. However, in this chapter, he uses "my brothers" to mean his kinsmen the Israelites.

Paul refers to those who believe in Jesus as "children of God" and "children of the promise."

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Stone of stumbling

Paul explains that while some Gentiles accepted Jesus as their savior by believing in him, most Jews were trying to earn their salvation and so rejected Jesus. Paul, quoting the Old Testament, describes Jesus as a stone that the Jews stumble over when walking. This "stone of stumbling" causes them to "fall."

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "It is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel"

Paul uses the word "Israel" in this verse with two different meanings. The first "Israel" means the physical descendants of Abraham through Jacob. The second "Israel" means those who are God's people through faith. The UDB reflects this.

#### Romans 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells of his personal desire that the people of the nation of Israel will be saved. Then he emphasizes the different ways in which God has prepared them to believe.

##### I tell the truth in Christ. I do not lie

These two expressions mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize that he is telling the truth.

##### my conscience bears witness with me in the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit controls my conscience and confirms what I say"

#### Romans 9:2

##### that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my heart

Here "unceasing pain in my heart" is an idiom that Paul uses to share his emotional distress. Alternate translation: "that I grieve very greatly and deeply"

##### great sorrow and unceasing pain

These two expressions mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how great his emotions are.

#### Romans 9:3

##### For I could wish that I myself would be cursed and set apart from Christ for the sake of my brothers, my kinsmen according to the flesh

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I personally would be willing to let God curse me and keep me apart from Christ forever if that would help my fellow Israelites, my own people group, to believe in Christ"

#### Romans 9:4

##### They are Israelites

"They, like me, are Israelites. God chose them to be Jacob's descendants"

##### They have adoption, the glory

Here Paul uses the metaphor of "adoption" to indicate that the Israelites are like God's children. Alternate translation: "They have God as their father, and they have the glory"

#### Romans 9:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Romans 9:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul emphasizes that those who are born in the family of Israel can really only be a true part of Israel through faith.

##### But it is not as though the word of God has failed

The word "word" is a metonym for the promise that God used the words to make. Alternate translation: "But we should not think that God has failed to keep his promises" or "We should know that God has kept his promises"

##### For it is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel

God did not make his promises to all the physical descendants of Israel (or Jacob), but to his spiritual descendants, that is, those who trust in Jesus.

#### Romans 9:7

##### Neither are all Abraham's descendants truly his children

"Nor are they all children of God just because they are Abraham's descendants"

#### Romans 9:8

##### the children of the flesh are not

Here "children of the flesh" is a metonym that refers to the physical descendants of Abraham. Alternate translation: "not all of Abraham's descendants are"

##### children of God

This is a metaphor that refers to people who are spiritual descendants, those who have faith in Jesus.

##### children of the promise

This refers to people who will inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham.

#### Romans 9:9

##### this is the word of promise

"these are the words God used when he made the promise"

##### a son will be given to Sarah

You can translate this in an active form to express that God will give a son to Sarah. Alternate translation: "I will give Sarah a son"

#### Romans 9:10

##### our father

Paul refers to Isaac as "our father" because Isaac was the ancestor of Paul and of the Jewish believers in Rome.

##### had conceived

"had become pregnant"

#### Romans 9:11

##### for the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad

"before the children were born and before they had done anything, whether good or bad"

##### so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand

"so that what God wants to happen according to His choice will happen"

##### for the children were not yet born

"before the children were born"

#### Romans 9:12

##### Connecting Statement:

It may be necessary in your language to place this verse between verse 10 and verse 11: "... our father Isaac, it was said to her, 'The older will serve the younger.' For the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad, but so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand—not because of actions, but because of him who calls. It is just...."

##### because of him

because of God

##### it was said to her, "The older will serve the younger."

"God said to Rebekah, 'The older son will serve the younger son'"

#### Romans 9:13

##### Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated

The word "hated" is an exaggeration. God loved Jacob much more than he loved Esau. He did not literally hate Esau.

#### Romans 9:14

##### What then will we say?

Paul is using the question to get the attention of his readers.

##### Is there unrighteousness with God?

"Is God unrighteous?" or "Is God unjust?"

##### May it never be

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

#### Romans 9:15

##### For he says to Moses

Paul speaks about God's talking with Moses as if it is being done in the present time. Alternate translation: "For God said to Moses"

#### Romans 9:16

##### it is not because of him who wills, nor because of him who runs

"it is not because of what people want or because they try hard"

##### nor because of him who runs

Paul speaks of a person who does good things in order to gain God's favor as if that person were running a race.

#### Romans 9:17

##### For the scripture says

Here the scripture is personified as if God were talking to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: "The scripture records that God said"

##### I ... my

God is referring to himself.

##### you

The word "you" in this verse is singular.

##### I raised you up

"Raised" here is an idiom for "caused something to be what it is." Alternate translation: "I made you the powerful man that you are"

##### so that my name might be proclaimed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "that people might proclaim my name"

##### my name

This metonym refers either 1) to God in all of his being. Alternate translation: "who I am" or 2) To his reputation. Alternate translation: "how great I am"

##### in all the earth

"wherever there are people"

#### Romans 9:18

##### whom he wishes, he makes stubborn

God makes stubborn whomever he wishes to make stubborn.

#### Romans 9:19

##### You will say then to me

Paul is talking to the critics of his teaching as though he were only talking to one person. You may need to use the plural here.

##### Why does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood his will?

These rhetorical questions are complaints against God. You can translate them as strong statements. Alternate translation: "He should not find fault with us. No one has ever been able to withstand his will."

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### has ... withstood his will

"has ... stopped him from doing what he wanted to do"

#### Romans 9:20

##### Will what has been molded say to the one who molds it, "Why ... way?"

Paul uses the potter's right to make any kind of container he wants from the clay as a metaphor for the creator's right to do whatever he wants with his creation. Paul asks questions to emphasize his point. This can be translated as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "What a person has molded should never say to the one who molds it, 'Why ... way?'"

##### Why did you make me this way?

This question is a rebuke and can be translated as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have made me this way!"

#### Romans 9:21

##### Does the potter not have the right ... for dishonorable use?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. Alternate translation: "The potter certainlly has the right ... for dishonorable use."

##### honorable use ... dishonorable use

Some modern translations read, "special use ... daily use."

#### Romans 9:22

##### containers of wrath prepared for destruction

Paul speaks of people as if they were containers. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "people to whom he would show wrath and whom he will certainly destroy"

#### Romans 9:23

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### containers of mercy, which

Paul speaks of people as if they were containers. Alternate translation: "those to whom he would show mercy, whom"

##### the riches of his glory upon

Paul compares God's wonderful actions here to great "riches." Alternate translation: "his glory, which is of great value, upon"

##### which he had previously prepared for glory

Here "glory" refers to life in heaven with God. Alternate translation: "whom he prepared ahead of time in order that they might live with him"

#### Romans 9:24

##### also for us

The word "us" here refers to Paul and fellow believers.

##### called

Here "called" means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

#### Romans 9:25

##### Connecting Statement:

In this section Paul explains how Israel's unbelief as a nation was told ahead of time by the prophet Hosea.

##### As he says also in Hosea

Here "he" refers to God. Alternate translation: "As God says also in the book that Hosea wrote"

##### Hosea

Hosea was a prophet.

##### I will call them 'my people' who were not my people

"I will choose those who were not my people to be my people"

##### her 'beloved' who was not beloved

Here "her" refers to Hosea's wife, Gomer, who represents the nation of Israel. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I will choose her whom I did not love to be one whom I love"

#### Romans 9:26

##### sons of the living God

The word "living" may refer to the fact that God is the only true God, and not like the false idols. Alternate translation: "children of the true God"

#### Romans 9:27

##### cries out

"calls out"

##### as the sand of the sea

Here Paul compares the number of the people of Israel to the number of grains of sand in the sea. Alternate translation: "too many to count"

##### will be saved

Paul uses the word "saved" in a spiritual sense. If God saves a person, it means that through believing in Jesus's death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished for his sin. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will save"

#### Romans 9:28

##### the Lord will execute his word on the earth

"the Lord will punish people on the earth as he has said he will"

#### Romans 9:29

##### us ... we

Here the words "us" and "we" refer to Isaiah and those to whom he spoke.

##### we would be like Sodom, and we would have become like Gomorrah

God killed all of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah because of their sin. Alternate translation: "we all would have been destroyed like the people of Sodom and Gomorrah" or "God would have destroyed all of us as he destroyed the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

#### Romans 9:30

##### What will we say then?

Paul uses this question to get the attention of his readers. Alternate translation: "So this is what we must say."

##### That the Gentiles

"We will say that the Gentiles"

##### who were not pursuing righteousness

"who were not trying to get righteousness" or "who were not trying to be righteous"

##### righteousness, the righteousness by faith

Here "by faith" refers to placing one's trust in Christ. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "righteousness because God made them right with him when they trusted in Christ"

#### Romans 9:31

##### who did pursue a law of righteousness

"who tried to obey a law in order to get righteousness" or "who tried to be righteous by obeying a law"

##### did not arrive at that law

"could not keep that law" or "did not succeed at keeping that law"

#### Romans 9:32

##### Why not? Because they

You can translate this rhetorical question as a statement and include the words from the ellipsis in your translation. Paul asks this question to get the attention of his readers. Alternate translation: "Why could they not attain righteousness? Because they" or "This is why they could not attain righteousness: they"

##### by works

This refers to things that people do to try to please God. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "by trying to do things that would please God" or "by keeping the Law"

#### Romans 9:33

##### as it has been written

You can indicate that Isaiah wrote this. You can also translate it in an active form. Alternate translation: "as Isaiah the prophet wrote"

##### in Zion

Here Zion is a metonym that represents Israel. Alternate translation: "in Israel"

##### stone of stumbling and a rock of offense

These phrases mean basically the same thing and are metaphors that refer to Jesus and his death on the cross. It was as if the people stumbled over a stone because they were disgusted when they considered Jesus's death on the cross.

##### believes in it

Because the words "stone" and "rock" are a metaphors for a person, you may need to translate this as "believes in him."

## Chapter 10

# Romans 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 18-20 of this chapter. These lines of poetry are from the Old Testament.

Some translations also set prose quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted words in verse 8.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's righteousness

Paul teaches here that while many Jews earnestly tried to be righteous, they did not succeed. We cannot earn God's righteousness. God gives us Jesus's righteousness when we believe in him. (See: righteous and faith)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical questions in this chapter. He does this to convince his readers that God does not save only the Hebrew people, so Christians must be ready to go and share the gospel with the whole world. (See: and save)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "I will provoke you to jealousy by what is not a nation"

Paul uses this prophecy to explain that God will use the church to make the Hebrew people jealous. This is so they will seek God and believe the gospel.

#### Romans 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues stating his desire for Israel to believe but emphasizes that both those who are Jews and those who are not can only be saved by faith in Jesus.

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### my heart's desire

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions or inner being. Alternate translation: "my greatest desire"

##### is for them, for their salvation

"is that God will save the Jews"

#### Romans 10:2

##### I testify about them

"I declare truthfully about them"

#### Romans 10:3

##### For, failing to understand the righteousness that comes from God

Here "righteousness refers to the way God puts people right with himself. You can make this explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: "For because they did not know how God puts people right with himself"

##### they did not submit to God’s righteousness.

"they did not accept God's way of putting people right with himself"

#### Romans 10:4

##### For Christ is the fulfillment of the law

"For Christ completely fulfilled the law"

##### law for righteousness for everyone who believes

Here "believes" means "trusts." Alternate translation: "law, and he makes everyone who trusts in him right before God"

#### Romans 10:5

##### the righteousness that comes from the law

Paul speaks of "righteousness" as if it were alive and able to move. Alternate translation: "how the law makes a person right before God"

##### "The man who does these things will live by them."

In order to be made right with God through the law, a person would have to keep the law perfectly, which is not possible. Alternate translation: "The person who perfectly obeys the law will live because the law will make him right before God"

##### will live

The words "will live" can refer to 1) eternal life or 2) mortal life in fellowship with God.

#### Romans 10:6

##### But the righteousness that comes from faith says this

Here "righteousness" is described as a person who can speak. Alternate translation: "But Moses writes this about how faith makes a person right before God"

##### Do not say in your heart

Moses was addressing the people as if he were speaking to only one person. Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "Do not say to yourself"

##### Who will ascend into heaven?

Moses uses a question to teach his audience. His previous instruction of, "Do not say" requires a negative answer to this question. You can translate this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one is able to go up to heaven"

##### that is, to bring Christ down

"in order that they might have Christ come down to earth"

#### Romans 10:7

##### Who will descend into the abyss?

Moses uses a question to teach his audience. His previous instruction of, "Do not say" requires a negative answer to this question. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "No person can go down and enter the place where the spirits of dead persons are."

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To be brought up from among them is to become alive again.

##### dead

This word speaks of physical death.

#### Romans 10:8

##### But what does it say?

The word "it" refers to the scripture. Alternate translation: "But this is what Moses says"

##### The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart

Paul speaks of God's message as if it were a person who can move. The word "mouth" is a metonym that refers to what a person says. The phrase "in your heart" is metonym that refers to what a person thinks and believes. Alternate translation: "You have heard the message. You know how to speak it, and you know what it means"

##### the word of faith

"God's message that tells us that we must believe in him"

#### Romans 10:9

##### if with your mouth you confess Jesus as Lord

"if you confess that Jesus is Lord"

##### believe in your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner person. Alternate translation: "believe in your mind" or "truly believe"

##### raised him from the dead

"Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." Alternate translation: "caused him to live again"

##### you will be saved

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will save you"

#### Romans 10:10

##### For with the heart one believes and has righteousness, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved

Here "heart" is a metonym that represents the mind or will. Alternate translation: "For it is with the mind that a person trusts and is right before God, and it is with the mouth that a person confesses so that God saves him"

##### with the mouth

Here "mouth" is a synecdoche that represents a person's capacity to speak.

#### Romans 10:11

##### For scripture says

Paul speaks of the scripture as if it were alive and had a voice. You can make explicit who wrote the scripture that Paul uses here. Alternate translation: "For Isaiah wrote in the scripture"

##### Everyone who believes on him will not be put to shame

This is equivalent to: "If a person believes, then that person will not be shamed." The negative is used here for emphasis. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will honor everyone who believes in him" or "God will shame only those who do not believe in Jesus"

#### Romans 10:12

##### For there is no difference between Jew and Greek

Paul implies that God will treat all people the same. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "In this way, God treats the Jews and the non-Jews the same"

##### he is rich to all who call upon him

Here "he is rich" means that God blesses richly. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "he richly blesses all who trust in him"

#### Romans 10:13

##### For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

Here the word "name" is a metonym for Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "The Lord will save everyone who trusts in him"

#### Romans 10:14

##### How then can they call on him in whom they have not believed?

Paul uses a question to emphasize the importance of taking the good news of Christ to those who have not heard. The word "they" refers to those who do not yet belong to God. Alternate translation: "Those who do not believe in God cannot call on him!"

##### How can they believe in him of whom they have not heard?

Paul uses another question for the same reason. Alternate translation: "And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard his message!" or "And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard the message about him!"

##### believe in

trust and desire to obey

##### How can they hear without a preacher?

Paul uses another question for the same reason. Alternate translation: "And they cannot hear the message if someone does not tell them!"

#### Romans 10:15

##### How beautiful are the feet of those who proclaim good news

Paul uses "feet" to represent those who travel and take the message to those who have not heard it. The feet were considered a dirty and ugly part of the body, so the idea of beautiful feet would have seemed odd to Paul's readers. Alternate translation: "How beautiful are even the feet of those who proclaim good news" or "It is wonderful when messengers go and tell others the good news"

#### Romans 10:16

##### not all of them obeyed

Here "they" refers to the Jews. "not all of the Jews obeyed"

##### Lord, who has believed our report?

Paul is using this question, which Isaiah prophesied in the Scriptures, to emphasize that many Jews would not believe in Jesus. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "Lord, so many of them do not believe our message!"

##### our report

Here, "our" refers to God and Isaiah and so is inclusive.

#### Romans 10:17

##### So faith comes from hearing

The abstract noun "faith" can be stated as the verb "believes." There are also words that Paul left out, but they are understood. Alternate translation: "So a person believes in Christ by hearing the message about Christ

##### and hearing by the word of Christ

Here "word" is a metonym that means "message." There are also words that Paul left out, but they are understood. Alternate translation: "and a person hears the message by someone preaching the message about Christ"

#### Romans 10:18

##### But I say, "Did they not hear?" Yes, most certainly

Paul uses a question for emphasis. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "But, I say the Jews certainly have heard the message about Christ"

##### Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world.

Both of these statements mean basically the same thing and Paul uses them for emphasis. The word "their" refers to the sun, moon, and stars. Here they are described as human messengers that tell people about God. This refers to how their existence shows God's power and glory. You can make explicit that Paul is quoting Scripture here. Alternate translation: "As the Scriptures record, 'The sun, moon, and the stars are proof of God's power and glory, and everyone in the world sees them and knows the truth about God.'"

#### Romans 10:19

##### Moreover, I say, "Did Israel not know?"

Paul uses a question for emphasis. The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people who lived in the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "Again I tell you the people of Israel did know the message."

##### First Moses says, "I will provoke you ... I will stir you up

This means that Moses wrote down what God said. "I" refers to God, and "you" refers to the Israelites. Alternate translation: "First Moses says that God will provoke you ... God will stir you up"

##### by what is not a nation

"by those you do not consider to be a real nation" or "by people who do not belong to any nation"

##### By means of a nation without understanding

Here "without understanding" means that the people do not know God. Alternate translation: "By a nation with people who do not know me or my commands"

##### I will stir you up to anger

"I will make you angry" or "I will cause you to become angry"

##### you

This refers to the nation of Israel.

#### Romans 10:20

##### General Information:

Here the words "I" and "me" refer to God.

##### Then Isaiah was very bold when he says

This means the prophet Isaiah wrote what God had said.

##### I was found by those who did not seek me

Prophets often speak of things in the future as if they have already happened. This emphasizes that the prophecy will certainly come true. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Even though the Gentile people will not look for me, they will find me"

##### I appeared

"I made myself known"

##### he says

"He" refers to God, who is speaking through Isaiah.

#### Romans 10:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "my" refers to God.

##### All the day long I

This phrase is used to emphasize God's continual effort. "I continually"

##### I reached out my hands to a disobedient and stubborn people

"I tried to welcome you and to help you, but you refused my help and continued to disobey"

## Chapter 1

# 1 Corinthians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The first three verses are a greeting. In the ancient Near East, this was a common way of starting a letter.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 19, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Disunity

In this chapter, Paul scolds the church for being divided and for following different apostles. (See: apostle)

#### Spiritual gifts

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities to help the church. The Holy Spirit gives these gifts to Christians after they come to believe in Jesus. Paul lists spiritual gifts in Chapter 12. Some scholars believe the Holy Spirit gave some of these gifts only in the early church to help establish the developing church. Other scholars believe all the gifts of the Spirit are still available to help all Christians throughout the church history. (See: faith)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

In this chapter, Paul refers to the return of Christ using two different phrases: "the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ" and "the day of our Lord Jesus Christ."

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions to scold the Corinthians for dividing into factions and for relying on human wisdom.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Stumbling block

A stumbling block is a rock people stumble over. Here it represents the difficulty Jews have in believing that God allowed his Messiah to be crucified.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. Alternate translation: "I, Paul"

##### Sosthenes our brother

This indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew Sosthenes. Alternate translation: "Sosthenes, the brother you and I know"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:2

##### to the church of God at Corinth

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the intended audience. Alternate translation: "am writing this letter to you in Corinth who believe in God"

##### those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus

Here "sanctified" refers to people who have been set apart as God's people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to those whom Christ Jesus has set apart for God" or "to those whom God has set apart for himself because they belong to Christ Jesus"

##### called to be holy people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has called to be holy people"

##### together with all those in every place who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

Possible meanings are 1) this phrase tells who else is called to be holy, or 2) this phrase tells who else this letter is written to.

##### who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

The word "name" here is a metonym for person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "who call on the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### their Lord and ours

The word "ours" includes Paul's audience. Jesus is the Lord of Paul and the Corinthians and all the churches.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:3

##### General Information:

Paul and Sosthenes wrote this letter to the Christians who belonged to the church in Corinth. Unless otherwise noted, such words as "you" and "your" refer to Paul's audience and so are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:4

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul describes the believers' position and fellowship in Christ as they wait for his coming.

##### because of the grace of God that Christ Jesus gave to you

Paul speaks of grace as though it were a physical object that Jesus gives Christians as a gift. Alternate translation: "because Christ Jesus has made it possible for God to be kind to you"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:5

##### He has made you rich

Possible meanings are 1) "Christ has made you rich" or 2) "God has made you rich."

##### made you rich in every way

Paul is speaking in general terms. Alternate translation: "made you rich with all kinds of spiritual blessings"

##### in all speech

God has enabled you to tell others about God's message in many ways.

##### all knowledge

God has enabled you to understand God's message in many ways.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:6

##### the testimony about Christ has been confirmed as true among you

Possible meanings are 1) "you saw for yourselves that what we had said about Christ was true" or 2) "other people learned from seeing how you now live that what we and you say about Christ is true."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:7

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### you lack no spiritual gift

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "you have every spiritual gift"

##### the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ

Possible meanings are 1) "the time when God will reveal the Lord Jesus Christ" or 2) "the time when our Lord Jesus Christ will reveal himself."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:8

##### you will be blameless

There will be no reason for God to condemn you.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:9

##### God is faithful, who called ... our Lord

"God, who called ... our Lord, will do everything he has said he will do"

##### his Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Corinthian believers that they are to live in unity with each other and that the message of the cross of Christ, not baptism by people, is what saves.

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"Name" here is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "by means of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### that you all agree

"that you live in harmony with one another"

##### that there be no divisions among you

"that you do not divide into separate groups among yourselves"

##### be joined together with the same mind and by the same purpose

"live in unity, agree with other, and work together to accomplish the same things"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:11

##### Chloe's people

This refers to family members, servants, and others who are part of the household of which Chloe, a woman, is the head.

##### there are factions among you

"you are in groups that quarrel one with another"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:12

##### Each one of you says

Paul is expressing a general attitude of division.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:13

##### Is Christ divided?

Paul used a question to emphasize that there is only Christ, so it does not make sense for Christians to be divided among themselves. Alternate translation: "Christ is certainly not divided!" or "There is only one Christ!"

##### Was Paul crucified for you?

Paul used a question to emphasize that it was Christ, not Paul or Apollos, who was crucified. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "It certainly was not Paul whom they put to death on the cross for your salvation!"

##### Were you baptized into the name of Paul?

Paul used a question to emphasize that we all are baptized into the name of Christ. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "It was not into the name of Paul that people baptized you!"

##### into the name of Paul

"In the name of" here is a metonym for "by the authority of." Alternate translation: "by Paul's authority"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:14

##### I baptized none of you, except

"among you I baptized only"

##### Crispus

He was a synagogue ruler who became a Christian.

##### Gaius

He traveled with the Apostle Paul.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:15

##### This was so that no one would say that you were baptized into my name

Here "name" represents "authority." This means Paul did not baptize others because they may claim that they became Paul's disciples. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For some of you might have claimed that I baptized you to make you my disciples"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:16

##### the household of Stephanas

This refers to the family members and slaves in the house where Stephanas, a man, was the head.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:17

##### Christ did not send me to baptize

This means that baptism was not the primary goal of Paul's ministry.

##### not with clever speech, in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

The phrase "in order ... would not" can be stated in positive form, and "be emptied" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not with clever speech, because clever speech would empty the cross of its power" or "not with clever speech, because this would cause the cross of Christ to lose its power"

##### in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

Paul speaks of God's power to save people who trust in Christ as if the cross on which Christ died had power. The cross being emptied of its power represents people not recognizing God's power to save them through Christ's death. If Paul were to use clever speech, people might pay more attention to his clever speech than to Christ's death. Alternate translation: "in order that people might recognize God's power to save them through Jesus's death on the cross" or "because clever speech would distract people from God's power as shown in the cross"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul emphasizes God's wisdom rather than man's wisdom.

##### the message about the cross

"the preaching about the crucifixion" or "the message of Christ's dying on the cross"

##### is foolishness

"is senseless" or "is silly"

##### to those who are perishing

"dying." This refers to dying in rebellion against God.

##### it is the power of God

"it is God working powerfully in us"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:19

##### I will set aside the understanding of the intelligent

"I will confuse intelligent people" or "I will make the plans that intelligent people make completely fail"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:20

##### Where is the wise person? Where is the scholar? Where is the debater of this world?

Paul emphasizes that truly wise people are nowhere to be found. Alternate translation: "Compared with the wisdom of the gospel, there are no wise people, no scholars, no debaters!"

##### the scholar

a person who is recognized as someone who has studied a great deal

##### the debater

a person who argues about what he knows or who is skilled in such arguments

##### Has not God turned the wisdom of the world into foolishness?

Paul uses this question to emphasize what God has done to the wisdom of this world. Alternate translation: "God has shown that everything they call wisdom is really foolishness"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:21

##### those who believe

Possible meanings are 1) "all who believe the message" or 2) "all who believe in Christ."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:23

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and other Bible teachers.

##### Christ crucified

"about Christ, who died on a cross"

##### a stumbling block

Just as a person can stumble over a block on a road, so the message of salvation through the crucifixion of the Christ keeps Jews from believing in Jesus. Alternate translation: "not acceptable" or "very offensive"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:24

##### to those whom God has called

"to the people God calls"

##### we preach Christ

"we teach about Christ" or "we tell all people about Christ"

##### we preach Christ as the power and the wisdom of God

Possible meanings are 1) "we preach that God acted powerfully and wisely by sending Christ to die for us" or "we preach that through Christ God has shown how strong and wise he is."

##### the power ... of God

Another possible meaning is that Christ is powerful and it is through Christ that God saves us.

##### the wisdom of God

Another possible meaning is that God shows the content of his wisdom through Christ.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:25

##### the foolishness of God is wiser than people, and the weakness of God is stronger than people

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking ironically about God's foolishness and weakness. Paul knows God is not foolish or weak. Alternate translation: "what seems to be the foolishness of God is wiser than people's wisdom, and what seems to be the weakness of God is stronger than the people's strength" or 2) Paul is speaking from the point of view of the Greek people who may think God is foolish or weak. Alternate translation: "what people call God's foolishness is really wiser than what people call wisdom, and what people call God's weakness is really stronger than people's strength"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul emphasizes the believer's position before God.

##### Not many of you

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Very few of you"

##### wise according to the flesh

"wise according to human standards" or "what most people would call wise"

##### of noble birth

"special because your family is important"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:27

##### God chose ... wise. God chose ... strong

Paul repeats many of the same words in two sentences that mean almost the same thing to emphasize the difference between God's way of doing things and how people think God should do them.

##### God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise

"God chose to use the things that the world thinks are foolish to shame those whom the world thinks are wise"

##### God chose what is weak in the world to shame what is strong

"God chose to use things that the world thinks are weak to shame the things that the world thinks are strong"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:28

##### what is low and despised

"the things that are humble and hated"

##### things that are regarded as nothing

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that which people usually regard as without value"

##### nothing, to bring to nothing things that are held as valuable

"nothing. He did this so he could show that the things that are held as valuable are really worthless"

##### things that are held as valuable

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "things that people think are worth money" or "things that people think are worth respect"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:29

##### He did this

"God did this"

##### no flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for people, who are made of flesh. Alternate translation: "no people"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:30

##### Because of what God did

This refers to the work of Christ on the cross.

##### us ... our

These words refer to Paul, those with him, and the Corinthians.

##### Christ Jesus, who became for us wisdom from God

Possible meanings are 1) "Christ Jesus, who has made clear to us how wise God is" or 2) "Christ Jesus, who has given us God's wisdom."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:31

##### Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord

"If a person boasts, he should boast about how great the Lord is"

## Chapter 2

# 1 Corinthians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 9 and 16. These poetic lines are from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Wisdom

Paul continues the discussion from the first chapter that contrasts human wisdom and God's wisdom. For Paul, human wisdom can be foolish. He says the wisdom from the Holy Spirit is the only true wisdom. Paul uses the phrase "hidden wisdom" when he refers to previously unknown truths. (See: wise and foolish)

#### 1 Corinthians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul contrasts human wisdom and God's wisdom. He emphasizes that spiritual wisdom comes from God.

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:2

##### I decided to know nothing ... except Jesus Christ

When Paul said that he "decided to know nothing" he exaggerated to emphasize that he decided to focus on and teach about nothing other than Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "I decided to teach nothing ... except Jesus Christ" or "I decided not to teach anything ... except Jesus Christ"

##### to know nothing when I was among you except Jesus Christ

The double negative here emphasizes that Jesus Christ was the only thing Paul wanted to think about. Alternate translation: "when I was among you to know only Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:3

##### I was with you

"I was visiting with you"

##### in weakness

Possible meanings are: 1) "physically weak" or 2) "feeling like I could not do what I needed to do."

#### 1 Corinthians 2:4

##### my message and my proclamation were not with persuasive words of wisdom

The ideas in the nouns "message" and "proclamation" can be expressed with the verbs "speak" and "preach." Alternate translation: "I did not speak and preach with persuasive words of wisdom"

##### persuasive words of wisdom

These are words that sound wise and with which the speaker hopes to cause people to do or believe something. Alternate translation: "wise and pursuasive words"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:5

##### so that your faith might not be in the wisdom of humans

"so that you will not trust in human wisdom"

##### but in the power of God

"but your faith will be in the power of God" or "but you will trust in the power of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:6

##### General Information:

Paul interrupts his main argument to explain what he means by "wisdom" and to whom he desires to speak.

##### Now we do speak

The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Paul begins to explain that true wisdom is God's wisdom.

##### speak wisdom

The abstract noun "wisdom" can be stated as the adjective "wise." Alternate translation: "speak wise words" or "speak a wise message"

##### the mature

"mature believers"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:7

##### before the ages

"before God created anything"

##### for our glory

"in order to ensure our future glory"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:8

##### the Lord of glory

"Jesus, the glorious Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:9

##### No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no human heart has imagined

This is a triplet referring to all parts of a person to emphasize that no man has ever been aware of the things that God has prepared.

##### what God has prepared for those who love him

The Lord has created in heaven wonderful surprises for those who love him.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:10

##### these things

the truths about Jesus and his death on the cross

##### the Spirit searches everything out

"the Spirit studies everthing accurately" or "the Spirit investigates everything." This implies that the Spirit knows everything.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:11

##### For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of the person in him?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that no one knows what a person is thinking except the person himself. Alternate translation: "No one knows what a person is thinking except that person's spirit"

##### spirit of the person

This refers to a person's inner being, his own spiritual nature.

##### no one knows the deep things of God except the Spirit of God

"only the Spirit of God knows the deep things of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes both Paul and his audience.

##### freely given to us by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God freely gave to us" or "that God has kindly given us"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:13

##### interpreting spiritual things to spiritual people

The meaning of the original language here is uncertain. Other translations of the Bible translate this as "interpreting spiritual things with spiritual words."

##### to spiritual people

Here "spiritual people" refers to those who are led by the Holy Spirit to obey God.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:14

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes both Paul and his audience.

##### unspiritual person

the non-Christian person, who has not received the Holy Spirit

##### because they are spiritually discerned

"because understanding these things requires the aid of the Spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:15

##### The one who is spiritual

"The believer who has received the Spirit"

##### he is not judged by others

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "others cannot judge him" or "no one can judge him"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:16

##### For who can know the mind of the Lord, that he can instruct him?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that no one knows the mind of the Lord. No one is as wise as the Lord. Alternate translation: "No one can know the mind of the Lord, so no one can teach him anything he does not already know"

## Chapter 3

# 1 Corinthians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make them easier to read. The ULB does this with the quoted words of verses 19 and 20.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Fleshly people

The Corinthian believers were immature because of their unrighteous actions. He calls them "fleshly," meaning acting as nonbelievers. This term is used in opposition to those who are "spiritual." Christians following their "flesh" are acting foolishly. They are following the wisdom of the world. (See: righteous, flesh, spirit and foolish and wise)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

There are many metaphors in this chapter. Paul uses "little children" and "milk" to illustrate spiritual immaturity. He uses the metaphors of planting and watering to describe the roles he and Apollos played in growing the church in Corinth. Paul uses other metaphors to help teach spiritual truths to the Corinthians and to help them to understand his teachings.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:1

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### spiritual people

people who obey the Spirit

##### fleshly people

people who follow their own desires

##### as to little children in Christ

The Corinthians are compared to children very young in age and understanding. Alternate translation: "as to very young believers in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:2

##### I fed you milk, not solid food

Babies can only drink milk because they have not grown enough to eat solid food. Paul uses this image as a metaphor to mean that the Corinthians can only understand easy truths. They are not mature enough to understand greater truths.

##### you are not yet ready

It is implied that they are not ready to understand more difficult teachings. Alternate translation: "you still are not ready to understand the harder teachings about following Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:3

##### still fleshly

still behaving according to sinful or worldly desires

##### are you not living according to the flesh, and are you not walking by human standards?

Paul uses questions to rebuke the Corinthians for their sinful behavior. Here "walking" is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Alternate translation: "you should be ashamed because you are behaving according to your sinful desires and you are living according to human standards!"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:4

##### are you not merely human beings?

Paul uses a question to rebuke the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "you should be ashamed because you are living the same way that people who do not have the Spirit live."

#### 1 Corinthians 3:5

##### Who then is Apollos? Who is Paul?

Paul is emphasizing that he and Apollos are not the original source of the gospel, and therefore the Corinthians should not follow them. Alternate translation: "It is wrong to form groups to follow Apollos or Paul!" or

##### Who is Paul?

Paul is speaking of himself as though he were speaking of someone else. Alternate translation: "I am not important!" or "Who am I?"

##### Servants through whom you believed

Paul answers his own question by saying that he and Apollos are God's servants. Alternate translation: "Paul and Apollos are servants of Christ, and you believed in Christ because we served him"

##### Servants through whom you believed, just as the Lord gave tasks to each

This can be stated with the understood information. Alternate translation: "We are servants through whom you believed, and to each of us the Lord gave different tasks"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:6

##### I planted

The knowledge of God is compared to a seed which must be planted in order to grow. Alternate translation: "When I preached God's word to you, I was like one who plants seeds in a garden"

##### Apollos watered

As seeds need water, faith needs further teaching in order for it to grow. Alternate translation: "and when Apollos continued to teach you God's word, he was like one who waters a garden"

##### but God gave the growth

As plants grow and develop, so faith and knowledge in God also grow and become deeper and stronger. Alternate translation: "but God caused you to grow" or "but just as God causes plants to grow, he caused you to grow spiritually"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:7

##### neither he who plants ... is anything. But it is God who gives the growth

Paul stresses that neither he nor Apollos is responsible for the believers' spiritual growth, but it is God's doing.

##### it is God who gives the growth

Here to give growth means to cause growth. The abstract noun "growth" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "it is God who causes you to grow"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:8

##### he who plants and he who waters are one

Paul speaks of telling people the good news and teaching those who have accepted it as if they were planting and watering plants.

##### are one

Possible meanings are "one" are 1) "united in purpose" or 2) "equal in importance."

##### wages

an amount of money that a worker receives for his work

#### 1 Corinthians 3:9

##### we

This refers to Paul and Apollos but not the Corinthian church.

##### God's fellow workers

Paul considers himself and Apollos as working together.

##### You are God's garden

Possible meanings are 1) being God's garden represents belonging to God. Alternate translation: "You are like a garden that belongs to God" or 2) being God's garden represents God causing us to grow. Alternate translation: "You are like a garden that God makes grow"

##### God's building

Possible meanings are 1) being God's building represents belonging to God. Alternate translation: "and you are like a building that belongs to God" or 2) being God's building represents God causing us to become what he wants. Alternate translation: "and you are like a building that God is constructing"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:10

##### According to the grace of God that was given to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "According to the task that God freely gave me to do"

##### I laid a foundation

Paul equates his teaching of faith and salvation in Jesus Christ to laying a foundation for a building.

##### another is building on it

Paul is referring to the person or people who are teaching the Corinthians at that time as if they are carpenters who are constructing the building above the foundation.

##### let each man

This refers to God's workers in general. Alternate translation: "let each person who serves God"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues his metaphor about a foundation.

##### no one can lay a foundation other than the one that has been laid

The phrase "has been laid" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one can lay a foundation other than the one and only foundation"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:12

##### General Information:

Paul speaks of what builders usually do when constructing a building to describe what the teachers in Corinth are actually doing. Builders usually only use gold, silver, or precious stones as decorations on buildings.

##### Now if anyone builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw

The building materials used to build a new building are being compared to the spiritual values used to build a person's behavior and activities during his lifetime. Alternate translation: "Whether a person builds with valuable materials that will last or with cheap materials that burn easily"

##### precious stones

"expensive stones"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:13

##### his work will be revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will show everyone what the builder has done"

##### for the day will reveal it

The "day" refers to the time when God will judge everyone. When God shows everyone what these teachers have done, it will be like the sun has come up to reveal what happened during the night.

##### For it will be revealed in fire. The fire will test the quality of what each one has done

Just as fire will reveal the strengths or destroy the weaknesses of a building, God's fire will judge man's efforts and activities. Alternate translation: "God will use fire to show the quality of his work"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:14

##### work remains

"work lasts" or "work survives"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:15

##### if anyone's work is burned up

This is a metaphor for a person's work being shown to have no value. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if the fire destroys anyone's work" or "if the judgement shows that a person's work has no value"

##### he will suffer loss

The abstract noun "loss" can be expressed with the verb "lose." Alternate translation: "he will lose his reward"

##### but he himself will be saved, as though escaping through fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but God will save him as though through fire"

##### as though escaping through fire

This is a simile showing the danger that such a person is in if his works have no value. (See:

#### 1 Corinthians 3:16

##### Do you not know that you are God's temple and that the Spirit of God lives in you?

Paul uses a question to rebuke the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "You act as though you do not know that you are God's temple and the Spirit of God lives in you!"

##### Do you ... you are ... in you

All instances of "you" in this verse are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:18

##### Let no one deceive himself

Nobody should believe the lie that he himself is wise in this world.

##### in this age

according to the way people who do not believe decide what is wise

##### let him become a "fool"

"that person should be willing to have people who do not believe call him a fool"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:19

##### He catches the wise in their craftiness

God traps the people who think they are clever and uses their own schemes to trap them.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:20

##### The Lord knows that the reasoning of the wise is futile

"The Lord knows that what people who think they are wise plan to do is futile"

##### futile

useless

#### 1 Corinthians 3:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:23

##### you are Christ's, and Christ is God's

"you belong to Christ, and Christ belongs to God"

## Chapter 4

# 1 Corinthians 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Pride

Paul contrasts the Corinthians' pride with the apostles' humility. The Corinthian believers had no reason to be proud. All that they had, and all they were, was a gift from God. (See: apostle)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

Paul uses many metaphors in this chapter. He describes the apostles as servants. Paul speaks of a victory parade where the apostles are the prisoners who will be killed. He uses a rod to stand for punishment. He calls himself their father because he is their "spiritual father." (See: and spirit)

#### Irony

Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians for being proud. The Corinthian believers are reigning but the apostles are suffering.

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to emphasize important points as he teaches the Corinthians.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Having just reminded the people not to be proud concerning who had taught them about the Lord and who had baptized them, Paul reminds the Corinthian believers that all believers are to be humble servants.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:2

##### of stewards is that they

Paul is speaking of himself as if he were speaking about other people. Alternate translation: "of us stewards is that we"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:3

##### it is a very small thing that I should be judged by you

Paul is comparing the difference between human judgment and God's judgment. Man's judgment is not important compared to God's true judgment upon man.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:4

##### I am not aware of any charge being made against me

"I have not heard anyone accuse me of doing wrong"

##### that does not justify me

It would still be possible for Paul to be guilty even if there were no charge against him. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "that does not mean that God has declared me innocent"

##### The one who judges me is the Lord

"It is the Lord who will decide if I am innocent or guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:5

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart

Here "bring to light the hidden things of darkness" is a metaphor for making known to everyone things that were done in secret. Here "heart" is a metonym for people's thoughts and intentions. Alternate translation: "Like a light that shines on things in darkness, God will show what people have secretly done and what they secretly planned"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:6

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### for your sakes

"for your welfare"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:7

##### between you ... do you have that you did not receive ... you have received ... do you boast ... you did not

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" here are singular.

##### For who sees any difference between you and others?

Paul is rebuking the Corinthians who think they are better than those who heard the gospel from someone else. Alternate translation: "For there is no difference between you and others." or "For you are not superior to other people."

##### What do you have that you did not receive?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that they did not earn the things they have. Alternate translation: "Everything that you have is what you have received." or "God gave to you everything that you have!"

##### why do you boast as if you did not receive it?

Paul was rebuking them for boasting in what they had. Alternate translation: "you should not boast as if you had not received it." or "you have no right to boast!"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:8

##### General Information:

Paul uses irony here to shame the Corinthians and make them realize that they are sinning when they are proud of themselves and their teachers.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:9

##### God has put us apostles on display

Paul expresses two ways that God has put his apostles on display for the world to see.

##### has put us apostles on display

God has displayed the apostles just like prisoners who are at the end of a Roman military parade and who are humiliated before their execution.

##### like men sentenced to death

God put the apostles on display like men who are about to be executed.

##### to the world—to angels, and to human beings

Possible meanings are 1) "the world" consists of both supernatural

#### 1 Corinthians 4:10

##### We are fools ... in dishonor

Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians so they will think about what he is saying.

##### You are held in honor

"People treat you Corinthians as though you were important people"

##### we are held in dishonor

"people shame us apostles"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:11

##### Up to this present hour

"Until now" or "Up to now"

##### we are beaten

This refers to hitting with the hand, not with whips or clubs. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people beat us"

##### we are homeless

Paul means that they have to move around from place to place. Although they have places to stay, they have no permanent home.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:12

##### When we are slandered, we bless

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When people slander us, we bless them" or "When people scorn us, we bless them"

##### When we are persecuted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When people persecute us"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:13

##### When we are slandered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When people slander us"

##### We have become as the refuse of the world

"People began to consider us—and they still consider us—to be the garbage of the world"

##### the refuse of the world

"the worst kind of garbage in the world"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:14

##### I do not write these things to shame you, but to warn you

"I do not intend to shame you, but I want to correct you"

##### my beloved children

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, they are like his spiritual children.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:15

##### ten thousand guardians

This is an exaggeration of the number of people guiding them, to emphasize the importance of the one spiritual father. Alternate translation: "very many guardians" or "a large crowd of guardians"

##### I became your father in Christ Jesus through the gospel

Paul is emphasizing firstly that his relationship with the Corinthians is most importantly "in Christ," secondly that it came because he told them the good news, and thirdly that he is the one who is like a father to them. Alternate translation: "it was because God joined you to Christ when I told you the good news that I was the one who became your father"

##### I became your father

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, he is like a father to them.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:17

##### my beloved and faithful child in the Lord

"whom I love and whom I teach about the Lord as if he were my own child"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:18

##### Now

This word indicates that Paul is shifting his topic. Here he begins to rebuke the arrogant behavior of the Corinthian believers.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:19

##### I will come to you

"I will visit you"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:21

##### What do you want?

Paul was making a last appeal to the Corinthians, as he has been rebuking them for the errors they had made. Alternate translation: "Tell me what you want to happen now."

##### Should I come to you with a rod or with love and in a spirit of gentleness?

Paul is offering the Corinthians two opposing attitudes he could use when approaching them. Alternate translation: "If you want, I can come to punish you, or I can come to show you how much I love you by being gentle with you."

##### of gentleness

"of kindness" or "of tenderness"

## Chapter 5

# 1 Corinthians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make them easier to read. The ULB does this with the quoted words of verse 13.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Euphemisms

Paul uses euphemisms to describe sensitive topics. This chapter deals with sexual immorality of one church member. (See: and fornication)

#### Metaphor

Paul uses an extended comparison that contains many metaphors. Yeast represents evil. The loaf probably represents the whole congregation. The unleavened bread represents living purely. So the whole passage means: Don't you know that a little evil will affect the whole congregation? So get rid of the evil so you can live purely. Christ has been sacrificed for us. So let us be sincere and truthful and not wicked and behaving badly. (See:, evil, unleavenedbread, purify, and passover)

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to emphasize important points as he teaches the Corinthians.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul now specifically states about what sin of theirs he has heard, and how the Corinthian believers are proud of their acceptance of that man and his sin.

##### that is not even permitted among the pagans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that not even the Gentiles permit"

##### A man has his father's wife

"A man among you is commiting adultery with his father's wife"

##### father's wife

the wife of his father, but probably not his own mother

#### 1 Corinthians 5:2

##### Should you not mourn instead ... among you?

This rhetorical question is used to scold the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "You should mourn over this instead ... among you!"

##### the one who did this deed might be removed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can remove from among you the one who did this deed"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:3

##### I am present in spirit

"I am with you in spirit." Being with them in spirit represents caring about them or wanting to be with them. Alternate translation: "I care about you" or "I want to be with you"

##### I have already passed judgment on the one who did this

Possible meanings are 1) "I have decided what you should do with the one who did this" or 2) "I have found the person who did this guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:4

##### When you are assembled

"When you are together" or "When you meet together"

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) the name of the Lord Jesus is a metonym that represents his authority. Alternate translation: "with the authority of our Lord Jesus" or 2) being assembled in the Lord's name implies meeting together to worship him. Alternate translation: "to worship our Lord Jesus"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:5

##### deliver this man over to Satan

This means make the man leave the Christian community so that he will no longer be protected from Satan. Alternate translation: “hand this man over to Satan by sending him away from the Christian community”

##### for the destruction of the flesh

Possible meanings are 1) "flesh" refers to his physical body. Alternate translation: "so that Satan may harm his body" or 2) "flesh" is a metaphor for the sinful nature. Alternate translation: "so that his sinful nature will be destroyed" or "so that he will not continue to live according to his sinful nature"

##### so that his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God may save his spirit on the day of the Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:6

##### Your boasting is not good

"Your boasting is bad"

##### Do you not know that a little yeast leavens the whole loaf?

Paul uses this proverb to mean that a small part of something affects the whole thing. In this case, one person who is sinning can harm the entire Christian community.

##### Do you not know that a little yeast ... loaf?

Here Paul uses a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "You know that a little yeast ... loaf." or "A little yeast ... loaf."

#### 1 Corinthians 5:7

##### Cleanse yourselves of the old yeast so that you may be a new batch of dough, unleavened

Paul uses the proverb from 5:6 to teach his audience. Here "old yeast" is a metaphor for the sins that the people were committing. "Unleavened dough" is the type of bread that God told the Israelites was acceptable to eat when celebrating Passover. Paul is telling his audience to stop sinning so that they may be acceptable to God.

##### Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed

As the Passover lamb covered the sins of Israel by faith each year, so did Christ's death cover the sins of all who trust in Christ by faith for eternity. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord has sacrificed Christ, our Passover lamb"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:8

##### not with the old yeast, the yeast of bad behavior and wickedness ... the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth

Paul continues using the proverb from 5:6 to teach his audience. Here "yeast" is a metaphor for sin, and "unleavened bread" is metaphor for behaviors acceptable to God.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:10

##### the immoral people of this world

This means unbelievers who have chosen to live immoral lives.

##### the greedy

"those who are greedy" or "those who are willing to be dishonest to get what others have"

##### swindlers

This means people who cheat to get others' property.

##### you would need to go out of the world

"you would need to avoid all people"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells them how to treat believers in the church who refuse to be corrected for their involvement in sexual immorality or other obvious sins.

##### anyone who is called

"anyone who calls himself"

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian, either a man or a woman.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:12

##### how am I involved with judging those who are outside the church?

Paul uses a question to emphasize that he is not the one to judge people outside the church. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am not the one who should judge people who do not belong to the church."

##### are you not to judge those who are inside the church?

Paul is using a question to scold the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "you should know that you are the ones who should judge those who are inside the church."

#### 1 Corinthians 5:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 6

# 1 Corinthians 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Lawsuits

Paul teaches that a Christian should not take another Christian to court before a non-Christian judge. It is better to be cheated. Christians will judge the angels. So they should be able to solve problems among themselves. (See: judge)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

The temple of the Holy Spirit is an important metaphor. It refers to the place where the Holy Spirit stays and is worshiped.

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to emphasize important points as he teaches the Corinthians.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how believers are to settle disagreements with other believers.

##### dispute

in this case a legal complaint, argument, or disagreement

##### does he dare ... holy people?

Paul is angry because the Corinthians are doing a great wrong by taking their disputes with each other to the civil court. Alternate translation: "it is wrong for him to dare ... holy people." or "he should fear God and not ... God's holy people."

##### to bring a lawsuit before the unrighteous rather than before God's holy people

to ask unrighteous people, rather than God's holy people, to judge who is right and who is wrong

#### 1 Corinthians 6:2

##### Do you not know that God's holy people will judge the world?

Paul uses a question to shame the Corinthians for their behavior. Alternate translation: "You act like you do not know that God's holy people will judge the world."

##### If then you will judge the world, are you not able to settle matters of little importance?

Because they will be given greater responsibility later, they should be responsible for lesser things now. Alternate translation: "You will judge the world in the future, so you should be able to settle this small matter now."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:3

##### judge matters of this life

"stop arguments about things that have to do with this life"

##### Do you not know that we will judge the angels?

Paul is surprised that they do not seem to know. Alternate translation: "You know that we will judge the angels."

##### we

Paul includes himself and the Corinthians.

##### How much more, then, can we judge matters of this life?

Because they will be given greater responsibility later, they should be responsible for lesser things now. Alternate translation: "Because we know we will judge the angels, we can also be sure that God will enable us to judge matters in this life."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:4

##### If then you have to make judgments that pertain to daily life

"If you are called upon to make decisions about daily life" or "If you must settle matters that are important in this life"

##### do you lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church?

Possible meanings are that 1) this is a rhetorical question and Paul is rebuking the Corinthians for laying their cases before people of no standing in the church. Alternate translation: "you should not lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church." or 2) this is a command to lay their cases before even people of no standing in the church, rather than to people outside of the church. Alternate translation: "lay cases such as these even before people in the church who have no standing, not before people outside of the church."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:5

##### to your shame

"to your dishonor" or "to show how you have failed in this matter"

##### Is there no one among you wise enough to settle a dispute between brothers?

Paul is shaming the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "You should be ashamed that you cannot find a wise believer to settle arguments between brothers"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### dispute

argument or disagreement

#### 1 Corinthians 6:6

##### But one brother brings a lawsuit against another brother—and this before unbelievers

"But brothers who have disputes with each other ask judges who do not believe in Christ to make decisions for them" or "It is bad that brothers have such bad disputes with each other that they go to court; it is even worse that those courts are run by unbelievers"

##### brother brings a lawsuit against another brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christian, including both men and women.

##### brings a lawsuit

asks the civil court to judge the matter

##### and this before unbelievers

Possible meanings are 1) "and the brothers have unbelieving judges make decisions for them" or 2) "and unbelievers in the community see brothers disputing with one another"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:7

##### is already a defeat

"is already a failure"

##### Why not rather suffer the wrong? Why not rather allow yourselves to be cheated?

Paul continues to shame the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "It would be better to let others wrong you and cheat you than to take them to court."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:8

##### your own brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:9

##### Do you not know that ... kingdom of God?

Paul emphasizes that they should already know this truth. Alternate translation: "You already know that ... kingdom of God."

##### inherit

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### inherit the kingdom of God

God will not judge them as righteous at the judgment, and they will not enter eternal life.

##### nor men who submit to homosexual acts, nor men who perform homosexual acts

Both of these phrases refer to men who have sex with other men.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:10

##### thieves

people who steal from others

##### the greedy

people who are willing to use evil means to take others' property

#### 1 Corinthians 6:11

##### you have been cleansed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has cleansed you"

##### you have been sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has set you apart for himself"

##### you have been justified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has made you right with him"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ

"Name" here is a metonym for the power and authority of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "by the power and authority of our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Corinthian believers that God wants them pure because Christ has bought them with his death. Their bodies are now God's temple. He does so by saying what the Corinthians might say and then correcting them.

##### "Everything is lawful for me," but

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is saying what some Corinthians might be thinking. Alternate translation: "People say, 'I am allowed to do anything,' but" or 2) Paul is saying what he thinks is true. Alternate translation: "I am allowed to do anything, but"

##### but not everything is profitable

Paul is answering whoever says, "Everything is lawful for me." Alternate translation: "but not everything is good for me"

##### I will not be mastered by any of them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not allow these things to rule over me like a master"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:13

##### "Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," but God will do away with both of them

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is correcting what some Corinthians might be thinking, "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," by answering that God will do away with both the stomach and food or 2) Paul actually agrees that "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," but he is adding that God will do away with both of them.

##### Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food

One possible meanings is that the speaker is speaking indirectly of the body and sex, but you should translate this literally as "stomach" and "food."

##### do away with

"destroy"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:14

##### raised the Lord

"caused the Lord to live again"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:15

##### Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ?

The word translated as "members" refers to parts of a body. Our belonging to Christ is spoken of as if we were parts of his body. We belong to him so much that even our bodies belong to him. Paul uses this question to remind the people of something they should already know. Alternate translation: "You should know that your bodies belong to Christ."

##### Should I then take the members of Christ and join them to a prostitute? May it not be!

Paul uses this question to emphasize how wrong it is for someone who belongs to Christ to go to a prostitute. Alternate translation: "I am part of Christ. I will not take my body and join myself to a prostitute!" or "We are parts of Christ's body. We must not take our bodies and join ourselves to prostitutes!"

##### May it not be!

"That should never happen!" or "We must never do that!"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:16

##### Do you not know that ... her?

Paul begins to teach the Corinthians by emphasizing a truth that they already know. "I want to remind you that ... her."

##### he who is joined to a prostitute becomes one body with her

This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when a man joins his body to the body of a prostitute, it is as if their bodies become one body"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:17

##### he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him

This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the Lord joins his spirit to the spirit of a person, it is as if their spirits become one spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:18

##### Run away from

Paul speaks of a person rejecting sexual sin as if that person were running away from danger. Alternate translation: "Get away from"

##### immorality! Every other sin that a person commits is outside the body, but

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is showing that sexual sin is especially bad because it is not only against others but against the sinner's own body or 2) Paul is quoting what some Corinthians were thinking. Alternate translation: "immorality! Some of you are saying, 'Every sin that a person commits is outside the body,' but I say that"

##### sin that a person commits

"evil deed that a person does"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:19

##### Do you not know ... God? Do you not know that you are not your own?

Paul is continuing to teach the Corinthians by emphasizing what they already know. Alternate translation: "I want to remind you ... God and that you are not your own."

##### your body

the body of each individual Christian is a temple of the Holy Spirit

##### temple of the Holy Spirit

A temple is dedicated to divine beings, and it is also where they dwell. In the same way, the bodies of believers are like temples because the Holy Spirit lives within them.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:20

##### For you were bought with a price

God paid for the freedom of the Corinthians from the slavery of sin. This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God paid for your freedom"

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

## Chapter 7

# 1 Corinthians 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul begins to answer a series of questions that the Corinthians may have asked him. The first question is about marriage. The second question is about a slave trying to become free, a Gentile becoming a Jew, or a Jew becoming a Gentile.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Divorce

Paul says married Christians should not divorce. A Christian married to an unbeliever should not leave their husband or wife. If the unbelieving husband or wife leaves, this is not a sin. Paul advises that, because of the difficult times and because it is near to the time that Jesus will return, it is good to remain unmarried. (See: believe and sin)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Euphemisms

Paul uses many euphemisms to discreetly refer to sexual relations. This is often a sensitive topic. Many cultures do not wish to speak openly about these matters.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives the believers some specific instructions on marriage.

##### Now

Paul is introducing a new topic in his teaching.

##### the issues you wrote about

The Corinthians had written a letter to Paul to ask for answers to certain questions.

##### "It is good for a man not to touch a woman."

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is quoting what the Corinthians had written. Alternate translation: "you wrote, 'It is good for a man not to touch a woman.'" or 2) Paul is saying what he really thinks. Alternate translation: "my answer is that yes, it is good for a man not to touch a woman."

##### It is good

"It is most helpful"

##### for a man

Possible meanings are 1) "a man" refers to a married man. Alternate translation: "a husband" or 2) "a man" refers to any man.

##### not to touch a woman

Possible meanings are 1) "touch a woman" is a euphemism for having sexual relations. Alternate translation: "not to have sexual relations with his wife for a while" or 2) "touch a woman" is a metonym for marry. Alternate translation: "not to marry"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:2

##### But because

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is responding to what the Corinthians had written. Alternate translation: "That is true, but because" or 2) Paul is saying what he really thinks.

##### But because of temptations for many immoral acts, each

"But because Satan tempts people to commit sexual sin, each" or "But we desire to commit sexual sin because of our sinful nature, so each"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:3

##### fulfill his duty to have sexual relations with his wife

Husbands should regularly have sexual relations with their wives. Alternate translation: "should give to his wife her sexual rights"

##### in the same way the wife to her husband

The words "should fulfill" and "duty to have sexual relations" are understood from the previous phrase, as is the meaning of the euphemism. Alternate translation: "in the same way, the wife should fulfill her duty to have sexual relations with her husband" or "in the same way, the wife should give to her husband his sexual rights"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:5

##### Do not deprive each other, except by mutual agreement and for

This double negative emphasizes that mutual agreement is necessary. Alternate translation: "Only if you both agree to deprive each other should you do so, and even then only do so for"

##### Do not deprive each other

The word "deprive" means to keep from someone something that the other person has the right to receive, in this case marital relations. "Do not refuse to have marital relations with your spouse"

##### so that you may devote yourselves to prayer

in order to have a period of especially deep prayer

##### devote yourselves

"commit yourselves"

##### come together again

"sleep together again"

##### because of your lack of self-control

"because after some days, your sexual desires will be harder to keep under control"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:6

##### I say these things to you as a concession and not as a command

Possible meanings are Paul is telling the Corinthians that he is allowing them, but not commanding them, 1) to marry and sleep together or 2) to stop sleeping together for a time.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:7

##### were as I am

Either Paul had never married or his wife had died. It is unlikely that he had been through a divorce.

##### But each one has his own gift from God. One has this kind of gift, and another that kind

"But God enables people to do different things. He enables one person to do one thing and another person to do something different"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:8

##### the unmarried

"those who are not married"

##### to widows

"to women whose husbands have died"

##### it is good

See how you translated this in 1 Corinthians 7:1.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:9

##### to burn with passion

"to live with the constant desire to sleep with someone"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:10

##### should not separate from

Paul's readers knew no difference between separating and divorcing. To stop living with someone was to end the marriage. Alternate translation: "should not divorce"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:11

##### be reconciled to her husband

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "she should make peace with her husband and return to him"

##### should not divorce

Paul's readers knew no difference between divorcing and simply separating. To do either was to end the marriage. Alternate translation: "should not separate from"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:12

##### content

willing or satisfied

#### 1 Corinthians 7:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:14

##### For the unbelieving husband is set apart because of his wife

Possible meanings are 1) "For God has set apart the unbelieving husband for himself because of his believing wife" or 2) "God treats the unbelieving husband as he would treat a son for the sake of his believing wife"

##### the unbelieving wife is set apart because of the brother

Possible meanings are 1) "God has set apart the unbelieving wife for himself because of her husband who believes" or 2) "God treats the unbelieving wife as he would treat a daughter for the sake of her husband who believes"

##### the brother

the believing man or husband

##### they are set apart

Possible meanings are 1) "God has set them apart for himself" or 2) "God treats them as he would treat his own children"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:15

##### In such cases, the brother or sister is not bound to their vows

Here "brother" and "sister" refers to a Christian husband or wife. Here "not bound to their vows" is a metaphor that mean the person is not obligated to do what they vowed to do. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "In such cases, God does not require the believing spouse to continue to obey the marriage vow"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:16

##### do you know, woman ... you will save your husband ... do you know, man ... you will save your wife

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" and "your" here are singular.

##### how do you know, woman, whether you will save your husband?

Paul uses a question to cause women to think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: "you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving husband."

##### how do you know, man, whether you will save your wife?

Paul uses a question to cause men to think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: "you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving wife."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:17

##### However

No matter what is true for the people in any of the situations Paul has just been discussing, he addresses the following words to everyone.

##### as the Lord has given each one his portion

God giving people skills and work to do and guiding the events of their lives is spoken of as if he were dividing physical objects and giving parts out to them. Alternate translation: "as the Lord has assigned each one his life"

##### each one

"each believer"

##### let each one walk as God has called him

The word "walk" is a metaphor for "live." Possible meanings of the word "called" are 1) it refers to people responding to the gospel. Alternate translation: "each one should live as he was when he became a Christian." Or 2) it is a metaphor for "commanded" or "instructed." Alternate translation: "each one should live as God has instructed him to" or "each one should follow God's commands as he lives his life"

##### This is my rule in all the churches

Paul was teaching believers in all the churches to act in this manner.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:18

##### Was anyone circumcised when he was called to believe? He

Paul was addressing the circumcised ones

##### Was anyone uncircumcised when he was called to faith? He

Paul was now addressing the uncircumcised ones. Alternate translation: "If someone was uncircumcised when God called him to believe, he"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:20

##### remain in the calling

Here "calling" refers to the work or social position in which you were involved. Alternate translation: "live and work as you did"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:21

##### Were you ... called you? Do not be ... you can become

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" and the command "be" here are singular.

##### Were you a slave when God called you? Do not be concerned

This can be stated as a statement. Alternate translation: "To anyone who was a slave when God called you to believe, I say this: do not be concerned"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:22

##### the Lord's freeman

This freeman is forgiven by God and therefore free from Satan and sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:23

##### You have been bought with a price

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ bought you by dying for you"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:24

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### whatever situation he was in when he was called

"whether he was married or unmarried, slave or free, when he was called"

##### he was called

You may need to make explicit who called and use an active verb. Alternate translation: "God called him"

##### called

called to believe in Christians

##### let each one remain

"each one should remain." That is, each one should remain slave, free, married, or unmarried, as he was when he first believed in Christ.

##### with God

"as a person responsible to God"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:25

##### Now concerning virgins, I have no commandment from the Lord

Paul knows no teaching of Jesus that speaks about this situation. Alternate translation: "The Lord has not commanded me to say anything to people who have never married"

##### virgins

This is probably a synecdoche for anyone who has never married. Alternate translation: "people who have never married"

##### I give my opinion

"I tell you what I think"

##### as one who, by the Lord's mercy, is trustworthy

"because, by the Lord's mercy, I am trustworthy"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:26

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:27

##### General Information:

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if he were speaking to each person, so all these instances of "you" and the command "do not seek" here are singular.

##### Are you bound to a wife? Do not ...

Paul uses this question to introduce a possible condition. The question can be translated as a phrase with "if." Alternate translation: "If you are bound to a wife, do not"

##### bound

married

##### Do not seek a divorce

"Do not try to divorce her" or "Do try to separate from her"

##### do not seek a wife

"do not try to get married"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:28

##### fleshly trouble

The word "fleshly" is a metonym for mortal life. Alternate translation: "trouble in this life"

##### I want to spare you from this

The word "this" refers to the kinds of worldly trouble that married people might have. Alternate translation: "I want to help you not to have worldly trouble"

##### virgin

This is probably a synecdoche for anyone who has never married. See how you translated "virgins" in [1 Corinthians 7:25]

#### 1 Corinthians 7:29

##### The time is short

"There is little time" or "Time is almost gone"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:30

##### weep

cry or grieve with tears

#### 1 Corinthians 7:31

##### those who use the world

"those who deal every day with unbelievers"

##### should not act as though they are using it to the full

"should show by their actions that they have their hope in God"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:32

##### free from worries

Being "free from" something is an idiom which means having the ability to live without it." Alternate translation: "without needing to worry"

##### concerned about

"focused on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:34

##### he is divided

"he is trying to please God and please his wife at the same time"

##### The unmarried woman or the virgin

Possible meanings are 1) "virgin" refers only to virgins, while "unmarried woman" could be a divorcée or any other unmarried non-virgin, and 2) "unmarried woman" explains what Paul means by "virgin."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:35

##### constraint

restriction

##### may be devoted to

"can concentrate on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:36

##### not treating his virgin with respect

"not being kind to his virgin" or "not honoring his virgin"

##### his virgin

Possible meanings are 1) "the woman whom he promised to marry" or "his fiancée" or 2) "his virgin daughter."

##### They should marry

Possible meanings are 1) "He should marry his fiancée" or 2) "He should let his daughter get married."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:37

##### But if he is standing firm in his heart

Here "standing firm" is a metaphor for deciding something with certainty. Here "heart" is metonym for a person's mind or thoughts. Alternate translation: "But if he has decided firmly in his own mind"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:38

##### So the one who marries his virgin does well, and the one who chooses not to marry will do even better

Or "So the one who allows his virgin daughter to marry does well, and the one who chooses not to have her marry will do even better." See how you translated "virgin" and "He should marry" in [1 Corinthians 7:36](./36.md).

#### 1 Corinthians 7:39

##### A woman is bound to her husband

Here "bound" is a metaphor for a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually, and physically. Here it means the union of marriage. Alternate translation: "A woman is married to her husband" or "A woman is united with her husband"

##### while he lives

"for as long as he lives" or "until he dies"

##### in the Lord

"if the new husband is a believer"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:40

##### my judgment

"my understanding of God's word"

##### happier

more contented, more joyful

##### lives as she is

"remains unmarried"

## Chapter 8

# 1 Corinthians 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In Chapters 8-10, Paul answers the question: "Is it acceptable to eat meat that has been sacrificed to an idol?"

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Meat sacrificed to idols

Paul answers the question about eating meat sacrificed to idols by saying that idols are supposed to be gods but that those gods do not really exist. Therefore nothing is wrong with the meat. Christians are free to eat it. However, someone who does not understand this may see a Christian eating it. They may then be encouraged to eat the meat as an act of worship to the idol.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:1

##### General Information:

"We" means Paul and, though specifically writing to the Corinthian believers, includes all believers.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers that though idols have no power, believers must be careful not to affect the weaker believers who might think that the believers care about idols if the believers eat food that was sacrificed to idols. He tells believers to be careful with the freedom that they have in Christ.

##### Now concerning

Paul uses this phrase to move on to the next question the Corinthians had asked him.

##### food sacrificed to idols

Gentile worshipers would offer grain, fish, fowl, or meat to their gods. The priest would burn a portion of it on the altar. Paul is speaking of the portion the priest would give back for the worshiper to eat or sell in the market.

##### Knowledge puffs up

"Knowledge puffs people up." Here "puffs up" is a metaphor for making someone proud. The abstract noun "knowledge" can be expressed with the verb "know." Alternate translation: "Knowledge makes people proud" or "People who think that they know a lot become proud"

##### but love builds up

The abstract noun "love" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "but when we love people, we build them up"

##### love builds up

Building people up represents helping them become mature and strong in their faith. Alternate translation: "love strengthens people" or "when we love people, we strengthen them"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:2

##### thinks he knows something

"believes he knows everything about something"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:3

##### that person is known by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows that person"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:4

##### General Information:

"We" here refers to all believers and include Paul's audience.

##### We know that an idol in this world is nothing and that there is no God but one

Paul is probably quoting phrases that some Corinthians used. Being "nothing" represents having no power. Alternate translation: "We all know, as you yourselves like to say, that an idol in this world has no power and that there is no God but one"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:5

##### so-called gods

"things that people call gods"

##### many "gods" and many "lords"

Paul does not believe that many gods and many lords exist, but he recognizes that the pagans believe they do.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:6

##### General Information:

"Us" and "we" here refer to all believers and include Paul's audience.

##### yet for us there is only one God

"yet we know that there is only one God"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:7

##### General Information:

Paul is speaking here of "weak" brothers, people who cannot separate food sacrificed to idols from the worship of those idols. If a Christian eats food that has been sacrificed to an idol, weak brothers might think that God will allow them to worship the idol by eating the food. Even if the eater has not worshiped the idol and is simply eating the food, he has still corrupted his weak brothers' conscience.

##### everyone ... some

"all people ... some people who are now Christians"

##### defiled

ruined or harmed, especially as regards the person's relationship with God

#### 1 Corinthians 8:8

##### food will not present us to God

Paul speaks of food as though it were a person who could make God welcome us. Alternate translation: "food does not give us favor with God" or "the food we eat does not make God pleased with us"

##### We are not worse if we do not eat, nor better if we do eat it

"Some people might think that if we do not eat some things, God will love us less. But they are wrong. Those who think that God will love us more if we do eat those things are also wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:9

##### someone who is weak

believers not strong in their faith

#### 1 Corinthians 8:10

##### sees you, who have

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so these words are singular.

##### his ... conscience

what he understands to be right and wrong

##### emboldened to eat

"encouraged to eat"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:11

##### your understanding

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so the word "your" here is singular.

##### the weaker one ... is destroyed

The brother or sister who is not strong in his or her faith will sin or lose his or her faith.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:13

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### if food causes

"Food" here is a metonym for the eating of food. Alternate translation: "if by eating I cause" or "if I, because of what I eat, cause"

## Chapter 9

# 1 Corinthians 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul defends himself in this chapter. Some people claimed that he was trying to gain financially from the church.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Earning money from the church

People accused Paul of just wanting money from the church. Paul answered that he rightfully could get money from the church. The Old Testament taught that those who worked should get their living from their work. He and Barnabas purposefully never used this right and earned their own living.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Paul uses many metaphors in this chapter. These metaphors teach complex truths.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Contextualization

This passage is important because Paul "contextualizes" ministering the gospel to different audiences. This means that Paul makes himself and the gospel understandable without his actions hindering the gospel being received. The translator should take extra care to preserve aspects of this "contextualization" if possible. (See: goodnews)

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to emphasize various points as he teaches the Corinthians.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how he uses the liberty he has in Christ.

##### Am I not free?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of the rights he has. Alternate translation: "I am a free person."

##### Am I not an apostle?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of who he is and the rights he has. Alternate translation: "I am an apostle."

##### Have I not seen Jesus our Lord?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of who he is. Alternate translation: "I have seen Jesus our Lord."

##### Are you not my work in the Lord?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of their relationship to him. Alternate translation: "You believe in Christ because I have worked the way the Lord wants me to."

##### my work

"the result of the work that I have done"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:2

##### you are the seal of my apostleship in the Lord

The word "seal" here is a metaphor for the evidence needed to prove something. Alternate translation: "you are evidence I can use to prove that the Lord has chosen me to be an apostle"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:3

##### This is my defense ... me:

Possible meanings are 1) the words that follow are Paul's defense or 2) the words in 1 Corinthians 9:1-2 are Paul's defense. Alternate translation: "This is my defense ... me."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:4

##### Do we not have the right to eat and drink?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to challenge what some people think about him and Barnabas. Alternate translation: "We have the right to receive food and drink from the churches."

##### we

Here "we" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:5

##### Do we not have the right ... Cephas?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to challenge what some people think about him and Barnabas. Alternate translation: "We certainly have the right ... Cephas."

##### a wife who is a believer

"a believing wife" or "a Christian wife"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:6

##### Or do only I and Barnabas not have the right to not work at a trade?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to challenge what some people think about him and Barnabas. Alternate translation: "You seem to think that Barnabas and I are the only apostles who have no authority to not work at a trade"

##### not have the right to not work at a trade

If this double negative causes confusion in your language, you can state it as a simple positive. Alternate translation: "have to work at a trade" or "have to have another job"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:7

##### Who serves as a soldier at his own expense?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "We all know that no soldier has to buy his own supplies." or "We all know that every soldier receives his supplies from the government."

##### Who plants a vineyard and does not eat its fruit?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "We all know that the one who plants a vineyard will be allowed to eat its fruit." or "No one expects that someone who plants a vineyard will be forbidden to eat its fruit."

##### Or who shepherds a flock and does not drink milk from it?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "We all know that those who shepherd flocks may drink milk from the flocks"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:8

##### Do I say these things based on human authority? Does not the law also say this?

Paul uses these rhetorical questions as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "I am not saying these things based on human authority. The law also says this."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:9

##### Do not put

Moses was speaking to the Israelites as if they were one person, so this command is singular.

##### Is it really the oxen that God cares about?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "God does not only care about the oxen."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:10

##### Is he not speaking about us?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "Instead, God was certainly speaking about us."

##### should plow in hope

"should plow, expecting to receive something for his work" or "should plow, expecting to share in the harvest"

##### should thresh in the hope of sharing in the harvest

"should thresh, expecting to share in the harvest"

##### sharing in the harvest

"receiving some of the crop that is collected"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:11

##### If we sowed spiritual things among you, is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

Here "sowed spiritual things" and "reap physical things" are metaphors meaning Paul and Barnabas taught the Corinthians about Christ and spiritual things, so they deserve for the church to support them for their work. Alternate translation: "If we taught you about Christ and spiritual truths, is it too much for us to receive money from you for our work?

##### is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "then it should not be too much for us to reap physical things from you."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:12

##### If others exercised ... you, do we not have even more?

Paul uses this rhetorical question as a part of his argument to show that he and Barnabas have the right to be supported by the church for their work. Alternate translation: "If others exercised ... you, then we have that right even more."

##### If others exercised this right

Paul and the Corinthians both know that others exercised the right. Alternate translation: "Since others exercised this right"

##### others

other workers of the gospel

##### this right

the right to have the believers at Corinth provide for the living expenses of those who told them the good news

##### be a hindrance to

"be a burden to" or "stop the spread of"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:13

##### Do you not know that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of what they know so he can add new information. Alternate translation: "I want to remind you that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple."

##### perform sacred duties

"perform sacred duties in the temple" or "work in the temple"

##### Do you not know that those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to remind the Corinthians of what they know so he can add new information. Alternate translation: "I want to remind you that those who serve at the altar get some of the foods and meat that people offer on the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:14

##### get their living from the gospel

The words "the gospel" here are a metonym for 1) the people to whom they tell the gospel, "receive their food and other things they need from those to whom they teach the good news," or 2) the result of working to tell the gospel, "receive their food and other things they need because they work to tell the good news."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:15

##### these rights

"these things that I deserve"

##### so something might be done for me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so you will do something for me"

##### It would be better for me to die than—No one will make my boast empty!

Paul seems to have started a new sentence before finishing the first one. Some modern translations read, "It would be better for me to die than to have someone deprive me of this boast."

##### It would be better for me to

"I would rather." Paul is speaking of what he desires, not necessarily of what God thinks is best.

##### make my boast empty

"take away this opportunity I have to boast" or "make it so I have nothing to boast about"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:16

##### I must do this

"I must preach the gospel"

##### woe be to me if

"may I suffer misfortune if"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:17

##### if I do this willingly

"if I preach willingly" or "if I preach because I want to"

##### But if not willingly

The words "I do this" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "But if I do this unwillingly" or "But if I do this even though I do not want to" or "But if I do this because I was forced to do it"

##### I still have a stewardship that was entrusted to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I still must complete this work that God entrusted to me" or "I still must do this work that God gave me to complete"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:18

##### What then is my reward?

Paul is preparing them for the new information he is going to give them. Alternate translation: "This is my reward."

##### That when I preach, I may offer the gospel without charge

"My reward for preaching is that I can preach without receiving payment"

##### offer the gospel

"preach the gospel"

##### so not take full use of my right in the gospel

"so not ask people to support me as I travel and preach"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:19

##### I am free from all

Paul uses the image of freedom from slavery to talk about not being obligated to others. Alternate translation: "I am free of obligation to all" or "Though I am not obligated to anyone"

##### I became a servant to all

Paul uses the image of slavery to talk about his willingness to meet others' needs. Alternate translation: "I became like a servant to all" or "I became willing to serve all"

##### win more

"persuade others to believe" or "help others trust in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:20

##### I became like a Jew

"I acted like a Jew" or "I practiced Jewish customs"

##### I became like one under the law

"I became like one committed to following the demands of the Jewish leadership, accepting their understanding of the Jewish scriptures"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:21

##### To those outside the law, I became like one outside the law

To be "outside the law" is a metaphor that means not to be obligated to obey the law. "The "law" refers to the law of Moses, and "those outside the law" refers to the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "To Gentiles, who are not obligated to follow the law of Moses, I became like them"

##### although I was not outside the law of God myself, but under the law of Christ

The phrases "not outside the law" and "under the law" are metaphors that mean to be obligated to obey the law. Alternate translation: "although I was not one of those who is not obligated to obey the law of God, but I was obligated to obey the law of Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:23

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains that he uses the liberty he has in Christ to discipline himself.

##### Do you not know that in a race all the runners run the race, but that only one receives the prize?

Paul is reminding the Corinthians of what they know so he can add new information. Alternate translation: "Let me remind you that although all runners run the race, only one runner receives the prize."

##### run the race

Paul compares living the Christian life and working for God to running a race and being an athlete. As in a race, the Christian life and work require strict discipline on the part of the runner, and, as in a race, the Christian has a specific goal.

##### run to win the prize

Paul is speaking of the reward God will give his faithful people as if it were a prize given for an athletic contest.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:25

##### a wreath that is perishable ... one that is imperishable

A wreath is a bunch of leaves twisted together. Wreaths were given as prizes to athletes who won games and races. Paul speaks of eternal life as if it were a wreath that would never dry up.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:26

##### run ... box

These are both metaphors for living the Christian life and serving God by working as hard as one can to succeed and so gain something good and to avoid failing and so losing something good.

##### run

This is running in a race to win a prize.

##### run, as not without purpose

If this double negative would confuse the reader in your language, you can state it as a simple positive. Alternate translation: "run: with purpose"

##### box

to beat another person with the fists in a sporting contest

#### 1 Corinthians 9:27

##### I myself may not be disqualified

This passive sentence can be rephrased to an active form. The judge of a race or competition is a metaphor for God. Alternate translation: "the judge will not disqualify me" or "God will not say that I have failed to obey the rules"

## Chapter 10

# 1 Corinthians 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Chapters 8-10 together answer the question: "Is it acceptable to eat meat that has been sacrificed to an idol?"

In this chapter, Paul uses the exodus to warn people not to sin. Then he returns to discussing meat offered to idols. He uses the Lord's Supper as an example. (See: sin)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Exodus

Paul uses the experiences of Israel leaving Egypt and roaming the desert as a warning to the believers. Although the Israelites all followed Moses, God did not allow most of them to enter the Promised Land. Some worshiped an idol, some tested God, and some grumbled. Paul warns Christians not to sin. We can resist temptation because God provides a way of escape. (See: promisedland)

#### Eating meat sacrificed to idol

Paul discusses meat offered to idols. Christians are allowed to eat, but doing so may hurt others. So when buying meat or eating meat with a friend, do not ask if it has been offered to idols. But if someone tells you it has been offered to idols, don't eat it for the sake of that person. Do not offend anyone. Seek to save them instead. (See: save)

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to emphasize important points as he teaches the Corinthians.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Corinthians of the example of their ancient Jewish fathers' experiences with immorality and idolatry.

##### our fathers

Paul is referring to the time of Moses in the book of Exodus when Israel fled through the Red Sea as the Egyptian army pursued them. Here "our" refers to Paul and includes the Corinthians. The Corinthians were not acutal descendants of the Israelites who escaped Egypt. Paul means that all Christians are spiritual descendants of Israel. Alternate translation: "our ancestors"

##### were all under the cloud

When the Israelites left Egypt, God traveled with them in a pillar of cloud. Alternate translation: "were all led by God who was in the cloud"

##### passed through the sea

This sea is known by two names, the Red Sea and the Sea of Reeds.

##### passed through

"walked through" or "traveled through"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:2

##### All were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea

To be "baptized into Moses" means to become united with or to become a follower of Moses through baptism. The Israelites were not baptized in the way that Christians were baptized in the New Testament. Paul is comparing Christian being baptized as followers of Christ with the Israelites, who became followers of Moses as they walked across the Red Sea with God leading them in the cloud. Alternate translation: "It was like all of them were baptized when they followed Moses across the sea as God led them in the cloud"

##### All were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "All received baptism"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:3

##### all ate the same spiritual food

Here "spiritual food" refers to the manna that God supernaturally supplied to the Israelites while they traveled in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "All ate the same food that God supernaturally provided from heaven"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:4

##### drank the same spiritual drink ... spiritual rock

Here "spiritual drink" refers to the water that God supernaturally caused to flow out of a rock. Alternate translation: "drank the same water that God supernaturally caused to come out of the rock ... supernatural rock"

##### that rock was Christ

The "rock" was a literal, physical rock, so it would be best to translate this literally. If your language cannot say that a rock "was" a person's name, treat the word "rock" as a metonym for the power of Christ that worked through the rock. Alternate translation: "it was Christ who worked through that rock"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:5

##### not well pleased

"displeased" or "angry"

##### most of them

"most of the Israelite fathers" or "most of our ancestors"

##### their corpses were scattered about

"God scattered their dead bodies around" or "God killed them and scattered their bodies"

##### in the wilderness

the desert land between Egypt and Israel through which the Israelites wandered for 40 years

#### 1 Corinthians 10:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:7

##### idolaters

people who worship idols

##### sat down to eat and drink

"sat down to eat a meal"

##### play

Paul is quoting the Jewish scriptures. His readers would have understood from this one word that the people were worshiping an idol by singing and dancing and engaging in sexual activities, not simply enjoying innocent fun.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:8

##### In one day, twenty-three thousand people died

"God killed 23,000 people in one day"

##### because of it

"because they committed those unlawful sexual acts"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:9

##### as many of them tested him

or "as many of them did"

##### tested him and were destroyed by snakes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "tested him. As a result, snakes destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:10

##### grumble

"complain"

##### did and were destroyed by an angel of death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did. As a result, an angel of death destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:11

##### these things happened to them

"God punished our ancestors"

##### examples for us

Here "us" refers to all believers.

##### the end of the ages

"the last days"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:12

##### does not fall

does not sin or reject God

#### 1 Corinthians 10:13

##### No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to all humanity

This can be stated as a positive. Alternate translation: "Every temptation that has overtaken you is common to all humanity" or "The temptations that affect you are temptations that all people experience"

##### He will not let you be tempted beyond your ability

"He will only allow you to be tempted in ways that you are strong enough to resist"

##### will not let you be tempted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not allow anyone to tempt you"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind them to be pure and to stay away from idolatry and immorality as he talks about communion, which represents the blood and body of Christ.

##### run away from idolatry

Paul is speaking of the practice of worshiping idols as if it were a physical thing like a dangerous animal. Alternate translation: "do all you can to get away from worshiping idols"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:16

##### The cup of blessing

Paul is speaking of God's blessing as though it were the wine in the cup used in the ritual of the Lord's Supper.

##### that we bless

"for which we thank God"

##### is it not a sharing in the blood of Christ?

Paul is reminding the Corinthians of what they already know, that the cup of wine that we share represents us sharing in the blood of Christ. Alternate translation: "we share in the blood of Christ."

##### The bread that we break, is it not a sharing in the body of Christ?

Paul is reminding the Corinthians of what they already know. Alternate translation: "We share in the body of Christ when we share bread."

##### a sharing in

"taking part in" or "equally participating with others in"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:17

##### loaf of bread

a single unit of baked bread that is sliced or broken into pieces before it is eaten

#### 1 Corinthians 10:18

##### the Israel that is according to the flesh

This refers to people who belonged to Israel because they were descendants of Israel. Alternate translation: "the natural Israel" or "the physical Israel" or "the people of Israel"

##### Are not those who eat the sacrifices participants in the altar?

Paul uses a question to remind the Corinthians of what they already know so that he can give them new information. Alternate translation: "Those who eat the sacrifices share in the activities and the blessings of the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:19

##### What am I saying then? That an idol is anything? Or that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?

Paul uses these rhetorical questions to clear up any confusion the Corinthians might have about what he meant. The second and third questions are elliptical, and the understood words can be provided. Alternate translation: "I am not saying that an idol is anything or that food sacrificed to an idol is anything." or "I am not saying that an idol is a real god or that food that has been sacrificed to idols has any power." or "What am I saying then? Am I saying that an idol is anything? Or am I saying that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:20

##### the things they sacrifice

You may need to make explicit that the word "they" refers to Gentile pagans. Alternate translation: "the things that the Gentile pagans sacrifice"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:21

##### You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons

Drinking from the cup of the Lord is a symbol of being united to the Lord, and drinking from the cup of demons is a symbol of being united to demons. It is impossible to be united to both the Lord and demons. Alternate translation: "You cannot be united to the Lord by drinking from his cup and also be united to demons by drinking from their cup

##### You cannot drink the cup

Here "cup" is a metonym for the wine in the cup. Alternate translation: "You cannot drink from the cup" or "You cannot drink the wine from the cup"

##### the cup of the Lord

This refers to the cup of wine that people drink from when celebrating the Lord's supper.

##### the cup of demons

This refers to anything people might drink during a meal dedicated to demons.

##### You cannot participate at the table of the Lord and the table of demons

Here "participate at the table" refers to eating a meal together. The "table of the Lord" refers to a meal that people eat to honor the Lord. Alternate translation: "You cannot eat together at the table of the Lord and at the table of demons" or "You cannot join in eating to honor the Lord and join in eating to honor demons"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:22

##### Or do we provoke the Lord to jealousy?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to remind the people of what they already know. Alternate translation: "Surely you do not want to provoke the Lord to jealousy."

##### provoke

to anger or irritate

##### Are we stronger than he is?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to remind the people of what they already know. Alternate translation: "You are not stronger than he is."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:23

##### Connecting Statement:

In the rest of this chapter, Paul reminds the Corinthians that though they are free, they must care about others and not do things that could lead others to sin.

##### Everything is lawful

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is saying what some Corinthians might be thinking. Alternate translation: "People say, 'I am allowed to do anything'" or 2) Paul is saying what he thinks is true. Alternate translation: "I am allowed to do anything." This should be translated as in 1 Corinthians 6:12.

##### not everything is profitable

"some things are not profitable" or "some things do not help people"

##### not everything builds people up

Building people up represents helping them become mature and strong in their faith. See how you translated "builds up" in [1 Corinthians 8:1]

#### 1 Corinthians 10:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:25

##### Eat everything sold in the market

Or "You may eat anything sold in the market." Paul is granting permission, not issuing a command.

##### without asking questions of conscience

Questions of conscience are questions that a person asks because he wants to know if something is sinful or not. In this case, a person might ask if the food at the market was offered to idols; if he thinks that it is sinful to eat food sacrificed to idols, he would feel guilty about eating it. Paul is saying that the person does not need to ask if the food has been sacrificed to an idol or not. Alternate translation: "without asking questions that could make the conscience feel guilty" or "without asking questions about whether it is sinful to eat it"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:26

##### General Information:

This quotation is from the Psalms in the Old Testament.

##### and the fullness of it

"and everything in it." This means that everything on the earth belongs to the Lord. By saying this, Paul shows that even meat at the market that was offered to idols belongs to the Lord.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:27

##### without asking questions of conscience

See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Corinthians 10:25.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:28

##### General Information

Some translations put verse 28 and the first part of verse 29 in parentheses because the second part of verse 29 appears to give a reason for what Paul taught in verses 25-27 about not asking questions of conscience.

##### This has been offered in sacrifice

Here being offered in sacrifice means that it was offered to idols. This was the part of the meat that the worshiper was allowed to bring home after killing an animal as a sacrifice to an idol.

##### for the sake of the one who informed you

This is the first reason not to eat the meat. Alternate translation: "for the good of the one who informed you"

##### and for the sake of conscience

This is the second reason not to eat the meat. Alternate translation: "and because of conscience" or "and in order not to cause concerns about whether or not it is sinful"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:29

##### General Information

Some translations put verse 28 and the first part of verse 29 in parentheses because the second part of verse 29 appears to give a reason for what Paul taught in verses 25-27 about not asking questions of conscience.

##### the conscience of the other man, I mean, and not yours

Here Paul explains whose conscience he was writing about in verse 28.

##### For why should my freedom be judged by another's conscience?

This is a rhetorical question, and it can be expressed as a statement. The verb "be judged" can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "For another person's conscience should not judge my freedom."

##### my freedom

The abstract noun "freedom" can be expressed with the adjective "free." Alternate translation: "my being free" or "what I do because I am free"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:30

##### If I partake of the meal with gratitude

The meaning of the abstract noun "gratitude" can be expressed with the phrase "give thanks." It can be made explicit that the thanksgiving is to God. Alternate translation: "If I give thanks to God for the food when I share in the meal"

##### why am I being insulted for that for which I gave thanks?

This is a rhetorical question, and it can be expressed as a statement. The verb "be insulted" can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "I should not be insulted for that for which I gave thanks." or "People should not be insult me for eating food that I have thanked God for." (See: and )

#### 1 Corinthians 10:31

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:32

##### Be blameless both to Jews and to Greeks, and to the church of God

"Be blameless in the opinion of both Jews and Greeks, and of the church of God" or "Make sure that neither Jews nor Greeks nor the church of God can accuse you of doing wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:33

##### please all people

"make all people glad"

##### I do not seek my benefit, but that of the many

"I do not do things I desire for myself, but things that help as many people as possible"

## Chapter 1

# 2 Corinthians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The first paragraph reflects a common way to begin a letter in the ancient Near East.

### Special Concepts

#### Paul's integrity

People were criticizing Paul and saying he was not sincere. He refutes them by explaining his motives for what he was doing.

#### Comfort

Comfort is a major theme of this chapter. The Holy Spirit comforts Christians. The Corinthians probably were afflicted and needed to be comforted.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical question

Paul uses two rhetorical questions to defend himself against a charge of not being sincere.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### We

Paul uses the pronoun "we". This likely represents at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

#### Guarantee

Paul says the Holy Spirit is the guarantee, which means pledge or down payment, of a Christian's eternal life. Christians are securely saved. But they will not experience all of God's given promises until after they die. The Holy Spirit is a personal guarantee that this will happen. This idea comes from a business term. A person gives some valuable item to another person as a "guarantee" that they will repay money. (See: eternity and save)

#### 2 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul ... to the church of God that is in Corinth

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Alternate translation: "I, Paul ... wrote this letter to you, the church of God that is in Corinth"

##### Timothy our brother

This indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew Timothy and considered him to be their spiritual brother.

##### Achaia

This is the name of a Roman province in the southern part of modern-day Greece.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:2

##### General Information:

The word "you" throughout this letter refers to the people of the church in Corinth and to the rest of the Christians in that area.

##### May grace be to you and peace

This is a common greeting that Paul uses in his letters.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:3

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort

These two phrases express the same idea in two different ways. Both phrases refer to God.

##### the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort

Possible meanings are 1) that the words "mercies" and "all comfort" describe the character of "Father" and "God" or 2) that the words "Father" and "God" refer to one who is the source of "mercies" and "all comfort."

#### 2 Corinthians 1:4

##### comforts us in all our tribulation

Here "us" and "our" include the Corinthians.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:5

##### For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake

Paul speaks of Christ's sufferings as if they were objects that could increase in number. Alternate translation: "For just as Christ suffered greatly for our sake"

##### the sufferings of Christ

Possible meanings are 1) that this refers to the suffering that Paul and Timothy experience because they preach the message about Christ or 2) that this refers to the suffering that Christ experienced on their behalf.

##### our comfort abounds

Paul speaks of comfort as if it were an object that could increase in size.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:6

##### But if we are afflicted

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy, but not to the Corinthians. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But if people afflict us"

##### if we are comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if God comforts us"

##### Your comfort is working effectively

"You experience effective comfort"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:7

##### Our hope concerning you is unshaken

Hope is spoken of here as if it were a building that could be shaken and destroyed. Paul means that his hope for the Corinthians is strong and he continues to have hope for them. Alternate translation: "Our hope concerning you is strong" or "We have not stopped having hope for you"

##### Our hope concerning you is unshaken

Paul was probably hoping that the Corinthian Christians would continue to have faith in God, even though they were suffering, and that they would be comforted. Alternate translation: "We continue to be confident concerning you" or "We continue to confidently expect good for you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:8

##### we do not want you to be uninformed

This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "we want you to know"

##### We were utterly burdened beyond our strength

The word "burdened" is a metaphor for feeling stressed or overwhelmed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We felt so overwhelmed beyond our strength" or "The troubles we had caused us so much more stress than we could handle"

##### we despaired even of life

"we could not see any way we could stay alive" or "we were sure we would die"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:9

##### we had the sentence of death on us

Paul and Timothy are comparing their feeling of despair to that of someone condemned to die. Alternate translation: "we were in despair like someone who is condemned to die"

##### but instead in God

The words "put our trust" are left out of this phrase. Alternate translation: "but instead to put our trust in God"

##### who raises the dead

Here to raise is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "who causes the dead to live again"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:10

##### He rescued us from such a deadly peril

"He saved us from such a dangerous situation where we could have died"

##### On him we have set our hope that he will rescue us

Paul and those with him hoped firmly in God. Alternate translation: "We trust in him to rescue us" or "We confidently expect that he will rescue us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:11

##### He will do this as you also help us

"God will rescue us from danger as you, the people of the church of Corinth, also help us"

##### the favor given to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the favor that God has given to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:12

##### General Information:

In this verse Paul uses the words "we," "our," and "ourselves" to refer to himself and Timothy and possibly others who served with them. These words do not include the people he was writing to.

##### Our boast is this

Paul uses the word "boast" ironically here. Boasting is usually a bad thing, but Paul is confident that he has lived "with integrity and godly sincerity," and he is telling the Corinthians so.

##### Our conscience testifies

Paul speaks of not being guilty as if his conscience were a person that could speak. Alternate translation: "We know by our conscience"

##### not relying on fleshly wisdom but on the grace of God

Here "fleshly" represents human. Alternate translation: "not relying on human wisdom but on the grace of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:13

##### We write to you nothing that you cannot read and understand

The double negative here emphasizes the positive. This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "Everything we write to you is something you can read and understand" or "You can read and understand everything we write to you"

##### I hope that you will fully understand

Paul wanted them to understand, and he expected that they should be able to understand, but he didn't know for sure if they would. Alternate translation: "I expect that you will fully understand" or "I trust you will fully understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:14

##### General Information:

In this vers Paul uses the word "us" to refer to himself and Timothy and possibly others who served with them. This word does not include the people he was writing to.

##### you can boast

The word "boast" here is used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains his sincere expectation with pure motives to come see the believers in Corinth after his first letter.

##### Because I was confident about this

The word "this" refers to Paul's previous comments about the Corinthians.

##### so that you might receive a second favor

Paul hoped to visit the Corinthians two times. Each visit would be a favor to the people. Alternate translation: "so that you might benefit from me visiting you twice"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:16

##### send me on my way to Judea

"assist me on my way to Judea"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:17

##### was I hesitating?

Paul uses this question to emphasize he was sure about his decision to visit the Corinthians. The expected answer to the question is no. Alternate translation: "I was not hesitating." or "I was confident in my decision."

##### Do I plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that his plans to visit the Corinthians were sincere. Alternate translation: "I do not plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time"

##### the flesh

This phrase is a metonym for the way mortal people do things. Alternate translation: "human standards" or "the way most people act"

##### Do I plan things ... so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time?

This means that Paul did not say both that he would visit and that he would not visit at the same time. The words "yes" and "no" are repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I do not plan things ... so that I say 'Yes, I will certainly visit' and 'No, I will definitely not visit' at the same time!"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:18

##### our word to you

"what we say to you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:19

##### For the Son of God ... is not "Yes" and "No." Instead, he is always "Yes."

Jesus says "Yes" concerning the promises of God, which means that he guarantees that they are true. Alternate translation: "For the Son of God ... does not say 'Yes' and 'No' concerning God's promises. Instead, he always says 'Yes.'"

##### the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:20

##### all the promises of God are "Yes" in him

This means that Jesus guarantees all of God's promises. Alternate translation: "all the promises of God are guaranteed in Jesus Christ"

##### "Yes" in him ... through him we say

The word "him" refers to Jesus Christ.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:21

##### God who confirms us with you

Possible meanings are 1) "God who confirms our relationship with each other because we are in Christ" or 2) "God who confirms both our and your relationship with Christ."

##### he anointed us

Possible meanings are 1) "he sent us to preach the gospel" or 2) "he chose us to be his people."

#### 2 Corinthians 1:22

##### he set his seal on us

Paul speaks of God showing that we belong to him as if God had put a mark on us as a sign that we belong to him. Alternate translation: "he has put his mark of ownership on us" or "he has shown that we belong to him"

##### gave us the Spirit in our hearts

The word "heart" is often used to refer to the innermost part of a person. Alternate translation: "gave us the Spirit to live within each of us"

##### the Spirit ... as a guarantee

The Spirit is spoken of as if he were a partial downpayment toward eternal life.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:23

##### as witness to my soul

The word "soul" here is a metonym for the whole person. Alternate translation: "as witness for me" or "to testify for me"

##### so that I might spare you

"so that I might not cause you more suffering"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:24

##### be lords over your faith

"control what your faith should be" or "control what you believe"

##### we are fellow laborers with you for your joy

"we are working with you so that you may have joy"

##### stand firm in your faith

The word "stand" can refer to not changing. Alternate translation: "remain firm in your faith"

## Chapter 2

# 2 Corinthians 2 General Notes

### Special Concepts

#### Harsh writing

In this chapter, Paul refers to a letter he previously wrote to the Corinthians. Some scholars believe this refers to the letter known as First Corinthians. Other scholars believe this refers to a letter Paul wrote after the letter known as First Corinthians and before this letter. In either case, Paul had told the church to rebuke an erring member. Paul is now encouraging them to be gracious to that person.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Aroma

A sweet aroma is a pleasing smell. Scripture often describes things that are pleasing to God as having a pleasing aroma.

#### 2 Corinthians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Because of his great love for them, Paul makes it clear that his rebuke in a previous letter to them caused him pain as well as pain to the church people in Corinth and the immoral man.

##### I decided for my own part

"I made the decision"

##### in sorrow

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metonym that refers to causing the Corinthians sorrow. Alternate translation: "in a way that would cause you sorrow" or 2) this refers to Paul's own sorrow. Alternate translation: "while I am sorrowful"

##### sorrow

great sadness

#### 2 Corinthians 2:2

##### If I caused you sorrow, who could make me glad but the very one who was made sorrowful by me?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that neither he nor they would benefit if his coming to them would cause them pain. Alternate translation: "If I caused you sorrow, the only ones who could make me glad would be the very ones whom I had made sorrowful."

##### sorrow ... sorrowful

See how you translated "sorrow" in 2 Corinthians 2:1.

##### the very one who was made sorrowful by me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the very one whom I had hurt"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:3

##### I wrote as I did

Paul is referring to a letter he wrote previously to the Corinthians. Alternate translation: "I wrote as I did in my previous letter"

##### I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice

Paul is speaking about the behavior of certain Corinthian believers who caused him emotional pain. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those who should have made me rejoice might not hurt me"

##### my joy is the same joy you all have

"what gives me joy is what gives you joy, too"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:4

##### from great tribulation

Here the word "tribulation" refers to emotional pain.

##### with anguish of heart

Here the word "heart" refers to the location of the emotions. Alternate translation: "with extreme sorrow"

##### with many tears

"with much crying"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:5

##### not to burden you

The "burden" here is the message. Possible meanings are 1) Paul does not want to say words that will make the Corinthians sad. Alternate translation: "not to say this too harshly" Or 2) Paul does not want to say more than is true. Alternate translation: "not to exaggerate"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:6

##### This punishment of that person by the majority is enough

This can be stated in active form. The word "punishment" can be translated using a verb. Alternate translation: "The way that the majority has punished that person is enough"

##### is enough

"is sufficient"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:7

##### he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow

This means to have a strong emotional response of too much sorrow. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "too much sorrow does not overwhelm him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the church in Corinth to show love and to forgive the person they have punished. He writes that he, also, has forgiven him.

##### confirm your love for him

"show him that you truly love him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:9

##### you are obedient in everything

Possible meanings are 1) "you are obedient to God in everything" or 2) "you are obedient in everything that I have taught you"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:10

##### it is forgiven for your sake

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven it for your sake"

##### forgiven for your sake

Possible meanings are 1) "forgiven out of my love for you" or 2) "forgiven for your benefit."

#### 2 Corinthians 2:11

##### For we are not ignorant of his schemes

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For we know his schemes well"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the believers in Corinth by telling them of the opportunities he has had to preach the gospel in Troas and Macedonia.

##### A door was opened to me by the Lord ... to preach the gospel

Paul speaks of his opportunity to preach the gospel as if it were a door through which he was allowed to walk. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Lord opened a door to me ... to preach the gospel" or "The Lord gave me the opportunity ... to preach the gospel"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:13

##### I had no relief in my spirit

"My mind was troubled" or "I was worried"

##### my brother Titus

Paul speaks of Titus as his spiritual brother.

##### So I left them

"So I left the people of Troas"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:14

##### God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph

Paul speaks of God as if he were a victorious general leading a victory parade, and of himself and his coworkers as those who take part in that parade. Possible meanings are 1) Paul and his coworkers are being led as prisoners in the parade. Alternate translation: "God, who leads us as prisoners in Christ's victory parade" or 2) Paul and his coworkers are led as victorious soldiers in the parade. Alternate translation: "God, who leads us as victorious soldiers in Christ's triumphal parade"

##### Through us he reveals the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere

Paul speaks of people learning about Christ from Paul and his companions as if they were smoke from incense that has a pleasing smell spreading around so people could smell it. He mixes his metaphor by saying that God "reveals" that pleasing smell. Alternate translation: "He causes the knowledge of Christ to spread to everyone who hears us, just as the sweet smell of burning incense spreads to everyone near it"

##### everywhere

"everywhere we go"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:15

##### we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ

Paul speaks of his ministry as if it were an offering or incense that was being burned, creating a pleasant smell to God.

##### the sweet aroma of Christ

Possible meanings are 1) "the sweet aroma which is the knowledge of Christ" or 2) "the sweet aroma that Christ offers."

##### those who are saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God has saved"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:16

##### it is an aroma

"the knowledge of Christ is an aroma." This refers back to [2 Corinthians 2:14]

##### an aroma from death to death

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "death" is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means "an aroma that causes death" or 2) "an aroma of death that causes people to die"

##### the ones being saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the ones whom God is saving"

##### aroma from life to life

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "life" is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means "an aroma that gives life" or 2) "an aroma of life that gives people life"

##### Who is worthy of these things?

"Who is qualified to do these things?" The phrase "these things" refers to preaching God's message about Christ. Paul uses a rhetorical question to express amazement that anyone could be worthy of doing this. Alternate translation: 'Who is worthy to spread the knowledge of Christ?" or "It is amazing that anyone is worthy of these things!"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:17

##### who sell the word of God

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "who sell God's message"

##### purity of motives

"pure motives"

##### we speak in Christ

"we speak as people who are joined to Christ" or "we speak with the authority of Christ"

##### as we are sent from God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as people whom God has sent"

##### in the sight of God

This represents the presence of God. Paul and his coworkers preach the gospel with the awareness that God is watching them. Alternate translation: "speaking in the presence of God"

## Chapter 3

# 2 Corinthians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues his defense. Paul views the Corinthian Christians as the proof of his work.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Law of Moses

Paul alludes to God giving the Ten Commandments on stone tablets. This represents the law of Moses. The law was good because it came from God. But God punished the Israelites because they disobeyed it. This chapter may be difficult for translators to understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. (See: lawofmoses and covenant and reveal)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

Paul uses many metaphors in this chapter to explain complex spiritual truths. It is unclear whether this makes Paul's teachings easier or more difficult to understand.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "This is a covenant not of the letter but of the Spirit."

Paul contrasts the old and new covenants. The new covenant is not a system of rules and regulations. Here "Spirit" probably refers to the Holy Spirit. It may also refer to the new covenant being "spiritual" in nature. (See: spirit)

#### 2 Corinthians 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Corinthians that he is not boasting as he tells them about what he has done through Christ.

##### Are we beginning to praise ourselves again?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that they are not bragging about themselves. Alternate translation: "We are not beginning to praise ourselves again."

##### We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we?

Paul says this to express that the Corinthians already know about Paul and Timothy's good reputation. The question prompts a negative answer. Alternate translation: "We certainly do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people do."

##### letters of recommendation

This is a letter that a person writes to introduce and give their approval of someone else.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:2

##### General Information:

Paul begins an extended metaphor that speaks of the way that the Corinthians have been obeying Christ as if it were a letter that Christ had written first to Paul and his companions and then to all the people in the world.

##### You yourselves are our letter of recommendation

Paul speaks of the Corinthians as if they are a letter of recommendation. That they have become believers serves to validate Paul's ministry to others. Alternate translation: "You yourselves are like our letter of recommendation"

##### written on our hearts

Here the word "hearts" refers to their thoughts and emotions. Possible meanings are 1) Paul and his coworkers are sure about the Corinthians being their letter of recommendation or 2) Paul and his coworkers care very deeply for the Corinthians.

##### written on our hearts

This can be stated in active form with "Christ" as the implied subject. Alternate translation: "which Christ has written on our hearts"

##### known and read by all people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that all people can know and read"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:3

##### General Information:

Paul continues the extended metaphor that he began in [2 Corinthians 3:2]

##### you are a letter from Christ

Paul clarifies that Christ is the one who has written the letter. Alternate translation: "you are a letter that Christ has written"

##### the result of our ministry

Because of the work Paul and his companions had done, the world could look at the Corinthians and see how Christ blesses people in this life. Some modern translations read, "delivered by us."

##### It was written not with ink ... on tablets of human hearts

Paul clarifies that the Corinthians are like a spiritual letter, not like a letter that humans write with physical objects.

##### It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It was written not with ink but it was written by the Spirit of the living God" or "It is not a letter that people wrote with ink but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote"

##### It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It is not a letter that people engraved on stone tablets but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote on tablets of human hearts"

##### tablets of human hearts

Paul speaks of their hearts as if they are flat pieces of stone or clay upon which people engraved letters.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:4

##### this is the confidence

This refers to what Paul has just said. His confidence comes from knowing that the Corinthians are the validation of his ministry before God.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:5

##### competent in ourselves

"qualified in ourselves" or "sufficient in ourselves"

##### to claim anything as coming from us

Here the word "anything" refers to anything pertaining to Paul's apostolic ministry. Alternate translation: "to claim that anything we have done in ministry comes from our own efforts"

##### our competence is from God

"God gives us our sufficiency"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:6

##### a covenant not of the letter

Here the word "letter" means letters of the alphabet and refers to words that people write down. The phrase alludes to the Old Testament law. Alternate translation: "a covenant not based on commands that men have written"

##### but of the Spirit

The Holy Spirit is the one who establishes God's covenant with people. Alternate translation: "but a covenant of the Spirit" or "but a covenant based on what the Spirit does"

##### the letter kills

Paul speaks of the Old Testament law as a person who kills. Following that law leads to spiritual death. Alternate translation: "the written law leads to death"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul contrasts the fading glory of the old covenant with the superiority and freedom of the new covenant. He contrasts the veil of Moses with the clarity of present revelation. During the time of Moses there was a less clear picture of what is now revealed.

##### Now the ministry of death ... came in such glory

Paul emphasizes that although the law leads to death, it was still very glorious.

##### the ministry of death

This refers to the Old Testament law that God gave through Moses. Alternate translation: "the ministry that causes people to die because it is based on the law"

##### engraved in letters on stones

"carved in letters on stone." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God carved in letters on stone"

##### in such glory

"in so much glory"

##### This is because

"They could not look because"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:8

##### How much more glorious will the ministry of the Spirit be?

Paul uses this question to emphasize that "the service that the ministry of the Spirit" must be more glorious than "the ministry of death" [2 Corinthians 3:7]

##### the ministry of the Spirit

This refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. Alternate translation: "the ministry that gives life because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:9

##### the ministry of condemnation

"the ministry of condemnation." This refers to the Old Testament law. Alternate translation: "the ministry that condemns people because it is based on the law"

##### how much more does the ministry of righteousness abound in glory!

Here the word "how" marks this phrase as an exclamation, not as a question. Alternate translation: "then the ministry of righteousness must abound in so much more glory!"

##### the ministry of righteousness abound in glory

Paul speaks of "the ministry of righteousness" as if it were an object that could produce or multiply another object. He means that "the ministry of righteousness" is far more glorious than the law, which also had glory.

##### the ministry of righteousness

This refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. Alternate translation: "the ministry that makes people righteous because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:10

##### that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious ... because of the glory that exceeds it

The Old Testament law no longer appears glorious when compared with the new covenant, which is much more glorious.

##### that which was once made glorious

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the law which God once made glorious"

##### in this respect

"in this way"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:11

##### that which was passing away

This refers to "the service of condemnation," which Paul speaks of as if it were an object capable of disappearing. Alternate translation: "that which was becoming useless"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:12

##### Since we have such a hope

This hope is a confident hope. It refers to what Paul has just said. His hope comes from knowing that the new covenant leads to an eternal glory. Alternate translation: "Since we confidently expect this" or "Since we confidently wait to receive this glory"

##### such a hope

"such confidence"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:13

##### the ending of a glory that was passing away

The refers to the glory that shined on Moses's face. Alternate translation: "the glory on Moses's face as it faded away completely"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:14

##### But their minds were hardened

Paul speaks of the minds of the Israelite people as objects that could be made hard. This expression means that they were unable to understand what they saw. Alternate translation: "But the Israelites could not understand what they saw"

##### For to this day

to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians

##### when they read the old covenant, that same veil remains

Just as the Israelites could not see the glory on Moses's face because he covered his face with a veil, there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant.

##### when they read the old covenant

"when they hear someone read the old covenant"

##### It has not been removed, because only in Christ is it taken away

Here both occurrences of the word "it" refer to "the same veil." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one removes the veil, because only in Christ does God remove it"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:15

##### But even today

This phrase refers to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.

##### whenever Moses is read

Here the word "Moses" refers to the Old Testament law. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whenever someone reads the Mosaic law"

##### a veil covers their hearts

Here the word "hearts" represents what people think, and the people being unable to understand the old covenant is spoken of as if they have a veil that covers their hearts the way a physical veil would cover their eyes. Alternate translation: "they are unable to understand what they are hearing"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:16

##### when a person turns to the Lord

Here "turns to" is a metaphor that means to become loyal to someone. Alternate translation: "when a person starts to worship the Lord" or "when a person starts to trust in the Lord"

##### the veil is taken away

God gives them the ability to understand. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God lifts the veil away" or "God gives them the ability to understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:18

##### Now all of us

Here the word "us" refers to all believers, including Paul and the Corinthians.

##### with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord

Unlike the Israelites who could not see God's glory reflected on Moses's face because he had covered it with a veil, there is nothing to prevent believers from seeing and understanding God's glory.

##### We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness

The Spirit is changing believers to be glorious like him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Lord is transforming us into his same glorious likeness"

##### from one degree of glory into another

"from one amount of glory to another amount of glory." This means that the Spirit is constantly increasing the glory of believers.

##### just as from the Lord

"just as this comes from the Lord"

## Chapter 4

# 2 Corinthians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins with the word "therefore." This connects it to what the previous chapter teaches. How these chapters are divided may be confusing to the reader.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Ministry

Paul ministers to people by telling them about Christ. He does not try to trick people into believing. If they do not understand the gospel, it is because the problem is ultimately spiritual. (See: spirit)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

#### Life and death

Paul does not refer here to physical life and death. Life represents the new life a Christian has in Jesus. Death represents the old way of living before believing in Jesus. (See: life and death and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Hope

Paul uses a repeated pattern in a purposeful way. He makes a statement. Then he denies a seemingly opposite or contradictory statement or gives an exception. Together these give the reader hope in difficult circumstances. (See: hope)

#### 2 Corinthians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul writes that he is honest in his ministry by preaching Christ, not praising himself. He shows the death and the life of Jesus in how he lives so that life can work in the Corinthian believers.

##### we have this ministry

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworker, but not to the Corinthians.

##### and just as we have received mercy

This phrase explains how Paul and his coworkers "have this ministry." It is a gift that God has given to them through his mercy. Alternate translation: "because God has shown us mercy"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:2

##### we have rejected secret and shameful ways

This means that Paul and his coworkers refuse to do "secret and shameful" things. It does not mean that they had done these things in the past.

##### secret and shameful ways

The word "secret" describes the things that people do secretly. Things that are shameful should cause people who do them to feel ashamed. Alternate translation: "the things that people do secretly because they cause shame"

##### walk in craftiness

The word "walk" is a metaphor for the way a person lives his life. Alternate translation: "live by deceiving people"

##### we do not mishandle the word of God

The phrase "word of God" here is a metonym for the message from God. The words "we do not mishandle" use two negative thoughts to express a positive thought. Alternate translation: "we handle God's message correctly" or "we use the word of God properly"

##### we recommend ourselves to everyone's conscience

This means that they provide enough evidence for each person who hears them to decide whether they are right or wrong.

##### in the sight of God

This refers to God's presence. God's understanding and approval of Paul's truthfulness is referred to as God being able to see them. Alternate translation: "before God" or "with God as witness"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:3

##### But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing

This refers back to what Paul said starting in [2 Corinthians 3:14]

##### if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if a veil covers our gospel, that veil covers it"

##### our gospel

"the gospel that we preach"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:4

##### the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds

Paul speaks of their minds as if they had eyes, and their inability to understand as their minds being unable to see. Alternate translation: "the god of this world has prevented unbelievers from understanding"

##### the god of this world

"the god who rules this world." This phrase refers to Satan.

##### they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ

As the Israelites could not see God's glory that shined on Moses's face because he covered it with a veil (2 Corinthians 3:13), unbelievers are not able to see Christ's glory that shines in the gospel. This means that they are unable to understand "the gospel of the glory of Christ"

##### the light of the gospel

"the light that comes from the gospel"

##### the gospel of the glory of Christ

"the gospel about Christ's glory"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:5

##### but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants

You can supply the verb for these phrases. Alternate translation: "but we proclaim Christ Jesus as Lord, and we proclaim ourselves as your servants"

##### for Jesus' sake

"because of Jesus"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:6

##### Light will shine out of darkness

With this sentence, Paul refers to God creating light, as described in the book of Genesis.

##### He has shone ... to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God

Here the word "light" refers to the ability to understand. Just as God created light, he also creates understanding for believers. Alternate translation: "He has shone ... to enable us to understand the glory of God"

##### in our hearts

Here the word "hearts" refers to the mind and thoughts. Alternate translation: "in our minds"

##### the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the presence

"the light, which is the knowledge of the glory of God, in the presence"

##### the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ

"the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ." Just as God's glory shone upon Moses's face (2 Corinthians 3:7), it also shines upon Jesus's face. This means that when Paul preaches the gospel, people are able to see and understand the message about God's glory.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:7

##### But we have

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworkers, but not to the Corinthians.

##### we have this treasure in jars of clay

Paul speaks of the gospel as if it were a treasure and their bodies as if they were breakable jars made out of clay. This emphasizes that they are of little value compared to the worth of the gospel that they preach.

##### so that it is clear

"so that it is clear to people" or "so that people clearly know"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:8

##### We are afflicted in every way

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People afflict us in every way"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:9

##### We are persecuted but not abandoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People persecute us, but God does not abandon us" or "People persecute us, but God does not stop caring for us"

##### abandoned; struck down but not destroyed

This can be stated in active form and as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "abandoned. People strike us down but do not destroy us"

##### struck down

"hurt badly"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:10

##### always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus

Paul speaks of his sufferings as if they are an experience of the death of Jesus. Alternate translation: "often in danger of dying, as Jesus died" or "always suffering in such a way that we experience the death of Jesus"

##### the life of Jesus may also be revealed in our body

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "people can see that we will live in bodies again because Jesus is alive" or 2) "we can show other people in our bodies the spiritual life that Jesus gives."

#### 2 Corinthians 4:11

##### we who are alive are always being given over to death for Jesus' sake

Carrying the death of Jesus represents being in danger of dying because of being loyal to Jesus. Alternate translation: "God is always leading those of us who are alive to face death because we are joined to Jesus" or "People are always causing us who are alive to be in danger of dying because we are joined to Jesus"

##### so that the life of Jesus may be revealed in our mortal flesh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God may reveal the life of Jesus in our mortal flesh"

##### the life of Jesus may be revealed

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to the life that Jesus lives. Alternate translation: "God may reveal that Jesus is alive" 2) Paul is referring to the life that Jesus gives to his people. Alternate translation: "God may reveal the life that Jesus gives to his people"

##### our mortal flesh

Paul is referring to our physical bodies, which will die someday.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:12

##### death is at work in us, but life is at work in you

Paul speaks of death and life as if they are persons who can work. This means that they are always in danger of physical death so that the Corinthians can have spiritual life.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:13

##### the same spirit of faith

"the same attitude of faith." Here the word "spirit" refers a person's attitude and temperament.

##### according to that which was written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as the one who wrote these words"

##### I believed, and so I spoke

This is a quote from the Psalms.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:14

##### that the one who raised the Lord Jesus will

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "that the one who caused the Lord Jesus to live again will" or "God, who raised the Lord Jesus, will"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:15

##### For everything is for your sake

Here the word "everything" refers to all of the sufferings that Paul has described in previous verses.

##### the grace that is reaching more and more people may cause thanksgiving to increase to the glory of God

Paul speaks of more and more people experiencing God's grace as if grace were "reaching" people. And, Paul speaks of more and ore people giving thanks to God as if thanksgiving were an object that could become larger by itself. Alternate translation: "God may show his grace to many people, causing more and more people to give thanks, to the glory of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul writes that the Corinthian difficulties are minor and do not last long when compared to the unseen eternal things.

##### So we do not become discouraged

This can be stated as a positive. Alternate translation: "So we remain confident"

##### outwardly we are wasting away

This refers to their physical bodies decaying and dying. Alternate translation: "our physical bodies are getting weak and dying"

##### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

This refers to their inward, spiritual lives getting stronger. Alternate translation: "our spiritual beings are being strengthened day by day"

##### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is renewing our inward being more each day"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:17

##### this momentary, light affliction is producing for us an eternal burden of glory

Paul speaks of his sufferings and the glory that God will give him as if they were objects that can be weighed. He uses irony to call affliction, which people usually think of as if it were a heavy burden, a light burden and glory, which people usually think of as relief from suffering, as if it were a heavy burden. Through this metaphor he is saying that the glory to come will be much greater than the affliction.

##### that exceeds all measurement

The glory that Paul will experience is so great that no one can measure it. The abstract noun "measurement" can be translated as the verb "measure." Alternate translation: "that no one can measure"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:18

##### things that are seen ... things that are unseen ... things that are unseen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "things that we can see ... things that we cannot see ... things that we cannot see"

##### but for things that are unseen

You can supply the verb for this phrase. Alternate translation: "but we are watching for things that are unseen"

## Chapter 5

# 2 Corinthians 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### New bodies in heaven

Paul knows that when he dies he will receive a much better body. Because of this, he is not afraid of being killed for preaching the gospel. So he tells others that they too can be reconciled to God. Christ will take away their sin and give them his righteousness. (See: goodnews, reconcile, sin, and righteous)

#### New creation

The old and new creation probably refer to how Paul illustrates the old and new self. These concepts are also the same as the old and new man. The term "old" probably does not refer to the sinful nature with which a person is born. It refers to the old way of living or the Christian formerly being bound to sin. The "new creation" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ. (See: faith)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Home

The Christian's home is no longer in the world. A Christian's real home is in heaven. By using this metaphor, Paul emphasizes that the Christian's circumstances in this world are temporary. It gives hope to those who are suffering. (See: heaven and and hope)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "The message of reconciliation"

This refers to the gospel. Paul calls for people who are hostile to God to repent and be reconciled to him. (See: repent and reconcile)

#### 2 Corinthians 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues by contrasting believers' earthly bodies to the heavenly ones God will give.

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed, we have a building from God

Here a temporary "house" or "tent" is a metaphor for a person's physical body and a permanent "building from God" is a metaphor for the new body that God will give believers after they die.

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed, we have

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if people destroy our earthly house—the tent—we have" or "if people kill our bodies, we have"

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed

"if the tent that is our home on earth is destroyed"

##### It is a house not made by human hands

Here "house" means the same thing as "building from God." Here "hands" is a synecdoche that represents the human as a whole. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It is a house that humans did not make"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:2

##### in this tent we groan

Here "this tent" means the same thing as "the earthly dwelling that we live in." A groan is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good.

##### longing to be clothed with our heavenly residence

The words "our heavenly residence" means the same thing as "the place God will give us to live in." Paul speaks of the new body that believers receive after they die as if it were both a house to live in and a piece of clothing that a person can put on.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:3

##### by putting it on

"by putting on our heavenly dwelling"

##### we will not be found to be naked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we will not be naked" or "God will not find us naked"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:4

##### while we are in this tent

Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a "tent."

##### in this tent, we groan

The word "tent" refers to "the earthly dwelling that we live in." The word groan is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good. See how you translated this in 2 Corinthians 5:2.

##### being burdened

Paul refers to the difficulties that the physical body experiences as if they were heavy objects that are difficult to carry.

##### We do not want to be unclothed ... we want to be clothed

Paul speaks of the body as if it were clothing. Here "to be unclothed" refers to the death of the physical body; "to be clothed" refers to having the resurrection body that God will give.

##### to be unclothed

"to be without clothes" or "to be naked"

##### so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life

Paul speaks of life as if it were an animal that eats "what is mortal." The physical body that will die will be replaced by a resurrection body that will live forever.

##### so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that life may swallow up what is mortal"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:5

##### who gave us the Spirit as a guarantee of what is to come

The Spirit is spoken of as if he were a down payment toward eternal life. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Corinthians 1:22]

#### 2 Corinthians 5:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Because believers will have a new body and have the Holy Spirit as a pledge, Paul reminds them to live by faith so that they may please the Lord.

##### while we are at home in the body

Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a place where a person dwells. Alternate translation: "while we are living in this earthly body"

##### we are away from the Lord

"we are not at home with the Lord" or "we are not in heaven with the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:7

##### we walk by faith, not by sight

Here "walk" is a metaphor for "live" or "behave." Alternate translation: "we live according to faith, not according to what we see"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:8

##### We would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord

You may need to make explicit that they do not prefer to remain alive in this present world. Alternate translation: "We would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord than to remain in the body and away from the Lord"

##### We would prefer to be away from the body

Here the word "body" refers to the physical body.

##### at home with the Lord

"at home with the Lord in heaven"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:9

##### whether we are at home or away

Possible meanings are 1) "whether we are at home in the body or away from it" or 2) "whether we are at home with the Lord or away from him." Either way, Paul means that, whether in this life or in the next life, believers should try to please the Lord.

##### to please him

"to please the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:10

##### we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ

Here "judgment seat of Christ" represents Christ himself, who will judge all people. Alternate translation: "we all must stand in the presence of Christ to be judged" or "Christ will judge all of us"

##### appear

"go" or "be present" or "stand"

##### each one may receive what is due

"each person may receive what he deserves"

##### the things done in the body

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things he has done in the physical body"

##### whether for good or for bad

"whether those things were good or bad"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:11

##### knowing the fear of the Lord

"knowing what it means to fear the Lord"

##### we persuade people

Possible meanings are 1) "we persuade people of the truth of the gospel" or 2) "we persuade people that we are legitimate apostles."

##### What we are is clearly seen by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God clearly sees what kind of people we are"

##### I hope that it is also clear to your conscience

Paul wanted the the Corinthians to know what kind of people he and those with him were. "I expect that it is also clear to your conscience" or "I trust that it is also clear to your conscience"

##### that it is also clear to your conscience

"that you are also convinced of it"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:12

##### We are not commending ourselves to you again

"We are not recommending ourselves to you again" or "We are not trying to show you again that we are worthy"

##### so you may have an answer for those

"so you may have something to say to those"

##### those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart

Here the word "appearances" refers to outward expressions of things like ability and status. The word "heart" refers to the inward character of a person. Alternate translation: "those who praise their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in their inner being"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:13

##### if we are out of our minds ... if we are in our right minds

Paul is speaking about the way others think of him and his coworkers. Alternate translation: "if people think we are crazy ... if people think we are sane"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:14

##### the love of Christ

Possible meanings are 1) "our love for Christ" or 2) "Christ's love for us."

##### died for all

"died for all people"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:15

##### him who for their sake died and was raised

"him who for their sake died and whom God caused to live again" or "Christ, who died for their sake and whom God raised"

##### for their sake

Possible meanings are 1) these words refer only to "died" or 2) these words refer to both "died" and "was raised."

#### 2 Corinthians 5:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Because of Christ's love and death, we are not to judge by human standards. We are appointed to teach others how to be united with and have peace with God through Christ's death and to receive God's righteousness through Christ.

##### For this reason

This refers to what Paul has just said about living for Christ instead of living for self.

##### regard anyone

"judge anyone" or "think about anyone"

##### the flesh

This phrase is a metonym for the way mortal people do things. See how you translated it in [2 Corinthians 1:17]

#### 2 Corinthians 5:17

##### he is a new creation

Paul speaks of the person who believes in Christ as if that person were a new person that God had created. Alternate translation: "he is a new person"

##### The old things have passed away

Here "the old things" refers to the things that characterized a person before he trusted in Christ.

##### See

The word "See" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:18

##### All these things are from God

"God has done all these things." This refers to what Paul has just said in the previous verse about new things replacing old things.

##### the ministry of reconciliation

This can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "the ministry of reconciling people to him"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:19

##### That is, in Christ

"This means that in Christ"

##### in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself

Here the word "world" refers to people in the world. Alternate translation: "in Christ, God is reconciling mankind to himself"

##### He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation

God has given Paul the responsibility to spread the message that God is reconciling people to himself.

##### the message of reconciliation

"the message about reconciliation"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:20

##### we are appointed as representatives of Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has appointed us as Christ's representatives"

##### representatives of Christ

"those who speak for Christ"

##### Be reconciled to God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let God reconcile you to himself"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:21

##### General Information:

The words "us" and "we" refer to Paul and his readers and so are inclusive.

##### He made him who knew no sin to become sin for us

"Christ new no sin, but God made him to become sin for us"

##### knew no sin

"never sinned"

##### to become sin for us

The word "sin" is a metonym for the sacrifice that is offered so that God will forgive sin. Alternate translation: "to become the sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### us, so that

"us. He did this so that"

##### so that we might become the righteousness of God in him

The phrase "the righteousness of God" refers to the righteousness that God requires and that comes from God. Alternate translation: "so that through Christ we might have the righteousness that God requires"

## Chapter 6

# 2 Corinthians 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 2 and 16-18, which are words from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Servants

Paul refers to Christians as servants of God. God calls Christians to serve him in all circumstances. Paul describes some of the difficult circumstances in which he and his companions served God.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Contrasts

Paul uses four pairs of contrasts: righteousness versus lawlessness, light versus darkness, Christ versus Satan, and the temple of God versus idols. These contrasts show a difference between Christians and non-Christians. (See: righteous and light and darkness)

#### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

#### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses a series of rhetorical questions to teach his readers. All of these questions make essentially the same point: Christians should not intimately fellowship with those who live in sin. Paul repeats these questions for emphasis. (See: and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul summarizes how working together for God is supposed to be.

##### Working together with him

Paul is implying that he and Timothy are working with God. Alternate translation: "Working together with God"

##### we also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain

"we beg you to make use of the grace that you have received from God"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:2

##### General Information:

In this verse, Paul quotes a portion from the prophet Isaiah.

##### For he says

"For God says." This introduces a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. Alternate translation: "For God says in scripture"

##### Look

The word "Look" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:3

##### We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone

Paul speaks of anything that would prevent a person from trusting in Christ as if it were a physical object over which that person trips and falls. Alternate translation: "We do not want to do anything that will prevent people from believing our message"

##### we do not wish our ministry to be discredited

The word "discredited" refers to people speaking badly about Paul's ministry, and working against the message he proclaims. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we do not want anyone to be able to speak badly about our ministry"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:4

##### General Information:

When Paul uses "we" here, he is referring to himself and Timothy.

##### in every way we commend ourselves as God's servants

Possible meanings are 1) "Because we are God's servants we recommend ourselves to you in every way" or 2) "in every way we show that we are God's servants"

##### in every way

This tells how they commend themselves. Alternate translation: "in everything we do"

##### in much endurance, in affliction, in distress, in hardship

Paul mentions various difficult situations in which they commend themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:5

##### in beatings, in imprisonments, in riots, in hard labor, in sleepless nights, in hunger

Paul continues to mention various difficult situations in which they commend themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:6

##### in purity ... in sincere love

Paul lists several moral virtues that they maintained in difficult situations, commending themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:7

##### in the word of truth

"by speaking God's message about truth" or "by speaking God's true message"

##### in the power of God

"by showing God's power to people"

##### with the armor of righteousness for the right hand and the left

Paul speaks of their righteousness as if it were weapons that they use to fight spiritual battles.

##### the armor of righteousness

"righteousness as our armor" or "righteousness as our weapons"

##### for the right hand and the left

Possible meanings are 1) that there is a weapon in one hand and a shield in the other or 2) that they are completely equipped for battle, able to fend off attacks from any direction.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:8

##### regarded as deceivers

"people regard us as deceivers" or "people say that we are liars"

##### and yet truthful

You may need to fill in the words left out of the ellipsis. Alternate translation: "but we are truthful"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:9

##### as if we were unknown, yet we are well known

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as if people did not know us, and yet people know us well"

##### as if we were being punished for our actions, yet we are not killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as if people were punishing us for our actions, yet they have not killed us"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:11

##### spoken the whole truth to you

"spoken honestly to you"

##### our heart is wide open

Paul speaks of his great affection for the Corinthians as having a heart that is open. Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "we love you very much"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:12

##### You are not restrained by us, but you are restrained in your own hearts

Paul speaks of the Corinthians' lack of love for him as if their hearts were squeezed into a tight space. Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions.

##### You are not restrained by us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We have not restrained you" or "We have not given you any reason to stop loving us"

##### you are restrained in your own hearts

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "your own hearts are restraining you" or "you have stopped loving us for your own reasons"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:13

##### open yourselves wide also

Paul urges the Corinthians to love him as he has loved them. Alternate translation: "love us back" or "love us much as we have loved you"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the believers at Corinth to be separated from idols and live clean lives for God.

##### Do not be yoked together with unbelievers

This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "Only be yoked together with believers"

##### be yoked together with unbelievers

Paul speaks of working together toward a common purpose as if it were two animals tied together to pull a plow or cart. Alternate translation: "team up with" or "have a close relationship with"

##### For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness?

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. Alternate translation: "For righteousness can have no association with lawlessness."

##### For what fellowship does light have with darkness?

Paul asks this question to emphasize that light and darkness cannot coexist since light dispels darkness. The words "light" and "darkness" refer to the moral and spiritual qualities of believers and unbelievers. Alternate translation: "Light can have no fellowship with darkness."

#### 2 Corinthians 6:15

##### What agreement can Christ have with Belial?

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. Alternate translation: "There is no agreement between Christ and Belial."

##### Belial

This is another name for the devil.

##### Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever?

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. Alternate translation: "A believer shares nothing in common with an unbeliever."

#### 2 Corinthians 6:16

##### General Information:

Paul paraphrases portions from several Old Testament prophets: Moses, Zechariah, Amos, and possibly others.

##### And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols?

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. Alternate translation: "There is no agreement between the temple of God and idols."

##### we are the temple of the living God

Paul refers to all Christians as forming a temple for God to dwell in. Alternate translation: "we are like a temple where the living God dwells"

##### I will dwell among them and walk among them.

This is an Old Testament quotation that speaks of God being with the people in two different ways. The words "dwell among" speak of living where others live, while the words "walk among" speak of being with them as they go about their lives. Alternate translation: "I will be with them and help them"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:17

##### General Information:

Paul quotes portions from the Old Testament prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

##### be set apart

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "set yourselves apart" or "allow me to set you apart"

##### Touch no unclean thing

This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "Touch only things that are clean" or "Stay away from things that are unclean"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 7

# 2 Corinthians 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In verses 2-4, Paul finishes his defense. He then writes about Titus's return and the comfort it brought.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Clean and unclean

Christians are "clean" in the sense that God has cleansed them from sin. They do not need to be concerned with being clean according to the law of Moses. Ungodly living can still make a Christian unclean. (See: clean and lawofmoses)

#### Sadness and sorrow

The words "sad" and "sorrow" in this chapter indicate that the Corinthians were upset to the point of repenting. (See: repent)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

#### Original situation

This chapter discusses in detail a previous situation. We can figure out some aspects of this situation from the information in this chapter. But it is best not to include this type of implicit information in a translation.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the Corinthians to be separated from sin and to seek holiness purposefully.

##### Beloved

"You whom I love" or "Dear friends"

##### let us cleanse ourselves of all defilement of flesh and spirit

Here Paul is saying to stay away from any form of sin that would affect one's relationship with God.

##### of all defilement of flesh and spirit

"of all things that defile our body and spirit" or "of all things in our body and spirit that make us unacceptable to God"

##### Let us perfect holiness

"Let us do all we can to be perfectly holy"

##### in the fear of God

"out of deep respect for God" or "because we fear God"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Having already warned the people of Corinth about other leaders who were striving to get these Corinthian believers to follow them, Paul reminds the people of the way he feels about them.

##### Make room for us

This refers back to what Paul said starting in [2 Corinthians 6:11]

#### 2 Corinthians 7:3

##### It is not to condemn you that I say this

"I do not say this to accuse you of having done wrong." The word "this" refers to what Paul just said about not having wronged anyone.

##### you are in our hearts

Paul speaks of his and his associates' great love for the Corinthians as if they held them in their hearts. Alternate translation: "you are very dear to us"

##### for us to die together and to live together

This means that Paul and his associates will continue to love the Corinthians no matter what happens. Alternate translation: "whether we live or whether we die"

##### for us to die

"us" includes the Corinthian believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:4

##### great is my boast about you

"I boast much about you" or "I am very proud of you"

##### I am filled with comfort

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You fill me with comfort"

##### I overflow with joy

Paul speaks of joy as if it is a liquid that fills him until he overflows. Alternate translation: "I am extremely joyful"

##### even in all our tribulation

"even though we suffer greatly"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:5

##### When we came to Macedonia

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Corinthians or Titus.

##### our bodies had no rest

The word "body" often refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "we had no rest" or "we were very tired"

##### we were troubled in every way

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we experienced trouble in every way"

##### by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside

Possible meanings for "outside" are 1) "outside of our bodies" or 2) "outside of the church." The word "inside" refers to their inward emotions. Alternate translation: "by conflicts with other people and by fears within ourselves"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:7

##### by the comfort that Titus had received from you

Paul received comfort from knowing that the Corinthians had comforted Titus. Alternate translation: "by learning about the comfort that Titus had received from you"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:8

##### General Information:

This refers to Paul's previous letter to these Corinthian believers where he rebuked them for their acceptance of a believer's sexual immorality with his father's wife.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul praises them for their godly sorrow, their zeal to do right, and the joy that it brought him and Titus.

##### when I saw that my letter

"when I learned that my letter"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:9

##### not because you were sorrowful

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not because what I said in my letter made you sorrowful"

##### sorrowful ... sorrow ... sorrow

or "distressed ... distress ... distress"

##### so you suffered no loss because of us

"so you suffered no loss because we rebuked you." This means that although the letter caused them sorrow, they eventually benefited from the letter because it led them to repentance. Alternate translation: "so that we did not harm you in any way"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:10

##### For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation

The word "repentance" may be repeated to clarify its relationship to what precedes it and what follows it. "For godly sorrow produces repentance, and repentance leads to salvation"

##### without regret

Possible meanings are 1) Paul has no regret that he caused them sorrow because that sorrow led to their repentance and salvation or 2) the Corinthians will not regret experiencing sorrow because it led to their repentance and salvation.

##### Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death

This kind of sorrow leads to death instead of salvation because it does not produce repentance. Alternate translation: "Worldly sorrow, however, leads to spiritual death"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:11

##### See what great diligence

"Look and see for yourselves what great diligence"

##### How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent.

Here the word "How" makes this statement an exclamation. Alternate translation: "Your determination to prove you were innocent was very great!"

##### your indignation

"your anger"

##### that justice should be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that someone should carry out justice"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:12

##### the wrongdoer

"the one who did wrong"

##### your earnestness toward us should be made known to you in the sight of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that you would know in the sight of God your earnestness toward us"

##### earnestness

sincere, serious desire for what is good

##### in the sight of God

This represents God's presence. See how you translated this in [2 Corinthians 4:2]

#### 2 Corinthians 7:13

##### It is by this that we are encouraged

Here the word "this" refers to the way the Corinthians responded to Paul's previous letter, as he described in the previous verse. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is what encourages us"

##### his spirit was refreshed by all of you

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's temperament and disposition. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all of you refreshed his spirit" or "all of you made him stop worrying"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:14

##### For if I boasted to him about you

"For although I boasted to him about you"

##### I was not put to shame

"you did not disappoint me"

##### our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true

"you proved that our boasting about you to Titus was true"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:15

##### the obedience of all of you

This noun "obedience" can be stated with a verb, "obey." Alternate translation: "how all of you obeyed"

##### you welcomed him with fear and trembling

Here "fear" and "trembling" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of fear. Alternate translation: "you welcomed him with great reverence"

##### with fear and trembling

Possible meanings are 1) "with great reverence for God" or 2) "with great reverence for Titus."

#### 2 Corinthians 7:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 8

# 2 Corinthians 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Chapters 8 and 9 begin a new section. Paul writes about how churches in Greece helped needy believers in Jerusalem.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted words of verse 15.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Gift to the church in Jerusalem

The church in Corinth started preparing to give money to the poor believers in Jerusalem. The churches in Macedonia also had given generously. Paul sends Titus and two other believers to Corinth to encourage the Corinthians to give generously. Paul and the others will carry the money to Jerusalem. They want people to know it is being done honestly.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

#### Paradox

A "paradox" is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. These words in verse 2 are a paradox: "the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity." In verse 3 Paul explains how their poverty produced riches. Paul also uses riches and poverty in other paradoxes. ([2 Corinthians 8:2](./02.md))

#### 2 Corinthians 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Having explained his changed plans and his ministry direction, Paul talks about giving.

##### the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the grace that God has given to the churches of Macedonia"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:2

##### the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity

Paul speaks of "joy" and "poverty" as if they were living things that can produce generosity. Alternate translation: "because of the people's great joy and extreme poverty, they have become very generous"

##### the abundance of their joy

Paul speaks of joy as if it were a physical object that could increase in size or quantity.

##### extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity

Though the churches of Macedonia have suffered testings of affliction and poverty, by God's grace they have been able to collect money for the believers in Jerusalem.

##### great riches of generosity

"a very great generosity." The words "great riches" emphasize the greatness of their generosity.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:3

##### they gave

This refers to the churches in Macedonia.

##### of their own free will

"voluntarily"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:4

##### this service to God's holy people

Paul is referring to providing money to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "this ministry of providing for the believers in Jerusalem"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:5

##### This did not happen as we had hoped

The Macedonians did even more than Paul and those with him had hoped for. Alternate translation: "This did not happen merely as we had thought it might" or "But even more than we had expected"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:6

##### who had already begun this task

Paul is referring to the collection of money from the Corinthians for the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "who had encouraged your giving in the first place"

##### to complete among you this act of grace

Titus was to help the Corinthians to complete the collection of money. Alternate translation: "to encourage you to finish collecting and giving your generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:7

##### make sure that you excel in this act of grace

Here "this act of grace" refers the gift that the Corinthians were to give. Alternate translation: "make sure that you are very generous in your giving"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:8

##### by comparing it to the eagerness of other people

Paul is encouraging the Corinthians to give generously by comparing their generosity with the generosity of the Macedonian churches.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:9

##### the grace of our Lord

In this context, the word "grace" emphasizes the generosity with which Jesus had blessed the Corinthians.

##### Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor

Paul speaks of Jesus before his incarnation as being rich, and of his becoming human as becoming poor.

##### through his poverty you might become rich

Paul speaks of the Corinthians becoming spiritually rich as a result of Jesus becoming human.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:10

##### In this matter

This refers to their collecting money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "With regard to the collection"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:11

##### there was an eagerness and desire to do it

This can be stated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "you were eager and desired to do it"

##### bring it to completion

"complete it" or "finish it"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:12

##### a good and acceptable thing

Here the words "good" and "acceptable" share similar meanings and emphasize the goodness of the thing. Alternate translation: "a very good thing"

##### It must be based on what a person has

"Giving must be based on what a person has"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:13

##### For this is not to cause relief for others and tribulation for you

The word "this" refers to collecting money for the believers in Jerusalem. The abstract nouns "relief" and "tribulation" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "We are not asking you to give money to relieve others and make yourselves suffer"

##### but for fairness

"but so that there should be equality" or "but so that there might be equality between others and you." Paul is explaining why he is asking the Corinthians to give money to the believers in Jerusalem.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:14

##### This is also so that their abundance may supply your need

Since the Corinthians are acting in the present time, it is implied that the believers in Jerusalem will also help them at some time in the future. Alternate translation: "This is also so that in the future their abundance may supply your need"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:15

##### as it is written

Here Paul quotes from Exodus. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Moses wrote"

##### did not have any lack

"had all he needed"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:16

##### who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you

Here the word "heart" refers to the emotions. This means that God caused Titus to love them. Alternate translation: "who made Titus care for you as much as I do"

##### same earnest care

"the same enthusiasm" or "same deep concern"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:17

##### For he not only accepted our appeal

Paul is referring to his asking Titus to return to Corinth and complete the collection. Alternate translation: "For he not only agreed to our request that he help you with the collection"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:18

##### with him

"with Titus"

##### the brother who is praised among all of the churches

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the brother whom believers among all of the churches praise"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:19

##### Not only this

"Not only do believers among all of the churches praise him"

##### he also was chosen by the churches

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the churches also chose him"

##### our traveling companion with this act of grace

"to travel with us as we carry out this act of generosity." This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem.

##### which is being administered by us

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "which we are taking care of"

##### for the glory of the Lord himself and our good will

You may need to fill in the ideas missing in the ellipsis. Alternate translation: "so that people will praise the Lord and so that they will see how eager we are to help"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:20

##### about this act of generosity that we are carrying out

This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem. The abstract noun "generosity" can be translated with an adjective. Alternate translation: "concerning the way we are handling this generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:21

##### We take care to do what is good, not only before the Lord, but also before people.

"We are careful to do not only what the Lord thinks is good but also what people think is good"

##### before the Lord ... before people

"in the Lord's opinion ... in people's opinion"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:22

##### with them

The word "them" refers to Titus and the previously mentioned brother.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:23

##### he is my partner and fellow worker for you

"he is my partner, who works with me to help you"

##### As for our brothers

This refers to the two other men who will accompany Titus.

##### they are messengers from the churches

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the churches have sent them as their messengers"

##### They are a glory to Christ

This can be stated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "They will cause people to see Christ's glory" or "They will cause people to honor Christ"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 9

# 2 Corinthians 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 9, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

Paul uses three agricultural metaphors. He uses them to teach about giving to needy believers. The metaphors help Paul explain that God will reward those who give generously. Paul does not say how or when God will reward them. (See: and reward)

#### 2 Corinthians 9:1

##### General Information:

When Paul refers to Achaia, he is talking about a Roman province located in southern Greece where Corinth is located.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues on the subject of giving. He wants to make sure that the collection of their offering for the needy believers in Jerusalem takes place before he comes so that it does not seem as though he takes advantage of them. He talks about how giving blesses the giver and glorifies God.

##### the service for God's holy people

This refers to the collection of money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the ministry for the believers in Jerusalem"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:2

##### Achaia has been getting ready

Here the word "Achaia" refers to the people who live in this province, and specifically to the people of the church in Corinth. Alternate translation: "the people of Achaia have been preparing"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:3

##### the brothers

This refers to Titus and the two men who accompany him.

##### our boasting about you may not be futile

Paul does not want others to think that the things that he had boasted about the Corinthians were false.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:4

##### find you unprepared

"find you unprepared to give"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:5

##### the brothers to come to you

From Paul's perspective, the brothers are going. Alternate translation: "the brothers to go to you"

##### not as something extorted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not as something that we have extorted from you" or "not as something that you gave us because we forced you to give it to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:6

##### the one who sows ... reap a blessing

Paul uses the image of a farmer sowing seeds to describe the results of giving. As a farmer's harvest is based on how much he sows, so will God's blessings be little or much, based on how generously the Corinthians give.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:7

##### give as he has planned in his heart

Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "give as he has determined"

##### not reluctantly or under compulsion

This can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "not because he feels guilty or because someone is forcing him to give"

##### for God loves a cheerful giver

God wants people to give gladly to help provide for fellow believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:8

##### God is able to make all grace overflow for you

Grace is spoken of as if it were a physical object of which a person can have more than he can use. As a person gives financially to other believers, God also gives to the giver everything he needs. Alternate translation: "God is able to give you many things" or "God is able to give you very much"

##### grace

This refers here to the physical things a Christian needs, not to the need for God to save him from his sins.

##### so that you may multiply every good deed

"so that you may be able to do more and more good deeds"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:9

##### It is as it is written

"This is just as it is written." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is just as the writer wrote"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:10

##### He who supplies

"God who supplies"

##### bread for food

Here the word "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food to eat"

##### will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing

Paul speaks of the Corinthians' possessions as if they were seeds and of giving to others as if they were sowing seeds. Alternate translation: "will also supply and multiply your possessions so that you can sow them by giving them to others"

##### He will increase the harvest of your righteousness

Paul compares the benefits that the Corinthians will receive from their generosity to that of a harvest. Alternate translation: "God will bless you even more for your righteousness"

##### the harvest of your righteousness

"the harvest that comes from your righteous actions." Here the word "righteousness" refers to the righteous actions of the Corinthians in giving their resources to the believers in Jerusalem.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:11

##### You will be enriched

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will enrich you"

##### This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us

The word this refers to the Corinthian's generosity. Alternate translation: "Because of your generosity, those who receive the gifts we bring them will thank God" or "When we give your gifts to those who need them, they will give thanks to God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:12

##### For carrying out this service

Here the word "service" refers to Paul and his companions bringing the contribution to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "For our carrying out this service for the believers in Jerusalem"

##### but it also is overflowing into many acts of thanksgiving to God

Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers' act of service as if it were a liquid of which there is more than a container can hold. Alternate translation: "It also causes people to do many deeds for which people will thank God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:13

##### Because of your being tested and proved by this service

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Because this service has tested and proven you"

##### you will also glorify God by obedience ... by the generosity of your contribution to them and to everyone

Paul says that the Corinthians will glorify God both by being faithful to Jesus and by giving generously to other believers who have need.

##### the generosity of your contribution

The abstract nouns "generosity" and "contribution" can be stated respectively as an adverb and a verb. Alternate translation: "what you have contributed generously" (

##### contribution

This word refers here to a gift that is part of a larger gift that many people are giving.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:15

##### for his inexpressible gift

"for his gift, which words cannot describe." Possible meanings are 1) that this gift refers to "the very great grace" that God has given to the Corinthians, which has led them to be so generous or 2) that this gift refers to Jesus Christ, whom God gave to all believers.

## Chapter 10

# 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted words of verse 17.

In this chapter, Paul returns to defending his authority. He also compares the way he speaks and the way he writes.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Boasting

"Boasting" is often thought of as bragging, which is not good. But in this letter "boasting" means confidently exulting or rejoicing.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

In verses 3-6, Paul uses many metaphors from war. He probably uses them as part of a larger metaphor about Christians being spiritually at war.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

"Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive ("in the flesh"), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: flesh)

#### 2 Corinthians 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul shifts the subject from giving to affirming his authority to teach as he does.

##### by the humility and gentleness of Christ

The word "humility" and "gentleness" are abstract nouns, and can be expressed in another way. Alternate translation: "by Christ, who is humble and gentle"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:2

##### we are walking

The word "walking" is a metaphor for the way a person lives his life. "we are acting"

##### according to the flesh

The word "flesh" is a metonym for the mortal body, which in turn is a metaphor for the person himself. See how you translated it in [2 Corinthians 1:17]

#### 2 Corinthians 10:3

##### we walk in the flesh

Here "walk" is an metaphor for "live" and "flesh" is a metonym for physical life. Alternate translation: "we live our lives in physical bodies"

##### the flesh

This phrase is a metonym for the way mortal people do things. See how you translated it in [2 Corinthians 1:17]

##### we do not make war

Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers as if he were fighting a physical war. These words should be translated literally.

##### make war according to the flesh

Possible meanings are 1) the word "flesh" is a metonym for physical life. Alternate translation: "fight against our enemies using physical weapons" or 2) the word "flesh" is a metonym for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: "make war in sinful ways"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:4

##### the weapons we fight with ... bring misleading arguments to nothing

Paul speaks of godly wisdom that shows human wisdom to be false as if it were a weapon with which he is destroying an enemy stronghold. Alternate translation: "the weapons we fight with ... show people that what our enemies say is completely wrong"

##### we fight

Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers as if he were fighting a physical war. These words should be translated literally.

##### are not fleshly

Possible meanings are 1) the word "fleshly" is a metonym for merely physical. Alternate translation: "are not physical" or 2) the word "fleshly" is a metonym for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: "are not sinful" or "do not enable us to do wrong"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:5

##### every high thing that rises up

Paul is still speaking with the metaphor of a war, as if "the knowledge of God" were an army and "every high thing" were a wall that people had made to keep the army out. Alternate translation: "every false argument that proud people think of to protect themselves"

##### every high thing

"everything that proud people do"

##### rises up against the knowledge of God

Paul speaks of arguments as if they were a wall standing high against an army. The words "rises up" mean "stands tall," not that the "high thing" is floating up into the air. Alternate translation: "people use so they will not have to know who God is"

##### We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ

Paul speaks of people's thoughts as if they were enemy soldiers whom he captures in battle. Alternate translation: "We show how all the false ideas those people have are wrong and teach the people to obey Christ"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:6

##### punish every act of disobedience

The words "act of disobedience" are a metonym for the people who commit those acts. Alternate translation: "punish every one of you who disobeys us"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:7

##### Look at what is clearly in front of you.

Possible meanings are 1) this is a command or 2) this is a statement, "You are looking only at what you can see with your eyes." Some think this is a rhetorical question that may also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Are you looking at what is clearly in front of you?" or "You seem unable to see what is clearly in front of you."

##### let him remind himself

"he needs to remember"

##### that just as he is Christ's, so also are we

"that we belong to Christ just as much as he does"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:8

##### to build you up and not to destroy you

Paul speaks of helping the Corinthians to know Christ better as if he were constructing a building. Alternate translation: "to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:9

##### I am terrifying you

"I am trying to frighten you"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:10

##### serious and powerful

"demanding and forceful"

##### his bodily presence is weak

"when he is here physically, he is not impressive"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:11

##### Let such people be aware

"I want such people to be aware"

##### what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is what we will be in our actions when we are there

"we will do the same things when we are there with you that we have written about in our letters while we have been away from you"

##### we ... our

All instances of these words refer to Paul's ministry team but not the Corinthians.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:12

##### We are not so bold as to group ourselves ... praise themselves

"Bold people would group themselves ... praise themselves, but we are not that bold, so we do not." Paul is using irony here: most people think of boldness as a good thing, but Paul is saying that those who have the boldness to praise themselves are doing wrong.

##### to group ourselves or compare ourselves with those

"to say we are as good as those"

##### they measure themselves by one another and compare themselves with each other

Paul is saying much the same thing twice.

##### they measure themselves by one another

Paul is speaking of goodness as though it were something whose length people could measure. Alternate translation: "they look at each other and try to see who is better"

##### have no insight

"show everyone that they do not know anything"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:13

##### General Information:

Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules, those things over which he has authority as being within the borders or "limits" of his land, and those things not under his authority as being beyond the "limits."

##### will not boast beyond limits. Instead

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "will not boast about things over which we have no authority. Instead" or "will boast only about things over which we have authority. And"

##### within the limits of what God

"about things under the authority that God"

##### limits that reach even as far as you

Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules. Alternate translation: "and you are within the border of our authority"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:14

##### we are not overextending ourselves

"we are not doing more than we should." Possible meanings are 1) "we are not boasting more than we should" or 2) "we are not claiming to have more authority than we do."

#### 2 Corinthians 10:15

##### We have not boasted beyond limits about the labors of others

This is an idiom. See how similar words were translated in [2 Corinthians 10:13]

##### our hope is that

"we hope that" or "we desire that" or "we trust that"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:16

##### another's area

"an area God has assigned to someone else"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:17

##### boast in the Lord

"boast about what the Lord has done"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:18

##### recommends himself

This means that he provides enough evidence for each person who hears him to decide whether he is right or wrong. See how "recommend ourselves" is translated in 2 Corinthians 4:2.

##### who is approved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Lord approves"

##### but the one whom the Lord recommends

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "but it is the one whom the Lord recommends who is approved"

## Chapter 1

# Galatians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was "not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones." Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Heresy

God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. They might not be saved. They should be treated as non-Christians. (See: save, eternity, goodnews and condemn and curse)

#### Paul's qualifications

Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But God still needed to save him and show him the true gospel. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: lawofmoses)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "You are turning so quickly to a different gospel"

The Book of Galatians is one of Paul's earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church.

#### Galatians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul, an apostle, writes this letter to the churches in the area of Galatia. Unless noted otherwise, all instances of "you" and "your" in this letter refer to the Galatians and are plural.

##### who raised him

"who caused him to live again"

#### Galatians 1:2

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

#### Galatians 1:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 1:4

##### for our sins

"Sins" is a metonym the punishment for sin. Alternate translation: "to take the punishment we deserved because of our sins"

##### that he might deliver us from this present evil age

Here "this ... age" represents the powers at work in the age. Alternate translation: "that he might bring us to a place of safety from the evil powers at work in the world today"

##### our God and Father

This refers to "God our Father." He is our God and our Father.

#### Galatians 1:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 1:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives his reason for writing this letter: he reminds them to continue to understand the gospel.

##### I am amazed

"I am surprised" or "I am shocked." Paul was disappointed that they were doing this.

##### you are turning away so quickly from him

Here "turning away ... from him" is a metaphor for started to doubt or no longer trust God. Alternate translation: "you are so quickly starting to doubt him"

##### him who called you

"God, who called you"

##### called

Here this means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to serve him, and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### by the grace of Christ

"because of Christ's grace" or "because of Christ's gracious sacrifice"

##### you are turning to a different gospel

Here "turning to" is a metaphor that means to start to believe something. Alternate translation: "you are instead starting to believe a different gospel"

#### Galatians 1:7

##### some men

"some people"

#### Galatians 1:8

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim ... let him be cursed

Paul said this to show how strongly he felt about anyone who might proclaim a gospel other than the one he had proclaimed. If anyone would do that, that person should be cursed. Alternate translation: "But even if we or an angel from heaven were to proclaim ... let him be cursed"

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim

The word "even" shows that Paul did not believe that they or an angel from heaven would ever proclaim a different gospel. But he includes himself and angels in his statement to emphasize how wrong it would be for anyone to proclaim a different gospel.

##### other than the one

"different from the gospel" or "different from the message"

##### let him be cursed

"God should punish that person forever." If your language has a common way of calling a curse down on someone, you should use that.

#### Galatians 1:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 1:10

##### For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men?

These rhetorical questions expect the answer "no." Alternate translation: "I do not seek the favor of men, but instead I seek the favor of God. I am not seeking to please men."

##### If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ

Both the "if" phrase and the "then" phrase are contrary to fact. "I am not still trying to please men; I am a servant of Christ" or "If I were still trying to please men, then I would not be a servant of Christ"

#### Galatians 1:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains that he did not learn the gospel from others; he learned it from Jesus Christ.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### is not man's gospel

By using this phrase, Paul was not trying to say that Jesus Christ is not himself human. Because Christ is both man and God, however, he is not a sinful human being. Paul is writing about where the gospel came from; it did not come from sinful human beings, but it came from Jesus Christ.

#### Galatians 1:12

##### it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me

Possible meanings are 1) "Jesus Christ himself revealed the gospel to me" or 2) "God made me know the gospel when he showed me who Jesus Christ was."

#### Galatians 1:13

##### former life

"behavior at one time" or "prior life" or "earlier life"

#### Galatians 1:14

##### I advanced

This metaphor pictures Paul as being ahead of other Jews his age in their goal to be perfect Jews.

##### those who were my own age

"the Jewish people who are the same age as I am"

##### my fathers

"my ancestors"

#### Galatians 1:15

##### and who called me through his grace

Possible meanings of "through his grace" are 1) this tells why God called Paul. Alternate translation: "and who called me to serve him because he is gracious" or 2) this tells how God called Paul. Alternate translation: "and who called me by means of his grace."

#### Galatians 1:16

##### to reveal his Son in me

Possible meanings are 1) "to allow me to know his Son" or 2) "to show the world through me that Jesus is God's Son."

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### preach him

"proclaim that he is God's Son" or "preach the good news about God's Son"

##### consult with flesh and blood

This is an expression that means talking with other people. Alternate translation: "ask people to help me understand the message"

#### Galatians 1:17

##### go up to Jerusalem

"go to Jerusalem." Jerusalem was in a region of high hills, making it necessary to climb many hills in order to get there, and so it was common to describe travel to Jerusalem as "going up to Jerusalem."

#### Galatians 1:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 1:19

##### I saw none of the other apostles except James

This double negative emphasizes that James was the only apostle whom Paul saw. Alternate translation: "I saw only one of the other apostles, and that was James" or "the only other apostle I saw was James"

#### Galatians 1:20

##### before God

Paul wants the Galatians to understand that Paul is completely serious and that he knows that God hears what he says and will judge him if he does not tell the truth.

##### In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying

Paul uses litotes to emphasize that he is telling the truth. Alternate translation: "I am not lying to you in the messages I write to you" or "in the things I write to you I am telling you the truth"

#### Galatians 1:21

##### the regions of Syria and Cilicia

"the parts of the world called Syria and Cilicia"

#### Galatians 1:22

##### I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ

"No one in the churches of Judea that are in Christ knew what I looked like" or "None of the people in the churches of Judea that are in Christ had ever met me"

#### Galatians 1:23

##### They only heard it being said

"They only knew what they heard others saying about me"

#### Galatians 1:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 2

# Galatians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues to defend the true gospel. This began in [Galatians 1:11](../../gal/01/11.md).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Circumcised and uncircumcised

The law of Moses required Jewish males to be circumcised. The Jews called Gentiles "the uncircumcised."

#### Slavery and freedom

Paul introduces these ideas in Galatians 2:4. He uses the metaphor of slavery for people who are obligated to obey the law of Moses. He uses the metaphor of freedom, or liberty, for people who are not obligated to obey the law of Moses because they trust in Jesus Christ to make them righteous.

#### The false brothers

When Paul says that false brothers wanted to make the believers slaves, he is referring to Jews who claimed to be Christians and who wanted to convince Gentile Christians to obey the law of Moses.

#### The hypocrisy of Cephas

Jews normally did not eat with Gentiles because Gentiles did not obey the law of Moses. Cephas knew that Gentile Christians are not obligated to obey the law of Moses, and because of this, he knew that it was permissible to eat with them. However, when some men came saying that Gentile Christians are obligated to obey the law, Cephas stopped eating with the Gentiles Christians, as if he, too, believed that they need to obey the law of Moses. Paul rebuked Cephas for treating the Gentile Christians like that.

#### Galatians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give the history of how he learned the gospel from God, not the apostles.

##### went up

"traveled." Jerusalem is located in hilly country. The Jews also viewed Jerusalem as the place on earth that is closest to heaven, so Paul may have been speaking figuratively, or it may be that it was reflecting the difficult, uphill, journey to get to Jerusalem.

#### Galatians 2:2

##### those who seemed to be important

"the most important leaders among the believers"

##### I was not running—or had not run—in vain

Paul uses running as a metaphor for work. Alternate translation: "I was doing, or had done, profitable work"

##### in vain

"for no benefit" or "for nothing"

#### Galatians 2:3

##### to be circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to have someone circumcise him"

#### Galatians 2:4

##### The false brothers came in secretly

"People who pretended to be Christians came into the church," or "People who pretended to be Christians came among us"

##### spy on the liberty

secretly watch people to see how they live in liberty

##### liberty

freedom

##### They desired

"These spies desired" or "These false brothers wanted"

##### to enslave us

"to make us slaves to the law." Paul is speaking about being forced to follow the Jewish rituals that the law commanded. He is speaking about this as if it were slavery. The most important ritual was circumcision. Alternate translation: "to force us to obey the law"

#### Galatians 2:5

##### yield in submission

"submit" or "listen"

#### Galatians 2:6

##### added nothing to me

The word "me" here represents what Paul was teaching. Alternate translation: "added nothing to what I teach" or "did not tell me to add anything to what I teach"

#### Galatians 2:7

##### On the contrary

"Instead" or "Rather"

##### I had been entrusted ... Peter had been entrusted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God trusted me ... God trusted Peter"

##### had been entrusted with the gospel to those

"had been given the responsibility of preaching the gospel to those"

#### Galatians 2:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 2:9

##### who had a reputation as pillars

A pillar is a post that supports a building. This is a metaphor meaning important leaders. Alternate translation: "who were known to be important leaders" or "who were known to be important leaders of the church"

##### recognized the grace that had been given to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "recognized the grace that God had given to me"

##### the grace that had been given to me

The abstract noun "grace" can be translated with the phrase "be kind." Alternate translation: "that God had been kind to me"

##### gave ... the right hand of fellowship

Grasping and shaking the right hand was a symbol of fellowship. Alternate translation: "welcomed ... as fellow workers" or "welcomed ... with honor"

#### Galatians 2:10

##### remember the poor

You may need to make explicit what about the poor he was to remember. Alternate translation: "remember to take care of the needs of the poor"

#### Galatians 2:11

##### I opposed him to his face

The words "to his face" are a metonym for "where he could see and hear me." Alternate translation: "I confronted him in person" or "I challenged his actions in person"

#### Galatians 2:12

##### Before

in relation to time

##### he stopped

"he stopped eating with them"

##### He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision

The reason Cephas was afraid can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would judge that he was doing something wrong" or "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would blame him for doing something wrong"

##### those who were demanding circumcision

Jews who had become Christians, but who demanded that those who believe in Christ live according to Jewish customs

##### kept away from

"stayed away from" or "avoided"

#### Galatians 2:13

##### this hypocrisy

Paul calls Peter's staying away from the Gentiles "this hypocrisy" because Peter was pretending to be like those Jews who say that Gentile Christians have to be circumcised.

##### Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy

Here to be "led astray" is a metaphor for being persuaded to do something wrong. Alternate translation: "Even Barnabas was persuaded to be a hypocrite because of them"

#### Galatians 2:14

##### their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel

"they were not living according to the truth of the gospel"

##### how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke and can be translated as a statement. The word "you" is singular and refers to Peter. Alternate translation: "you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews."

##### force

Possible meanings are 1) force by using words or 2) persuade.

#### Galatians 2:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers that Jews who know the law, as well as Gentiles who do not know the law, are saved only by faith in Christ and not by keeping the law.

##### not Gentile sinners

"not those whom the Jews call Gentile sinners"

#### Galatians 2:16

##### we

This probably refers to Paul and others but not to the Galatians, who were primarily Gentiles.

##### no flesh

The word "flesh" is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "no person"

#### Galatians 2:17

##### while we seek to be justified in Christ

The phrase "justified in Christ" means justified because we are united with Christ and justified by means of Christ.

##### we too were found to be sinners

The words "were found to be" are an idiom that emphasizes that "we are" certainly sinners. Alternate translation: "we see that we also certainly are sinners"

##### Absolutely not!

"Of course, that is not true!" This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question "Does Christ become a servant of sin?" You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

#### Galatians 2:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 2:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 2:20

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Galatians 2:21

##### I do not set aside the grace of God

"I do not reject the grace of God" or "I do not consider God's grace to be worthless"

##### the grace of God

Paul is speaking of God's kindness to us. Christ died for us so that we can be justified.

##### if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing

Paul uses this statement to argue that righteousness cannot be gained through the law. If it could be then there was no need for Christ to die to give us righteousness, because we could gain it ourselves by obeying the law.

##### if righteousness could be gained through the law

"if people could become righteous by obeying the law"

##### then Christ died for nothing

"then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying"

## Chapter 3

# Galatians 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Equality in Christ

All Christians are equally united to Christ. Ancestry, gender, and status do not matter. All are equal with each other. All are equal in the eyes of God.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses many different rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to convince the Galatians of their sin. (See: and sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that the physical part of man is sinful. "Flesh" is used in this chapter to contrast with that which is spiritual. (See: flesh)

#### "Those of faith are children of Abraham"

Scholars are divided on what this means. Some believe Christians inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham, so Christians replace the physical descendants of Israel. Others believe Christians spiritually follow Abraham, but they do not inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham. In light of Paul's other teachings and the context here, Paul is probably writing about the Jewish and Gentile Christians sharing the same faith as Abraham did.

#### Galatians 3:1

##### General Information:

Paul is rebuking the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers in Galatia that God gave them his Spirit when they believed the gospel, not because they obeyed his law.

##### Who has put a spell on you?

Paul is using irony and a rhetorical question to say that the Galatians are acting as though someone has put a spell on them. He does not really believe that someone has put a spell on them. Alternate translation: "You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!"

##### put a spell on you

"done magic on you" or "done witchcraft on you"

##### It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified

Paul speaks of his clear teaching of Jesus being crucified as if he had put on public display a picture of Jesus being crucified. And he speaks of the Galatians having heard his teaching as if they had seen the picture. Alternate translation: "You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified"

#### Galatians 3:2

##### This is the only thing I want to learn from you

This continues the irony from verse 1. Paul knows the answers to the rhetorical questions he is about to ask.

##### Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

Translate this rhetorical question as a question if you can, because the reader will be expecting a question here. Also, be sure that the reader knows that the answer to the question is "by the hearing of faith," not "by doing what the law says." Alternate translation: "You received the Spirit, not by doing what the law says, but by the hearing of faith."

##### the hearing of faith

"believing what you heard"

#### Galatians 3:3

##### Are you so foolish?

This rhetorical question shows that Paul is surprised and even angry that the Galatians are foolish. Alternate translation: "You are very foolish!"

##### by the flesh

The word "flesh" is a metonym for effort. Alternate translation: "by your own effort" or "by your own work"

#### Galatians 3:4

##### Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing?

Paul uses this question to rebuke the Galatians for behaving as though their faith in Christ and their suffering for it were for nothing. Alternate translation: "You have suffered so many things: Do not let it be for nothing!" or "You suffered so many things from those who opposed your faith in Christ. If you now think that righteousness comes by obeying the law, then your suffering was for nothing!"

##### Have you suffered so many things

The Galatians had believed that God makes people righteous because they trust in Jesus Christ, not because they obey the law. Because of this, they suffered many things from those who opposed their faith in Christ.

##### for nothing

"uselessly" or "without benefit to you"

#### Galatians 3:5

##### Does he ... do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

Paul asks another rhetorical question to remind the Galatians how people receive the Spirit. Alternate translation: "He ... does not do it by the works of the law; he does it by hearing with faith."

##### by the works of the law

This represents people doing the works that the law requires. Alternate translation: "because you do what the law tells us to do"

##### by the hearing of faith

Your language may require that what the people heard and whom they trusted be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "because you heard the message and had faith in Jesus" or "because you listened to the message and trusted in Jesus"

#### Galatians 3:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that even Abraham received righteousness by faith and not by the law.

##### it was credited to him as righteousness

God saw Abraham's faith in God, so then God considered Abraham righteous.

#### Galatians 3:7

##### those of faith

"those who have faith." The meaning of the noun "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "those who believe"

##### the children of Abraham

This represents people whom God views as he viewed Abraham. Alternate translation: "righteous in the same way that Abraham was righteous"

#### Galatians 3:8

##### The scripture, foreseeing ... faith, preached the gospel

Because God's promise to Abraham was written in the scripture before Christ fulfilled the promise, the scripture is like someone who knows the future before it happens and who preaches the gospel. Alternate translation: "In the scripture, God showed before it happened ... faith, and he presented the gospel"

##### In you

The word "you" refers to Abraham. Ultimately God would bless the nations through one of Abraham's descendants. Alternate translation: "Because of you" or "Through you"

##### all the nations

"all the people-groups in the world." God was showing that his plan of salvation was not only for the Jewish people, but for both Jews and non-Jews.

#### Galatians 3:9

##### the man of faith

Possible meanings are 1) Abraham was the man who believed and trusted in God or 2) Abraham was faithful to God.

#### Galatians 3:10

##### All who rely on ... the law are under a curse

Being under a curse represents being cursed. Here it refers to being eternally punished. "Those who rely on ... the law are cursed" or "God will eternally punish those who rely on ... the law"

##### the works of the law

"what the law says we must do"

#### Galatians 3:11

##### Now it is clear

What is clear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "The scriptures are clear" or "The scriptures teach clearly"

##### no one is justified before God by the law

This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God justifies no one by the law"

##### no one is justified before God by the law

Paul is correcting their belief that if they obeyed the law, God would justify them. Alternate translation: "no one is justified before God by obeying the law" or "God does not justify anyone for their obedience to the law"

##### the righteous will live by faith

The nominal adjective "righteous" refers to righteous people. Alternate translation: "righteous people will live by faith"

#### Galatians 3:12

##### must live by them

Possible meanings are 1) "must obey them all" or 2) "will be judged by his ability to do what the law demands."

#### Galatians 3:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds these believers again that keeping the law could not save a person and that the law did not add a new condition to the promise by faith given to Abraham.

##### from the curse of the law

The noun "curse" can be expressed with the verb "curse." Alternate translation: "from being cursed because of the law" or "from being cursed for not obeying the law"

##### from the curse of the law ... becoming a curse for us ... Cursed is everyone

The word "curse" here is a metonym for God condemning the person whom he has cursed. Alternate translation: "from us having God condemn us because we broke the law ... having God condemn him instead of us ... God condemns everyone"

##### hangs on a tree

Paul expected his audience to understand that he was referring to Jesus hanging on the cross.

#### Galatians 3:14

##### so that the blessing of Abraham might come

"and because Christ became a curse for us, the blessing of Abraham will come"

##### so that by faith we might receive

Possible meanings are 1) this is because Christ became a curse for us. Alternate translation: "and because Christ became a curse for us, we will receive by faith" or 2) this is because the blessing in Abraham came in Christ Jesus. Alternate translation: "and because the blessing in Abraham came in Christ Jesus, we will receive by faith"

##### we might receive the promise

The word "we" includes the people who would read the letter and so is inclusive.

#### Galatians 3:15

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### in human terms

"as a person" or "of things most people understand"

#### Galatians 3:16

##### Now

This word shows that Paul has stated a general principle and is now beginning to introduce a specific case.

##### referring to many

"referring to many descendants"

##### to your descendant

The word "your" is singular and refers to a specific person, who is a particular descendant of Abraham

#### Galatians 3:17

##### The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God

In some languages it might be strange to speak of a law coming or setting aside a covenant. It might be clearer to make explicit who gave the law. Alternate translation: "When God gave the law 430 years later, he did not set aside the covenant that he had previously established"

##### set aside

"cancel"

##### 430 years

"four hundred and thirty years"

##### God, to nullify the promise

"God; that is, it does not nullify the promise"

##### nullify the promise

"to make the promise worthless" or "to make things as if the promise had never been made"

#### Galatians 3:18

##### For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise

Paul uses this argument to show that the inheritance does not come by obeying the law but by believing God's promise. Alternate translation: "If people could receive the inheritance by obeying the law, then it would no longer be true that people receive the inheritance by believing God's promise"

##### the inheritance

Paul speaks of what God has promised to give to believers as if it were an inheritance of property and wealth from a family member. Aternate translation: "the gift"

#### Galatians 3:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers in Galatia why God gave the law.

##### What, then, was the purpose of the law?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to introduce the next topic he wants to discuss. It can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the purpose of the law is." or "Let me tell you why God gave the law."

##### It was added

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God added it" or "God added the law"

##### The law was ordained through angels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God ordained the law through angels" or "God gave the law through angels"

##### by the hand of an intermediary

The words "by the hand of" are a metonym for the intermediary himself. An intermediary represents one person to another. Paul was probably talking about Moses, who represented God to the people of Israel. Alternate translation "by an intermediary" or "by his representative, Moses"

#### Galatians 3:20

##### Now an intermediary implies more than one person

An intermediary represents one person to another. Alternate translation: “Now if we say that there was an intermediary, that means that there must have been more than one person.”

##### intermediary

representative

##### But God is one

Paul uses this statement to contrast the law and the promise. Paul seems to be saying that the promise is superior to the law since God used an intermediary to give the law, but he did not use an intermediary when he made the promise. “God is one” is an important statement from the Old Testament, so it would be best to translate it as Paul wrote it. If this does not make sense in your language, you could translate it as "God is one God."

#### Galatians 3:21

##### against the promises

"opposed to the promises" or "in conflict with the promises"

##### if a law had been given that could give life

This can be stated in active form, and the abstract noun "life" can be translated with the verb "live." Alternate translation: "if God had given a law that enabled those who kept it to live"

##### righteousness would certainly have come by the law

"we could have become righteous by obeying that law"

#### Galatians 3:22

##### the scripture imprisoned everything under sin

The idea of being imprisoned under sin represents being controlled by sin. Possible meanings are 1) “the scripture caused everyone to be controlled by sin” or 2) “the scripture says that everyone is controlled by sin.”

##### the promise by faith in Jesus Christ

The word “promise” represents what God promised. Alternate translation: “what God promised to those who have faith in Christ”

#### Galatians 3:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds those in Galatia that believers are free in God's family, not slaves under the law.

##### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the law held us captive and we were in prison" or "the law held us captive in prison"

##### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

The way the law controlled us is spoken of as if the law were a prison guard holding us as captives. Alternate translation: "the law controlled us like a prison guard"

##### until faith should be revealed

This can be stated in active form, and who this faith is in can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "until God would reveal that he justifies those who have faith in Christ" or "until God would reveal that he justifies those who trust in Christ"

#### Galatians 3:24

##### guardian

More than simply "one who gives oversight to a child," this was usually a slave who was responsible for enforcing rules and behaviors given by the parent and would report to the parent on the child's actions.

##### until Christ came

"until the time when Christ came"

##### so that we might be justified

Before Christ came, God had planned to justify us. When Christ came, he carried out his plan to justify us. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God would declare us to be righteous"

#### Galatians 3:25

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 3:26

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 3:27

##### For as many of you who were baptized into Christ

"For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

##### have clothed yourselves with Christ

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor meaning that they have been united to Christ. Alternate translation: "have become united with Christ" or "belong to Christ" or 2) this is a metaphor meaning that they have become like Christ. Alternate translation: "have become like Christ"

#### Galatians 3:28

##### There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female

"God sees no difference between Jew and Greek, slave and free, male and female"

#### Galatians 3:29

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

## Chapter 4

# Galatians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 27, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sonship

Sonship is a complex issue. Scholars have many views on Israel's sonship. Paul uses sonship to teach how being under the law differs from being free in Christ. Not all of Abraham's physical descendants inherited God's promises to him. Only his descendants through Isaac and Jacob inherited the promises. And God only adopts into his family those who follow Abraham spiritually through faith. They are children of God with an inheritance. Paul calls them "children of promise." (See: inherit, promise, spirit and faith and adoption)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word. In ancient Israel, people used it to informally refer to their fathers. Paul "transliterates" its sounds by writing them with Greek letters.

#### Galatians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the Galatian believers that Christ came to redeem those who were under the law, and that he changed them from being slaves into being sons.

##### no different from

"the same as"

#### Galatians 4:2

##### guardians

people with legal responsibility for children

##### managers

people whom others trust to control what is valuable, in this case children

#### Galatians 4:3

##### General Information:

The word "we" here refers to all Christians, including Paul's readers.

##### when we were children

Here "children" is a metaphor for being spiritually immature. Alternate translation: "when we were like children"

##### we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world

Here "enslaved" is a metaphor for being unable to stop one's self from doing something. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elemental principles of the world controlled us" or "we had to obey the elemental principles of the world as if we were slaves"

##### the elemental principles of the world

These words could refer to 1) the laws or moral principles of the world, or 2) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth.

#### Galatians 4:4

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Galatians 4:5

##### redeem

Paul uses the metaphor of a person buying back lost property or buying the freedom of a slave as a picture of Jesus paying for his people's sins by dying on the cross.

#### Galatians 4:6

##### you are sons

Paul uses the word for male children here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

##### God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who cries out, "Abba, Father."

By crying out "Abba, Father" the Spirit assures us that we are God's children and he loves us.

##### God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts

The heart is metonym for the part of a person that thinks and feels. Alternate translation: "God has sent his Son's Spirit to show us how to think and act"

##### his Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### who cries

The Spirit is the one who cries.

##### Abba, Father

This is the way a young child would address his father in Paul's home language, but not in the language of the Galatian readers. To keep the sense of a foreign language, translate this as a word that sounds as much like "Abba" as your language allows.

#### Galatians 4:7

##### you are no longer a slave, but a son

Paul uses the word for male child here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

##### you are no longer a slave ... you are also an heir

Paul is addressing his readers as though they are one person, so "you" here is singular.

##### heir

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

#### Galatians 4:8

##### General Information:

Paul continues to rebuke the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that they are again trying to live under God's laws rather than living by faith.

##### those who are

"those things that are" or "those spirits who are"

#### Galatians 4:9

##### you are known by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows you"

##### how is it that you are turning back to ... principles?

Here "turning back to" is a metaphor for starting to pay attention to something again. This is the first of two rhetorical questions. Alternate translation: "you should not start paying attention to ... principles." or "you should not be concerned with ... principles."

##### elemental principles

See how you translated this phrase in Galatians 4:3.

##### Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

Paul uses this question to rebuke the people for behaving in a way that would make them like slaves. Alternate translation: "It seems that you want to be slaves again." or "You behave as though you wanted to be like slaves again."

##### Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

Here being "enslaved" is a metaphor for being obligated to obey certain rules or customs. Alternate translation: "Do you want to have to obey rules again like a slave has to obey his master?" or "It seems that you want to be controlled all over again!"

#### Galatians 4:10

##### You observe days and new moons and seasons and years

Paul is speaking of their being careful to celebrate certain times, thinking that doing that will make them right with God. Alternate translation: "You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

#### Galatians 4:11

##### may have been for nothing

"may have been useless" or "has not had any effect"

#### Galatians 4:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers how kindly they treated him when he was with them, and he encourages them to continue to trust him while he is not there with them.

##### beg

Here this means to ask or urge strongly. This is not the word used to ask for money or food or physical objects.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### You did me no wrong

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "You treated me well" or "You treated me as you should have"

#### Galatians 4:13

##### disease of the flesh

"physical disease" or "disease of the body"

#### Galatians 4:14

##### and though my physical condition put you to the test

"and though it was difficult for you to see me so physically ill"

##### my physical condition

Paul was speaking about a health problem that he had. We do not know what the problem was.

##### despise

hate very much

#### Galatians 4:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:17

##### to win you over

"to convince you to join them"

##### to shut you out

"to shut you out from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

##### zealous for them

"zealous to do what they tell you to do"

#### Galatians 4:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells believers that grace and law cannot work together.

##### My little children

This is a metaphor for disciples or followers. Alternate translation: "You who are disciples because of me"

##### I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you

Paul uses childbirth as a metaphor for his concern about the Galatians. Alternate translation: "I am in pain as though I were a woman having to give birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you"

#### Galatians 4:20

##### change my tone

Paul wishes he could sound happy instead of sounding angry or confused. Alternate Translation: "change the way I sound" or "change the way I am speaking to you" or "speak to you differently"

#### Galatians 4:21

##### Tell me, you ... law, do you not listen to the law?

Paul is introducing what he will say next. Alternate translation: "I want to tell you something, you ... law; you need to learn what the law really says." or "Let me tell you who ... law what the law really says."

#### Galatians 4:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:23

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins a story to illustrate a truth—that law and grace cannot exist together.

##### These things may be interpreted as an allegory

"This story of the two sons is like a picture of what I will tell you now"

##### as an allegory

An "allegory" is a story in which the people and things in it represent other things. In Paul's allegory, the two women referred to in Galatians 4:22 represent two covenants.

##### women represent

"women are a picture of"

##### Mount Sinai

"Mount Sinai" here is a synecdoche for the law that Moses gave to the Israelites there. Alternate translation: "Mount Sinai, where Moses gave the law to Israel"

##### she bears children into slavery

Paul treats the law as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "the people under this covenant are like slaves who have to obey the law"

#### Galatians 4:25

##### she represents

"she is a picture of"

##### she is in slavery with her children

Hagar is a slave and her children are slaves with her. Alternate translation: "Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and her children are slaves with her"

#### Galatians 4:26

##### is free

"is not bound" or "is not a slave"

#### Galatians 4:27

##### Rejoice

be happy

##### you barren one ... you who are not suffering

Here "you" refers to the barren woman and is singular.

#### Galatians 4:28

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### children of promise

Possible meanings are that the Galatians have become God's children 1) by believing God's promise or 2) because God worked miracles to fulfill his promises to Abraham, first by giving Abraham a son and then by making the Galatians children of Abraham and thus sons of God.

#### Galatians 4:29

##### according to the flesh

This refers to Abraham's becoming Ishmael's father by taking Hagar as a wife. Alternate translation: "by means of human action" or "because of what people did"

##### according to the Spirit

"because of something the Spirit did"

#### Galatians 4:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 4:31

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### of a slave girl, but of the free woman

The words "we are children" are understood from the previous phrase. This can be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "of a slave girl. Rather, we are children of the free woman"

## Chapter 5

# Galatians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues writing about the law of Moses as if it were something that traps or enslaves a person. (See: lawofmoses)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Fruit of the Spirit

The phrase "the fruit of the Spirit" is not plural, even though it begins a list of several things. Translators should keep the singular form if possible. (See: fruit)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Illustrations

Paul uses several metaphors in this chapter to illustrate his points and help explain complicated issues.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace."

Some scholars think Paul teaches that being circumcised causes a person to lose their salvation. Other scholars think Paul means that obeying the law to try to get right with God will keep a person from being saved by grace. (See: grace)

#### Galatians 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul applies the allegory in the previous chapter by reminding the believers to use their liberty in Christ because all the law is fulfilled in loving neighbors as ourselves.

##### For freedom Christ has set us free

"It is so that we can be free that Christ has set us free." It is implied that Christ sets believers free from the old covenant. Here freedom from the old covenant is a metaphor for not being obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: "Christ has set us free from the old covenant so that we might be free" or "Christ has set us free so that we might live as free poeple"

##### Stand firm

Standing firm here represents being determined not to change. How they are not to change can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Do not give in to the arguments of people who teach something else" or "Be determined to stay free"

##### do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery

Here being under control of a yoke of slavery represents being obligated to obey the law. Alternate translation: "do not live like one who is under the control of a yoke of slavery to the law"

#### Galatians 5:2

##### if you let yourselves be circumcised

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for Judaism. Alternate translation: "if you turn to the Jewish religion"

#### Galatians 5:3

##### I testify

"I declare" or "I serve as a witness"

##### to every man who lets himself be circumcised

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for being Jewish. Alternate translation: "to every person who has become a Jew"

##### he is obligated to obey

"he must obey"

#### Galatians 5:4

##### You are cut off from Christ

Here "cut off" is a metaphor for separation from Christ. Alternate translation: "You have ended your relationship with Christ" or "You are no longer united with Christ"

##### you who would be justified by the law

Paul is speaking ironically here. He actually teaches that no one can be justified by trying to do the deeds required by the law. Alternate translation: "all you who think you can be justified by doing the deeds required by the law" or "you who want to be justified by the law"

##### you no longer experience grace

Who that grace comes from can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "God will not be gracious to you"

#### Galatians 5:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and those who oppose the circumcision of Christians. He is probably including the Galatians.

##### For through the Spirit

"This is because through the Spirit"

##### by faith, we eagerly wait for the hope of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) "we are waiting by faith for the hope of righteousness" or 2) "we are waiting for the hope of righteousness that comes by faith."

##### we eagerly wait

"We wait with excitement" or "we wait with great desire"

##### for the hope of righteousness

They confidently expect that God will make them righteous. Alternate translation: "for the righteousness that we hope for" or "for the righteousness that we confidently expect to receive"

#### Galatians 5:6

##### neither circumcision nor uncircumcision

These are metonymy for being a Jew or a non-Jew. Alternate translation: "neither being a Jew nor not being a Jew"

##### neither ... has value, but only faith working through love

"neither ... has value; rather, God is concerned with our faith in him, which we show by loving others"

##### has value

"has meaning" or "gives value to a person" or "makes God think a person is important"

#### Galatians 5:7

##### You were running

"You were practicing what Jesus taught"

#### Galatians 5:8

##### This persuasion does not come from him who calls you

"The one who persuades you to do that is not God, the one who calls you"

##### him who calls you

What he calls them to can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the one who calls you to be his people"

##### persuasion

To persuade someone is to get that person to change what he believes and so to act differently.

#### Galatians 5:9

##### A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough

Paul uses this proverb to mean that a small part of something affects the whole thing. In this case, one person who is teaching something false can harm the entire Christian community.

#### Galatians 5:10

##### you will think nothing different

"you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you"

##### The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment

"God will punish the one who is troubling you"

##### is troubling you

"is causing you to be uncertain about what is truth" or "stirs up trouble among you"

##### whoever he is

Possible meanings are 1) Paul does not know the names of the people who are telling the Galatians that they need to obey the law of Moses or 2) Paul does not want the Galatians to care about whether those who "confuse" them are rich or poor or great or small or religious or not religious.

#### Galatians 5:11

##### Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted?

Paul uses this rhetorical question to show the evidence that he is not proclaiming circumcision. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Brothers, you can see that I am not proclaiming circumcision because I am still being persecuted."

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if I still proclaim circumcision

"if I still proclaim that men have to be circumcised"

##### why am I still being persecuted?

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "why are the Jews still persecuting me?" (See:

##### In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

Paul is describing a situation that has not happened as evidence that he does not preach circumcision. Since the stumbling block of the cross has not been removed, that is evidence that Paul does not preach circumcision.

##### In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

Paul had just said that he was still being persecuted. Here he implies that if the offense of the cross were removed, the Jews would have no reason to persecute him. The relationship between the two sentences can be made clearer by making this implied information explicit. Alternate translation: "If I am still preaching circumcision, then the stumbling block of the cross has been removed, and there is no reason for the Jews to persecute me"

##### In that case

"If I were still proclaiming circumcision" or "If I were still saying that people need to be circumcised"

##### the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

This can be expressed without the passive form. Alternate translation: "the cross would no longer be a stumbling block" or "the cross would no longer cause people to stumble"

##### the stumbling block of the cross

Here the words "stumbling block" are a metaphor for something that angers or offends some people and leads them to reject the truth. In this case, teaching that people are saved by "the cross" offends those who believe a person is saved by obeying the law. These people "stumble" when they reject the teaching about the cross.

##### the cross

Here "the cross" is a metonym for the teaching that because Jesus Christ died on the cross and is alive again, God saves people who believe in Christ. People do not have to be circumcised or become Jews. Alternate translation: "the message about the cross"

#### Galatians 5:12

##### cut themselves off

Possible meanings are 1) literal, to cut off their male organs so as to become eunuchs or 2) metaphorical, completely withdraw from the Christian community.

#### Galatians 5:13

##### For

Paul is giving the reason for his words in Galatians 5:12.

##### you were called to freedom

This can be expressed in an active form. Alternate translation: "Christ has called you to freedom"

##### you were called to freedom

It is implied that Christ has set believers free from the old covenant. Here freedom from the old covenant is a metaphor for not being obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: "You were called to freedom from the old covenant" or "Christ has chosen you to not be obligated to the old covenant"

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### an opportunity for the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for people's sinful nature. The relationship between the opportunity and the sinful nature can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature"

#### Galatians 5:14

##### the whole law is fulfilled in one word

The word "word" here is a metonym for a commandment. Possible meanings are 1) "you can state the whole law in just one commandment, which is this" or 2) "by obeying one commandment, you obey all the commandments, and that one commandment is this."

##### You must love your neighbor as yourself

The words "you," "your," and "yourself" are all singular.

#### Galatians 5:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 5:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how the Spirit gives control over sin.

##### walk by the Spirit

Walking is a metaphor for living. Alternate translation: "conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit" or "live your life in dependence on the Spirit"

##### you will not carry out the desires of the flesh

"you will not do what your sinful nature desires" or "you will not do the sinful things that you, a sinner, want to do"

##### the desires of the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature and is spoken of as if it were a person and wanted to sin. Alternate translation: "what you want to do because of your sinful nature" or "the things you want to do because you are sinful"

#### Galatians 5:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 5:18

##### not under the law

"not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

#### Galatians 5:19

##### the works of the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature. The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person who does things. The abstract noun "works" can be translated with the verb "does." Alternate translation: "the things the sinful nature does" or "the things people do because of their sinful nature" or "the things people do because they are sinful"

#### Galatians 5:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 5:21

##### inherit

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Galatians 5:22

##### the fruit of the Spirit is love ... faith

Here "fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "what the Spirit produces is love ... faith" or "the Spirit produces in God's people love ... faith"

#### Galatians 5:23

##### gentleness ... self-control

The list of characteristics described as "the fruit of the Spirit," which begins in the previous verse with the words "love, joy, peace," ends here. The word "fruit" is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome."

#### Galatians 5:24

##### have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires

Paul speaks of the sinful nature of Christians who have refused to live by it as if it were a person and they have killed it on a cross. Alternate translation: "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed it on a cross"

##### the flesh with its passions and desires

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the sinful nature. The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person that had passions and desires. Alternate translation: "their sinful nature and the things they strongly want to do because of it"

##### passions and desires

If your language does not have different words for "passions" and "desires," you can treat this as a hendiadys or doublet that simply emphasizes the idea of desires that are wrong, that harm the one who desires and if fulfilled would harm other people.

#### Galatians 5:25

##### If we live by the Spirit

"Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

##### walk by the Spirit

"Walk" here is a metaphor for living every day. Alternate translation: "allow the Holy Spirit to guide us so we do things that please and honor God"

#### Galatians 5:26

##### Let us

"We should"

## Chapter 6

# Galatians 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes Paul's letter. His final words address some issues that do not seem to be connected to the rest of his letter.

#### Brothers

Paul writes the words in this chapter to Christians. He calls them "brothers." This refers to Paul's Christian brothers and not his Jewish brothers.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### New Creation

People who are born again are a new creation in Christ. Christians have been given new life in Christ. They have a new nature in them after they come to faith in Christ. To Paul, this is more significant than a person's ancestry. (See: bornagain and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is contrasted with "spirit." In this chapter, flesh is also used to refer to the physical body. (See: flesh and sin and spirit)

#### Galatians 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul teaches believers how they should treat other believers and how God rewards.

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if someone

"if anyone among you"

##### if someone is caught in any trespass

Possible meanings are 1) someone else found that person in the act. Alternate translation: "if someone is discovered in an act of sin" or 2) that person committed the sin without intending to do evil. Alternate translation: "if someone gave in and sinned"

##### you who are spiritual

"those of you who are guided by the Spirit" or "you who are living in the guidance of the Spirit"

##### restore him

"correct the person who sinned" or "exhort the person who sinned to return to a correct relationship with God"

##### in a spirit of gentleness

Possible meanings are 1) that the Spirit is directing the one who is offering correction or 2) "with an attitude of gentleness" or "in a kind way."

##### Be concerned about yourself, ... tempted.

These words treat the Galatians as though they are all one person to emphasize that he is talking to each of them. Alternate translation: "Be concerned about yourselves ... tempted." or "I say to each one of you, 'Be concerned about yourself, ... tempted.'"

##### so you also may not be tempted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that nothing will tempt you also to sin"

#### Galatians 6:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Galatians 6:3

##### For if

"Because if." The words that follow tell why the Galatians should 1) "carry one other's burdens" (Galatians 6:2) or 2) be careful that they themselves are not tempted (Galatians 6:1) or 3) "not become conceited" (Galatians 5:26).

##### he is something

"he is someone important" or "he is better than others"

##### he is nothing

"he is not important" or "he is not better than others"

#### Galatians 6:4

##### Each one should

"Each person must"

#### Galatians 6:5

##### each one will carry his own burden

"each person will be judged by his own work only" or "each person will be responsible for his own work only"

##### each one will

"each person will"

#### Galatians 6:6

##### The one

"The person"

##### the word

"the message," everything God has said or commanded

#### Galatians 6:7

##### for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap

Planting represents doing things that end in some kind of result, and gathering in represents experiencing the results of what one has done. Alternate translation: "for just as a farmer gathers in the fruit of whatever kind of seeds he plants, so everyone experiences the results of whatever he does"

##### whatever a man plants

Paul is not specifying males here. Alternate translation: "whatever a person plants" or "whatever someone plants"

#### Galatians 6:8

##### plants seed to his own flesh

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing sinful actions because of his sinful nature. Alternate translation: "plants seed according to what he wants because of his sinful nature" or "does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature"

##### will reap destruction

God punishing the person is spoken of as if the person were harvesting a crop. Alternate translation: "will receive punishment for what he did"

##### plants seed to the Spirit

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing good actions because he is listening to God's Spirit. Alternate translation: "does the things God's Spirit loves"

##### from the Spirit will reap eternal life

"will receive eternal life as a reward from God's Spirit"

#### Galatians 6:9

##### Let us not become weary in doing good

"We should continue to do good"

##### doing good

doing good to others for their well-being

##### for at the right time

"for in due time" or "because at the time God has chosen"

#### Galatians 6:10

##### So then

"As a result of this" or "Because of this"

##### especially to those

"most of all to those" or "in particular to those"

##### those who belong to the household of faith

"those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

#### Galatians 6:11

##### Connecting Statement:

As Paul closes this letter, he gives one more reminder that the law does not save and that the Galatians should remember the cross of Christ.

##### large letters

This can mean that Paul wants to emphasize 1) the statements that follow or 2) that this letter came from him.

##### with my own hand

Possible meanings are 1) Paul probably had a helper who wrote most of this letter as Paul told him what to write, but Paul himself wrote this last part of the letter or 2) Paul wrote the whole letter himself.

#### Galatians 6:12

##### make a good impression

"cause others to think well of them" or "cause others to think that they are good people"

##### in the flesh

"with visible evidence" or "by their own efforts"

##### to compel

"to force" or "to strongly influence"

##### only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ

"so that the Jews will not persecute them for claiming that the cross of Christ alone is what saves people"

##### the cross of Christ

These words are a metonym for faith that Christ died on the cross so God would forgive his people's sins. Alternate translation: "believing that God forgives his people's sins because Jesus died on the cross"

#### Galatians 6:13

##### so that they may boast about your flesh

"so that they may be proud that they have added you to the people who try to keep the law"

#### Galatians 6:14

##### But may I never boast except in the cross

"I do not ever want to boast in anything other than the cross" or "May I boast only in the cross"

##### the world has been crucified to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I think of the world as already dead" or "I treat the world like a criminal God has killed on a cross"

##### I to the world

The words "have been crucified" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "and I have been crucified to the world"

##### I to the world

Possible meanings are 1) "the world thinks of me as already dead" or 2) "the world treats me like a criminal that God has killed on the cross"

##### the world

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the world, those who care nothing for God or 2) the things that those who care nothing for God think are important.

#### Galatians 6:15

##### neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision is important to God"

##### a new creation

Possible meanings are 1) a new believer in Jesus Christ or 2) the new life of a believer.

#### Galatians 6:16

##### walk according to this standard

The word "walk" here is a metaphor for living life, and a standard is something against which people measure other things. Alternate translation: "live this way"

##### peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God

Possible meanings are 1) that believers in general are the Israel of God or 2) "may peace and mercy be upon Gentile believers and upon the Israel of God" or 3) "may peace be upon those who follow the rule, and may mercy be upon even the Israel of God."

#### Galatians 6:17

##### From now on

This can also mean "Lastly" or "As I end this letter."

##### let no one trouble me

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is commanding the Galatians not to trouble him, "I am commanding you this: do not trouble me," or 2) Paul is telling the Galatians that he is commanding all people not to trouble him, "I am commanding everyone this: do not trouble me," or 3) Paul is expressing a desire, "I do not want anyone to trouble me."

##### trouble me

Possible meanings are 1) "speak of these matters to me" or 2) "cause me hardship" or "give me hard work."

##### for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus

These marks were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus"

#### Galatians 6:18

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

The word "your" here refers to the Galatians and so is plural. The words "your spirit" are a synecdoche and represent the people themselves. Alternate translation: "May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to you"

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

## Chapter 1

# Ephesians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### "I pray"

Paul structures part of this chapter like a prayer of praise to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is teaching the church in Ephesus. He also tells the Ephesians how he is praying for them.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Predestination

Many scholars believe this chapter teaches on a subject known as "predestination." This is related to the biblical concept of "predestine." Some scholars take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some people to eternally save. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject. So translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter. (See: predestine)

#### Ephesians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul names himself as the writer of this letter to the believers at the church at Ephesus. Except where noted, all instances of "you" and "your" refers to the Ephesian believers as well as all believers and so are plural.

##### Paul, an apostle ... to God's holy people in Ephesus

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Alternate translation: "I, Paul, an apostle ... write this letter to you, God's holy people Ephesus"

##### who are faithful in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 1:2

##### Grace to you and peace

This is a common greeting and blessing that Paul often uses in his letters.

#### Ephesians 1:3

##### General Information:

In this book, unless otherwise stated, the words "us" and "we" refer to Paul and the believers in Ephesus, as well as all believers.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul opens his letter by talking about the believers' position and their safety before God.

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### who has blessed us

"for God has blessed us"

##### every spiritual blessing

"every blessing coming from the Spirit of God"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### in Christ

Possible meanings 1) the phrase "in Christ" refers to what Christ has done. Alternate translation: "through Christ" or "through what Christ has done" or 2) "in Christ" is a metaphor referring to our close relationship with Christ. Alternate translation: "by uniting us with Christ" or "because we are united with Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:4

##### from the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "from the time he created the world"

##### holy and blameless

Paul uses two similar words to emphasize moral goodness.

#### Ephesians 1:5

##### God predestined us for adoption

The word "us" refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ. Alternate translation: "God planned long ago to adopt us"

##### God predestined us

"God chose us ahead of time" or "God chose us long ago"

##### for adoption as sons

Here "adoption" refers to becoming part of God's family. Here the word "sons" refers to males and females. Alternate translation: "to be adopted as his children"

##### through Jesus Christ

God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.

##### his will

"God's will"

#### Ephesians 1:6

##### General Information:

The words "his" and "he" refer to God.

##### he has freely given us in the One he loves

"he has kindly given to us by means of the One he loves"

##### the One he loves

"the One he loves, Jesus Christ" or "his Son, whom he loves"

#### Ephesians 1:7

##### riches of his grace

Paul speaks of God's grace as if it were material wealth. Alternate translation: "greatness of God's grace" or "abundance of God's grace"

#### Ephesians 1:8

##### He multiplied this grace to us

"He gave us this great amount of grace" or "He was extremely kind to us"

##### with all wisdom and understanding

Possible meanings are 1) "because he has all wisdom and understanding" 2) "so that we might have great wisdom and understanding"

#### Ephesians 1:9

##### according to what pleased him

Possible meanings are 1) "because he wanted to make it known to us" or 2) "which was what he wanted."

##### which he demonstrated in Christ

"he demonstrated this purpose in Christ"

##### in Christ

"by means of Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:10

##### with a view to a plan

A new sentence can be started here. If you start a new sentence here, you will need to end 1:9 with a period instead of a comma. Alternate translation: "He did this with a view to a plan" or "He did this, thinking about a plan"

##### for the fullness of time

"for when the time is right" or "for the time that he has appointed"

#### Ephesians 1:11

##### we were given an inheritance, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God gave us an inheritance, having predestined us according to his plan. For he works"

#### Ephesians 1:12

##### so that we, who are the first to hope in Christ

The pronoun "we" refer to Paul and the other Jewish believers, not to the Ephesian believers.

##### the first to hope in Christ

"the first people to hope in Christ." They confidently expected that Christ would fulfill God's promises. Alternate translation: "the first to trust in Christ"

##### so that we, ... Christ, would be for the praise of his glory.

Possible meanings are 1) other people would praise God because of the grace he had shown the believers ([Ephesians 1:6](./06.md)). Alternate translation: "we, ... Christ, would live in a way that brings glory to God." or "people would praise God because of the glorious grace he showed us who ... Christ." Or 2) believers would praise God for his glory. Alternate translation: "so that we, ... Christ, would praise him for his glory as long as we live."

#### Ephesians 1:13

##### General Information:

Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

##### the word of truth

Possible meanings are 1) "the message about the truth" or 2) "the true message."

##### were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit

Wax was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him. Alternate translation: "God has sealed you with the Holy Spirit that he promised"

#### Ephesians 1:14

##### the guarantee of our inheritance

What God has promised and will provide is spoken of as though it were property or wealth that one would inherit from a family member. Alternate translation: "the guarantee that we will receive what God has promised"

##### the redemption of the possession

The abstract nouns "redemption" and "possession" can be translated using the verbs "redeem" and "possess," respectively. Possible meanings of "possession" are 1) God possesses. Alternate translation: "God redeems us as his own people" Or 2) Christians possess. Alternate translation: "we take possession of our inheritance"

#### Ephesians 1:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.

#### Ephesians 1:16

##### I have not stopped thanking God

Paul uses "not stopped" to emphasize that he continues to thank God. Alternate translation: "I continue to thank God"

#### Ephesians 1:17

##### a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him

"spiritual wisdom to understand his revelation"

#### Ephesians 1:18

##### that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "eyes of your heart" is a metaphor for one's ability to gain understanding. Alternate translation: "that you may gain understanding and be enlightened"

##### that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened

This may be stated in the active tense. Alternate translation: that God may enlighten your heart" or "that God may enlighten your understanding"

##### may be enlightened

"may be made to see"

##### the hope to which he has called you

Here "the hope" refers to what God wants us to confidently expect. Alternate translation: "what he has called you to confidently expect" or "what he has called you to confidently wait for"

##### to which he has called you

to which he has invited you

##### the riches of his glorious inheritance among all God's holy people

What God has promised and will provide is spoken of as though it were property or wealth that one would inherit from a family member. Alternate translation: "the riches of all the glorious things he has promised to give to all God's holy people"

##### all God's holy people

"all those whom he has set apart for himself" or "all those who belong completely to him"

#### Ephesians 1:19

##### the incomparable greatness of his power

God's power is far beyond all other power.

##### toward us who believe

"for us who believe"

##### the working of the strength of his might

"the strength of his might that is at work for us"

##### the strength of his might

"his mighty strength" or "his very great strength"

#### Ephesians 1:20

##### raised him

"made him alive again"

##### when he raised him from the dead

Here "the dead" is a nominal adjective that means all dead people together in the underworld. To be raised from among them means to become alive again. Alternate translation: "when he brought him back to life" or " when he caused him to be alive again"

##### seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places

The person who sits "at the right hand" of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king at whose right hand or side he sits. This is a metonym of location that represents the authority that the person in that location possesses. Alternate translation: "gave him all authority to rule from heaven"

##### seated him at his right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is. See how you translated this in Ephesians 1:3.

#### Ephesians 1:21

##### far above all rule and authority and power and dominion

Rulers, authorities, dominions, and powers are different terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. Alternate translation: "far above all types of supernatural beings"

##### every name that is named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: Possible meanings are 1) "every name that man gives" or 2) "every name that God gives"

##### name

Possible meanings are 1) title or 2) position of authority.

##### in this age

"at this time"

##### in the age to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 1:22

##### subjected all things under Christ's feet

Here "feet" represents Christ's lordship, authority, and power. Alternate translation: "put all things under Christ's power" or "made all things subject to Christ"

##### head over all things

Here "head" refers to the leader or the one who is in charge. Alternate translation: "ruler over all things"

#### Ephesians 1:23

##### The church is his body

Just as with a human body, the head

##### his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all

Possible meanings are 1) the body is the fullness of Christ. This means Christ fills or gives to the church everything that he has to give, and Christ also fills all things in every way or 2) "the fullness" refers back to "him," that is, Christ in 1:22, and "him" in 1:23 refers to God the Father. This means the full deity of the Father dwells within Christ, and the Father fills all things in every way or 3) the body is the completion of Christ. This means that Christ as the "head" is completed by the church, which is "his body," and Christ fills all things in every way.

## Chapter 2

# Ephesians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on a Christian's life before coming to believe in Jesus. Paul then uses this information to explain how a person's former way of living is distinct from a Christian's new identity "in Christ." (See: faith)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### One body

Paul teaches about the church in this chapter. The church is made of two different groups of people (Jews and Gentiles). They are now one group or "body." The church is also known as the body of Christ. Jews and Gentiles are united in Christ.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### "Dead in trespasses and sins"

Paul teaches that those who are not Christians are "dead" in their sin. Sin binds or enslaves them. This makes them spiritually "dead." Paul writes that God makes Christians alive in Christ.

#### Descriptions of worldly living

Paul uses many different ways to describe how non-Christians act. They "lived according to the ways of this world" and are "living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air," "fulfilling the evil desires of our sinful nature," and "carrying out the desires of the body and of the mind."

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "It is the gift of God"

Some scholars believe "it" here refers to being saved. Other scholars believe that it is faith that is the gift of God. Because of how the Greek tenses agree, "it" here more likely refers to all of being saved by God's grace through faith.

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. The phrase "Gentiles in the flesh" indicates the Ephesians once lived without any concern for God. "Flesh" is also used in this verse to refer to the physical part of man. (See: flesh)

#### Ephesians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers of their past and the way they now are before God.

##### you were dead in your trespasses and sins

This speaks of sinful people being unable to obey God as if they were people who were physically dead.

##### in your trespasses and sins

The words "trespasses" and "sins" have similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize the greatness of the people's sin. They can also be translated using the verbs "trespass" and "sin," respectively. Alternate translation: "because you had trespassed and sinned"

#### Ephesians 2:2

##### in which you once walked

The word "walked" is a metaphor for the way they lived their lives. To say that they "walked in" their trespasses and sins [Ephesians 2:1]

##### according to the ways of this world

The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. Alternate translation: "according to the values of people living in the world" or "following the principles of this present world"

##### according to the ruler of the authorities of the air

"doing what the ruler of the authorities of the air wants them to do." These words expand upon "according to the age of this world." The "ruler of the authorities of the air" is the devil or Satan.

##### the spirit that is working in the sons of disobedience

These words expand upon "the ruler of the authorities of the air." This is another way of speaking of the devil or Satan.

##### the sons of disobedience

#### Ephesians 2:3

##### the desires of the flesh and of the mind

The words "flesh" and "mind" represent the entire person.

##### flesh

This word is a metonym for the body, which is made of flesh. Alternate translation: "body"

##### children of wrath

people with whom God is angry

#### Ephesians 2:4

##### God is rich in mercy

"God is abundant in mercy" or "God is very kind to us"

##### because of his great love with which he loved us

"because of his great love for us" or "because he loves us very much"

#### Ephesians 2:5

##### by grace you have been saved

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God saved us because of his great kindness toward us"

#### Ephesians 2:6

##### God raised us up together with Christ

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Possible meanings are 1) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given Paul and the believers in Ephesus new spiritual life. Alternate translation: "God has given us new life because we belong to Christ" or 2) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Ephesus can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: "We can be sure that God will give us life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3.

##### in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:7

##### in the ages to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 2:8

##### For by grace you have been saved through faith

God's kindness to us is the reason he made it possible for us to be saved from judgment if we simply trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: "God saved you by grace because of your faith in him"

##### this did not

The word "this" refers back to "by grace you have been saved by faith."

#### Ephesians 2:9

##### not from works, so that no one may boast

You may want to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast" or "God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation"

#### Ephesians 2:10

##### in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

##### we would walk in them

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Here "in them" refers to the "good deeds." Alternate translation: "we would always and continually do those good deeds"

#### Ephesians 2:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.

##### Gentiles in the flesh

This refers to people who were not born Jewish.

##### uncircumcision

Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws. Alternate translation: "uncircumcised pagans"

##### circumcision

This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were circumcised. Alternate translation: "circumcised people"

##### what is called the "circumcision" in the flesh made by human hands

Possible meanings are 1) "Jews, who are circumcised by humans" or 2) "Jews, who circumcise the physical body."

##### by what is called

This can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "by what people call" or "by those whom people call"

#### Ephesians 2:12

##### separated from Christ

"not knowing Christ" or "not belonging to Christ"

##### foreigners to citizenship in Israel

"foreigners, not citizens of Israel"

##### strangers to the covenants of the promise

Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God's covenant and promise. Alternate translation: "not belonging to those with whom God made the covenants of the promise"

##### having no hope

They had no reason to confidently expect anything good to happen. Specifically, they had no hope that God would save them and give them eternal life with him. Alternate translation: "not hoping in God" or "not confidently waiting for eternal life with God"

#### Ephesians 2:13

##### But now in Christ Jesus

Paul is marking a contrast between the Ephesians before they believed in Christ and after they believed in Christ.

##### you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ

Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as being far away from God. Belonging to God because of the blood of Christ is spoken of as being brought near to God. Alternate translation: "you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ"

##### by the blood of Christ

The blood of Christ is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: "by Christ's death" or "when Christ died for us"

#### Ephesians 2:14

##### he himself is our peace

The word "himself" here emphasizes that Jesus alone is the reason that Jews and Gentiles can worship God as one peaceful community. Alternate translation: "he is the one who enables us to live in peace with each other"

##### our peace

The word "our" refers to Paul and his readers and so is inclusive.

##### he made us both one

"he made the Jews and Gentiles one"

##### By his flesh

The words "his flesh," his physical body, are a metonym for his body dying. Alternate translation: "By the death of his body on the cross" or "By dying on the cross" or "By his actions as a mortal man"

##### he broke down the dividing wall of hostility

Paul is speaking of Jews and Gentiles being hostile to each other and unable to worship God together as if they were on different sides of a wall. Because Jesus died, Gentiles as well as Jews can now worship God. Alternate translation: "he made it possible for Jews and Gentiles not to be hostile to each other anymore"

#### Ephesians 2:15

##### He set aside the law with its commands and ordinances

Jesus's blood satisfied the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God.

##### one new man

a single new people, the people of redeemed humanity

##### in himself

It is union with Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles.

#### Ephesians 2:16

##### Christ reconciles both peoples

"Christ brings the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace"

##### through the cross

The cross here represents Christ's death on the cross. Alternate translation: "by means of Christ's death on the cross"

##### putting to death the hostility

Stopping their hostility is spoken of as if he killed their hostility. By dying on the cross Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "stopping them from hating one another"

#### Ephesians 2:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Ephesian believers that present Gentile believers are also now made one with the Jewish apostles and prophets; they are a temple for God in the Spirit.

##### proclaimed the good news of peace

"proclaimed the good news that tells that God and people can be at peace with each other" or "proclaimed the good news that is itself the way that people can be at peace with each other"

##### you who were far away

This refers to the Gentiles or non-Jews.

##### those who were near

This refers to the Jews.

#### Ephesians 2:18

##### For through Jesus we both have access

Here "we both" refers the believing Jews

##### in one Spirit

All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are given the right to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy Spirit.

#### Ephesians 2:19

##### you Gentiles ... the household of God

Paul is using a metaphor to tell his Gentile readers that though God formerly did not consider them part of his people, God now considers them part of his people.

##### foreigners and strangers ... fellow citizens ... and members of the household

The words "foreigners" and "strangers" mean almost the same thing, so "strangers and foreigners" may be a doublet. However, Paul is contrasting "foreigners and strangers" with "fellow citizens ... and members." The word "citizens" refers to having political rights, so here "foreigners" probably refers to people living in a country not their own and having no political rights. The word "members" refers to being part of a family, so "strangers" probably refers to people who are not part of a family.

#### Ephesians 2:20

##### You have been built on the foundation

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the foundation, and the believers are the structure.

##### You have been built

This can be stated in the active tense. Alternate translation: "God has built you"

#### Ephesians 2:21

##### the whole building fits together and grows as a holy temple

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a building. In the same way a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together.

##### In him ... in the Lord

"In Christ ... in the Lord Jesus" These metaphors express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:22

##### in him

"in Christ" This metaphor expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

##### you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit

This describes how believers are being put together to become a place where God will permanently live through the power of the Holy Spirit.

##### you also are being built together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is also building you together"

## Chapter 3

# Ephesians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### "I pray"

Paul structures part of this chapter as a prayer to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is both praying for and instructing the church in Ephesus.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a "mystery." The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known. But God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.

#### Ephesians 3:1

##### For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus for you Gentiles—

Paul started a sentence, but he did not finish it.

##### For this reason

This refers to what Paul was speaking about in chapter 2. Alternate translation: "Because of God's grace to you Gentiles" or "Because God has made you Gentiles members of his household"

##### the prisoner of Christ Jesus

Paul was in prison because people did not like him preaching about Christ Jesus. Alternate translation: "the prisoner for Christ Jesus" or "the prisoner for preaching about Christ Jesus"

#### Ephesians 3:2

##### the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you

"the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you"

#### Ephesians 3:3

##### The mystery was made known to me by revelation

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I learned about the mystery by revelation" or "God revealed the mystery to me"

##### The mystery

The mystery is God's plan, which God had not clearly told people about earlier. Alternate translation: "God's secret plan" or "The hidden truth"

##### as I have written briefly

Paul refers to another letter he had written to these people.

#### Ephesians 3:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 3:5

##### In other generations this mystery was not made known to the sons of men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not make this truth known to people in the past"

##### But now it has been revealed by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But now the Spirit has revealed it" or "But now the Spirit has made it known"

##### his holy apostles and prophets

"the apostles and prophets whom God set apart to do this work"

#### Ephesians 3:6

##### the Gentiles are fellow heirs ... through the gospel

This is the hidden truth Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The Gentiles who receive Christ also receive the same things as the Jewish believers.

##### fellow members of the body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

##### through the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise or 2) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

#### Ephesians 3:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 3:8

##### unsearchable

unable to be completely known

##### riches of Christ

Paul speaks of the truth about Christ and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth.

#### Ephesians 3:9

##### the mystery hidden for ages in God, who created all things

This can be stated in active form. "God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past"

#### Ephesians 3:10

##### This plan was made known through the church

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made this plan known by means of the church"

##### rulers and authorities

These words share similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God's wisdom. See how you translated similar words in [Ephesians 1:21]

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3.

##### the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God

God's great and complex wisdom is spoken of as if it were an object with many sides. Alternate translation: "the great and complex wisdom of God"

#### Ephesians 3:11

##### according to the eternal plan

"in keeping with the eternal plan" or "consistent with the eternal plan"

#### Ephesians 3:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul praises God in his sufferings and prays for these Ephesian believers.

##### we have boldness

"we are without fear" or "we have courage"

##### access with confidence

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this access is into God's presence. Alternate translation: "access into God's presence with confidence" or "freedom to enter into God's presence with confidence"

##### confidence

"certainty" or "assurance"

#### Ephesians 3:13

##### for you, which is your glory

Here "your glory" is a metonym for the pride they should feel or will feel in the future kingdom. The Christians in Ephesus should be proud of what Paul is suffering in prison. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "for you. This is for your benefit" or "for you. You should be proud of this"

#### Ephesians 3:14

##### For this reason

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: "Because God has done all this for you"

##### I bend my knees to the Father

Bowed knees are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer. Alternate translation: "I bow down in prayer to the Father" or "I humbly pray to the Father"

#### Ephesians 3:15

##### from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named

The act of naming here probably also represents the act of creating. Alternate translation: "who created and named every family in heaven and on earth"

#### Ephesians 3:16

##### I pray that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power

"I pray that God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power." This is the first item for which Paul bends his knees and prays.

##### would grant

"would give" or "would cause"

##### in your inner person

Here the phrase "inner person" refers to the personality, heart, or soul. Alternate translation: "in your heart" or "in your soul"

#### Ephesians 3:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues the prayer he began in Ephesians 3:14.

##### I pray that Christ may live in your hearts through faith and that you may be rooted and founded in his love

This is the second item which Paul prays that God will "grant" the Ephesians "according to the riches of his glory." The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16).

##### that Christ may live in your hearts through faith

Here "heart" represents a person's inner being, and "through" expresses the means by which Christ lives within the believer. Christ lives in the hearts of believers because God graciously allows them to have faith. Alternate translation: "that Christ may live within you because you trust in him"

##### you may be rooted and founded in his love

Paul speaks of their faith as if it were a tree that has deep roots or a house built on a solid foundation. Alternate translation: "that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone because of his love"

#### Ephesians 3:18

##### that you might be able to understand

This is the first item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love (Ephesians 3:17).

##### all God's holy people

"all believers in Christ" or "all the saints"

##### the width, the length, the height, and the depth

Possible meanings are 1) these words describe the greatness of God's wisdom, Alternate translation: "how very wise God is" or 2) these word describe the intensity of Christ's love for us. Alternate translation: "how much Christ loves us"

#### Ephesians 3:19

##### to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge

This is the second item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love (Ephesians 3:17).

##### that you may be filled with all the fullness of God

This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (Ephesians 3:14). The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16), and the second is that they "can understand" (Ephesians 3:18).

#### Ephesians 3:20

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" in this book continue to include Paul and all believers.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.

##### Now to him who

"Now to God, who"

##### to do far beyond all that we ask or think

"to do much more than all that we ask or think" or "to do things that are much greater than all that we ask him for or think about"

#### Ephesians 3:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 4

# Ephesians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 8, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spiritual gifts

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians after they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. Paul lists here only some of the spiritual gifts. (See: faith)

#### Unity

Paul considers it very important that the church is united. This is a major theme of this chapter.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Old man and new man

The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.

#### Ephesians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Because of what Paul has been writing to the Ephesians, he tells them how they should live their lives as believers and again emphasizes that believers are to agree with each other.

##### as the prisoner for the Lord

"as someone who is in prison because of his choice to serve the Lord"

##### walk worthily of the calling

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life.

#### Ephesians 4:2

##### to live with great humility and gentleness and patience

"to always be very humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Ephesians 4:3

##### to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace

Here Paul speaks of "peace" as if it were a bond that ties people together. This is a metaphor for being united with other people by living peacefully with them. Alternate translation: "to live peacefully with one another and remain united, as the Spirit made possible"

#### Ephesians 4:4

##### one body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### one Spirit

"one Holy Spirit"

##### you were called in one hope of your calling

Here the word "call" means "invite" or "choose." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God invited you to one hope when he invited you" or "God chose you to hope for one thing when he chose you"

##### one hope

Here the word "hope" refers to the thing to hope for. Alternate translation: "one thing to hope for" or "one thing to confidently wait for"

#### Ephesians 4:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 4:6

##### Father of all ... over all ... through all ... and in all

The word "all" here means "everything."

#### Ephesians 4:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds believers of the gifts that Christ gives believers to use in the church, which is the whole body of believers.

##### To each one of us grace has been given

This can be stated using an active form. Alternate translation: "God has given grace to each one of us" or "God gave a spiritual gift to each believer"

##### grace has been given

Here grace refers to a spiritual gift or ability. Alternate translation: "a spiritual gift has been given" or "ability has been given"

##### according to the measure of the gift of Christ

Here "the gift of Christ" refers to a gift that Christ has given. Alternate translation: "according to the amount that Christ has given us"

#### Ephesians 4:8

##### General Information:

The quotation here is from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. King David wrote this psalm.

##### When he ascended on high

"When he went up to the very high place"

#### Ephesians 4:9

##### he ascended

"he went up"

##### he also descended

"he also came down"

##### into the lower regions of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) the lower regions are a part of the earth. Alternate translation: "into the lowest place on earth" or 2) "the lower regions" is another way of referring to the earth. Alternate translation: "into the lower regions, the earth"

#### Ephesians 4:10

##### that he might fill all things

"so that he might be present everywhere in his power"

##### fill

"complete" or "satisfy"

#### Ephesians 4:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 4:12

##### to equip God's holy people

"to prepare the people he has set apart" or "to provide the believers with what they need"

##### for the work of service

"so they can serve others"

##### for the building up of the body of Christ

Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies.

##### building up

"improvement" or "strengthening"

##### body of Christ

The "body of Christ" refers to all of the individual members of Christ's Church.

#### Ephesians 4:13

##### reach the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God

The believers need to know Jesus as the Son of God if they are to be united in faith and mature as believers.

##### reach the unity of faith

"become equally strong in faith" or "become united together in faith"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### become mature

"become mature believers"

##### mature

"fully developed" or "grown up" or "complete"

#### Ephesians 4:14

##### be children

Paul refers to believers who have not grown spiritually as if they were children who have had very little experience in life. Alternate translation: "be like children"

##### tossed back and forth ... carried away by every wind of doctrine

This speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows wrong teaching as if that believer were a boat that the wind is blowing in different directions on the water.

##### by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes

"by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies"

#### Ephesians 4:15

##### into him who is the head

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy.

#### Ephesians 4:16

##### Christ builds the whole body ... makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy.

##### by every supporting ligament

A "ligament" is a strong band that connects bones or holds organs in place in the body.

#### Ephesians 4:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Ephesians what they should no longer do now that they as believers are sealed by the Holy Spirit of God.

##### Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord

"Because what I have just said, I will say something more to strongly encourage you because we all belong to the Lord"

##### that you must no longer walk as the Gentiles walk, in the futility of their minds

The word "walk" here is a metaphor for the way a person lives his life, especially whether he does right or does wrong. Alternate translation: "stop living the way the Gentiles live, with their worthless thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:18

##### They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God

Here "darkened in their understanding" is a metaphor that means not to be able to understand the truth. And "alienated from the life of God" is a metaphor that means to not have the life that God gives. Alternate translation: "They do not understand what is true, and they do not have the life that God gives to people"

##### because of the ignorance that is in them

"because they refuse to learn what is true"

##### because of the hardness of their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds. The phrase "hardness of their hearts" is a metaphor that means "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "because they are stubborn" or "because they refuse to listen to God"

#### Ephesians 4:19

##### have committed themselves to sensuality

Paul speaks of these people as if they were objects that they themselves were giving to other people, and he speaks of the way they want to satisfy their physical desires as if it were the person to whom they give themselves. Alternate translation: "only want to satisfy their physical desires"

##### they practice every kind of uncleanness with greed

"they are continually practicing every kind of uncleanness"

##### uncleanness

This word for ritual uncleanness is a metaphor for the guilt that comes from sinful acts. It can be translated using the word "unclean." Alternate translation: "sinful act"

#### Ephesians 4:20

##### But that is not how you learned about Christ

The word "that" refers to the way the Gentiles live, as described in [Ephesians 4:17-19](./17.md). This emphasizes that what the believers learned about Christ was the opposite of that. Alternate translation: "But what you learned about Christ was not like that"

#### Ephesians 4:21

##### I assume that you have heard ... and that you were taught

Paul knows that the Ephesians have heard and been taught.

##### you were taught in him

Possible meanings are 1) "Jesus's people have taught you" or 2) "someone has taught you because you are Jesus's people."

##### as the truth is in Jesus

"as everything about Jesus is true"

#### Ephesians 4:22

##### to put off what belongs to your former manner of life

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. Alternate translation: "to stop living according to your former manner of life"

##### to put off the old man

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. Alternate translation: "to stop living as your former self did"

##### old man

The "old man" refers to the "old nature" or "former self."

##### that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires

Paul speaks of the sinful human nature as if it were a dead body falling apart in its grave.

#### Ephesians 4:23

##### to be renewed in the spirit of your minds

This may be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts" or "to allow God to give you new attitudes and thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:24

##### in true righteousness and holiness

"truly righteous and holy"

#### Ephesians 4:25

##### get rid of lies

"stop telling lies"

##### we are members of one another

"we belong to one another" or "we are members of God's family"

#### Ephesians 4:26

##### Be angry and do not sin

"You may get angry, but do not sin" or "If you become angry, do not sin"

##### Do not let the sun go down on your anger

The sun going down represents nightfall or the end of the day. Alternate translation: "You must stop being angry before night comes" or "Do not let the sun set while you are still angry with someone"

#### Ephesians 4:27

##### Do not give an opportunity to the devil

"Do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin"

#### Ephesians 4:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 4:29

##### harmful talk

This refers to speech that is cruel or rude.

##### for the edification of those

"for encouraging those" or "for strengthening those"

##### give grace to the hearers

"help those who hear you"

#### Ephesians 4:30

##### do not grieve

"do not distress" or "do not upset"

##### for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption

The Holy Spirit assures believers that God will redeem them. Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a mark that God puts on believers to show that he owns them. Alternate translation: "for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption" or "for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption" or

##### the day of redemption

Here redemption is a metaphor for causing people to no longer be affected by sin. The idea in the noun "redemption" can be expressed with a phrase. Alternate translation: "the day when God will redeem his people" or "the day when God will free his people from sin"

#### Ephesians 4:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his instructions on what believers should not do and ends with what they must do.

##### Put away all bitterness, rage, anger

"Put away" here is a metaphor for not continuing to have certain attitudes or behaviors. Alternate translation: "You must not allow these things to be part of your life: bitterness, rage, anger"

##### rage

intense anger

#### Ephesians 4:32

##### Be kind

"Instead, be kind"

##### tenderhearted

"gentle and compassionate towards others"

## Chapter 5

# Ephesians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 14.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Darkness and Light

In this chapter Paul teaches how God's people should live. He uses the image of darkness to represent sin and the image of light to represent righteousness.

#### Christ and his church as a model for marriage

Paul teaches husbands and wives to relate to each other as Christ and the church relate to each other.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Wives, submit to your husbands

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### Ephesians 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell the believers how they should and should not live as God's children.

##### Therefore be imitators of God

"Therefore you should do what God does." Therefore refers back to Ephesians 4:32 which tells why believers should imitate God, because Christ forgave believers.

##### as beloved children

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his children. Alternate translation: "as dearly loved children imitate their fathers" or "because you are his children and he loves you dearly"

#### Ephesians 5:2

##### walk in love

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. Alternate translation: "live a life of love" or "always love each other"

##### a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God

"like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God"

#### Ephesians 5:3

##### But sexual immorality or any kind of uncleanness or of greed must not even be named among you

"Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are are guilty of sexual immorality or any kind of uncleanness or greed"

##### any kind of uncleanness

"any moral uncleanness"

##### uncleanness

This word for ritual uncleanness is a metaphor for the guilt that comes from sinful acts. It can be translated using the word "unclean." Alternate translation: "sinful act"

#### Ephesians 5:4

##### Instead there should be thanksgiving

"Instead you should thank God"

#### Ephesians 5:5

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Ephesians 5:6

##### empty words

words that have no truth to them

#### Ephesians 5:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:8

##### For you were once darkness

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin lack spiritual understanding.

##### but now you are light in the Lord

Just as one can see in the light, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God.

##### Walk as children of light

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: "Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 5:9

##### the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior"

#### Ephesians 5:10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:11

##### Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness

Paul speaks of the useless, sinful things that unbelievers do as if they are evil deeds people do in the dark so no one will see them. Alternate translation: "Do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers"

##### unfruitful works

actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable. Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good.

##### expose them

Speaking against the works of darkness is spoken of as bringing them out into the light so that people can see them. Alternate translation: "bring them out into the light" or "uncover them" or "show and tell people how wrong these actions are"

#### Ephesians 5:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:13

##### when anything is exposed by the light

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the light shines on something"

#### Ephesians 5:14

##### General Information:

It is unknown if this quotation is a combination of quotations from the prophet Isaiah or a quotation from a hymn sung by the believers.

##### anything that becomes visible is light

"people can clearly see everything that comes into the light." Paul makes this general statement in order to imply that God's Word shows people's actions to be good or bad. The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were light that could reveal the character of something.

##### Awake, you sleeper, and arise from the dead

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond, or 2) Paul is addressing the Ephesian believers and using death as a metaphor for their spiritual weakness.

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### you sleeper ... shine on you

These instances of "you" refer to the "sleeper" and are singular.

##### Christ will shine on you

Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what actually is there that darkness hid.

#### Ephesians 5:15

##### Look carefully how you walk—not as unwise but as wise

Wise people can identify sin, so they guard themselves from it and flee from it. Alternate translation: "Therefore you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person"

#### Ephesians 5:16

##### Redeem the time

Using time wisely is spoken of as if it were redeeming the time. Alternate translation: "Do the best things you can with your time" or "Use time wisely" or "Put time to its best use"

##### because the days are evil

The word "days" is a metonym for what people do during those days. Alternate translation: "because the people around you are doing all kinds of evil things"

#### Ephesians 5:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends his instructions on how all believers should live.

##### And do not get drunk with wine

"You should not get drunk from drinking wine"

##### Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit

"Instead, you should be controlled with the Holy Spirit"

#### Ephesians 5:19

##### psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

Possible meanings are that 1) Paul is using these words as a merism for "all sorts of songs to praise God" or 2) Paul is listing specific forms of music.

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### hymns

These are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.

##### spiritual songs

Possible meanings are 1) these are songs that Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment or 2) "spiritual songs" and "hymns" are doublets and mean basically the same thing.

##### with all your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or inner being. The phrase "with all your heart" means to do something with enthusiasm. Alternate translation: "with all of your being" or "enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 5:20

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"because you belong to our Lord Jesus Christ" or "as people who belong to our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### Ephesians 5:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to one another (Ephesians 5:21). He starts with instructions to wives and husbands on how they should act toward each other.

#### Ephesians 5:23

##### the head of the wife ... the head of the church

The word "head" represents the leader.

#### Ephesians 5:24

##### Christ, so also wives to their husbands

"Christ, so also must wives be subject to their husbands" or "Christ. In the same way, wives also must be subject to their husbands"

#### Ephesians 5:25

##### love your wives

"unselfishly serve your wives"

##### gave himself up

"allowed people to kill him"

##### for her

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: "for us"

#### Ephesians 5:26

##### sanctify her ... cleansed her

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: "sanctified us ... cleansed us"

##### having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to God making Christ's people clean by God's word and through water baptism in Christ or 2) Paul speaks of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with water.

#### Ephesians 5:27

##### without stain or wrinkle

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in good condition. He uses the same idea in two ways to emphasize the church's purity.

##### holy and blameless

The word "blameless" means basically the same thing as "holy." Paul uses the two together to emphasize the church's purity.

#### Ephesians 5:28

##### as their own bodies

That people love their own bodies may be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "as husbands love their own bodies"

#### Ephesians 5:29

##### his own flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the body that is made of flesh. Alternate translation: "his own body"

##### but nourishes

"but feeds"

#### Ephesians 5:30

##### we are members of his body

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own body, for which he would naturally care.

#### Ephesians 5:31

##### General Information:

The quotation is from the writings of Moses in the Old Testament. The words "his" and "himself" refer to a male believer who marries.

#### Ephesians 5:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 5:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 6

# Ephesians 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Armor of God

This extended metaphor describes how Christians can protect themselves when spiritually attacked.

#### Ephesians 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to each other. He gives instructions to children, fathers, workers, and masters.

##### Children, obey your parents in the Lord

"Children, as followers of the Lord, obey your parents" or "Children, it is your duty as Christians to obey your parents"

#### Ephesians 6:2

##### General Information:

Here Paul quotes Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so "your" is singular. You may need to translate it as plural.

#### Ephesians 6:3

##### General Information:

Here Paul continues quoting Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so "you" is singular. You may need to translate it as plural.

#### Ephesians 6:4

##### do not provoke your children to anger

"do not make your children angry" or "do not cause your children to be angry"

##### raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord

The abstract nouns "discipline" and "instruction" can be expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: "teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 6:5

##### be obedient to

"obey." This is a command.

##### your masters according to the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the physical world. Alternate translation: "your human masters" or "your masters in this world"

##### deep respect and trembling

The phrase "deep respect and trembling" uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of slaves honoring their masters.

##### and trembling

Here "trembling" is an exaggeration used to emphasize how important it is that slaves obey their masters. Alternate translation: "and fear" or "as though you were shaking with fear"

##### in the honesty of your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or intentions. Alternate translation: "with honesty" or "with sincerity"

#### Ephesians 6:6

##### as slaves of Christ

Serve your earthly master as though your earthly master were Christ himself.

##### from your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for "thoughts" or "intentions." Alternate translation: "with sincerity" or "enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 6:7

##### Serve with all your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for "thoughts" or "inner being." Alternate translation: "Serve with all of your being" or "Be completely dedicated when you serve"

#### Ephesians 6:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Ephesians 6:9

##### treat your slaves in the same way

"you also must treat your slaves well" or "just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves" (Ephesians 6:5)

##### You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven

"You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven"

##### there is no partiality with him

"he judges everyone the same way"

#### Ephesians 6:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives instructions to make believers strong in this battle we live for God.

##### the strength of his might

"his great power." See how "the strength of his power" is translated near the end of Ephesians 1:21.

#### Ephesians 6:11

##### Put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the scheming plans of the devil

Christians should use all the resources God gives to stand firmly against the devil just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks.

##### the scheming plans

"the tricky plans"

#### Ephesians 6:12

##### flesh and blood

This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies.

##### against the powers over this present darkness

Here it is implied that "the powers" refers to powerful spiritual beings. Here "darkness" is a metaphor for things that are evil. Alternate translation: "against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people during this present evil time"

#### Ephesians 6:13

##### Therefore put on the whole armor of God

Christians should use the protective resources God gives them in fighting the devil in the same way a soldier puts on armor to protect himself against his enemies.

##### so that you may be able to stand ... to stand firm

The words "stand" and "stand firm" represent successfully resisting or fighting something. Alternate translation: "so that you may be able to resist evil ... to remain strong"

##### in the evil day

Here the word "day" can refer to any short period of time, even a period longer than a day. Alternate translation: "at the evil time" or "when people do evil deeds"

#### Ephesians 6:14

##### Stand firm

Successfully resist or fight against something. You may need to make explicit what it is that the readers are to resist. See how you translated these words in [Ephesians 6:13]

##### the belt of truth

Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together.

##### truth ... righteousness

We are to know the truth and act in ways that please God.

##### the breastplate of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) the gift of righteousness covers a believer's heart just as a breastplate protects the chest of a soldier or 2) our living as God wants us gives us a clear conscience that protects our hearts the way a breastplate protects a soldier's chest.

#### Ephesians 6:15

##### and with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace

Just as a soldier wears shoes to give him solid footing, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace in order to be ready to proclaim it.

#### Ephesians 6:16

##### In all circumstances take up the shield of faith

The believer must use the faith that God gives for protection when the devil attacks just as a soldier uses a shield to protect him from enemy attacks.

##### the flaming arrows of the evil one

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like flaming arrows shot at a soldier by an enemy.

#### Ephesians 6:17

##### take the helmet of salvation

Salvation given by God protects the believer's mind just as a helmet protects the head of a soldier.

##### the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God

The writer speaks of God's instructions to his people as if they were a sword that his people could use to fight an enemy,

#### Ephesians 6:18

##### With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit

"Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests"

##### To this end

"For this reason" or "Keeping this in mind." This refers to the attitude of taking God's armor.

##### be watching with all perseverance as you offer prayers for all God's holy people

"be watching, and even when it is difficult, keep praying for all the believers "

#### Ephesians 6:19

##### Connecting Statement:

In his closing, Paul asks them to pray for his boldness in telling the gospel while he is in prison and says he is sending Tychicus to comfort the Corinthians (6:21).

##### that a message might be given to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God might give me the word" or "God might give me the message"

##### when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness

"when I speak. Pray that I boldly explain"

##### open my mouth

This is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: "speak"

#### Ephesians 6:20

##### It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains

The words "in chains" are a metonym for being in prison. Alternate translation: "I am now in prison because I am a representative of the gospel"

##### so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak

The word "pray" is understood from verse 19. Alternate translation: "so pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should" or "pray that I may speak the gospel as boldly as I should"

#### Ephesians 6:21

##### Tychicus

Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul.

##### the beloved brother

"my beloved brother"

##### make everything known

"will tell you everything about me"

#### Ephesians 6:22

##### so that he may encourage your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. Alternate translation: "so that he may encourage you"

#### Ephesians 6:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

#### Ephesians 6:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 1

# Philippians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul includes a prayer in the beginning of this letter. At that time, religious leaders sometimes began informal letters with a prayer.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The day of Christ

This probably refers to the day when Christ returns. Paul often connected the return of Christ with motivating godly living. (See: godly)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. This statement in verse 21 is a paradox: "to die is gain." In verse 23 Paul explains why this is true. ([Philippians 1:21](../../php/01/21.md))

#### Philippians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul and Timothy wrote this letter to the church at Philippi. Because Paul writes later in the letter saying "I," it is generally assumed that he is the author and that Timothy, who is with him, writes as Paul speaks. All instances of "you" and "your" in the letter refer to the believers in the Philippian church and are plural. The word "our" probably refers to all believers in Christ, including Paul, Timothy, and the Philippian believers.

##### Paul and Timothy ... and deacons

If your language has a particular way of introducing the authors of a letter, use it here.

##### Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus

"Paul and Timothy, who are servants of Christ Jesus"

##### all God's holy people in Christ Jesus

This refers to those whom God chose to belong to him by being united to Christ. Alternate translation: "all God's people in Christ Jesus" or "all those who belong to God because they are united with Christ"

##### the overseers and deacons

"the leaders of the church"

#### Philippians 1:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 1:3

##### every time I remember you

Here "remember you" means when Paul thinks about the Philippians while he is praying. Alternate translation: "every time I think of you"

#### Philippians 1:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 1:5

##### because of your partnership in the gospel

Paul is expressing thanks to God that the Philippians have joined him in teaching people the gospel. He may have been referring to them praying for him and sending money so that he could travel and tell others. Alternate translation: "because you are helping me proclaim the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:6

##### I am confident

"I am sure"

##### he who began ... you

"God, who began ... you,"

#### Philippians 1:7

##### It is proper for me

"It is right for me" or "It is good for me"

##### I have you in my heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions. This idiom expresses strong affection. Alternate translation: "I love you very much"

##### have been my partners in grace

"have been partakers of grace with me" or "have shared in grace with me"

#### Philippians 1:8

##### God is my witness,

"God knows" or "God understands"

##### with the compassion of Christ Jesus

The abstract noun "compassion" can be translated with the verb "love." Alternate translation: "and I love you as Christ Jesus dearly loves us all"

#### Philippians 1:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul prays for the believers in Philippi and talks about the joy there is in suffering for the Lord.

##### may abound

Paul speaks of love as if it were objects that people could obtain more of. Alternate translation: "may increase"

##### in knowledge and all understanding

Here "understanding" refers to understanding about God. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as you learn and understand more about what pleases God"

#### Philippians 1:10

##### approve

This refers to examining things and taking only those that are good. Alternate translation: "test and choose"

##### what is excellent

"what is most pleasing to God"

##### sincere and blameless

The words "sincere" and "blameless" mean basically the same thing. Paul combines them to emphasize moral purity. Alternate translation: "completely blameless"

#### Philippians 1:11

##### filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ

Being filled with something is a metaphor that represents being characterized by it or by habitually doing it. Possible meanings of "fruit of righteousness" are that 1) it is a metaphor that represents righteous behavior. Alternate translation: "habitually doing what is righteous because Jesus Christ enables you" or 2) it is a metaphor that represents good deeds as a result of being righteous. Alternate translation: "habitually doing good works because Jesus makes you righteous"

##### to the glory and praise of God

Possible meanings are 1) "Then other people will see how you honor God" or 2) "Then people will praise and give honor to God because of the good things they see you do." These alternate translations would require a new sentence.

#### Philippians 1:12

##### General Information:

Paul says that two things have happened because of "the progress of the gospel": many people inside and outside the palace have found out why he is in prison, and other Christians are no longer afraid to proclaim the good news.

##### Now I want

Here the word "Now" is used to mark a new part of the letter.

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women, because all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.

##### what has happened to me

Paul is talking about his time in prison. Alternate translation: "what I suffered because I was put into prison for preaching about Jesus"

##### has really served to advance the gospel

"has caused more people to hear the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:13

##### my chains in Christ came to light

"Chains in Christ" here is a metonym for being in prison for the sake of Christ. "Came to light" is a metaphor for "became known." Alternate translation: "It became known that I am in prison for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ came to light throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the palace guards and many other people in Rome know that I am in chains for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ

Here Paul uses the preposition "in" to mean "for the sake of." Alternate translation: "my chains for the sake of Christ" or "my chains because I teach people about Christ"

##### my chains

Here the word "chains" is a metonym for imprisonment. Alternate translation: "my imprisonment"

##### palace guard

This was a group of soldiers that helped protect the Roman emperor.

#### Philippians 1:14

##### Most of the brothers have far more confidence in the Lord

Some modern translations read, "Most of the brothers in the Lord have far more confidence."

##### fearlessly speak the word

"fearlessly speak God's message"

#### Philippians 1:15

##### Some indeed even proclaim Christ

"Some people preach the good news about Christ"

##### out of envy and strife

"because they do not want people listening to me, and they want to cause trouble"

##### and also others out of good will

"but other people do it because they are kind and they want to help"

#### Philippians 1:16

##### The latter

"Those who proclaim Christ out of good will"

##### I am put here for the defense of the gospel

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "God chose me to defend the gospel" or 2) "I am in prison because I defend the gospel."

##### for the defense of the gospel

"to teach everyone that the message of Jesus is true"

#### Philippians 1:17

##### But the former

"But the others" or "But the ones who proclaim Christ out of envy and strife"

##### while I am in chains

Here the phrase "in chains" is a metonym for imprisonment. Alternate translation: "while I am imprisoned" or "while I am in prison"

#### Philippians 1:18

##### What then?

Paul uses this question to tell how he feels about the situation he wrote about in [Philippians 15-17]

##### Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed

"As long as people preach about Christ, it does not matter if they do it for good reasons or for bad reasons"

##### in this I rejoice

"I am happy because people are preaching about Jesus"

##### I will rejoice

"I will celebrate" or "I will be glad"

#### Philippians 1:19

##### this will result in my deliverance

"because people proclaim Christ, God will deliver me"

##### in my deliverance

"Deliverance" here is an abstract noun that refers to one person bringing another person to a safe place. You may have to specify that it is God whom Paul expects to deliver him. Alternate translation: "in my being brought to a safe place" or "in God bringing me to a safe place"

##### through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ

"because you are praying and the Spirit of Jesus Christ is helping me"

##### Spirit of Jesus Christ

"Holy Spirit"

#### Philippians 1:20

##### It is my eager expectation and hope

Here the word "expectation" and the phrase "hope" mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how strong his expectation is. Alternate translation: "I eagerly and confidently hope"

##### with all boldness

You may need to state explicitly the missing clause in this elliptical sentence, that Paul will act boldly. You may also need to translate the abstract noun "boldness" as a clause. Alternate translation: "because I act with all boldness" or "after I have acted boldly"

##### Christ will be exalted in my body

The phrase "in my body" is a metonym for what happens to Paul's body. This includes what he does if he lives and what others may do to him, even if they kill him. This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "I will honor Christ no matter what happens to my body" or 2) "people will praise Christ no matter what I do or what others do to me"

##### whether by life or by death

"whether I live or die" or "if I go on living or if I die"

#### Philippians 1:21

##### For to me

These words are emphatic. They indicate that this is Paul's personal experience.

##### to live is Christ

Here pleasing and serving Christ is spoken of as Paul's only purpose for living. Alternate translation: "to go on living is an opportunity to please Christ"

##### to die is gain

Here death is spoken of as "gain." Possible meanings for "gain" are 1) Paul's death will help spread the message of the gospel or 2) Paul will be in a better situation.

#### Philippians 1:22

##### But if I am to live in the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the body, and "living in the flesh" is a metonym for being alive. Alternate translation: "But if I am to remain alive in my body" or "But if I continue to live"

##### that means fruitful labor for me

The words "fruitful labor" here refer to work that has good results. Alternate translation: "that means I will be able to do work that produces good results"

##### Yet which to choose?

"But which should I choose?"

#### Philippians 1:23

##### For I am hard pressed between the two

Paul speaks of how hard it is for him to choose between living and dying as if two heavy objects, like rocks or logs, were pushing on him from opposite sides at the same time. Your language might prefer the objects to pull rather than push. Alternate translation: "I am under tension. I do not know if I should choose to live or to die"

##### My desire is to depart and be with Christ

Paul uses a euphemism here to show that he is not afraid of dying. Alternate translation: "I would like to die because I would go to be with Christ"

#### Philippians 1:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 1:25

##### Being convinced of this

"Since I am sure that it is better for you that I stay alive"

##### I know that I will remain

"I know that I will continue to live" or "I know that I will keep on living"

#### Philippians 1:26

##### so that in me

"so that because of me" or "so that because of what I do"

#### Philippians 1:27

##### that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel

The phrases "standing firm in one spirit" and "with one mind striving together" share similar meanings and emphasize the importance of unity.

##### with one mind striving together

"striving together with one mind." Agreeing with one another is spoken of as having one mind. Alternate translation: "agreeing with one another and striving together"

##### striving together

"working hard together"

##### for the faith of the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) "to spread the faith that is based on the gospel" or 2) "to believe and live as the gospel teaches us"

#### Philippians 1:28

##### Do not be frightened in any respect

This is a command to the Philippian believers. If your language has a plural command form, use it here.

##### This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God

"Your courage will show them that God will destroy them. It will also show you that God will save you"

##### and this from God

"and this is from God." Possible meanings are the word "this" refers to 1) the believers' courage or 2) the sign or 3) destruction and salvation.

#### Philippians 1:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 1:30

##### having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me

"suffering in the same way that you saw me suffer, and that you hear I am still suffering"

## Chapter 2

# Philippians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations, like the ULB, set apart the lines of verses 6-11. These verses describe the example of Christ. They teach important truths about the person of Jesus.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Practical instructions

In this chapter Paul gives many practical instructions to the church in Philippi.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "If there is any"

This appears to be a type of statement that expresses something that may or may not be true. However, in this chapter it expresses something that is true. The translator may also translate this phrase as "Since there is."

#### Philippians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul advises the believers to have unity and humility and reminds them of Christ's example.

##### If there is any encouragement in Christ

"If Christ has encouraged you" or "If you are encouraged because of Christ"

##### if there is any comfort provided by love

The phrase "by love" probably refers to Christ's love for the Philippians. Alternate translation: "if his love has given you any comfort" or "if his love for you has comforted you in any way"

##### if there is any fellowship in the Spirit

"if you have fellowship with the Spirit"

##### if there are any tender mercies and compassions

"if you have experienced many of God's acts of tender mercy and compassion"

#### Philippians 2:2

##### make my joy full

Paul speaks here of joy as if it were a container that can be filled. Alternate translation: "cause me to rejoice greatly"

#### Philippians 2:3

##### Do nothing out of ambition or empty conceit

"Do not serve yourselves or think of yourselves as better than others"

##### ambition

"selfish ambition"

#### Philippians 2:4

##### Let each of you look out not only for his own interests, but also for the interests of others

"Do not care only about what you need and desire, but also about what others need and desire"

#### Philippians 2:5

##### Have this mind in yourselves which also was in Christ Jesus

"Have the same attitude that Christ Jesus had" or "Think about one another the way Christ Jesus thought of people"

#### Philippians 2:6

##### he existed in the form of God

"everything that is true of God was true of him"

##### did not consider his equality with God as something to hold on to

Here "equality" refers to "equal status" or "equal honor." Holding onto equality with God represents demanding that he continue to be honored as God is honored. Christ did not do that. Though he did not cease to be God, he ceased to act as God. Alternate translation: "did not think that he had to have the same status as God"

#### Philippians 2:7

##### he emptied himself

Paul speaks of Christ as if he were a container in order to say that Christ refused to act with his divine powers during his ministry on earth.

##### he was born in the likeness of men

"he was born a human being" or "he became a human being"

#### Philippians 2:8

##### became obedient to the point of death

Paul speaks of death here in a figurative way. The translator can understand "to the point of death" either as a metaphor of location

##### death, even death on a cross

“death, that is, death on a cross” or “death—more specifically, death on a cross”

#### Philippians 2:9

##### the name that is above every name

Here "name" is a metonym that refers to rank or honor. Alternate translation: "the rank that is above any other rank" or "the honor that is above any other honor"

##### above every name

The name is more important, more to be praised than any other name.

#### Philippians 2:10

##### at the name of Jesus every knee should bow

Here "knee" is a synecdoche for the whole person. Bowing, or kneeling, is a symbolic act of worship. Alternate translation: "at the name of Jesus everyone will bow to worship him" )

##### under the earth

Possible meanings are 1) the place where people go when they die or 2) the place where demons dwell.

#### Philippians 2:11

##### every tongue

Here "tongue" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "every person" or "every being"

##### to the glory of God the Father

Here the word "to" expresses result: "with the result that they will praise God the Father"

#### Philippians 2:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the Philippian believers and shows them how to live the Christian life before others and reminds them of his example.

##### my beloved

"my dear fellow believers"

##### in my presence

"when I am there with you"

##### in my absence

"when I am not there with you"

##### work out your own salvation

To "work out" one's salvation means to work in a way that is appropriate to one's salvation or to work in a way that shows one's salvation. The abstract noun "salvation" can be expressed with a phrase about God saving people. Alternate translation: "work in a way that is appropriate because you have been saved" or "work hard to do the good things that show that God has saved you"

##### salvation with fear and trembling

Paul uses the words "fear" and "trembling" together to show the attitude of reverence that people should have for God. Alternate translation: "salvation, trembling with fear" or "salvation with deep reverence"

#### Philippians 2:13

##### both to will and to work for his good pleasure

"so that you will want to do what pleases him and will be able to do what pleases him"

#### Philippians 2:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 2:15

##### blameless and pure

The words "blameless" and "pure" are very similar in meaning and are used together to strenghten the idea. Alternate translation: "completely innocent"

##### in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation

The words "crooked" and "depraved" are used together to emphasize that the people are very sinful. Alternate translation: "among very sinful people"

##### in which you shine as lights in the world

Shining as lights in the world represents living in a good and righteous way so that people in the world can see that God is good and true. Alternate translation: "among whom your righteous lives are like lights in the world"

#### Philippians 2:16

##### Hold on to the word of life

"Hold on to" here means "firmly believe." Alternate translation: "Continue to firmly believe the word of life"

##### the word of life

"the message that brings life" or "the message that shows how to live the way God wants you to"

##### on the day of Christ

This refers to when Jesus comes back to set up his kingdom and rule over the earth. Alternate translation: "when Christ returns"

##### I did not run in vain or labor in vain

The phrases "run in vain" and "labor in vain" here mean the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how hard he has worked to help people believe in Christ. Alternate translation: "I did not work so hard for nothing"

##### run

The scriptures often use the image of walking to represent conducting one's life. Running is living life intensely.

#### Philippians 2:17

##### But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all

Paul speaks of his death as if he were a drink offering which is poured upon the animal sacrifice to honor God. What Paul means is that he would gladly die for the Philippians if that would make them more pleasing to God. Alternate translation: "But, even if the Romans kill me and it is as if my blood pours out as an offering, I will be glad and rejoice with you all if my death will make your faith and obedience more pleasing to God"

#### Philippians 2:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 2:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the Philippian believers about his plan to send Timothy soon and that they should treat Epaphroditus as special.

##### But I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon

Paul wanted to send Timothy to them, but he would do so only if the Lord Jesus wanted him to do that. Alternate translation: "But I plan to send Timothy to you soon, as long as that is what the Lord Jesus wants me to" or "But if it is the will of the Lord Jesus, I expect to send Timothy to you soon"

#### Philippians 2:20

##### For I have no one else like him, who

"No one else here loves you as much as he does: he"

#### Philippians 2:21

##### For they all

Here the word "they" refers to a group of people Paul does not feel he can trust to send to Philippi. Paul is expressing his displeasure with those who should have been able to go but are not going because Paul does not trust them to fulfill their mission.

#### Philippians 2:22

##### as a son with his father, so he served with me

Fathers and sons love each other and work together. Timothy was not really Paul's son, but he worked with Paul as a son works with his father.

##### in the gospel

Here "the gospel" stands for the activity of telling people about Jesus. Alternate translation: "in telling people about the gospel"

#### Philippians 2:23

##### I hope to send him as soon as I see how things will go with me

Paul wanted to send Timothy soon, but he would wait until he saw how things would go with himself. He would send Timothy immediately after that. Alternate translation: "I hope to send him immediately after I see how things will go with me"

##### I hope to send him

"I plan to send him" or "I expect to send him"

##### I see how things will go with me

"I find out what happens concerning me" or "I learn what will happen to me"

#### Philippians 2:24

##### I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon

"I am sure, if it is the Lord's will, that I will also come soon"

#### Philippians 2:25

##### Epaphroditus

This is the name of a man sent by the Philippian church to minister to Paul in prison.

##### fellow worker and fellow soldier

Here Paul is speaking of Epaphroditus as if he were a soldier. He means that Epaphroditus is trained and is dedicated to serving God, no matter how great the hardship he must suffer. Alternate translation: "fellow believer who works and struggles along with us"

##### your messenger and servant for my needs

"who brings your messages to me and helps me when I am in need"

#### Philippians 2:26

##### he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all

"he was very worried and wanted to be with you all"

#### Philippians 2:27

##### sorrow upon sorrow

The cause of the sorrow can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the sorrow of losing him added to the sorrow I already have from being in prison"

#### Philippians 2:28

##### I can have less sorrow

"I will not be as sad as I have been"

#### Philippians 2:29

##### welcome him

The word "him" refers to Epaphroditus. Alternate translation: "gladly receive Epaphroditus"

##### in the Lord with all joy

"as a fellow believer in the Lord with all joy" or "with the great joy we have because the Lord Jesus loves us"

#### Philippians 2:30

##### he came near death

"he almost died." Paul speaks of dying as if death were a place that people could go to.

##### so that he could bring to completion what was lacking in your service to me

The meanings of the abstract nouns "completion" and "service" can be expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: "so that he could complete what you could not do in serving me"

## Chapter 3

# Philippians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In verses 4-8, Paul lists how he qualifies for being considered a righteous Jew. In every way, Paul was an exemplary Jew. But he contrasts this with the greatness of knowing Jesus. (See: righteous)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Dogs

The people of the ancient Near East used dogs as an image to refer to people in a negative way. Not all cultures use the term "dogs" in this way.

#### Resurrected Bodies

We know very little about what people will be like in heaven. Paul teaches here that Christians will have some kind of glorious body and will be free from sin. (See: heaven and sin)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Prize

Paul uses an extended illustration to describe the Christian life. The goal of the Christian life is attempting to grow to be like Christ until a person dies. We can never achieve this goal perfectly, but we must strive for it.

#### Philippians 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

In order to warn his fellow believers about Jews who would try to get them to follow the old laws, Paul gives his own testimony about when he persecuted believers.

##### Finally, my brothers

"Now moving along, my brothers" or "Concerning other matters, my brothers"

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### rejoice in the Lord

"be happy because of all the Lord has done"

##### For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me

"It is no trouble for me to write these things again to you"

##### and it keeps you safe

Here "it" refers to Paul's writing the same things twice. Alternate translation: "doing this keeps you safe because these teachings will protect you from those who teach what is not true"

#### Philippians 3:2

##### General Information:

Paul begins to warn the Philippians against people who say that Christians have to obey the Jewish ceremonial law. Obedience to this law is symbolized by the synecdoche of circumcision.

##### Watch out for

"Beware of" or "Be on guard against"

##### the dogs ... those evil workers ... the mutilation

These are three different ways of describing the same group of false teachers. Paul is using strong expressions to show how he feel about these Jewish teachers who claim to be Christians.

##### dogs

The word "dogs" was used by the Jews to refer to those who were not Jews. They were considered unclean. Paul speaks of the false teachers as though they were dogs, to insult them. If you have a different animal in your culture that is considered unclean or whose name is used as an insult, you could use this animal instead.

##### the mutilation

This exaggeration plays on the idea of circumcision. Paul speaks of those who wanted to trim off the foreskin as if they were totally mutilating the body. The action of mutilation is a metonym for the people who would perform the action. Alternate translation: "those who mutilate the body"

#### Philippians 3:3

##### General Information:

Paul continues warning the Philippians against people who say that Christians have to obey the Jewish ceremonial law. Obedience to this law is symbolized by the synecdoche of circumcision.

##### For it is we who are

Paul uses "we" to refer to himself and all true believers in Christ, including the Philippian believers.

##### the circumcision

Paul uses this phrase to refer to believers in Christ who are not physically circumcised but are spiritually circumcised, which means they have received the Holy Spirit through faith. Alternate translation: "the truly circumcised ones" or "truly God's people"

##### have no confidence in the flesh

Here "flesh" is a metonym for anything concerning one's body, such as his ancestry, whether or not he has been circumcised, and what he does. To have no confidence in the flesh means to understand that those things cannot make a person right with God. Alternate translation: "do not trust in anything about ourselves to make us right with God"

#### Philippians 3:4

##### Even so, I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more

Here Paul describes a situation that could be true but is not. Here "flesh" is a metonym for anything concerning one's body, such as one's ancestry, whether or not one has been circumcised, and what one does. To have confidence in the flesh means to believe that those things can make a person right with God. See how you translated a similar phrase in 3:3. Alternate translation: "However, I could trust in something about myself to make me right with God. If anyone thinks he can trust in anything about himself, I could trust in myself even more"

##### I myself

Paul uses "myself" for emphasis. Alternate translation: "certainly I"

#### Philippians 3:5

##### I was circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "A priest circumcised me"

##### on the eighth day

"seven days after I was born"

##### a Hebrew of Hebrews

Possible meanings are 1) "a Hebrew son with Hebrew parents" or 2) "the purest Hebrew."

##### with regard to the law, a Pharisee

The Pharisees were committed to obeying all of the law. Being a Pharisee showed that Paul was committed to obeying all of the law. Alternate translation: "as a Pharisee, I was committed to obeying all of the law"

#### Philippians 3:6

##### As for zeal, I persecuted the church

Paul's zeal was his enthusiasm for honoring God. He believed that by persecuting the church he proved how zealous he was for God. Alternate translation: "I had so much zeal for God that I persecuted the church" or "Because I wanted so much to honor God, I persecuted the church"

##### I persecuted the church

"I attacked Christians"

##### as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless

"Righteousness under the law" refers to being righteous by obeying the law. Paul obeyed the law so carefully that he believed that no one could find any part of it that he disobeyed. Alternate translation: "I was so righteous by obeying the law that I was blameless"

#### Philippians 3:7

##### whatever things were a profit for me

Paul is referring here to the praise he received for being an eager Pharisee. He speaks of this praise as if he had viewed it in the past as a businessman's profit. Alternate translation: "anything that other Jews praised me for"

##### profit ... loss

These are common business terms. If many people in your culture do not understand formal business terms, you could translate these terms as "things that made my life better" and "things that made my life worse."

##### I have considered them as loss

Paul speaks of that praise as if he were now viewing it as a business loss instead of a profit. In other words, Paul says that all his religious acts of righteousness are worthless before Christ.

#### Philippians 3:8

##### In fact

"Really" or "Truly"

##### now I count

The word "now" emphasizes how Paul has changed since he quit being a Pharisee and became a believer in Christ. Alternate translation: "now that I have trusted in Christ, I count"

##### I count all things to be loss

Paul is continuing the business metaphor from [Philippians 3:7]

##### because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord

"because knowing Christ Jesus my Lord is worth so much more"

##### so that I may gain Christ

"so that I may have only Christ"

#### Philippians 3:9

##### be found in him

The phrase "be found" is an idiom that emphasizes the idea of "be." Alternate translation: "be truly united with Christ"

##### not having a righteousness of my own from the law

Paul knows that he cannot become righteous by obeying the law.

##### but that which is through faith in Christ

The word "that" refers to righteousness. Paul knows that he can become righteous only by believing in Christ. Alternate translation: "but having the righteousness that comes by believing in Christ"

#### Philippians 3:10

##### the power of his resurrection

"his power that gives us life"

##### the fellowship of his sufferings

"what it is like to suffer as he suffered" or "what it is like to participate in suffering with him"

##### becoming like him in his death

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants to be like Christ by dying as Christ died or 2) Paul wants his desire to sin to become as dead as Jesus was before he was raised.

#### Philippians 3:11

##### so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead

The word "somehow" means Paul does not know what is going to happen to him in this life, but whatever happens, it will result in eternal life. Alternate translation: "so that no matter what happens to me now, I will come back to life after I die"

#### Philippians 3:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul urges the believers at Philippi to follow his present example because of heaven and the new bodies that wait for believers. He speaks of how he works as hard as he can to be like Christ, knowing that God will allow him to live forever in heaven, as if he were a runner racing for the finish line.

##### obtained these things

These include knowing Christ, knowing the power of his resurrection, sharing in Christ's suffering, and being united with Christ in his death and resurrection ([Philippians 3:8-11](./08.md)).

##### or am already perfect

"so I am not yet perfect" or "so I am not yet mature"

##### but I press on

"but I keep trying"

##### to take hold of that for which I was taken hold of by Christ Jesus

Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands, and Jesus choosing Paul to belong to him is spoken of as if Jesus grasped Paul with his hands. This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "to receive these things for which Jesus claimed me as his own"

#### Philippians 3:13

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### I myself have yet taken hold of it

Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands. Alternate translation: "all these things belong to me yet"

##### Forgetting what is behind and straining forward to what is ahead,

Like a runner in a race is no longer concerned about the part of the race that is completed but only focuses on what is ahead, Paul speaks of setting aside his religious works of righteousness and only focusing on the race of life that Christ has set before him to complete. Alternate translation: "I do not care what I have done in the past; I only work as hard as I can on what is ahead."

#### Philippians 3:14

##### I press on toward the goal with a view to the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus

Paul speaks of the way he does all he can to serve Christ and live in obedience to him as if he were a racer running as fast as he can to win a race. Alternate translation: "I do all I can to be like Christ, like a runner racing to the finish line, so that I may belong to him, and God may call me to himself after I die"

##### the upward call

Possible meanings are that Paul speaks of living eternally with God as if God were to call Paul to ascend 1) to heaven as Jesus did or 2) the steps to the podium where winners of races received prizes, as a metaphor for meeting God face to face and receiving eternal life.

#### Philippians 3:15

##### All of us who are mature, let us think this way

Paul wants his fellow believers to have the same desires he listed in [Philippians 3:8-11](./08.md). Alternate translation: "I encourage all of us believers who are strong in the faith to think the same way"

##### God will also reveal that to you

"God will also make it clear to you" or "God will make sure you know it"

#### Philippians 3:16

##### General Information:

Paul uses "we" to include the Philippian believers.

##### Nevertheless, let us live up to what we have already attained.

"However, let us keep living by the same standard we have achieved."

##### Nevertheless

"No matter what else is true"

#### Philippians 3:17

##### Be imitators of me

"Do what I do" or "Live as I live"

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### those who are walking by the example that you have in us

"those who already are living as we live" or "those who already are doing what we do"

#### Philippians 3:18

##### Many are walking ... as enemies of the cross of Christ

These words are Paul's main thought for this verse.

##### Many are walking

A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: "Many are living" or "Many are conducting their lives"

##### those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears

Paul interrupts his main thought with these words that describe the "many." You can move them to the beginning or end of the verse if you need to.

##### I have often told you

"I have told you many times"

##### am telling you with tears

"am telling you with great sadness"

##### as enemies of the cross of Christ

Here "the cross of Christ" refers to Christ's suffering and death. The enemies are those who say they believe in Jesus but are not willing to suffer or die like Jesus did. Alternate translation: "in a way that shows they are actually against Jesus, who was willing to suffer and die on a cross"

#### Philippians 3:19

##### Their end is destruction

"Someday God will destroy them." The last thing that happens to them is that God will destroy them.

##### their god is their stomach

Here "stomach" refers to a person's desires for physical pleasure. Calling it their god means that they want these pleasures more than they want to obey God. Alternate translation: "they desire food and other physical pleasures more than they desire to obey God"

##### their glory is in their shame

Here "shame" stands for the actions that the people should be ashamed about but are not. Alternate translation: "they are proud of the things that should cause them shame"

##### They think about earthly things

Here "earthly" refers to everything that gives physical pleasure and does not honor God. Alternate translation: "All they think about is what will please themselves rather than what will please God"

#### Philippians 3:20

##### General Information:

By Paul's use of "our" and "we" here, he includes himself and the believers in Philippi.

##### our citizenship is in heaven

Possible meanings are 1) "we are citizens of heaven" or 2) "our homeland is heaven" or 3) "our true home is heaven."

#### Philippians 3:21

##### He will transform our lowly bodies

"He will change our weak, earthly bodies"

##### into bodies formed like his glorious body

"into bodies like his glorious body"

##### body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "body. He will change our bodies with the same power he uses to control all things"

## Chapter 4

# Philippians 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "My joy and my crown"

Paul had helped the Philippians become spiritually mature. As a result, Paul rejoiced and God honored him and his work. He considered discipling other Christians and encouraging them to grow spiritually as important to Christian living. (See: spirit and disciple)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Euodia and Syntyche

Apparently these two women disagreed with each other. Paul was encouraging them to agree.

#### Philippians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues with some specific instructions to the believers in Philippi on unity and then gives instructions to help them live for the Lord.

##### Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for

"So, my fellow believers whom I love and greatly desire to see"

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### my joy and crown

Paul uses the word "joy" to mean that the Philippian church is the cause of his happiness. A "crown" was made of leaves, and a man wore it on his head as a sign of honor after he won an important game. Here the word "crown" means the Philippian church brought honor to Paul before God. Alternate translation: "You give me joy because you have believed in Jesus, and you are my reward and honor for my work"

##### in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends

"continue living for the Lord in the way that I have taught you, dear friends"

#### Philippians 4:2

##### I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche

These are women who were believers and helped Paul in the church at Philippi. Alternate translation: "I beg Euodia, and I beg Syntyche"

##### be of the same mind in the Lord

The phrase "be of the same mind" means to have the same attitude or opinion. Alternate translation: "agree with each other because you both believe in the same Lord"

#### Philippians 4:3

##### General Information:

When Paul says, "my true companion," the word "you" is singular. Paul does not say the name of the person. He calls him that to show he worked with Paul to spread the gospel.

##### Yes, I ask you, my true companion

Here "you" refers to the "true fellow worker" and is singular.

##### true companion

This metaphor is from farming, where two animals would be bound to the same yoke, and so they work together. Alternate translation: "fellow worker"

##### along with Clement

Clement was a man who was a believer and worker in the church at Philippi.

##### whose names are in the Book of Life

"whose names God has written in the Book of Life"

#### Philippians 4:4

##### Rejoice in the Lord

"Be happy because of all the Lord has done." See how you translated this in Philippians 3:1.

#### Philippians 4:5

##### The Lord is near

Possible meanings are 1) The Lord Jesus is near to the believers in spirit or 2) the day the Lord Jesus will return to the earth is near.

#### Philippians 4:6

##### in everything by prayer and earnest appeal with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God

"whatever happens to you, ask God for everything you need with prayer and thanks"

#### Philippians 4:7

##### the peace of God

"the peace that God gives"

##### which surpasses all understanding

"which is more than we can understand"

##### will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ

This presents God's peace as a soldier who protects our hearts and thoughts from worrying. Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "will be like a soldier and guard your emotions and thoughts in Christ" or "will protect you in Christ and will keep you from worrying about the troubles of this life"

##### your thoughts

The word translated "thoughts" can also be translated "minds," referring to the part of the person that thinks.

#### Philippians 4:8

##### Finally

As Paul ends his letter, he gives a summary of how believers should live to have peace with God.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### whatever things are lovely

"whatever things are pleasing"

##### whatever things are of good report

"whatever thing people admire" or "whatever things people respect"

##### if there is anything excellent

"if they are morally good"

##### if there is anything to be praised

"and if they are things that people praise"

#### Philippians 4:9

##### that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me

"that I have taught and shown you"

#### Philippians 4:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to thank the Philippians for a gift that they have sent him.

#### Philippians 4:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to explain that he is thanking them for this gift simply because he is grateful, not because he needs them to give him anything more.

##### to be content

"to be satisfied" or "to be happy"

##### in all circumstances

"no matter what my situation is"

#### Philippians 4:12

##### I know what it is to be poor ... to have plenty

Paul knows how to live happily having either no possessions or many possessions.

##### how to be well fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize that he has learned how to be content in any situation.

#### Philippians 4:13

##### I can do all things through him who strengthens me

"I can do all things because Christ gives me strength"

#### Philippians 4:14

##### in my difficulties

Paul speaks of his hardships as if they were a place that he is in. Alternate translation: "when things became difficult"

#### Philippians 4:15

##### the beginning of the gospel

Paul uses the word "gospel" here to mean his preaching of the gospel. Alternate translation: "as I began to preach the gospel"

##### no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone

This double negative emphasizes that the Philippians were unique. Alternate translation: "the only church that supported me in the matter of giving and receiving was you" or "you were the only church that sent me money or helped me"

#### Philippians 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philippians 4:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues explaining that he is thanking the Philippians for their gift to him simply because he is grateful, not because he needs them to give him anything more (see Philippians 3:11).

##### It is not that I seek the gift

Paul is explaining that his reason for writing about gifts is not that he hopes that they will give him more gifts. Alternate translation: "My reason for writing this is not that I want you to give me more"

##### I seek the fruit that increases to your credit

Paul explains his reason for writing about gifts. Here "fruit that increases to you credit" is a metaphor for either 1) more good deeds that can be recorded for the Philippians. Alternate translation: "Rather I want God to recognize the increasing good deeds that you do" or 2) more blessings for the good things that the Philippians do. Alternate translation: "Rather I want God to bless you more because of the good deeds that you do"

#### Philippians 4:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes thanking the Philippians for their gift (see Philippians 3:11) and assures them that God will take care of them.

##### I have received everything in full

Possible meanings are 1) Paul has received everything that the Philippians sent or 2) Paul is using humor to continue the business metaphor from Philippians 3:8 and saying that this part of the letter is a receipt for commercial goods that Epaphroditus delivered.

##### even more

"even more than necessary"

##### They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God

Paul speaks of the gift from the Philippian church as if it were a sacrifice offered to God on an altar. Paul implies that the church's gift is very pleasing to God, like the sacrifices that the priests burned, which had a smell that pleased God. Alternate translation: "I assure you these gifts are very pleasing to God, like an acceptable sacrifice"

#### Philippians 4:19

##### will meet all your needs

This phrase translates the same word that is translated "have been well supplied" in verse 18. It is an idiom meaning "will provide everything you need"

##### according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus

"from his glorious riches that he gives through Christ Jesus"

#### Philippians 4:20

##### Now to our God

The word "Now" marks the closing prayer and the end of this section of the letter.

#### Philippians 4:21

##### The brothers

This refers to those people who were either ministering with or to Paul.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Philippians 1:12.

##### all God's holy people

Some versions translate this as "every holy person" or "every saint."

#### Philippians 4:22

##### All God's holy people

Some versions translate this as "All the believers" or "All of the saints."

##### especially those of Caesar's household

This refers to servants who worked in Caesar's palace. "especially the fellow believers who work in the palace of Caesar"

#### Philippians 4:23

##### with your spirit

Paul refers to the believers by using the word "spirit," which is the part of a person that can relate to God. Alternate translation: "with you"

## Chapter 1

# Colossians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

As in a typical letter, Paul begins his letter in verses 1-2 by introducing Timothy and himself to the Christians in Colossae.

Paul writes much of this chapter around two subjects: who Christ is, and what Christ has done for the Christian.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Secret truth

Paul refers to a "secret truth" in this chapter. The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown. But God has now revealed it. Part of this involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God. (See: reveal)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Images for Christian living

Paul uses many different images to describe Christian living. In this chapter, he uses the images of "walking" and "bearing fruit." (See: fruit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Verse 24 is a paradox: "Now I rejoice in my sufferings for you." People do not usually rejoice when they suffer. But in verses 25-29 Paul explains why his suffering is good. ([Colossians 1:24](../../col/01/24.md))

#### Colossians 1:1

##### General Information:

Though this letter is from Paul and Timothy to the Colossian believers, later in the letter Paul makes it clear that he is the writer. Most likely Timothy was with him and wrote the words down as Paul spoke. Throughout this letter the words "we," "our," and "ours" include the Colossians unless noted otherwise. The words "you," "your," and "yours" refer to the Colossian believers and so are plural unless noted otherwise.

##### an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God

"whom God chose to be an apostle of Christ Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 1:3

##### We give ... our Lord ... we always

These words do not include the Colossians.

#### Colossians 1:4

##### We have heard

Paul is excluding his audience.

##### your faith in Christ Jesus

"your belief in Christ Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:5

##### because of the hope reserved for you in heaven

Here "hope" stands for what the believer can confidently expect, that is, the things that God has promised to do for all believers. These things are spoken of as if they were physical objects that God was keeping in heaven for the believers to possess later. Alternate translation: "because of what you hope for that is reserved for you in heaven" or "because you are confident that God, who is in heaven, will do the many good things that he has promised you"

##### the word of truth, the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) "the message about the truth, the gospel" or 2) "the true message, the gospel."

#### Colossians 1:6

##### this gospel is bearing fruit and is growing

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "This gospel is having good results, more and more" or "This gospel is having increasing results"

##### in all the world

This is a generalization referring to the part of the world that they knew about. Alternate translation: "throughout the world"

##### the grace of God in truth

"the true grace of God"

#### Colossians 1:7

##### our beloved ... our behalf

The word "our" does not include the Colossians.

##### gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who

"gospel. It is exactly what you learned from Epaphras, who is our beloved fellow servant and who" or "gospel. It is exactly what Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, taught you. He"

##### Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf

Here "on our behalf" means that Epaphras was doing work for Christ that Paul himself would have done if he were not in prison.

##### Epaphras

the man who preached the gospel to the people in Colossae

#### Colossians 1:8

##### to us

The word "us" does not include the Colossians.

##### your love in the Spirit

Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a place in which the believers were located. Alternate translation: "how the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love believers"

#### Colossians 1:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Because the Spirit has enabled them to love others, Paul prays for them and tells them here how he prays for them.

##### Because of this love

"Because the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love other believers"

##### we heard ... we have not stopped ... We pray

The word "we" does not include the Colossians.

##### from the day we heard this

"from the day Epaphras told us these things"

##### that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will

Paul speaks of the Colossian believers as though they were containers. Alternate translation: "that God will fill you with what you need to know so that you can do his will"

##### in all wisdom and spiritual understanding

"so that the Holy Spirit will make you wise and able to understand what God wants you to do"

#### Colossians 1:10

##### that you will walk in a manner that is worthy of the Lord and that pleases him

Walking here signifies behavior in life. Alternate translation: "that you will live as God expects you to and so please him"

##### by bearing fruit in every good work and growing

Paul is speaking of the Colossian believers as if they were trees or plants that grow and bear fruit. Alternate translation: "by making sure that all of your good works please God and people and growing"

##### growing in the knowledge of God

"always getting to know God better" or "always learning more about God"

#### Colossians 1:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 1:12

##### made you able to have a share

"allowed you to share"

##### made you able

Here Paul is focusing on his readers as receivers of God's blessings. But he does not mean that he himself has no share in those blessings.

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### in light

This idea is opposite to the idea of the dominion of darkness in the next verse. Alternate translation: "in the glory of his presence"

#### Colossians 1:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the ways in which Christ is excellent.

##### He has rescued us

"God has rescued us"

##### the dominion of darkness

"Darkness" here is a metaphor for evil. Alternate translation: "the evil forces that controlled us"

##### his beloved Son

"Son" is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Colossians 1:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 1:15

##### He is the image of the invisible God

"His Son is the image of the invisible God." Here "image" does not mean a representation of something that is visible. Instead, "image" here means that by knowing the Son, we learn what God the Father is like.

##### the firstborn of all creation

The expression "firstborn" does not refer to when Jesus was born. Instead, it refers to his position as the eternal Son of God the Father. In this sense, "firstborn" is a metaphor meaning "most important." Jesus is the most important and the unique Son of God. Alternate translation: "God's Son, the most important one over all creation"

##### of all creation

The noun "creation" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "over all that God created"

#### Colossians 1:16

##### For in him all things were created

Here "him" refers to the Son. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For in him God created all things"

##### all things were created through him and for him

Here "him" refers to the Son. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God created all things through him and for him"

#### Colossians 1:17

##### He himself is before all things

"It is he who existed before all things"

##### in him all things hold together

Paul is speaking here of the Son controlling all things as if he were physically holding them together. "he holds everything together"

#### Colossians 1:18

##### He is the head

"Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the head"

##### He is the head of the body, the church

Paul speaks of Jesus's position over the church as if he were the head on the human body. As the head rules the body, so does Jesus rule the church.

##### the beginning

"the originating authority." He is the first chief or founder.

##### firstborn from among the dead

Jesus is the first person to die and come back to life, never to die again.

#### Colossians 1:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 1:20

##### the Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### through the blood of his cross

"by means of the blood Jesus shed on the cross"

##### the blood of his cross

Here "blood" stands for the death of Christ on the cross.

##### whether things on earth or things in heaven

This phrase explains what "all things" means. Some languages might prefer to put it closer to "all things."

#### Colossians 1:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul makes it clear that God has now revealed that Christ exchanges the sin of Gentile believers for his holiness.

##### At one time you also

"There was a time when you Colossian believers also"

##### were alienated

were no longer living in loving relationship with God

#### Colossians 1:22

##### blameless, and above accusation

Paul uses two concepts, "blameless" and "above accusation," that mean almost the same thing to emphasize the idea of perfection. Alternate translation: "holy and perfect"

##### before him

This expression of location stands for "in God's view" or "in God's mind"

#### Colossians 1:23

##### not moved away from the hope of the gospel that you heard

To be moved away from the hope of the gospel is a metaphor meaning to stop hoping in what God promised in the gospel. Alternate translation: "continuing in the hope of the gospel that you heard" or "continuing to hope in the promises of God that you heard about in the gospel"

##### not moved away from the hope of the gospel that you heard

The hope of the gospel is the confident expectation that God will do what the gospel teaches he will do. Alternate translation: "continuing to confidently expect what is promised in the gospel"

##### which was proclaimed

This can be translated with an active phrase. Alternate translation: "which believers proclaimed"

##### to every person created under heaven

God created everyone. The phrase "under heaven" is a metonym for in the world. Alternate translation: "to every person in the world"

##### the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant

Paul was a servant of God. Alternate translation: "the gospel that I, Paul, serve God by proclaiming"

#### Colossians 1:24

##### I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ

Paul speaks about the suffering that he continues to experience. He may be acknowledging here that there is much suffering that he and all other Christians must endure before Christ comes again, and that Christ in a spiritual sense joins with them in experiencing these hardships. Paul certainly does not mean that Christ's sufferings alone were not enough to provide salvation for the believers.

##### I fill up in my flesh

Paul speaks of his body as if it were a container that could hold suffering.

##### for the sake of his body, which is the church

Paul often speaks of the church, the group of all Christian believers, as if it were Christ's body.

#### Colossians 1:25

##### to fulfill the word of God

This means to bring about the purpose of God's gospel message, which is that it be preached and believed. "Word of God" here is a metonym for the message from God. Alternate translation: "to be obedient to what God has instructed"

#### Colossians 1:26

##### This is the mystery that was hidden

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is the mystery that God had hidden"

##### for ages and for generations

The words "ages" and "generations" refer to the time period from the creation of the world until the time when the gospel was preached.

##### now has been revealed to God's holy people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "now God has revealed it to his holy people"

#### Colossians 1:27

##### the riches of the glory of this mystery

Paul speaks of the value of this mystery about God as if it were a treasure of material wealth. Alternate translation: "the greatness of the glory of this mystery"

##### which is Christ in you

The mystery that God has made known is "Christ in you." Paul speaks of believers as if they were containers in which Christ is present. This is one of his ways of expressing the union of the believers with Christ. Alternate translation: "which is that Christ is in you" or "which is that Christ is united to you"

##### the hope of glory

The fact that Christ is in believers gives believers hope that they will share in God's glory. Alternate translation: "so you can confidently expect to share in God's glory" or "so you can confidently wait for God's glory"

#### Colossians 1:28

##### We proclaim ... we may present

These instances of "we" include Paul and his companions but do not include the Colossians.

##### so that we may present every person

You may need to make explicit to whom they will present every person. Alternate translation: "so that we may present to God every person"

#### Colossians 1:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 2

# Colossians 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Circumcision and baptism

In verses 11-12, Paul uses both the old covenant sign of circumcision and the new covenant sign of baptism to show how Christians are united with Christ and freed from sin.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that the physical part of man is sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that, while Christians are alive ("in the flesh"), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. Paul also uses "flesh" in this chapter to refer to the physical body.

#### Implicit information

Paul mentions several issues in this chapter that imply information about the context of the church in Colossae. It is best to allow the text to remain uncertain over the actual details.

#### Colossians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to encourage the believers in Colossae and Laodicea to understand that Christ is God and that he lives in believers, so they should live in the same way they received him.

##### how great a struggle I have had for you

Paul has exerted much effort in developing their purity and their understanding of the gospel.

##### Laodicea

This was a city very close to Colossae where there was another church for which Paul was praying.

##### as many as have not seen my face in the flesh

Here "face in the flesh" represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: "all those who have never seen me personally" or "all those whom I have never met face to face"

#### Colossians 2:2

##### so that their hearts

Paul includes the Colossians even though he uses a different pronoun. Alternate translation: "so that their hearts and yours"

##### brought together

This means brought together in a close relationship.

##### all the riches of full assurance of understanding

Paul speaks of a person who is completely sure that the good news is true as though that person were rich in physical things.

##### the mystery of God

This is knowledge that can be revealed only by God.

##### that is, Christ

Jesus Christ is the mystery revealed by God.

#### Colossians 2:3

##### In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden

Only Christ can reveal God's true wisdom and knowledge. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ"

##### the treasures of wisdom and knowledge

Paul speaks of God's wisdom and knowledge as if they were material wealth. Alternate translation: "the very precious wisdom and knowledge"

##### wisdom and knowledge

These words mean basically the same thing here. Paul uses them together to emphasize that all spiritual understanding comes from Christ.

#### Colossians 2:4

##### trick

This means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, so he acts on that belief, and suffers harm as a result.

##### persuasive speech

speech that will make people change what they believe

#### Colossians 2:5

##### not with you in the flesh

The person's flesh, or physical body, is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "not physically present with you"

##### I am with you in spirit

Being with someone in spirit is a metaphor for thinking continually about that person. Alternate translation: "I continually think about you"

##### good order

the proper way of doing things

##### the strength of your faith

"how nothing and no one can cause you to stop believing"

#### Colossians 2:6

##### walk in him

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. The words "in him" refer to being in close relationship with Christ and so doing what pleases him. Alternate translation: "live your lives the way he wants you to" or "live so that people can see that you belong to him"

#### Colossians 2:7

##### Be rooted ... be built ... be established ... abound

These words explain what it means to "walk in him."

##### Be rooted in him

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a tree growing in solid ground with deep roots.

##### be built on him

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a building that has a strong foundation.

##### be established in faith

"trust in Jesus for everything"

##### just as you were taught

This is best stated without naming or otherwise calling attention to the teacher, who was Epaphras (Colossians 1:7). Alternate translation: "just as you learned" or "just as they taught you" or "just as he taught you"

##### abound in thanksgiving

Paul speaks of thanksgiving as if it were objects that a person could obtain more of. Alternate translation: "be very thankful to God"

#### Colossians 2:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul urges the believers to be careful not to turn to the words and rules of others because nothing can add to the fullness of God that believers have in Christ.

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### captures you

Paul speaks of the way a person can believe false teachings

##### philosophy

religious doctrines and beliefs that are not from God's word but are based on man's thoughts about God and life

##### empty deceit

Paul speaks of false ideas that produce nothing and so are without value as though they are containers with nothing in them.

##### the tradition of men ... the elemental spirits of the world

The "tradition of men" may refer to Jewish traditions, while "the elemental spirits of the world" refers to pagan (Gentile) belief systems. Both of these are worthless.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world.

#### Colossians 2:9

##### in him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form

"God's total nature lives in physical form in Christ"

#### Colossians 2:10

##### You have been filled in him

Paul speaks of people as though they were containers into which God has placed Christ. Alternate translation: "You are made complete in Christ"

##### who is the head over every ruler and authority

Christ is the ruler over every other ruler

#### Colossians 2:11

##### In him you were also circumcised

Paul is speaking of those who belong to Christ as if they were inside Christ's body. This can also be made active. Alternate translation: "When you joined the church in baptism, God circumcised you"

##### a circumcision not done by humans

With this metaphor, Paul says that God has made Christian believers acceptable to himself in a way that reminded him of circumcision, the ceremony through which Hebrew male babies were added to the community of Israel.

#### Colossians 2:12

##### You were buried with him in baptism

Paul speaks of being baptized and joining the assembly of believers as if it were being buried with Christ. This can be made active. Alternate translation: "God buried you with Christ when you joined the church in baptism"

##### in him you were raised up

With this metaphor, Paul speaks of the new spiritual life of believers that God made possible by making Christ come alive again. This can be made active. Alternate translation: "because you have joined yourself to Christ, God raised you up" or "in him God caused you to live again"

##### you were raised up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God raised you up" or "God caused you to live again"

#### Colossians 2:13

##### When you were dead

Paul speaks of unresponsiveness to God as if it were death. Alternate translation: "When you Colossian believers were unable to respond to God"

##### you were dead ... he made you alive

With this metaphor Paul speaks of coming into new spiritual life as if it were coming back to life physically.

##### dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh

You were dead on two accounts: 1) you were spiritually dead, living a life of sin against Christ and 2) you were not circumcised according to the law of Moses.

##### forgave us all of our trespasses

"he forgave us, both us Jews and you Gentiles, of all our trespasses"

#### Colossians 2:14

##### He blotted out the written record of debts that was hostile to us

Paul speaks of God forgiving our sins as if God were forgiving a debt that we owe him.

##### blotted out the written record

When someone blots out words, they cover the words with ink so that no one can read them.

##### that was hostile to us

"that was opposed to us"

#### Colossians 2:15

##### made a public spectacle of them

In Roman times, it was common practice for the Roman armies to have a victory parade when they returned home, displaying all the prisoners they had captured and goods they had obtained. God was victorious over the evil powers and authorities.

##### by the cross

Here "the cross" stands for Christ's death on the cross.

#### Colossians 2:16

##### in eating or in drinking

The law of Moses included what one could eat and drink. "for what you eat or what you drink"

##### about a festival or a new moon, or about Sabbath days

The law of Moses specified the days to celebrate, to worship, and to offer sacrifice. "for the way you celebrate festivals or new moons or the Sabbath"

#### Colossians 2:17

##### These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance is Christ

A shadow shows the shape of an object, but it is not the object itself. In a similar way, the festivals, celebrations, and Sabbaths show us something about how God would save people, but those things do not save people. The savior is Christ. Alternate translation: "These are like a shadow of what would happen, but the reality is Christ" or "These are like a shadow of the savior who would come, but the savior is Christ"

#### Colossians 2:18

##### Let no one ... judge you out of your prize

Here Paul refers to false teachers as if they were corrupt judges at an athletic contest who would unjustly disqualify the believers from winning the prizes they deserve, and he speaks of Christ saving a person as if Christ were giving a prize to the winner of such a contest. Alternate translation: "Let no one ... disqualify you from winning a prize"

##### who wants humility

The word "humility" is a metonym for actions one does to make others think that one is humble. Alternate translation: "who wants you to do things to show that you are humble"

##### enters into the things he has seen

Here Paul speaks about people who claim to have dreams and visions from God and who talk proudly about them.

##### becomes puffed up for no reason by his fleshly thinking

Here Paul says that sinful ways of thinking make a person arrogant. Alternate translation: "puffs himself up for no reason by means of his fleshly thinking"

##### puffed up

Here a person who boasts is spoken of as if he were an object into which someone had blown air to make it larger than it should be.

##### his fleshly thinking

Here the idea of flesh stands for the sinful human nature. "the sinful thoughts he naturally thinks"

#### Colossians 2:19

##### He does not hold on to the head

A person not trusting in Christ is spoken of has if they do not hold firmly to the head. Christ is spoken of as if he were the head of a body. Alternate translation: "He does not firmly grasp Christ, who is like the head of a body" or "He does not cling to Christ, who is like the head of a body"

##### It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together

Paul speaks of the church, which is ruled and empowered by Christ, as if it were a human body. Alternate translation: "It is from the head that God supplies the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments and holds it together"

#### Colossians 2:20

##### If you died together with Christ to the elemental spirits of the world

A believer is spiritually united with Christ. As Christ died, the believer has died to the elemntal spirits of the world. This is a metaphor for no longer responding to the elemenatry spirits of the world. The believer is no longer controlled by them.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world. See how you translated this in Colossians 2:8.

##### live as obligated to the world

"think you must obey the desires of the world"

##### the world

the thoughts, desires, and assumptions of the sinful majority of the world's people

#### Colossians 2:21

##### "Do ... touch"?

The rhetorical question that begins with the words "why do you live as obligated to the world" in verse 20 ends here. Paul uses this question to rebuke the Colossians for following the false beliefs of the world. "you should not live as obligated to the world: 'Do ... touch'!"

##### "Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch"

Paul is quoting what other people have been telling the Colossians and using a rhetorical question to challenge them. Alternate translation: "why do you believe them when they say, 'Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch'?" or "you should not obey them when they say, 'Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch'"

#### Colossians 2:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 2:23

##### These rules have the appearance of wisdom, with their self-made religion and humility and severe treatment of the body

"These rules seem wise to unbelieving people because they allow those who follow them to appear humble because they hurt their own bodies"

##### have no value against the indulgence of the flesh

"do not help you stop following your human desires"

## Chapter 3

# Colossians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The second part of this chapter parallels Ephesians 5 and 6.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Old and new self

The old and new self mean the same as the old and new man. The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ. (See: sin and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Character

Many of the things Paul encourages his readers to pursue or avoid are not actions but character qualities. Because of this, they may be difficult to translate.

#### "The things above"

Where God dwells is often pictured as being located "above." Paul says to "seek the things above" and to "think about the things above." He is implying Christians should seek and think about heavenly and godly things.

#### Colossians 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul warns the believers that because they are one with Christ, they ought not do certain things.

##### If then

This is an idiom that means "because."

##### God has raised you with Christ

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Possible meanings are 1) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given the believers in Colossae new spiritual life. Alternate translation: "God has given you new life because you belong to Christ" or 2) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Colossae can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: "you can be sure that God will give you life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### things above

"things in heaven"

##### where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "where Christ is sitting in the place of honor beside God" or "where Christ is sitting in the place of honor at God's right side"

#### Colossians 3:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 3:3

##### For you have died

As Christ actually died, so God counts the Colossian believers as having died with Christ.

##### your life is hidden with Christ in God

Paul speaks of people's lives as if they were objects that can be hidden in containers and speaks of God as if he were a container. Alternate translation: Possible meanings are 1) "it is as though God has taken your life and concealed it with Christ in God's presence" or 2) "only God knows what your true life really is, and he will reveal it when he reveals Christ"

#### Colossians 3:4

##### Christ appears ... you will also appear

Another possible meaning is "Christ is revealed ... you will also be revealed," which can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God reveals Christ ... he will also reveal you"

##### who is your life

Christ is the one who gives spiritual life to the believer.

#### Colossians 3:5

##### the members that are on earth

The word "members" here refers to parts of a person's nature. Being "on earth" or being worldly is a metaphor for being sinful. The rest of the verse is a list of sinful "members" or behaviors. Alternate translation: "the earthly parts of your nature" or "the parts of your nature that are worldly"

##### uncleanness

"impure behavior"

##### passion

"lust" or "extremely strong desires"

##### greed, which is idolatry

"greed, which is the same thing as idolatry" or "do not be greedy because that is the same as worshiping idols"

#### Colossians 3:6

##### wrath of God

God's anger against those who do evil as shown by what he does to punish them.

##### the sons of disobedience

This is an idiom that means they were characterized by disobedience. The abstract noun "disobedience" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "disobedient people" or "people who disobey him"

#### Colossians 3:7

##### It is in these things that you also once walked

Paul speaks of the way a person behaves as if it were a road or path a person walks on. Alternate translation: "These are the things you used to do"

##### when you lived in them

Possible meanings are 1) "when you practiced these things" or 2) "when you lived among the people who disobey God"

#### Colossians 3:8

##### evil intentions

"desire to do wicked deeds"

##### slander

speech used to hurt others by saying untrue things about them

##### obscene speech

words that do not belong in polite conversation

##### from your mouth

Here "mouth" is a metonym for talk. "in your talk"

#### Colossians 3:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell the believers how to live and reminds them that Christians should treat everyone according to the same standard.

##### you have taken off the old man with its practices

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off in order to put on a new garment. It was very common for Israelites such as Paul to speak of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing.

#### Colossians 3:10

##### and you have put on the new man

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off

##### the image

This refers to Jesus Christ.

#### Colossians 3:11

##### there is no Greek or Jew, circumcision or uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman

These terms are examples of the categories of people that Paul says do not matter for God. God sees every person alike, not by race, religion, nationality, or social status. Alternate translation: "race, religion, culture, and social status do not matter"

##### barbarian

a foreigner who does not know local customs

##### Scythian

This is someone from the land of Scythia, which was outside the Roman Empire. Greeks and Romans used this word for someone who grew up in a place where everyone did wicked things all the time.

##### Christ is all, and is in all

Nothing is excluded or left out of the rule of Christ. Alternate translation: "Christ is all important and lives in all his people"

#### Colossians 3:12

##### as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "as those whom God has chosen for himself, whom he desires to see live for him alone, and whom he loves"

##### put on a heart of mercy, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience

The "heart" is a metaphor for feelings and attitudes. Here it is spoken of as if it had certain feelings and attitudes, and as if it were clothing to wear. Alternate translation: "have a merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient heart" or "be merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Colossians 3:13

##### Bear with one another

"Be patient with one another" or "Accept each other even when you disappoint each other"

##### Be gracious to each other

"Treat others better than they deserve to have you to treat them"

##### has a complaint against

The abstract noun "complaint" can be stated as "complain." Alternate translation: "has a reason to complain against"

#### Colossians 3:14

##### have love, which is the bond of perfection

Here "bond of perfection" is a metaphor for something that causes perfect unity among people. Alternate translation: "love one another because doing so will unite you perfectly together.

#### Colossians 3:15

##### Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts

Paul speaks of the peace that Christ gives as if it were a ruler. Possible meanings are 1) "Do everything so that you can have peaceful relationships with each other" or 2) "Allow God to give you peace in your heart"

##### in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "in your minds" or "inside of you"

#### Colossians 3:16

##### Let the word of Christ live in you richly

Paul speaks of Christ's word as if it were a person capable of living inside other people. "Word of Christ" here is a metonym for the teachings of Christ. Alternate translation: "Be obedient to the instructions of Christ" or "Always trust Christ's promises"

##### singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

"singing all sorts of songs to praise God." Some interpreters believe that "psalms," "hymns," and "spiritual songs" all refer to different psalms in the book of Psalms.

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### with thankfulness in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "with thankfulness in your minds" or "being thankful"

#### Colossians 3:17

##### in word or in deed

"in speaking or in acting"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

Acting in the name of a person here is a metonym for acting to help other people think well of that person. Alternate translation: "to honor the Lord Jesus" or "so that others will know you belong to the Lord Jesus and will think well of him" or "as if the Lord Jesus himself were doing it"

##### through him

Possible meanings are 1) because he has done great deeds or 2) because he has made it possible for people to speak to God and so give him thanks.

#### Colossians 3:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to give special instructions to wives, husbands, children, fathers, slaves, and masters.

##### Wives, submit to

"Wives, obey"

##### it is appropriate

"it is proper" or "it is right"

#### Colossians 3:19

##### do not be bitter against

"do not be harsh with" or "do not be angry at"

#### Colossians 3:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 3:21

##### do not provoke your children

"do not needlessly make your children angry"

#### Colossians 3:22

##### obey your masters according to the flesh

"obey your human masters"

##### things, not with eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with a sincere heart

"things. Do not obey only when your master is watching, as though you need only to please people, but be sincere"

##### with a sincere heart

"Heart" here is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "with all honest intentions" or "with sincerity"

#### Colossians 3:23

##### as to the Lord

"as you would work for the Lord"

#### Colossians 3:24

##### the reward of the inheritance

"the inheritance as your reward"

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Colossians 3:25

##### anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty

The phrase "receive the penalty" means to be punished. Alternate translation: "anyone who does unrighteousness will be punished" or "God will punish anyone who does what is unrighteous"

##### who does unrighteousness

who actively does wrong of any kind

##### there is no partiality

The abstract noun "partiality" can be expressed with the verb "favor." To favor some people is to judge them by different standards so the result is better for them than for others who do the same actions. Alternate translation: "God does not favor anyone" or "God judges everyone by the same standard"

## Chapter 4

# Colossians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

[Colossians 4:1](../../col/04/01.md) appears to belong with the topics of Chapter 3 instead of Chapter 4.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "In my own hand"

It was common in the ancient Near East for the author to speak and someone else to write down the words. Many of the New Testament letters were written this way. Paul wrote the final greeting himself.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Secret truth

Paul refers to a "secret truth" in this chapter. The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown. But God has now revealed it. Part of this involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God. (See: reveal)

#### Colossians 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

After speaking to masters, Paul ends his special instructions to the different kinds of believers in the church at Colossae.

##### right and fair

These words mean almost the same thing and are used to emphasize the things that are morally correct.

##### you also have a Master in heaven

Paul implies that God, as the Master in heaven, will give his servants what is right and fair. This could be blessing for the earthly master who treats his servants kindly or punishment for the earthly master who treats his servants unkindly. Alternate translation: "you also have a Master, who is God in heaven"

#### Colossians 4:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give instructions to believers on how to live and speak.

##### Continue steadfastly in prayer

"Keep praying faithfully" or "Keep praying consistently"

#### Colossians 4:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to Paul and Timothy but not the Colossians.

##### God would open a door to us

Opening a door for someone is a metaphor for giving that person the opportunity to do something. Alternate translation: "God would provide opportunities for us"

##### open a door to us for the word

"make an opportunity for us to preach his message"

##### the mystery of Christ

This refers to the gospel of Jesus Christ, which was not understood before Christ came.

##### for which also I have been in chains

Here "in chains" is a metonym for being in prison, though Paul probably also was physically attached to a chain. Paul was in chains because he told people about the mystery of Christ. Alternate translation: "It is for proclaiming the message of Jesus Christ that I am now in prison"

#### Colossians 4:4

##### Pray that I may make it clear

"Pray that I might be able to speak the message of Jesus Christ clearly"

#### Colossians 4:5

##### Walk in wisdom toward those outside

The idea of walking is often used for the idea of conducting one's life. Alternate translation: "Live in such a way that those who are not believers will see that you are wise"

##### redeem the time

To "redeem" something means to restore it to its rightful owner. Here time is spoken of as something that can be restored and used to serve God. Alternate translation: "do the best things you can with your time" or "put the time to its best use"

#### Colossians 4:6

##### Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt

Food with salt is a metaphor for words that teach others and that others enjoy hearing. Alternate translation: "Let your conversation always be gracious and attractive"

##### so that you may know how you should answer

"so that you may know how to answer questions from anyone about Jesus Christ" or "so that you may be able to treat every person well"

#### Colossians 4:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes with special instructions about certain people as well as greetings to and from individual believers.

##### all the things concerning me

"everything that has been happening to me"

##### fellow slave

"fellow servant." Though Paul is a free man, he sees himself as a servant of Christ and sees Tychicus as a fellow servant.

#### Colossians 4:8

##### about us

These words do not include the Colossians.

##### may encourage your hearts

The heart was thought to be the center of many emotions. Alternate translation: "may encourage you"

#### Colossians 4:9

##### General Information:

Onesimus was a slave of Philemon in Colossae. He had stolen money from Philemon and run away to Rome where he became a Christian through the ministry of Paul. Now Tychicus and Onesimus are the ones bringing Paul's letter to Colossae along with a letter from Paul to Philemon asking him to send Onesimus back to Paul.

##### the faithful and beloved brother

Paul calls Onesimus a fellow Christian and servant of Christ.

##### They will make known

"Tychicus and Onesimus will make known"

##### everything that has happened here

All that is taking place where Paul is currently living. Tradition says Paul was in Rome under house arrest or in prison at this time.

#### Colossians 4:10

##### Aristarchus

He was in prison with Paul in Ephesus when Paul wrote this letter to the Colossians.

##### if he comes

"if Mark comes"

#### Colossians 4:11

##### Jesus who is called Justus

This is a man who also worked with Paul.

##### These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God

Paul uses "circumcision" here to refer to Jews because, under the Old Testament law, all male Jews had to be circumcised. Alternate translation: "These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus"

##### These alone of the circumcision

"These men—Aristarchus, Mark, and Justus—alone of the circumcision"

#### Colossians 4:12

##### Epaphras

Epaphras was the man who had preached the good news to the people in Colossae (Colossians 1:7).

##### one of you

"from your city" or "your fellow townsman"

##### a slave of Christ Jesus

"a committed disciple of Christ Jesus"

##### always strives for you in prayer

"earnestly prays for you"

##### you may stand complete and fully assured

"you may stand mature and confident"

#### Colossians 4:13

##### General Information:

Laodicea and Hierapolis were towns close to Colossae.

#### Colossians 4:14

##### Demas

This man was one of Paul's co-workers.

#### Colossians 4:15

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### in Laodicea

a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church

##### Nympha, and the church that is in her house

A woman named Nympha hosted a house church. Alternate translation: "Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house"

#### Colossians 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Colossians 4:17

##### Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it

Paul reminds Archippus of the task God had given him and that he, Archippus, was under obligation to the Lord to fulfill it. The words "Look," "you have received," and "you should fulfill" all refer to Archippus and should be singular.

#### Colossians 4:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter with a greeting written in his own handwriting.

##### Remember my chains

The word "chains" is a metaphor that Paul uses to indicate that he is in prison, but it is also likely that he was literally attached to a chain. Alternate translation: "Remember me and pray for me while I am in prison"

##### May grace be with you

Here "grace" stands for God, who shows grace or acts kindly to believers. Alternate translation: "I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all"

## Chapter 1

# 1 Thessalonians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Verse 1 formally introduces this letter. Letters in the ancient Near East commonly had introductions of this type.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hardship

Other people persecuted the Christians in Thessalonica. But the Christians there handled it well.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul identifies himself as the writer of the letter and greets the church at Thessalonica.

##### Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy to the church

The UDB makes clear that it was Paul who wrote this letter.

##### May grace and peace be to you

The terms "grace" and "peace" are metonyms for the person who acts toward people in a kindly and peaceful manner. Alternate translation: "May God be kind to you and give you peace"

##### peace be to you

The word "you" refers to the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:2

##### General Information:

In this letter the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica.

##### We always give thanks to God

Here "always" suggests that when Paul prays to God, he consistently presents the Thessalonians to God in his prayers.

##### we mention you continually in our prayers

"we continually pray for you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:3

##### your work of faith, labor of love, and patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

"what you have done because you have faith in God, the hard work you have done because you love others, and how you always continued to hope in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

The Thessalonians confidently expected that Jesus would do all that he promised to do. Alternate translation: "firmness of your trust in our Lord Jesus Christ" or "continual trust in our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:4

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give thanks for the believers at Thessalonica and praises them for their faith in God.

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### we know

The word "we" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:5

##### not in word only

"not only in what we said"

##### but also in power, in the Holy Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) the Holy Spirit gave Paul and his companions the ability to preach the gospel powerfully or 2) the Holy Spirit made the preaching of the gospel have a powerful effect among the Thessalonian believers or 3) the Holy Spirit demonstrated the truth of the gospel preaching by means of miracles, signs, and wonders.

##### power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance

The abstract noun "assurance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "power and in the Holy Spirit, and God made you sure that it was true"

##### what kind of men

"how we conducted ourselves when"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:6

##### You became imitators

To "imitate" means to act like or to copy the behavior of another.

##### received the word

"welcomed the message" or "accepted what we had to say"

##### in much tribulation

"during a time of great suffering" or "in much persecution"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:7

##### Achaia

This is an ancient district in what is present-day Greece.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:8

##### the word of the Lord has rung out

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "the Lord's teachings have rung out"

##### has rung out

Here Paul speaks of the Christian witness produced by the Thessalonian believers as if it were a bell that was rung or a musical instrument that was being played.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:9

##### For they themselves

Paul is referring to the churches that already existed in the surrounding regions, who have heard about the Thessalonian believers.

##### they themselves

Here "themselves" is used to emphasize those people who had heard about the Thessalonian believers.

##### what kind of reception we had among you

The abstract noun "reception" can be expressed as the verb "receive" or "welcome." Alternate translation: "how warmly you received us" or "how warmly you welcomed us"

##### you turned to God from the idols to serve the living and true God

Here "turned to ... from" is a metaphor that means to start being loyal to one person and stop being loyal to someone else. Alternate translation: "you stopped worshiping idols and started serving the living and true God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:10

##### his Son

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

##### whom he raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again so that he was no longer dead." The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### who rescues us

Here Paul includes the Thessalonian believers.

## Chapter 2

# 1 Thessalonians 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Christian witness

Paul values his "Christian witness" as evidence that the gospel is true. Paul says that being godly or holy bears witness to the non-Christian. Paul defends his character so that his witness is not affected. (See: testimony and godly and holy)

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to remind the Thessalonians of how he behaved when he was with them.

##### you yourselves

The words "you" and "yourselves" refer to the Thessalonian believers.

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### our coming

The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers.

##### was not useless

This can be expressed in a positive manner. Alternate translation: "was very worthwhile"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:2

##### previously suffered and were shamefully treated

"were mistreated and insulted"

##### in much struggling

"while struggling under great opposition"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:3

##### was not from error, nor from uncleanness, nor from deceit

"was truthful, pure, and honest"

##### uncleanness

Ritual uncleanness here is a metaphor for guilt from having committed sin.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:4

##### approved by God to be trusted

Paul was tested and proven trustworthy by God.

##### we speak

Paul is referring to preaching the gospel message.

##### who examines our hearts

The word "hearts" is a metonym for a person's desires and thoughts. Alternate translation: "who knows our desires and thoughts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:5

##### General Information:

Paul tells the Thessalonian believers that his conduct was not based in flattery, greed, or self glory.

##### we never came with words of flattery

"we never spoke to you with false praise"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:6

##### Nor did we seek glory from people

"And we did not try to make people praise us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:7

##### as a mother comforting her own children

Just as a mother gently comforts her children, so Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy spoke gently to the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:8

##### In this way we had affection for you

"This is how we demonstrated our affection for you"

##### we had affection for you

"we loved you"

##### We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives

Paul speaks of the gospel message and his life and the lives of those with him as if they were a physical object that one could share with others. Alternate translation: "We were pleased not only to tell you the gospel of God but also to spend time with you and to help you"

##### you had become very dear to us

"we cared for you deeply"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:9

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### our labor and toil

The words "labor" and "toil" mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize how hard they worked. Alternate translation: "how hard we worked"

##### Night and day we were working so that we might not be a burden to any of you

"We worked hard to make our own living so you would not need to support us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:10

##### holy, righteous, and blameless

Paul uses three words that describe their good behavior toward the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:11

##### as a father with his own children

Paul compares how he encouraged the Thessalonians to a father gently teaching his children how to behave.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:12

##### exhorting you and comforting you and urging you

The words "exhorting," "comforting," and "urging" are used together to express how passionately Paul's group exhorted the Thessalonians. Alternate translation: "strongly exhorted you"

##### into his own kingdom and glory

The word "glory" describes the word "kingdom." Alternate translation: "into his own glorious kingdom"

##### to walk in a manner that is worthy of God

"Walk" here is an metaphor for "live." Alternate translation: "to live so that people will think well of God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:13

##### General Information:

Paul continues to use "we" to refer to himself and his traveling companions and "you" to the Thessalonian believers.

##### we also thank God constantly

Paul often thanks God for their acceptance of the gospel message he shared with them.

##### not as the word of man

"Word of man" here is a synecdoche for "a message that comes simply from a man." Alternate translation: "not a message that is made up by a man"

##### the word of God

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "the message that comes from God"

##### which is also at work in you who believe

Paul speaks of God's gospel message as if it were a person who was doing work. Alternate translation: "which those of you who believe are listening to and beginning to obey"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:14

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### became imitators of the churches

"became like the churches." The Thessalonian believers endured persecutions similar to those of the Judean believers.

##### from your own countrymen

"from other Thessalonians"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:16

##### They forbid us to speak

"They try to make us stop speaking"

##### they always fill up their sins

Paul speaks as though someone can fill a container with his sins as with liquid.

##### wrath will overtake them in the end

This refers to God finally judging and punishing people for their sins.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:17

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### in person not in heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts and emotions. Though Paul and those traveling with him were not present physically in Thessalonica, they continued to care and think about the believers there. Alternate translation: "in person, but we continued to think about you"

##### to see your faces

Here "face" represents the entire person. Alternate translation: "to see you" or "to be with you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:19

##### For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?

Paul uses rhetorical questions to emphasize the reasons he wants to come see the Thessalonian believers. Alternate translation: "For you are our hope, our joy, and our crown of pride in front our Lord Jesus at his coming."

##### For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?

The Thessalonians are the reason that Paul and his fellow workers have hope and joy. Here "hope" means "certain expectation." Paul is certain that his work among them will be succesful and that they will be with him at Christ's return. Alternate translation: "For what is the reason that we can be hopeful or joyful? What is our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?" or "For you are the reason that we are hopeful and joyful. You are our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming."

##### For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?

Here "crown" refers to a laurel wreath awarded to victorious athletes. Here it is a metaphor meaning that the Thessalonians are the the symbol that Paul's work was successful. Paul will be proud of them when they stand before Christ. Alternate translation: "For what is the reason we are hopeful and joyful. What is the reason that we can be proud of what we accomplished when we stand before our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?" or "For you are the reason that we are hopeful and joyful. You are our reason for being proud of what we accomplished when we stand before our Lord Jesus at his coming."

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:20

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 3

# 1 Thessalonians 3 General Notes

[This page has intentionally been left blank.]

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:1

##### we could no longer bear it

"we could no longer endure worrying about you"

##### good to be left behind at Athens alone

"good for Silvanus and me to stay behind in Athens"

##### it was good

"it was proper" or "it was reasonable"

##### Athens

Athens was a city in the the Roman province of Achaia [1 Thessalonians 1:7-8]

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers he has sent Timothy to strengthen their faith.

##### our brother and fellow worker

These two expressions both describe Timothy.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:3

##### no one would be shaken

To be shaken is an idiom for being afraid. Alternate translation: "no one would be frightened away from trusting in Christ"

##### we have been appointed

Paul assumes that everyone knows that it was God who appointed them. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God has appointed us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:4

##### Truly

This word marks that there is more to the truth than what has just been said. Alternate translation: "Moreover"

##### to suffer affliction

"to be mistreated by others"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:5

##### I could no longer endure it

Paul is describing his own emotions by using an idiom. Alternate translation: "I could not continue to wait patiently"

##### I sent

It is implied that Paul sent Timothy. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I sent Timothy"

##### our labor

"our hard work among you" or "our teaching among you"

##### in vain

"useless"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells his readers what Timothy reported when he returned from visiting them.

##### came to us

The word "us" refers to Paul and Silvanus.

##### the good news of your faith

It is understood that this refers to faith in Christ. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "a good report of your faith"

##### you always have good memories

When they think of Paul, they always have good thoughts about him.

##### you long to see us

"you desire to see us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:7

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

##### because of your faith

This refers to faith in Christ. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "because of your faith in Christ"

##### in all our distress and affliction

The word "affliction" explains why they are in "distress." Alternate translation: "in all our distress caused by our afflictions"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:8

##### we live

This is an idiom that expresses living a satisfied life. Alternate translation: "we are very encouraged"

##### if you stand firm in the Lord

To "stand firm" is an idiom meaning to continue being faithful. Alternate translation: "if you continue to trust in the Lord"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:9

##### For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you?

This rhetorical question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We cannot thank God enough for what he has done for you! We greatly rejoice over you when we pray to our God!"

##### before our God

Paul speaks as if he and his companions were physically in God's presence. He is probably referring to the activity of praying.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:10

##### very hard

"fervently"

##### see your face

The word "face" refers to their whole person. Alternate translation: "visit you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:11

##### May our God ... our Lord Jesus

Paul includes the Thessalonian believers with his ministry team.

##### May our God

"We pray that our God"

##### direct our way to you

Paul speaks as if he wants God to show him and his companions the route to take to visit the Thessalonian Christians. He means that he wants God to make it possible for them to do so.

##### direct our way to you

The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers.

##### Father himself

Here "himself" refers back to "Father" for emphasis.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:12

##### increase and abound in love

Paul speaks of love as an object that one could obtain more of.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:13

##### strengthen your hearts so that they will be

Here "heart" is a metonym for one's beliefs and convictions. Alternate translation: "strenghten you so that you will be"

##### at the coming of our Lord Jesus

"when Jesus comes back to earth"

##### with all his holy people

"with all those who belong to him"

## Chapter 4

# 1 Thessalonians 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sexual immorality

Different cultures have different standards of sexual morality. These different cultural standards may make translating this passage difficult. Translators must also be aware of cultural taboos. These are topics considered improper to discuss.

#### Dying before the return of Christ

In the early church, people apparently wondered what would happen if a believer died before Christ returned. They may have worried whether those dying before Christ returned would be part of the kingdom of God. Paul answers that concern.

#### "Caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air"

This passage refers to a time when Jesus calls to himself those who have believed in him. Scholars differ on whether or not this refers to Christ's final glorious return. (See: believe)

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:1

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

##### we earnestly appeal to you and exhort you

Paul uses "earnestly appeal to" and "exhort" to emphasize how strongly they exhort the believers. Alternate translation: "we strongly exhort you"

##### you received instructions from us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we taught you"

##### you must walk

Here "walk" is an expression for the way one is to live. Alternate translation: "you ought to live"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:2

##### through the Lord Jesus

Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were given by Jesus himself.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:3

##### you avoid sexual immorality

"you stay away from sexually immoral acts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:4

##### knows how to possess his own vessel

Possible meanings are 1) "know how to live with his own wife" or 2) "know how to control his own body"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:5

##### in the passion of lust

"with wrongful sexual desire"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:6

##### no man

Here "man" refers to a man or a woman. "no one" or "no person"

##### transgress and wrong his brother

Possible meanings: 1) The words "transgress" and "wrong" are a doublet that emphasizes the idea of harming the brother. Alternate translation: "do very wrong things to his brother" 2) The word "transgress" refers to sinning against God, and "wrong his brother" refers to harming the brother. Alternate translation: "do what God had forbidden and wrong his brother"

##### the Lord is an avenger

This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the Lord will punish the one who transgressed and will defend the one who was wronged"

##### forewarned you and testified

"told you beforehand and strongly warned against"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:7

##### God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God called us to cleanness and holiness"

##### God did not call us

The word "us" refers to all believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:8

##### he who rejects this

"whoever disregards this teaching" or "whoever ignores this teaching"

##### rejects not people, but God

Paul stresses that this teaching is not from man, but from God.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:9

##### brotherly love

"love for fellow believers"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:10

##### you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia

"you show love to the believers throughout Macedonia"

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:11

##### to aspire

"to try to"

##### live quietly

Paul uses the word "quietly" as a metaphor to describe living at peace in one's community and not causing strife. Alternate translation: "live in a calm and orderly way"

##### take care of your own responsibilities

"do your own work" or "take care of the things that you are responsible for" or "do the things that you are responsible to do." This may also imply that we should not gossip and interfere in other people's concerns.

##### labor with your hands

This is a metaphor for living a productive life. Alternate translation: "work at your own jobs to earn what you need to live"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:12

##### walk properly

Here "walk" is a metaphor for "live" or "behave." Alternate translation: "behave properly"

##### properly

in a way that shows respect to others and earns their respect

##### before outsiders

Paul speaks of those who do not believe in Christ as if they are outside, in a place away from the believers. Alternate translation: "in the sight of those who do not believe in Christ"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:13

##### General Information:

Paul talks about believers who have died, those who are now alive, and those who will be alive when Christ returns.

##### We do not want you to be uninformed

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "We want you to be informed" or "We want you to know"

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

##### those who sleep

Here "sleep" is a euphemism for being dead. Alternate translation: "those who have died"

##### so that you do not grieve like the rest

"because we do not want you grieve like the rest"

##### grieve

mourn, be sad about something

##### like the rest, who do not have hope

Here "hope" means a certainty about the future. What those people do not have confidence about can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "like people who do not have confidence in the future promise" or "like the people who are not sure that they will rise from the dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:14

##### if we believe

Here "we" refers to Paul and his audience.

##### rose again

"rose to live again"

##### those who have fallen asleep in him

Here "fallen asleep" is a polite way to refer to having died.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:15

##### by the word of the Lord

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "by means of understanding the teachings of the Lord"

##### at the coming of the Lord

"when the Lord returns"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:16

##### the Lord himself will descend

"the Lord himself will come down"

##### the archangel

"the chief angel"

##### the dead in Christ will rise first

The "dead in Christ" are those believers who have passed away. Alternate translation: "those who believe in Jesus Christ, but who have already died, will rise first"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:17

##### we who are alive

Here "we" refers to all believers who have not died.

##### with them

The word "them" refers to the dead believers who were made alive again.

##### be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air

"meet the Lord Jesus in the sky"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 5

# 1 Thessalonians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul concludes his letter in a way that was typical of letters in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Day of the Lord

The exact time of the coming day of the Lord will be a surprise to the world. This is what the simile "like a thief in the night" means. Because of this, Christians are to live prepared for the coming of the Lord.

#### Quench the Spirit

To quench the Spirit is to ignore or work against the Holy Spirit's guidance and work.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:1

##### General Information:

In this chapter the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues talking about the day Jesus will come back.

##### concerning the times and seasons

This is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. It refers to the time when the Lord Jesus will return. Alternate Translation: "the exact time that the Lord will return."

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:2

##### perfectly well

"very well" or "accurately"

##### like a thief in the night

Just as one does not know which night a thief may come, we do not know when the day of the Lord will come. Alternate translation: "unexpectedly"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:3

##### When they say

"When the people say"

##### then sudden destruction

"then unexpected destruction"

##### like birth pains in a pregnant woman

Just as a pregnant woman's birth pains come suddenly and do not stop until the birth is complete, the destruction will come, and people will not escape.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:4

##### you, brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

##### are not in darkness

Paul speaks of evil and ignorance about God as if they were darkness. Alternate translation: "you are not unknowing, like people who live in the dark"

##### so that the day would overtake you like a thief

The Lord will come on a day when believers will not expect him to come, but that day will not "overtake" them—God will not destroy them on that day—because they will be ready for Jesus to return.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:5

##### For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day

Paul speaks of the truth as if it were light and day. Alternate translation: "For you know the truth, like people who live in the light, like people during the day"

##### We are not sons of the night or the darkness

Paul speaks of evil and ignorance about God as if they were darkness. Alternate translation: We are not unknowing, like people who live in the darkness, like people at night"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:6

##### let us not sleep as the rest do

Paul speaks of spiritual unawareness as if it were sleep. Alternate translation: "let us not be like others who are not aware that Jesus is coming back"

##### let us

The word "us" refers to all believers.

##### keep watch and be sober

Paul describes spiritual awareness as the opposite of sleep and drunkenness.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:7

##### For those who sleep do so at night

Just as when people sleep and do not know what is happening, so the people of this world do not know that Christ will return.

##### those who get drunk do so at night

Paul is stating that it is at night when people become drunk, so when people are unaware of Christ's return they do not live a self-controlled life.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:8

##### General Information:

In verses 8-10 the word "we" refers to all believers.

##### we belong to the day

Paul speaks of knowing the truth about God as belonging to the day. Alternate translation: "we know the truth" or "we have received the light of truth"

##### we must stay sober

Paul compares being sober to exercising self-control. Alternate translation: "let us exercise self-control"

##### put on faith and love as a breastplate

As a soldier would put on a breastplate to protect his body, a believer who lives by faith and love will find protection. Alternate translation: "protect ourselves with faith and love" or "protect ourselves by trusting Christ and loving him"

##### the hope of salvation for our helmet

Here "hope of salvation" means a certainty that Jesus will save his people. Here "helmet" is a metaphor. As a helmet protects a soldier's head, assurance of salvation protects the believer. Alternate translation: "protect ourselves by being certain that Christ will save us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:10

##### whether we are awake or asleep

These are polite ways of saying alive or dead. Alternate translation: "whether we are alive or dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:11

##### build each other up

Here "build" is a metaphor that means encourage. Alternate translation: "encourage each other"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:12

##### General Information:

Paul begins to give his final instructions to the church in Thessalonica.

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow believers.

##### to acknowledge those who labor

"to esteem and appreciate those who are involved in leading"

##### who rule over you in the Lord

This refers to people God appointed to serve as leaders of the local group of believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:13

##### esteem them highly in love because of their work

Paul exhorts the believers to respect and love their church leaders.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:16

##### Rejoice always

Paul is exhorting the believers to maintain a spiritual attitude of rejoicing in all things.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:17

##### Pray without ceasing

Paul is exhorting the believers to be vigilant in prayer.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:18

##### In everything give thanks

Paul is exhorting the believers to express thankfulness in all things.

##### In everything

In all circumstances

##### For this is the will of God

Paul is referring to the behavior he just mentioned as being God's will for the believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:19

##### Do not quench the Spirit

"Do not stop the Holy Spirit from working among you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:20

##### Do not despise prophecies

"Do not have contempt for prophecies" or "Do not hate anything the Holy Spirit tells someone"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:21

##### Test all things

"Make sure that all messages that seem to come from God truly come from him"

##### Hold firmly to what is good

Paul speaks of messages from the Holy Spirit as if they were objects that one could grasp in his hands.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:23

##### sanctify you completely

This refers to God making a person sinless and perfect in his sight.

##### May your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless

Here the phrase "spirit, soul, and body" represents the whole person. If your language does not have three words for these parts you can state it as "your whole life" or "you." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God make your whole life without sin" or "May God keep you completely blameless"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:24

##### Faithful is he who calls you

"He is faithful who calls you"

##### the one who will also do it

"he will be helping you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:25

##### General Information:

Paul gives his closing statements.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:26

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:27

##### I command you by the Lord to have this letter read

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I urge you, as if the Lord were speaking to you, to have people read this letter" or "With the authority of the Lord, I direct you to read this letter"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 1

# 2 Thessalonians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Verses 1-2 formally introduce this letter. Letters in the ancient Near East commonly had introductions of this type.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in verses 4-5: "We talk about your patience and faith in all your persecutions. We talk about the afflictions that you endure. This is a sign of God's righteous judgment." People would not normally think that believing in God while being persecuted is a sign of God's righteous judgment. But in verses 5-10, Paul explains how God will reward those who believe in him and how he will judge those who afflict them. ([2 Thessalonians 1:4-5](./04.md))

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul is the author of this letter, but he includes Silvanus and Timothy as senders of the letter. He begins by greeting the church at Thessalonica. The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica.

##### Silvanus

This is the Latin form of "Silas." He is the same person listed in the book of Acts as Paul's fellow traveler.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:2

##### Grace to you

Paul commonly uses this greeting in his letters.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:3

##### General Information:

Paul gives thanks for the believers in Thessalonica.

##### We should always give thanks to God

Paul uses "always" as a generalization meaning "often" or "regularly. The sentence emphasizes the greatness of what God is doing in the lives of the Thessalonian believers. Alternate translation: "We should often give thanks to God"

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

##### the love each of you has for one another increases

"you sincerely love one another"

##### one another

Here "one another" means fellow Christians.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:4

##### we ourselves

Here "ourselves" is used to emphasize Paul's boasting.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:5

##### you will be considered worthy of the kingdom of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will consider you worthy to be part of his kingdom"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:6

##### Connecting Statement:

As Paul continues, he talks about God being just.

##### it is righteous for God

"God is right" or "God is just"

##### for God to return affliction to those who afflict you

Here "to return" is a metaphor that means to cause someone to experience the same thing they did to someone else. Alternate translation: "for God to afflict those who afflict you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:7

##### and relief to you

These words continue the description of what God is right "to return" to people

##### relief to you

"for God to provide relief to you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:8

##### in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who

"punishing with blazing fire those who do not know God and those who"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:10

##### when he comes on that day

Here "that day" is the day when Jesus will return to the world.

##### to be glorified in his holy people and to be marveled at by all those who believed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that his holy people will glorify him and all those who believed will marvel at him" or "so that his people will glorify him and all those who believed will stand in awe of him"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:11

##### we also pray continually for you

Paul is emphasizing how often he prays for them. Alternate translation: "we also pray regularly for you" or "we continue to pray for you"

##### calling

Here "calling" refers to God appointing or choosing people to be his children and servants and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### fulfill every good purpose

"make you able to do good in every way that you desire"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:12

##### that the name of our Lord Jesus may be glorified in you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that you may glorify the name of our Lord Jesus"

##### and you in him

You may need to make explicit who will glorify the readers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and Jesus will glorify you"

##### according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ

"because God and the Lord Jesus Christ have given grace to you"

## Chapter 2

# 2 Thessalonians 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Being gathered together to be with him"

This passage refers to a time when Jesus calls to himself those who have believed in him. Scholars differ on whether or not this refers to Christ's final glorious return. (See: believe)

#### Man of lawlessness

This is the same as "son of destruction" and "lawless one" in this chapter. Paul associates him with Satan, who is actively working in the world. (See: antichrist)

#### Sits in the temple of God

Paul could be referring to the Jerusalem temple that the Romans destroyed several years after he wrote this letter. Or he could be referring to a future physical temple, or to the church as the spiritual temple of God.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:1

##### General Information:

Paul exhorts believers not to be deceived about the day Jesus will come back.

##### Now

The word "Now" marks a change of topic in Paul's instructions.

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:2

##### that you not be easily disturbed or troubled, either by a spirit or by a message

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "that no spirit or person easily disturb or trouble you, either by a message"

##### by a message, or by a letter that seems to be coming from us

"by spoken word or by written letter that pretends to be coming from us"

##### to the effect that

"saying that"

##### the day of the Lord

This refers to the time when Jesus will come back to the earth for all believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:3

##### General Information:

Paul teaches about the man of lawlessness.

##### it will not come

"the day of the Lord will not come"

##### the falling away

This refers to a future time when many people will turn away from God.

##### the man of lawlessness is revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God reveals the man of lawlessness"

##### the son of destruction

Paul speaks of destruction as a person who bore a son whose goal is to totally destroy everything. Alternate translation: "the one who destroys everything he can"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:4

##### all that is called God or that is worshiped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everything that people consider to be God or everything that people worship"

##### exhibits himself as God

"shows himself as God"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:5

##### Do you not remember ... these things?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to remind them of his teaching when he was with them previously. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am sure you remember ... these things."

##### these things

This refers to the return of Jesus, the day of the Lord, and the man of lawlessness.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:6

##### what restrains him

"what holds him back" or "what keeps him from doing what he wants to do"

##### he will be revealed only at the right time

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will reveal the man of lawlessness when the time is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:7

##### mystery of lawlessness

This refers to a sacred secret that only God knows.

##### who restrains him

To restrain someone is to hold him back or to keep him from doing what he wants to do.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:8

##### Then the lawless one will be revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then God will allow the lawless one to show himself"

##### with the breath of his mouth

Here "breath" represents the power of God. Alternate translation: "by the power of his spoken word"

##### bring him to nothing by the revelation of his coming

When Jesus returns to earth and shows himself, he will defeat the lawless one.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:9

##### with all power, signs, and false wonders

"with all kinds of power, signs, and false wonders"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:10

##### with every kind of evil that deceives those who are perishing

This man who is given power by Satan will deceive everyone who does not believe in Jesus.

##### who are perishing

Here "perishing" has the concept of everlasting or eternal destruction.

##### they refused to love the truth

This metaphor speaks of these people as if someone had offered them a physical object, like good food, and they had refused to accept or receive it. The abstract noun "love" can be translated as a verb.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:11

##### For this reason

"Because the people do not love the truth"

##### God is sending them a powerful delusion so that they will believe a lie

The powerful delusion is a metonym for the person who will delude the people. Alternate translation: "God is sending the man of lawlessness to delude them"

##### a powerful delusion

a lie that sounds so true that many people believe it

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:12

##### they all may be condemned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will judge all of them"

##### who did not believe the truth but instead took pleasure in unrighteousness

"who took pleasure in unrighteousness because they did not believe the truth" or "who enjoyed doing evil deeds because they did not believe the truth"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:13

##### General Information:

Paul gives thanks to God for the believers and encourages them.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul now changes topics.

##### But

Paul uses this word here to mark a change in topic.

##### we should always give thanks

The word "always" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "we should continually give thanks"

##### we should

Here "we" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy.

##### brothers loved by the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the Lord loves you, brothers"

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

##### as the firstfruits to be saved through the sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth

Being among the first people to be saved is spoken of as if the Thessalonian believers were "firstfruits." This can also be stated to remove the abstract nouns "salvation," "sanctification," "belief," and "truth." Alternate translation: "to be among the first people who believe what is true, whom God has saved and set apart for himself by his Spirit"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:15

##### So then, brothers, stand firm

Paul exhorts the believers to hold fast to their faith in Jesus.

##### hold tightly to the traditions

Here "traditions" refers to the truths of Christ that Paul and the other apostles taught. Paul speaks of them as if his readers could hold on to them with their hands. Alternate translation: "remember the traditions" or "believe the truths"

##### you were taught

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we have taught you"

##### whether by word or by our letter

"By word" here is a synecdoche for "by instructions" or "by teachings." You can make clear the implicit information. Alternate translation: "whether by what we taught you in person or by what we wrote to you in a letter"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends with a blessing from God.

##### Now

Paul uses this word here to mark a change in topic.

##### Lord Jesus Christ himself

Here "himself" gives additional emphasis to the phrase "Lord Jesus Christ."

##### may our Lord ... who loved us and gave us

The words "our" and "us" refer to all believers.

##### gave us eternal comfort and good hope through grace

"caused us to have eternal comfort and good hope through grace"

##### eternal comfort

"comfort that never ends" or "unceasing encouragement"

##### good hope

Here "hope" means a "certain expectation." Alternate translation: "certainty that we will receive good things from him" or "confidence that we will good things from him"

##### through grace

"because of his kindness"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:17

##### comfort and strengthen your hearts in

Here "hearts" represents the seat of emotions. Alternate translation: "comfort you and strengthen you for"

##### every good work and word

"every good thing you do and say"

## Chapter 3

# 2 Thessalonians 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Idle and lazy persons

In Thessalonica, there apparently was a problem with people in the church who were able to work but refused to do so.

#### What should you do if your brother sins?

In this chapter, Paul teaches that Christians need to live in a way that honors God. Christians should also encourage one another and hold each other accountable for what they do. The church is also responsible for encouraging believers to repent if they sin. (See: repent and sin)

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:1

##### General Information:

Paul asks the believers to pray for him and his companions.

##### Now

Paul uses the word "now" to mark a change in topic.

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

##### that the word of the Lord may rush and be glorified, as it also is with you

Paul speaks of God's word spreading as if it were running from place to place. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that more and more people will soon hear our message about our Lord Jesus and honor it, as happened with you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:2

##### that we may be delivered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God may save us" or "that God may rescue us"

##### for not all have faith

"for many people do not believe in Jesus"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:3

##### the evil one

"Satan"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:4

##### We have confidence

"We have faith" or "We trust"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:5

##### direct your hearts to

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or mind. Alternate translation: "cause you to understand"

##### the love of God and to the endurance of Christ

Paul speaks of God's love and Christ's endurance as if they were destinations on a path. Alternate translation: "how much God loves you and how much Christ has endured for you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:6

##### General Information:

Paul gives the believers some final instructions about working and not being idle.

##### Now

Paul uses this word to mark a change in topic.

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"Name" here is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "as if our Lord Jesus Christ himself were speaking"

##### our Lord

Here "our" refers to all believers.

##### is idle

This person is not working hard, but is lazy. Alternate translation: "does not do what is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:7

##### to imitate us

"to act the way that my fellow workers and I act"

##### we were not idle

"we lived disciplined lives"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:8

##### anyone's bread

Bread here is a synecdoche for any kind of food. Alternate translation: "anyone's food"

##### we worked night and day

"we worked during the night and during the day." Here "night" and "day" are a merism and they mean "all the time." Alternate translation: "we worked all the time"

##### in labor and toil

Paul emphasizes how hard his circumstances were. The words "difficult labor" imply that Paul and his companions did work that requires great effort. The word "hardship" implies they endured pain and suffering. Alternate translation: "in very difficult circumstances"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:9

##### We did this not because we have no authority, but we did this

Paul uses a double negative to correct a misunderstanding that his readers may have had. It can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Even though we have authority, we did this"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:10

##### The one who is unwilling to labor must not eat

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Only the one who is willing to work should eat" or "Only people who are willing to work should eat"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:11

##### you are idle

"live a lazy life"

##### but busybodies

Busybodies are people who interfere in the affairs of others without being asked to help.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:12

##### with quietness

"in a quiet, peaceful, and mild manner." Paul exhorts the meddlers to stop getting involved in other people's affairs.

##### eat their own bread

Bread here is a synecdoche for any kind of food. See how "bread" is translated in [2 Thessalonians 3:8]

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:13

##### But

Paul uses this word to contrast the lazy believers with the hardworking believers.

##### you, brothers

The word "you" refers to all the Thessalonian believers.

##### brothers

Here "brothers" means fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:14

##### if anyone does not obey our word

"if anyone does not obey our instructions"

##### take note of him

Notice who he is. Alternate translation: "publicly identify that person"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:16

##### General Information:

Paul makes closing remarks to the believers at Thessalonica.

##### may the Lord of peace himself give you

You can make explicit that this is Paul's prayer for the Thessalonians. Alternate translation: "I pray that the Lord of peace himself gives you"

##### the Lord of peace himself

Here "himself" emphasizes that the Lord will personally give peace to believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:17

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

Paul makes it clear that this letter is from him and is not a forgery.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 1

# 1 Timothy 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul formally introduces this letter in verses 1-2. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spiritual children

In this chapter, Paul calls Timothy a "son" and his "child." Paul discipled Timothy as a Christian and a church leader. Paul may also have led him to believe in Christ. Therefore, Paul called Timothy his "son in the faith."

#### Genealogies

Genealogies are lists that record a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could normally become king. They also showed from what tribe and family they came. For example, priests came from the tribe of Levi and the family of Aaron. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Play on words

The phrase "the law is good if one uses it lawfully" ([1 Timothy 1:8](./08.md)) is a play on words. The English words "law" and "lawfully" come from the same root, and they translate words that come from the same root in the original language, so it would be well to translate the clause so as to preserve this word play.

#### 1 Timothy 1:1

##### General Information:

In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word "our" refers to Paul and Timothy

##### Paul, an apostle

"I, Paul, wrote this letter. I am an apostle." Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. Immediately after introducing the writer, you may want to indicate to whom the letter was written, as in the UDB.

##### according to the commandment of

"by the command of" or "by the authority of"

##### God our Savior

"God who saves us"

##### Christ Jesus our hope

Here "our hope" refers to the person in whom we have confidence. Alternate translation: "Christ Jesus, who is the one in whom we have confidence" or "Christ Jesus, whom we trust"

#### 1 Timothy 1:2

##### true son in the faith

Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though they were father and son. This shows Paul's sincere love and approval of Timothy. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considers him like his own child. Alternate translation: "who is truly like a son to me"

##### Grace, mercy, and peace

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours," or "May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and." Here "Father" is an important title for God.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord"

#### 1 Timothy 1:3

##### General Information:

The word "you" in this letter is singular and refers to Timothy.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages Timothy to reject the wrong use of the law and instead to use good teaching from God.

##### As I urged you

"As I pleaded with you" or "As I asked you very strongly"

##### remain in Ephesus

"wait for me there in the city of Ephesus"

##### a different doctrine

The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "a different doctrine from what we teach"

#### 1 Timothy 1:4

##### Neither should they pay attention

"And I also want you to command them not to pay attention"

##### to stories

These may have been stories about their ancestors.

##### endless genealogies

With the word "endless" Paul uses exaggeration to emphasize that the genealogies are very long.

##### genealogies

the written or verbal record of a person's parents and ancestors

##### These promote arguments

"These make people angrily disagree." The people debated about stories and genealogies about which no one could know the truth for certain.

##### rather than the plan of God, which is by faith

Possible meanings are 1) "rather than helping people to understand God's plan to save us, which we learn by faith" or 2) "rather than helping us to do God's work, which we do by faith."

#### 1 Timothy 1:5

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul explains the purpose of what he is commanding Timothy.

##### the commandment

Here this does not mean the Old Testament or the Ten Commandments but rather the instructions that Paul gives in 1 Timothy 1:3 and 1 Timothy 1:4.

##### is love

Possible meanings are 1) "is to love God" or 2) "is to love people."

##### from a pure heart

Here "pure" means the person does not have hidden motives to do wrong. Here "heart" refers to a person's mind and thoughts. Alternate translation: "from a mind that is honest"

##### good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong"

##### sincere faith

"genuine faith" or "a faith without hypocrisy"

#### 1 Timothy 1:6

##### have gone astray from these things

Paul speaks of people who no longer try to "love from a pure heart, from a good conscience, and from a sincere faith"

##### turned to worthless talk

"begun to have useless discussions"

#### 1 Timothy 1:7

##### teachers of the law

Here "law" refers to the law of Moses.

##### but they do not understand

"even though they do not understand" or "and yet they do not understand"

##### what they so confidently affirm

"what they so confidently state is true"

#### 1 Timothy 1:8

##### we know that the law is good

"we understand that the law is useful" or "we understand that the law is beneficial"

##### if one uses it lawfully

"if a person uses it correctly" or "if a person uses it the way God intended"

#### 1 Timothy 1:9

##### We know this

"Because we realize this" or "We also know this"

##### that law is not set in place for a righteous man

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God did not set the law in place for the righteous man"

##### a righteous man

Here "man" includes both male and female. Alternate translation: "a righteous person" or "a good person"

#### 1 Timothy 1:10

##### sexually immoral people

This refers to anyone who sleeps with someone to whom they are not married.

##### homosexuality

"sexual activity with other members of the same sex." The Greek word specifies males, but it probably is intended here to includes females as well.

##### those who kidnap people for slaves

"those who kidnap people to sell as slaves" or "those who take people to sell as slaves"

##### whatever else is opposed to truthful teaching

The Greek has "healthy" but that term is a figure for "truthful" here. It is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "whatever other things people do that we teach is wrong"

#### 1 Timothy 1:11

##### the glorious gospel of the blessed God

"the gospel about the glory that belongs to the blessed God" or "the gospel of the glorious and blessed God"

##### with which I have been entrusted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which God has given me and made me responsible for"

#### 1 Timothy 1:12

##### he considered me faithful

"he considered me trustworthy" or "he regarded me as reliable"

##### he appointed me to service

"he assigned me to serve him" or "he appointed me as his servant"

#### 1 Timothy 1:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to tell how he acted in the past.

##### I was a blasphemer

"I was a person who spoke evil against Christ." Paul is referring to his character before he was a Christian.

##### a persecutor

"a person who persecuted those who believed in Christ"

##### a violent man

"a person who was cruel to other people" or "a person who believed I had the right to hurt others"

##### But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief

"But because I did not believe in Jesus, and I did not know what I was doing, I received mercy from Jesus"

##### I received mercy

"Jesus showed me mercy" or "Jesus had mercy on me"

#### 1 Timothy 1:14

##### the grace of our Lord overflowed

Paul speaks of God's grace as if it were a liquid that could fill a container and spill out of the top when the container is full. Alternate translation: "God showed me much grace"

##### overflowed with the faith and the love that is in Christ Jesus

This is the result of God showing much grace to Paul. Alternate translation: "overflowed, which caused me to trust in Christ Jesus and love him"

##### that is in Christ Jesus

This speaks about Jesus as if he were a container that holds a liquid. Here "in Christ Jesus" refers to having a relationship with Jesus. Alternate translation: "that Christ Jesus enables me to give to God because I am united to him"

#### 1 Timothy 1:15

##### This message is reliable

"This statement is true"

##### worthy of all acceptance

"we should receive it without any doubt" or "deserves for us to accept it with full confidence"

##### sinners, of whom I am chief

"sinners, of whom I am the chief sinner" or "sinners, of whom I am the worst." Paul is saying that he has sinned more than any other sinner, not that he has been the leader of a group of sinners.

#### 1 Timothy 1:16

##### I was given mercy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God showed me mercy" or "I obtained mercy from God"

##### the chief

"the chief sinner" or "the worst sinner." Paul is saying that he has sinned more than any other sinner, not that he has been the leader of a group of sinners. See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 1:15.

#### 1 Timothy 1:17

##### Now ... Amen

The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul praises God.

##### the king of the ages

"the eternal king" or "the chief ruler forever"

##### Now to the king of the ages, the immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever

The abstract nouns "honor" and "glory" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "Now may people forever honor and glorify the king of the ages, who is immortal, invisible, and the only God"

#### 1 Timothy 1:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to encourage Timothy to trust God.

##### I am placing this command before you

Paul speaks of his instructions as if he could physically put them in front of Timothy. Alternate translation: "I am entrusting you with this command" or "This is what I am commanding you"

##### my child

Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though Paul is the father and Timothy is the child. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considered him like his own child. Alternate translation: "who is truly like my child"

##### in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in agreement with what other believers prophesied about you"

##### fight the good fight

Paul speaks about Timothy working for the Lord as if he were a soldier fighting a battle. Alternate translation: "continue to work hard for the Lord"

#### 1 Timothy 1:19

##### a good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong." See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 1:5.

##### some have shipwrecked their faith

Paul speaks of these people's faith as if it were a ship that could be wrecked at sea. He means that they have ruined their faith and no longer believe in Jesus. You should use this or a similar metaphor if it will be understood in the project language.

#### 1 Timothy 1:20

##### Hymenaeus ... Alexander

These are names of men.

##### whom I delivered over to Satan

Paul has cast the men out of the community, so Satan now has power over them and can harm them.

##### they may be taught

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God may teach them"

## Chapter 2

# 1 Timothy 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Peace

Paul encourages Christians to pray for everyone. They should pray for rulers so that Christians can live peacefully, in a godly and dignified way.

#### Women in the church

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings"

These terms overlap each other in what they mean. It is not necessary to view them as distinct categories.

#### 1 Timothy 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages Timothy to pray for all people.

##### first of all

"most importantly" or "before anything else"

##### I urge that humble requests, prayers, petitions, and thanksgivings be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I urge all believers to make requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving to God"

##### I urge

"I plead" or "I ask"

#### 1 Timothy 2:2

##### a peaceful and quiet life

Here "peaceful" and "quiet" mean the same thing. Paul wants all believers to be able to live calm lives without trouble from the authorities.

##### in all godliness and dignity

"that honors God and that other people will respect"

#### 1 Timothy 2:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Timothy 2:4

##### He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God desires to save all people and for them to come to the knowledge of the truth"

##### to come to the knowledge of the truth

Paul speaks of learning the truth about God as if it were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "to know and accept what is true"

#### 1 Timothy 2:5

##### one mediator for God and man

A mediator is a person who helps negotiate a peaceful settlement between two parties who disagree with each other. Here Jesus helps sinners enter into a peaceful relationship with God.

#### 1 Timothy 2:6

##### gave himself

"died willingly"

##### as a ransom

"as a price of freedom" or "as a payment to obtain freedom"

##### as the testimony at the right time

It can be made explicit that this was the testimony that God wants to save all people. Alternate translation: "as the proof at the right time that God wants to save all people"

##### at the right time

This means that this was the time that God had chosen.

#### 1 Timothy 2:7

##### For this purpose

"For this" or "For this reason"

##### I was appointed a herald and an apostle

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ appointed me to be a herald and an apostle" or "Christ made me a preacher and an apostle"

##### a herald

"an official messenger." A herald is an official messenger who is sent to bring news.

##### I am telling the truth, I am not lying

With these two comments Paul emphasizes that he is telling the truth when he says that he was appointed to be a herald, an apostle, and a teacher. Some translators may prefer to put these comments at the end of the verse.

##### in faith and truth

This probably refers to what Paul was to teach about. He may be using "faith" and truth" to express one idea. Alternate translation: "about the message of faith and truth" or "about the true faith"

#### 1 Timothy 2:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his instructions on prayer and then gives some special instructions for women.

##### I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands

Here "holy hands" is a metonym for a holy person. Alternate translation: "I want holy men in every place to lift up their hands and pray"

##### men in every place

"the males in all places" or "the males everywhere." Here the word "men" refers specifically to males.

##### lift up holy hands

It was a normal posture for people to raise their hands while praying.

#### 1 Timothy 2:9

##### with modesty and self-control

Both of these words mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that women should wear clothes that are appropriate and do not attract improper attention from men.

##### not with braided hair

During Paul's time, many Roman women braided their hair to make themselves attractive. Braiding is only one way a woman can give undue attention to her hair. If braided hair is unknown, it can be stated in a more general way. Alternate translation: "not having fancy hairstyles" or "not having elaborate hairstyles that attract attention"

##### pearls

These are beautiful and valuable white balls that people use as jewelry. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean.

#### 1 Timothy 2:10

##### General Information:

Possible meanings of this verse are 1) the words "through good works" tell how the women Paul is talking about "proclaim godliness" or 2) those words tell how women are to "dress," a metaphor that refers to what people are to see and think about when they look at the women to whom Paul is writing. Alternate translation: "but with good works, as is proper for women who proclaim godliness"

##### who proclaim godliness through good works

"who want to show that they honor God by doing good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 2:11

##### in silence

"in quietness"

##### and with all submission

"and submit to what is taught"

#### 1 Timothy 2:12

##### I do not permit a woman

"I do not allow a woman"

#### 1 Timothy 2:13

##### Adam was formed first

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Adam is the one God formed first" or "God created Adam first"

##### then Eve

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "and then God formed Eve" or "and then God created Eve"

#### 1 Timothy 2:14

##### Adam was not deceived

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "And Adam was not the one whom the serpent deceived"

##### but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but it was the woman who disobeyed God when the serpent deceived her"

#### 1 Timothy 2:15

##### she will be saved through bearing children

Here "she" refers to women in general. Possible meanings are 1) God will keep women physically safe as they give birth to children, or 2) God will save women from their sins through their role as child bearers.

##### she will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save her" or "God will save women"

##### if they continue

"if they remain" or "if they continue living." Here "they" refers to women.

##### in faith and love and sanctification

The abstract nouns here can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "in trusting Jesus and loving others and living a holy life"

##### with self-control

Other possible meanings are 1) "with good judgment" or 2) "with modesty."

## Chapter 3

# 1 Timothy 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

[1 Timothy 3:16](./16.md) was probably a song, poem, or creed the early church used to list important doctrines that believers all shared.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Overseers and deacons

The church has used different titles for church leaders. Some titles include elder, pastor, and bishop. The word "overseer" reflects the meaning of the original language in verses 1-2. Paul writes about "deacons" in verses 8 and 12 as another kind of church leader.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Character qualities

This chapter lists several qualities that a man must have if he is to be an overseer or deacon in the church.

#### 1 Timothy 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives some special instructions on how the overseers of the church should act and be.

##### a good work

"an honorable task"

#### 1 Timothy 3:2

##### husband of one wife

An overseer must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed or divorced, or never married.

##### He must be moderate, sensible, orderly, and hospitable

"He must not do anything to excess, must be reasonable and behave well, and must be friendly to strangers"

#### 1 Timothy 3:3

##### He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler but instead gentle, peaceful

"He must neither drink too much alcohol nor like to fight and argue, but instead he must be gentle and peaceful"

##### a lover of money

"greedy for money"

#### 1 Timothy 3:4

##### He should manage

"He should lead" or "He should take care of"

##### he should make sure his children obey and respect him in every way

Possible meanings are 1) the overseer's children should obey and show respect to their father or 2) the overseer's children should show respect to everyone or 3) the overseer should show respect to those in his household as he leads them.

#### 1 Timothy 3:5

##### For if a man does not know how to manage

"For when a man cannot manage"

##### how will he care for a church of God?

Paul uses a question to teach Timothy. Alternate translation: "he cannot take care of a church of God." or "he will not be able to lead a church of God."

##### a church of God

Here "church" refers to a local group of God's people. Alternate translation: "a group of God's people" or "the believers over whom he is in charge"

#### 1 Timothy 3:6

##### He should not be a new convert

"He should not be a new believer" or "He must be a mature believer"

##### fall into condemnation as the devil

Paul speaks of a person being condemned for having done wrong as if he were falling into a hole. Alternate translation: "have God condemn him as he condemned the devil"

#### 1 Timothy 3:7

##### those outside

"those outside of the church." Paul speaks of the church as though it were a place, and of unbelievers as though they were physically outside of it. Alternate translation: "those who are not Christians"

##### he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil

Paul speaks of disgrace and the devil causing someone to sin as if they were a hole or a trap into which a person falls. Here "fall into" means to experience. Alternate translation: "nothing causes him shame before the unbelievers and so that the devil does not cause him to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 3:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives some special instructions on how the deacons of the church and their wives should act and be.

##### In the same way, deacons

"Deacons, like overseers,"

##### should be dignified, not double-talkers

Paul speaks about some people as if they were "double-talkers" who could say two things at once. He is talking about people who say one thing but mean something else. Alternate translation: "should act properly and mean what they say"

#### 1 Timothy 3:9

##### They should keep the mystery of the faith with a clean conscience

"They must continue to believe, with a clean conscience, the true message God has revealed to us." This refers to a truth that had existed for some time but that God was showing to them at that moment. Paul speaks of true teaching about God as if it were an object that a person could keep with himself.

##### the mystery of the faith

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the truth of the faith that God revealed"

##### faith with a clean conscience

Paul speaks of a person's knowledge that he has done no wrong as if that knowledge or conscience were clean. Alternate translation: "faith, knowing they have tried their hardest to do what is right"

#### 1 Timothy 3:10

##### They should also be approved first

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Other believers should approve of them first" or "They should prove themselves first"

##### be approved

This means other believers should evaluate those who want to be a deacon and determine if they are fit to serve in the church.

#### 1 Timothy 3:11

##### In the same way, their wives

Possible meanings of "their wives" are 1) the wives of deacons or 2) female deacons or 3) women in general.

##### be dignified

"act properly" or "be worthy of respect"

##### should be dignified, not slanderers, but sober and faithful

"should be dignified; they should not speak evil about other people, and they should not do anything to excess; rather, they should be faithful"

##### sober

"moderate." See how you translated "moderate" in 1 Timothy 3:2.

#### 1 Timothy 3:12

##### husbands of one wife

A man must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed, divorced, or never married. See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 3:2.

##### manage well their children and household

"properly take care of and lead their children and others who live in their homes"

#### 1 Timothy 3:13

##### For those

"For those deacons" or "For these church leaders"

##### acquire for themselves

"receive for themselves" or "gain for themselves"

##### a good standing

The implied meaning may be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "a good reputation among other believers"

##### great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) they will trust in Jesus with even more confidence or 2) they will speak confidently to other people about their faith in Jesus.

#### 1 Timothy 3:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells Timothy the reason he wrote to him and then describes Christ's godliness.

##### I hope to come to you soon

Paul expected that his desire to visit them soon would happen. Alternate translation: "I expect to come to you soon"

#### 1 Timothy 3:15

##### But if I delay

"But in case I cannot go there soon" or "But if something prevents me for being there soon"

##### so that you may know how to conduct yourself in the household of God

Paul speaks of the group of believers as if they were a family. Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring only to Timothy's behavior in the church. Or 2) Paul is referring to believers in general. Alternate translation: "so that you all may know how to conduct yourselves as members of God's family"

##### household of God, which is the church of the living God

This phrase gives us information about "the household of God" rather than making a distinction between a household of God which is the church and one that is not the church. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "household of God. Those who belong to the family of God are the community of believers in the living God"

##### which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth

Paul speaks of the believers bearing witness to the truth about Christ as if they were a pillar and a base supporting a building. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "which is the church of the living God. And, by keeping and teaching God's truth, these members of the church support the truth just as a pillar and base support a building"

##### the living God

Here this expression may be speaking of God as the one who gives life to all, as in the UDB.

#### 1 Timothy 3:16

##### We all agree

"No one can deny"

##### that the mystery of godliness is great

"that the truth that God has revealed is great"

##### He was revealed ... up in glory

This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### He was revealed

Some modern translations read, "God was revealed" or "God appeared." If Paul is quoting a song or poem, the word "he" refers to Jesus Christ. If he is not quoting, the word "he" could refer to either God or Jesus Christ.

##### in the flesh

Paul uses "flesh" here to mean a human being. Alternate translation: "as a true human being"

##### was vindicated by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit confirmed that he was who he said he was"

##### was seen by angels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the angels saw him"

##### was proclaimed among nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people in many nations told others about him"

##### was believed on in the world

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people in many parts of the world believed in him"

##### was taken up in glory

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God the Father took him up to heaven in glory"

##### in glory

This means he received power from God the Father and he is worthy of honor.

## Chapter 4

# 1 Timothy 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

1 Timothy 4:1 is a prophecy. (See: prophet)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Later times

This is another way of referring to the last days. (See: lastday)

#### 1 Timothy 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul tells Timothy what the Spirit says will happen and encourages him in what he should teach.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul starts to tell a new part of the teaching.

##### in later times

These words could refer to 1) a time after Paul dies or 2) a later time in Paul's own life.

##### leave the faith

Paul speaks of people ceasing to trust in Christ as if they were physically leaving a place or an object. Alternate translation: "stop trusting in Jesus"

##### and pay attention

"and give attention" or "because they are paying attention"

##### deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons

"spirits who trick people and the things that demons teach"

#### 1 Timothy 4:2

##### by the hypocrisy of liars

This can be stated as a separate sentence if verse 1 is ended with a period. Alternate translation: "They will learn these things by the hypocrisy of liars" or "They will learn these things from hypocrital liars"

##### their own consciences having been seared

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking of people who can no longer tell that they are doing wrong as if their minds were ruined. He speaks of their minds being ruined as if their minds were skin that someone had burned with a hot iron. Or 2) Paul is speaking of these people as if Satan had put a mark on them with a hot iron to indicate that they belong to him.

##### seared

touched with a hot object until it burns brown or black

#### 1 Timothy 4:3

##### They will

"These people will"

##### forbid people to marry

It is implied that they will forbid believers to marry. Alternate translation: "forbid believers to marry"

##### require them to abstain from foods

It is implied that they will forbid only certain foods. Alternate translation: "they will not allow people to eat certain foods"

#### 1 Timothy 4:4

##### For every creation of God is good

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everything that God has created is good"

##### nothing received with thanksgiving is to be rejected

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we should not refuse anything for which we give thanks to God" or "everything that we eat with thanksgiving is acceptable"

#### 1 Timothy 4:5

##### it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer

Here "word of God" and "prayer" are used together to express one idea. The prayer is in agreement with the truth that God has revealed. Alternate translation: "it is dedicated for God's use by praying in agreement with his word"

##### it is sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we sanctify it" or "we have set it apart"

##### word of God

Here "word" refers to God's message or what he has revealed.

#### 1 Timothy 4:6

##### If you place these things before the brothers

Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were objects that could be physically presented to the believers. Here, to place before means to instruct or to remind. Alternate translation: "If you help the believers remember these things"

##### these things

This refers to the teaching that started in 1 Timothy 3:16.

##### the brothers

This refers to all believers whether male or female.

##### you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed

Paul speaks of God's word and its teaching as if it could physically feed Timothy and make him strong. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the words of faith and the good teaching that you have followed are causing you to trust more strongly in Christ"

##### words of faith

"words that cause people to believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:7

##### profane stories loved by old women

"ungodly stories and old wives' tales." "Profane" here refers to stories that purposely dishonor God. Translate "stories" as you did in 1 Timothy 1:4.

##### loved by old women

This is probably an expression that means "silly" or "absurd." Paul is not purposely insulting women in his reference to "old women." Instead, he and his audience knew that men die younger than women, so there are more women than men whose minds have become feeble due to old age.

##### train yourself in godliness

"train yourself to honor God" or "train yourself to act in ways that please God"

#### 1 Timothy 4:8

##### bodily training

"physical exercise"

##### holds promise for this life

"is beneficial to this life"

#### 1 Timothy 4:9

##### worthy of full acceptance

"worthy of your complete belief" or "worthy of your full trust"

#### 1 Timothy 4:10

##### For it is for this

"This is the reason"

##### labor and struggle

The word "labor" here refers to working very hard, and "struggle" is a metaphor for dealing with difficulties and dangers.

##### For we hope in the living God ... believers

Paul and his fellow workers confidently expect that God will do all that he has promised to do. Alternate translation: "For we confidently expect that the living God... believers, will do what he promised to do" or "For we fully trust in the living God ... believers"

##### the living God

Possible meanings are 1) "the God who is alive," as opposed to idols, who are not alive, or 2) "God, who acts," as opposed to idols that do nothing, or 3) "God, who gives life to all living beings."

##### but especially of believers

The ellipsis can be filled in. Alternate translation: "but he is especially the Savior of those people who believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:11

##### Instruct the people and teach these things

"Command and teach these things" or "Instruct and teach these things I just mentioned"

#### 1 Timothy 4:12

##### Let no one despise your youth

"Do not let anyone consider you less important because you are young"

##### in speech, conduct, love, faithfulness, and purity

Paul wanted Timothy to be an example in these things. Alternate translation: "by speaking and doing what is right, by loving others, and by being faithful and pure"

#### 1 Timothy 4:13

##### attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching

The words "reading," "exhortation," and "teaching" can be translated with verbal phrases. The implied information can also be supplied in translation Alternate translation: "continue reading the scripture to the people, exhorting the people, and teaching the people"

#### 1 Timothy 4:14

##### Do not neglect the gift that is in you

Paul speaks of Timothy as if he were a container that could hold God's gifts. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Do not neglect your spiritual gift"

##### Do not neglect

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Be sure to use"

##### which was given to you through prophecy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which you received when leaders of the church spoke God's word"

##### laying on of the hands of the elders

This was a ceremony in which the church leaders put their hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.

#### 1 Timothy 4:15

##### Care for these things. Be in them

Paul speaks of God's gifts to Timothy as if he could physically be in them. Alternate translation: "Do all these things and live according to them"

##### so that your progress may be evident to all people

Paul speaks of Timothy's increasing ability to serve God as if it were a physical object that others could look at. Alternate translation: "so other people will know that you are serving God better and better"

#### 1 Timothy 4:16

##### Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching

"Conduct yourself carefully and give attention to the teaching" or "Control your own behavior and give attention to the teaching"

##### Continue in these things

"Continue to do these things"

##### you will save yourself and those who listen to you

Possible meanings are 1) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from God's judgment or 2) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from the influence of false teachers.

## Chapter 5

# 1 Timothy 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Honor and respect

Paul encourages younger Christians to honor and respect older Christians. Cultures honor and respect older people in different ways.

#### Widows

In the ancient Near East, it was important to care for widows, because they could not provide for themselves.

#### 1 Timothy 5:1

##### General Information:

Paul was giving these commands to one person, Timothy. Languages that have different forms of "you" or different forms for commands would use the singular form here.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell Timothy how to treat the men, women, widows, and younger women in the church.

##### Do not rebuke an older man

"Do not speak harshly to an older man"

##### Instead, exhort him

"Instead, encourage him"

##### as if he were a father ... as brothers

Paul uses these similes to tell Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect.

#### 1 Timothy 5:2

##### older women ... younger women

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "exhort older women ... exhort younger women" or "encourage older women ... encourage younger women"

##### in all purity

"with pure thoughts and actions" or "in a holy way"

#### 1 Timothy 5:3

##### Honor widows

"Respect and provide for widows"

##### the real widows

"widows with no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:4

##### let them first learn

"first of all they should learn" or "let them make it a priority to learn"

##### in their own household

"to their own family" or "to those living in their homes"

##### Let them repay their parents

"Let them do good to their parents in return for the good things their parents have given them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:5

##### But she who is a real widow, who is left all alone

"But one who is truly a widow, who has no family"

##### has set her hope in God

The widow confidently expected that God would do what he promised to do. Alternate translation: "confidently expects that God will do what he promised to do" or "fully trusts in God"

##### continues in offering earnest appeals and prayers

"continues to make requests and prayers"

##### offering earnest appeals and prayers

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how much these widows pray.

##### night and day

The words "night" and "day" are used together to mean "at all times." Alternate translation: "all the time"

#### 1 Timothy 5:6

##### is dead

Paul speaks about people who do not seek to please God as if they were dead. Alternate translation: "is like a dead person; she does not respond to God"

##### she lives

This refers to physical life.

#### 1 Timothy 5:7

##### Instruct them in these things

"Teach them these things, too" or "Command them to do these things, too"

##### so that they may be blameless

"so that no one can find fault with them." Possible meanings of "they" are 1) "these widows and their families" or 2) "the believers." It might be best to leave the subject as "they."

#### 1 Timothy 5:8

##### does not provide for his own relatives, especially for those of his own household

"does not help with his relatives' needs, especially for those family members living in his home"

##### he has denied the faith

"he has acted contrary to the truth we believe"

##### is worse than an unbeliever

"is worse than those who do not believe in Jesus." Paul means this person is worse than an unbeliever because even unbelievers take care of their relatives. Therefore, a believer should certainly take care of his relatives.

#### 1 Timothy 5:9

##### be enrolled as a widow

There seems to have been a list, written or not, of widows. The church members met these women's needs for shelter, clothing, and food, and these women were expected to devote their lives to serving the Christian community.

##### who is not younger than sixty

As Paul will explain in 5:11-16, widows who were younger than 60 years old might get married again. Therefore the Christian community was to care only for widows who were older than 60.

##### a wife of one husband

Possible meanings are 1) she was always faithful to her husband or 2) she had not divorced her husband and then married another man.

#### 1 Timothy 5:10

##### She must have a reputation for doing good deeds

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People must be able to tell others about her good deeds"

##### has been hospitable to strangers

"has welcomed strangers into her home"

##### has washed the feet of God's holy people

Washing the dirty feet of people who have been walking in the dirt and mud is one way of meeting other people's needs and making life more enjoyable for them. This probably means she did humble work in general. Alternate translation: "has done common work to help other believers"

##### God's holy people

Some versions translate this word as "the believers" or "saints." The essential idea is to refer to Christian believers.

##### has relieved the afflicted

Here "the afflicted" is a nominal adjective that can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "has helped those who are suffering"

##### has been devoted to every good work

"has given herself to doing all kinds of good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 5:11

##### But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list

"But do not include younger widows in the list." The list was of widows aged 60 years and older whom the Christian community would help.

##### For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry

"For when they prefer to fulfill their sensual desires and get married, they go against their promise to serve Christ as widows"

#### 1 Timothy 5:12

##### set aside their first commitment

"do not keep their prior commitment" or "do not do what they promised before to do"

##### commitment

The commitment of the widows was their agreement to serve the Christian community for the rest of their lives if the community would supply the widows' needs.

#### 1 Timothy 5:13

##### learn to be lazy

"get into the habit of doing nothing"

##### talk nonsense and are busybodies, saying things they should not say

These three phrases are probably three ways of speaking of the same activity. These people should not be looking into other people's private lives and telling about them to others who are no better off after hearing.

##### nonsense

words that do not help those who hear them

##### busybodies

people who look into other people's private lives for their own good and not for the good of the other people

#### 1 Timothy 5:14

##### to manage the household

"to take care of everyone in her house"

##### the enemy

These words could refer to 1) Satan or 2) unbelievers who are hostile to Christians.

##### to slander us

Here "us" refers to the entire Christian community, including Timothy.

#### 1 Timothy 5:15

##### turned aside after Satan

Paul speaks of living in faithfulness to Christ as if it were a path to be followed. This means the women stopped obeying Jesus and started obeying Satan. Alternate translation: "left the path of Christ to follow Satan" or "decided to obey Satan instead of Christ"

#### 1 Timothy 5:16

##### any believing woman

"any Christian woman" or "any woman who believes in Christ"

##### has widows

"has widows among her relatives"

##### so that the church will not be burdened

Paul speaks of the community having to help more people than they are able as if they were carrying too much weight on their backs. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the church will not have more work to do than they can" or "so that the Christian community will not have to help widows whose families could provide for them"

##### real widows

"those women who have no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul again talks of how elders (overseers) should be treated and then gives Timothy some personal instructions.

##### Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "All believers should think of the elders who are good leaders as worthy"

##### double honor

Possible meanings are 1) "respect and payment" or 2) "more respect than others receive"

##### those who labor with the word and in teaching

Paul speaks about the word as if it is an object that a person can work with. Alternate translation: "those who work hard preaching and those who teach God's word"

#### 1 Timothy 5:18

##### For the scripture says

This is personification that means that this is what someone has written in the scriptures. Alternate translation: "For we read in the scriptures that"

##### You must not put a muzzle on an ox while it threshes the grain

Paul is using this quotation as a metaphor meaning that church leaders deserve to receive payment from the Christian community for their work.

##### muzzle

place a sleeve over an animal's snout and mouth to prevent it from eating

##### threshes the grain

An ox "threshes the grain" when it walks on or pulls a heavy object over the cut grain to separate the grain from the stalks. The ox was allowed to eat some of the grain as it worked.

##### is worthy of

"deserves"

#### 1 Timothy 5:19

##### Do not receive an accusation

Paul speaks of accusations as if they were objects that could be physically accepted by people. Alternate translation: "Do not accept as true any accusation that someone speaks"

##### two or three

"at least two" or "two or more"

#### 1 Timothy 5:20

##### sinners

This refers to anyone doing anything that disobeys or displeases God, even things that other people do not know about.

##### before all

"where everyone can see"

##### so that the rest may be afraid

"so that others will be afraid to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 5:21

##### the chosen angels

This means the angels whom God and Jesus have chosen to serve them in a special way.

##### to keep these commands without partiality, and to do nothing out of favoritism

The words "partiality" and "favoritism" mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that Timothy must judge honestly and be fair to everyone. Alternate translation: "to keep these rules without being partial or showing favor to anyone"

##### these commands

The phrase "these commands" could refer to 1) the rules Paul just told Timothy or 2) the rules Paul is about to tell Timothy.

#### 1 Timothy 5:22

##### Place hands

The placing of hands was a ceremony in which one or more church leaders would place their hands on people and pray that God would enable those people to serve the church in a way that would please God. Timothy was to wait until the person had shown good character for a long time before officially setting that person apart to serve the Christian community.

##### Do not share in the sins of another person

Paul speaks of someone's sin as if it were an object that could be shared with others. Alternate translation: "do not join in another person's sin" or "do not participate when another person sins"

##### Do not share in the sins of another person

Possible meanings are 1) if Timothy chose someone who was guilty of sin to be a church worker, God would hold Timothy responsible for that person's sin or 2) Timothy should not commit sins he saw others committing.

#### 1 Timothy 5:23

##### You should no longer drink water

It is implied that Timothy should not drink only water. Paul is telling Timothy to use wine as medicine. The water in that area often caused sickness.

##### for the stomach and your frequent sicknesses

"because of your stomach and your frequent sicknesses" or "to help your stomach and to stop your frequent illnesses"

#### 1 Timothy 5:24

##### The sins of some people are openly known

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The sins of some people are very obvious"

##### they go before them into judgment

"their sins go before those people into judgment." Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Their sins are so obvious that everyone will know they are guilty even before anyone testifies against them or 2) Their sins are evident, and God judges them now.

##### But some sins follow later

"But some sins follow people later." Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Timothy and the Christian community will not know about certain sins until later or 2) God will not judge some sins until the final judgment.

#### 1 Timothy 5:25

##### some good works are openly known

"some good works are obvious"

##### good works

The works are considered "good" because they fit with God's character, purposes, and will.

##### but even the others cannot be hidden

Paul speaks of good works as if they were objects that someone cannot hide. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but people will later find out about even the good deeds that are not obvious"

## Chapter 6

# 1 Timothy 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about honoring, respecting, and diligently serving masters. Paul teaches all believers to be godly and content in every situation.

#### 1 Timothy 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives some specific instructions to slaves and masters and then continues with instructions on living in a godly way.

##### Let all who are under the yoke as slaves

Paul speaks of people working as slaves as if they are oxen carrying a yoke. Alternate translation: "Let all who are working as slaves"

##### Let all who are

It is implied that Paul is speaking about believers. Alternate translation: "Let all who are believers"

##### the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: "the unbelievers might always speak respectfully about the name of God and the teaching"

##### the name of God

Here "name" refers to God's nature or character. Alternate translation: "the character of God" or "God"

##### the teaching

"the faith" or "the gospel"

#### 1 Timothy 6:2

##### The slaves who have believing masters should not show them disrespect because they are brothers

Possible meanings are 1) it is because the believing masters are brothers that their slaves should not show them disrespect or 2) slaves should not think that because their masters are believers they can therefore show them disrespect.

##### they are brothers

Here "brothers" means "fellow believers."

##### those who receive the benefit

You may need to add the words omitted by the ellipsis. Alternate translation: "the masters whom the slaves help with their good work"

##### and beloved

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "and the slaves should love them" or 2) "whom God loves"

#### 1 Timothy 6:3

##### the truthful words of our Lord Jesus Christ

The word "truthful" is a figure of speech from the Greek word for "healthy."

##### truthful words

The word translated as "truthful" comes from the term "healthy" here, and it is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. See how you translated the word "healthy" in [1 Timothy 1:10]

#### 1 Timothy 6:4

##### he is proud ... He has an unhealthy interest

Here "he" refers to anyone in general that teaches what is not correct. To make this clear, you can translate "he" as "they."

##### understands nothing

"understands nothing about God's truth"

##### He has an unhealthy interest in controversies and arguments

Paul speaks of people who feel compelled to engage in useless arguments as if they were ill. Such people greatly desire to argue, and they do not really want to find a way to agree. Alternate translation: "All he wants to do is argue" or "He craves arguments"

##### controversies and arguments about words that result in envy

"controversies and arguments about words, and these controversies and arguments result in envy"

##### about words

"about the meanings of words"

##### strife

arguments, fights

##### insults

bad things that people falsely say about each other

##### evil suspicions

evil beliefs that innocent people have done something wrong or are planning on doing something wrong

#### 1 Timothy 6:5

##### morally corrupt minds

"wicked minds"

##### They have lost the truth

Here the word "They" refers to anyone who teaches anything that does not agree with the teaching of Jesus. The phrase "have lost the truth" represents ignoring it or forgetting it. Alternate translation: "They have ignored the truth" or "They have forgotten the truth"

#### 1 Timothy 6:6

##### Now

This marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul begins to contrast the kind of riches the wicked people seek through godliness (1 Timothy 6:5) and the true kind of gain people receive through godliness. Alternate translation: "Of course"

##### godliness with contentment is great gain

The words "godliness" and "contentment" are abstract nouns. Alternate translation: "it is great gain for people to do what is godly and to be content with what they have"

##### is great gain

"provides great benefits" or "does many good things for us"

#### 1 Timothy 6:7

##### we brought nothing into the world

"we brought nothing into the world when we were born"

##### we can take nothing out of it

"we can take nothing out of the world when we die"

#### 1 Timothy 6:8

##### let us

"we should"

#### 1 Timothy 6:9

##### Now

This word marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul returns to the topic about those who think being godly will make them wealthy (1 Timothy 6:5).

##### to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap

Paul speaks about those who let the temptation of money cause them to sin as if they were animals that fall into holes that hunters use as traps. Alternate translation: "to become wealthy will encounter more temptation than they can resist, and they will be like an animal in a trap"

##### They fall into many foolish and harmful desires, and into whatever else sinks

Paul continues the trap metaphor and speaks of people who give in to their foolish and harmful desires and do evil as if they were animals who fall into a trap. Alternate translation: "They desire many foolish and harmful things and then do things that sink"

##### harmful desires

These are probably desires to do things that will harm those who do them as much as or more than they will harm other people.

##### into whatever else sinks people into ruin and destruction

Paul speaks about people who suffer because of their sins as if sin were a person who had put them under water or in mud. Alternate translation: "into other kinds of evil that ruin and destroy people"

#### 1 Timothy 6:10

##### For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil

Paul speaks of the love of money as if it were the root of a plant whose fruit is all kinds of evil. Alternate translation: "This happens because loving money is a cause of all kinds of evil"

##### who desire it

"who desire money"

##### have been misled away from the faith

Paul speaks of wrong desires as if they were evil guides who intentionally guide people down the wrong path. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "have let their desires lead them away from the truth" or "have stopped believing the truth"

##### have pierced themselves with much grief

Paul speaks about grief as if it were swords that people have used to stab themselves. Alternate translation: "have caused themselves to be very sorrowful"

#### 1 Timothy 6:11

##### But you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Timothy.

##### man of God

"servant of God" or "person who belongs to God"

##### flee from these things

Paul speaks of these temptations and sins as if they were things that a person could physically run away from. Alternate translation: "completely avoid these things"

##### these things

Possible meanings of "these things" are 1) the "love of money" or 2) the different teachings, pride, arguments, and the love of money.

##### Pursue righteousness

"Run after righteousness" or "Chase righteousness." Paul speaks of righteousness and other good qualities as if they were things that a person could run after. This metaphor is the opposite of "flee from." It means to try your best to obtain something. Alternate translation: "Seek to gain" or "Do your best to act in"

#### 1 Timothy 6:12

##### Fight the good fight of faith

Here Paul speaks about a person continuing in faith as if he were an athlete fighting to win a contest or a warrior fighting a battle. Alternate translation: "Try your hardest to obey Christ's teachings with as much energy as an athlete uses in a contest"

##### Take hold of the everlasting life

This continues the metaphor. Paul speaks about a person receiving eternal life as if he were a victorious athlete or warrior taking their prize. Alternate translation: "Take eternal life as your reward as a victorious athlete takes his prize"

##### to which you were called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to which God has called you"

##### you gave the good confession

"you confessed what is good" or "you confessed the truth"

##### before many witnesses

Paul expresses the idea of location in order to signal the idea of the people to whom Timothy was speaking. Alternate translation: "to many witnesses"

#### 1 Timothy 6:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks of Christ's coming, gives specific instructions to the rich, and lastly closes with a special message to Timothy.

##### I give these orders to you

"This is what I command you"

##### before God, who gives life to all things

"in the presence of God, who causes all things to live." It is implied that Paul as asking God to be his witness. Alternate translation: "with God, who causes all things to live, as my witness"

##### and before Christ Jesus, who testified before Pontius Pilate

"in the presence of Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate." It is implied that Paul is asking Jesus to be his witness. Alternate translation: "with Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate, as my witness"

#### 1 Timothy 6:14

##### without spot or blame

The phrase "without spot" is a metaphor for being without moral fault. Possible meanings are 1) Jesus will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong or 2) other people will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong.

##### until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ

"until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again"

#### 1 Timothy 6:15

##### God will reveal Christ's appearing

It is implied that God will reveal Jesus. Alternate translation: "God will reveal Jesus"

##### the blessed and only Sovereign

"the One worthy of praise who rules over the world"

#### 1 Timothy 6:16

##### Only he has immortality

"Only he has the power to live forever"

##### dwells in inapproachable light

"dwells in a light so bright that no one can approach him"

#### 1 Timothy 6:17

##### Instruct the rich in this world

Here "rich" is a nominal adjective. It can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "Solemnly charge those who are rich in this world"

##### not to hope in riches, which are uncertain

Paul tells rich people not to confidently expect that their wealth will always provide what they need. Alternate translation: "not to confidently expect that they will always have what they need, because it is uncertain how long they may have their many possession"

##### they should hope in God

Paul tells rich people that they should confidently expect God to do what he has promised to do. Alternate translation: "they should confidently expect that God will do what he has promised to do" or "they should fully trust in God"

##### all the true riches

"all the things that will make us truly happy." The reference here may include physical objects, but it more likely refers to states like love, joy, and peace that people try to obtain by means of physical objects.

#### 1 Timothy 6:18

##### be rich in good works

Paul speaks of spiritual blessings as if they were earthly wealth. Alternate translation: "serve and help others in many ways"

#### 1 Timothy 6:19

##### they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come

Here Paul speaks about the blessings that God gives in heaven as if they were riches that a person is storing away for later use. Also, the certainty of these blessings that people will never lose is spoken of as if it were the foundation of a building. Alternate translation: "it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many things that God will give them"

##### take hold of real life

This recalls the sports metaphor of 1 Timothy 6:12, where the prize is something that the winner can actually hold in his hands. Here the "prize" is "real" life.

#### 1 Timothy 6:20

##### protect what was given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you"

##### Avoid the profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to the ungodly and useless talk"

##### of what is falsely called knowledge

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "of what some people falsely call knowledge"

#### 1 Timothy 6:21

##### they have gone astray from the faith

Paul speaks of those who stop obeying Christ as if they were children or animals who have gone away from where they belong and are safe. Alternate translation: "they have stopped believing the truth"

##### May grace be with you

"May God give grace to all of you." The "you" is plural and refers to the whole Christian community.

## Chapter 1

# 2 Timothy 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul formally introduces this letter in verses 1-2. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spiritual children

Paul discipled Timothy as a Christian and a church leader. Paul may also have led him to believe in Christ. Therefore, Paul calls Timothy "beloved child." (See: disciple and spirit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Persecution

Paul was in prison when he wrote this letter. Paul encourages Timothy to be willing to suffer for the gospel.

#### 2 Timothy 1:1

##### General Information:

In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word "our" refers to Paul and Timothy

##### Paul

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. Also, immediately after introducing the author, you may need to tell to whom the letter is written, as in the UDB.

##### through the will of God

"because of God's will" or "because God wanted it." Paul became an apostle because God wanted him to be an apostle and not because a human being chose him.

##### according to

Possible meanings are 1) "for the purpose of." This means that God appointed Paul to tell others about God's promise of life in Jesus or 2) "in keeping with." This means that just as God promises that Jesus gives life, he has made Paul an apostle.

##### of the life that is in Christ Jesus

Paul speaks of "the life" as if it were an object inside of Jesus. This refers to the life people receive as a result of belonging to Christ Jesus. Alternate translation: "of the life that we receive as a result of belonging to Christ Jesus"

#### 2 Timothy 1:2

##### to Timothy

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the person who receives a letter. Also, immediately after introducing the author, you may need to tell to whom the letter is written.

##### beloved child

"dear child" or "child whom I love."" Here "child" is a term of great love and approval. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considered him like his own child. Alternate translation: "who is like my beloved child"

##### Grace, mercy, and peace from

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours from" or "May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace within from"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and." This is an important title for God.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord"

#### 2 Timothy 1:3

##### whom I serve from my forefathers

"whom I serve as my ancestors did"

##### with a clean conscience

Paul speaks of his conscience as if it could be physically clean. This means that a person does not feel guilty because he has always tried to do what was right. Alternate translation: "knowing I have tried my hardest to do what is right"

##### as I constantly remember you

"when I remember you continually" or "while I remember you all the time"

##### night and day

Here "night and day" are used together to mean "always." Alternate translation: "always" or "constantly"

#### 2 Timothy 1:4

##### I long to see you

"I want very much to see you"

##### I may be filled with joy

Paul speaks of himself as if he were a container that someone could fill. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I may be full of joy" or "I may have complete joy"

##### I remember your tears

Here "tears" represents crying. Alternate translation: "I remember how you cried for me"

#### 2 Timothy 1:5

##### I have been reminded of your

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I also remember your" or "I also recall your"

##### your genuine faith

"your faith that is real" or "your faith that is sincere"

##### faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also

Paul is speaking of their faith as if it were something that is alive and lives in them. Paul means they have the same sort of faith. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "faith. Lois, your grandmother, and Eunice, your mother, first had genuine faith, and I am confident that you have genuine faith as well"

##### Lois ... Eunice

These are names of women.

#### 2 Timothy 1:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages Timothy to live in power, love, and discipline and not to be ashamed because of Paul's suffering in prison because of his (Paul's) faith in Christ.

##### This is the reason I am

"For this reason I am" or "Because of your sincere faith in Jesus, I am"

##### to rekindle the gift

Paul speaks about Timothy's need to start using his gift again as if he were restarting a fire. Alternate translation: "to start using again the gift"

##### the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands

"the gift of God that you received when I laid my hands on you." This refers to a ceremony in which Paul placed his hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.

#### 2 Timothy 1:7

##### God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline

Possible meanings are 1) "spirit" refers to the "Holy Spirit." Alternate translation: "God's Holy Spirit does not cause us to be afraid. He causes us to have power and love and discipline" or 2) "spirit" refers to a characteristic. Alternate translation: "God does not cause us to be afraid but to have power and love and discipline"

##### discipline

Possible meanings are 1) the power to control ourselves or 2) the power to correct other people who are doing wrong.

#### 2 Timothy 1:8

##### of the testimony

"of testifying" or "of telling others"

##### his prisoner

"a prisoner for his sake" or "a prisoner because I testify about the Lord"

##### share in suffering for the gospel

Paul speaks of suffering as if it were an object that could be shared or distributed among people. Alternate translation: "suffer with me for the gospel"

##### gospel according to the power of God

"gospel, allowing God to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 1:9

##### with a holy calling

"with a calling that set us apart as his people" or "to be his holy people"

##### He did this

"He saved and called us"

##### not according to our works

"not because we did anything to deserve it"

##### but according to his own plan and grace

"but because he planned to show us kindness"

##### in Christ Jesus

"through our relationship to Christ Jesus"

##### before times ever began

"before the world began" or "before time began"

#### 2 Timothy 1:10

##### God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus

Paul speaks of salvation as if it were an object that could uncovered and shown to people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has shown how he will save us by sending our Savior Christ Jesus"

##### who put an end to death

Paul speaks of death as if it were an independent process instead of the event of people dying. Alternate translation: "who destroyed death" or "who made it possible for people not to remain dead forever"

##### brought life and immortality to light through the gospel

Paul speaks of teaching about eternal life as if it were an object that could be brought from darkness into light so that people could see it. Alternate translation: "taught what life that never ends is by preaching the gospel"

#### 2 Timothy 1:11

##### I was appointed a herald

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God chose me to be a herald"

##### a herald

a person who proclaims important or official messages

#### 2 Timothy 1:12

##### For this cause

"Because I am an apostle"

##### I also suffer these things

Paul is referring to being a prisoner.

##### to keep that which I have entrusted to him

Paul is using a metaphor of a person leaving something with another person who is supposed to protect it until he gives it back to the first person. Possible meanings are 1) Paul is trusting Jesus to help him remain faithful, or 2) Paul is trusting that Jesus will ensure that people continue spreading the gospel message.

##### I am convinced

"I am certain" or "I know for sure"

##### that day

This refers to the day when God judges all people.

#### 2 Timothy 1:13

##### Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me

"Keep teaching the correct ideas I have taught you" or "Use how I taught you as a pattern for what and how you should teach"

##### truthful words

The Greek word translated "truthful, is a word meaning "healthy" and here is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "trustworthy words"

##### with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus

"as you trust in Jesus Christ and love him"

#### 2 Timothy 1:14

##### The good thing

This refers to the work of proclaiming the gospel correctly.

##### guard it

Timothy needs to be alert because people will oppose his work, try to make him stop, and distort what he says.

##### through the Holy Spirit

"with the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 2 Timothy 1:15

##### turned away from me

This is a metaphor that means they stopped helping Paul. They abandoned Paul because the authorities had thrown him into prison. Alternate translation: "have stopped helping me"

##### Phygelus and Hermogenes

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 1:16

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

##### to the household

"to the family"

##### was not ashamed of my chain

Here "chain" is a metonym for being in prison. Onesiphorus was not ashamed that Paul was in prison but came to visit him frequently. Alternate translation: "was not ashamed that I was in prison"

#### 2 Timothy 1:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 1:18

##### May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him

"May Onesiphorus receive mercy from the Lord" or "May the Lord show him mercy"

##### to find mercy from him

Paul speaks of mercy as if it were an object that could be found.

##### on that day

This refers to the day when God will judge all people.

## Chapter 2

# 2 Timothy 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set words farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with verses 11-13. Paul may be quoting a poem or hymn in these verses.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### We will reign with him

Faithful Christians will reign with Christ in the future. (See: faithful)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Analogies

In this chapter, Paul makes several analogies to teach about living as a Christian. He uses analogies of soldiers, athletes, and farmers. Later in the chapter, he uses the analogy of different kinds of containers in a house.

#### 2 Timothy 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul pictures Timothy's Christian life as a soldier's life, as a farmer's life, and as an athlete's life.

##### my child

Here "child" is a term of great love and approval. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considered him like his own child. Alternate translation: "who is like my child"

##### be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus

Paul speaks about the motivation and determination that God's grace allows believers to have. Alternate translation: "let God use the grace he gave you through your relationship to Christ Jesus to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 2:2

##### among many witnesses

"with many witnesses there to agree that what I said is true"

##### entrust them to faithful people

Paul speaks of his instructions to Timothy as if they were objects that Timothy could give to other people and trust them to use correctly. Alternate translation: "commit them" or "teach them"

#### 2 Timothy 2:3

##### Suffer hardship with me

Possible meanings are 1) "Endure suffering as I do" or 2) "Share in my suffering"

##### as a good soldier of Christ Jesus

Paul compares suffering for Christ Jesus to the suffering that a good soldier endures.

#### 2 Timothy 2:4

##### No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life

"No soldier serves when he is involved in the everyday business of this life" or "When soldiers are serving, they do not get distracted by the ordinary things that people do." Christ's servants should not allow everyday life to keep them from working for Christ.

##### while entangled

Paul speaks of this distraction as if it were a net that tripped people up as they were walking.

##### his superior officer

"his leader" or "the one who commands him"

#### 2 Timothy 2:5

##### as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules

Paul is implicitly speaking of Christ's servants as if they were athletes.

##### he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will crown him as winner only if he competes by the rules"

##### he is not crowned

"he does not win the prize." Athletes in Paul's time were crowned with wreaths made from the leaves of plants when they won competitions.

##### competes by the rules

"competes according to the rules" or "strictly obeys the rules"

#### 2 Timothy 2:6

##### It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first

This is the third metaphor Paul gives Timothy about working. The reader should understand that Christ's servants need to work hard.

#### 2 Timothy 2:7

##### Think about what I am saying

Paul gave Timothy word pictures, but he did not completely explain their meanings. He expected Timothy to figure out what he was saying about Christ's servants.

##### in everything

"about everything"

#### 2 Timothy 2:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives Timothy instructions on how to live for Christ, how to suffer for Christ, and how to teach others to live for Christ.

##### who was raised from the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God caused to live again" or "whom God raised from the dead"

##### according to my gospel message

Paul speaks of the gospel message as if it were especially his. He means that this is the gospel message that he proclaims. Alternate translation: "according to the gospel message that I preach"

#### 2 Timothy 2:9

##### to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal

Here "being chained" represents being a prisoner. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to the point of wearing chains as a criminal in prison"

##### the word of God is not bound

Here "bound" speaks of what happens to a prisoner, and the phrase is a metaphor that means no one can stop God's message. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one can put the word of God in prison" or "no one can stop the word of God"

#### 2 Timothy 2:10

##### for those who are chosen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the people whom God has chosen"

##### may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus

Paul speaks of salvation as if it were an object that could be physically grasped. Alternate translation: "will receive salvation from Christ Jesus"

##### with eternal glory

"and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is"

#### 2 Timothy 2:11

##### This is a trustworthy saying

"These are words you can trust"

##### If we have died with him, we will also live with him

This is most likely the beginning of a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry, you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### died with him

Paul uses this expression to mean that people share in Christ's death when they trust in him, deny their own wants, and obey him.

#### 2 Timothy 2:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 2:13

##### if we are unfaithful ... he cannot deny himself

This is most likely the end of a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### if we are unfaithful

"even if we fail God" or "even if we do not do what we believe God wants us to do"

##### he cannot deny himself

"he must always act according to his character" or "he cannot act in ways that are the opposite of his real character"

#### 2 Timothy 2:14

##### General Information:

The word "them" may refer to "the teachers" or "the people of the church"

##### before God

Paul speaks of God's awareness of Paul as if he is in God's physical presence. This implies that God will be Timothy's witness. Alternate translation: "in God's presence" or "with God as your witness"

##### not to quarrel about words

Possible meanings are 1) "not to argue about foolish things that people say" or 2) "not to quarrel about what words mean"

##### it is of no value

"this does not benefit anyone"

#### 2 Timothy 2:15

##### to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed

"to present yourself to God as a person who has proven to be worthy and has no cause for shame"

##### a laborer

Paul presents the idea of Timothy correctly explaining God's word as if he were a skilled workman. Alternate translation: "like a workman" or "like a worker"

##### accurately teaches the word of truth

Possible meanings are 1) "explains the message about the truth correctly" or 2) "explains the true message correctly."

#### 2 Timothy 2:16

##### Avoid profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to ungodly and useless talk"

##### which leads to more and more godlessness

Paul speaks of this kind of talk as if it were something that could physically move to another location, and he speaks of godlessness as if it were that new location. Alternate translation: "which causes people to become more and more ungodly"

#### 2 Timothy 2:17

##### Their talk will spread like cancer

Cancer quickly spreads in a person's body and destroys it. This is a metaphor that means what those people were saying would spread from person to person and harm the faith of those who heard it. Alternate translation: "What they say will spread like an infectious disease" or "Their talk will spread quickly and cause destruction like cancer"

##### Hymenaeus and Philetus

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 2:18

##### who have gone astray from the truth

Here "gone astray from the truth" is a metaphor for no longer believing or teaching what is true. Alternate translation: "who have started saying things that are not true"

##### the resurrection has already happened

"God has already raised dead believers to eternal life"

##### they destroy the faith of some

"they cause some people to stop believing"

#### 2 Timothy 2:19

##### General Information:

Just as precious and common containers can be used for honorable ways in a wealthy house, any person who turns to God can be used by God in honorable ways in doing good works.

##### the firm foundation of God stands

Possible meanings are 1) "God's truth is like a firm foundation" or 2) "God has established his people like a building on a firm foundation" or 3) "God's faithfulness is like a firm foundation." In any case, Paul speaks of this idea as if it were a building's foundation laid in the ground.

##### this inscription

Possible meanings of "inscription" are 1) words written into stone with a chisel or 2) words impressed in wax by a king's ring.

##### who names the name of the Lord

"who calls on the name of the Lord." Here "name of the Lord" refers to the Lord himself. Alternate translation: "who calls on the Lord" or "who says he is a believer in Christ"

##### depart from unrighteousness

Paul speaks of unrighteousness as if it were a place from which one could leave. Alternate translation: "stop being evil" or "stop doing wrong things"

#### 2 Timothy 2:20

##### containers of gold and silver ... containers of wood and clay

Here "containers" is a general word for bowls, plates, and pots, which people put food or drink into or on. If your language does not have a general word, use the word for "bowls" or "pots." Paul is using this as a metaphor to describe different types of people.

##### honorable use ... dishonorable

Possible meanings are 1) "special occasions ... ordinary times" or 2) "the kinds of activities people do in public ... the kinds of activities people do in private."

#### 2 Timothy 2:21

##### cleans himself from dishonorable use

Possible meanings are 1) "separates himself from dishonorable people" or 2) "makes himself pure." In any case, Paul speaks of this process as if it were a person washing himself.

##### he is an honorable container

Paul speaks about this person as if he were an honorable container. Alternate translation: "he is like the container that is useful for special occasions" or "he is like the container that is useful for activities good people do in public"

##### He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Master sets him apart, and he is ready for the Master to use him for every good work"

##### He is set apart

He is not set apart physically or in the sense of location, but instead to fulfill a purpose. Some versions translate this "sanctified," but the text signals the essential idea of being set apart.

#### 2 Timothy 2:22

##### Flee youthful lusts

Paul speaks about youthful lusts as if they were a dangerous person or animal that Timothy should run away from. Alternate translation: "Completely avoid youthful lusts" or "Absolutely refuse to do the wrong things that young people strongly desire to do"

##### Pursue righteousness

Here "Pursue" means the opposite of "Flee." Paul speaks of righteousness as if it were an object that Timothy should run towards because it will do him good. Alternate translation: "Try your best to obtain righteousness" or "Seek after righteousness"

##### with those

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Timothy to join with other believers in pursuing righteousness, faith, love, and peace, or 2) Paul wants Timothy to be at peace and not argue with other believers.

##### those who call on the Lord

Here "call on the Lord" is an idiom that means to trust and worship the Lord. Alternate translation: "those who worship the Lord"

##### out of a clean heart

Here "clean" is a metaphor for something pure or sincere. And, "heart" here is a metonym for "thoughts" or "emotions." Alternate translation: "with a sincere mind" or "with sincerity"

#### 2 Timothy 2:23

##### refuse foolish and ignorant questions

"refuse to answer foolish and ignorant questions." Paul means that the people who ask such questions are foolish and ignorant. Alternate translation: "refuse to answer the questions that foolish people who do not want to know the truth ask"

##### they give birth to quarrels

Paul speaks of ignorant questions as if they were women giving birth to children. Alternate translation: "they cause arguments"

#### 2 Timothy 2:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 2:25

##### correcting his opponents with gentleness

"gently correcting those who oppose him"

##### his opponents

"people who say that what he teaches is not true"

##### Perhaps God may give them repentance

Paul speaks of repentance as if it were an object that God could give people. Alternate translation: "God may give them the opportunity to repent"

##### for the knowledge of the truth

"so that they will know the truth"

#### 2 Timothy 2:26

##### They may become sober again

Paul speaks of sinners learning to think correctly about God as if they were drunk people becoming sober again. Alternate translation: "They may think correctly again"

##### leave the devil's trap

Paul speaks of the devil's ability to convince Christians to sin as if it were a trap. Alternate translation: "stop doing what the devil wants"

##### after they have been captured by him for his will

Convincing Christians to sin is spoken of as if the devil had physically captured them and made them his slaves. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after he has deceived them into obeying his will"

## Chapter 3

# 2 Timothy 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The "last days" could mean in the future just before Jesus returns. If so, Paul is prophesying in verses 1-9 and 13 about those days. The "last days" could also mean the Christian age, including Paul's time. If so, what Paul teaches about being persecuted applies to all Christians. (See: prophet and lastday)

#### 2 Timothy 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul lets Timothy know that in the future people will stop believing the truth, but he should continue trusting God's word even when he is persecuted.

##### In the last days

Possible meanings are 1) this is a time later than Paul's time. Alternate translation: "in the future just before Jesus returns" or 2) this refers to the Christian age, including Paul's time. Alternate translation: "during this period of time before the end"

##### difficult times

These will be days, months, or even years when Christians will endure suffering and danger.

#### 2 Timothy 3:2

##### lovers of themselves

Here "lovers" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member, a natural human love between friends or relatives. This is not the kind of love that comes from God. Alternate translation: "self-centered"

#### 2 Timothy 3:3

##### without natural affection

"unloving even to their own families"

##### unable to reconcile

"unwilling to live peacefully with others"

##### not lovers of good

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "haters of good"

#### 2 Timothy 3:4

##### reckless

doing things either without thinking about what bad things could happen or without even knowing that bad things could happen

##### prideful

thinking they are better than other people

#### 2 Timothy 3:5

##### They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power

Paul speaks of godliness, the habit of honoring God, as if it were a physical object that had a shape and had physical power. Alternate translation: "They will appear to honor God, but they way they act will show that they do not really believe in God's power"

##### have a shape of godliness

"appear to have godliness" or "appear to honor God"

##### Turn away from these people

"Turn away" here is a metaphor for avoiding someone. Alternate translation: "Avoid these people"

#### 2 Timothy 3:6

##### enter into households and captivate

"enter into houses and greatly influence"

##### foolish women

"women who are spiritually weak." These women may be spiritually weak because they fail to work at becoming godly or because they are idle and have many sins.

##### who are loaded up with sins

Paul speaks of the attraction of sin as if sin were loaded on the backs of these women. Possible meanings are 1) "who sin often" or 2) "who feel terrible guilt because they continue to sin." The idea is that these men can easily influence these women because the women are unable to stop sinning.

##### are led away by various desires

Paul speaks about these various desires as if they could lead another person away. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they desire to sin in various ways rather than obey Christ"

#### 2 Timothy 3:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 3:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives an example of two false teachers from the time of Moses—men who are not mentioned in the Old Testament—and applies it to the way people will be. Paul encourages Timothy to follow his own example and stay in God's word.

##### Jannes and Jambres

These are names of men.

##### stood against

Paul speaks of those who argued against Moses as if they had stood against him. Alternate translation: "opposed"

##### stand against the truth

"oppose the gospel of Jesus"

##### They are men corrupt in mind

"Their minds are corrupt" or "They cannot think rightly"

##### and with regard to the faith they are rejected

Possible meanings are 1) here "the faith" represents the false teachers' personal faith in God. Alternate translation: "and they have shown that their faith is not sincere" or 2) here "the faith" represents the true Christian teachings about God. Alternate translation: "and, according to the true teachings of the Christian faith, God has rejected them"

#### 2 Timothy 3:9

##### they will not advance very far

Paul uses an expression about physical movement to mean that the false teachers will not have much success among the believers. Alternate translation: "they will not have much success"

##### obvious to all

"easily seen by all" or "something everyone will see"

##### of those men

"of Jannes and Jambres"

#### 2 Timothy 3:10

##### you have followed my teaching

Paul speaks of giving close attention to these things as if one were physically following them as they moved. Alternate translation: "you have observed my teaching" or "you have paid close attention to my teaching"

##### my teaching

"what I have taught you to do"

##### conduct

the way a person lives his life

##### longsuffering

one person being patient with those people who do things of which he does not approve

#### 2 Timothy 3:11

##### Out of them all, the Lord rescued me

Paul speaks of God having stopped him from suffering these hardships and dangers as if God had carried him out of a physical location.

#### 2 Timothy 3:12

##### to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus

"to live godly lives as followers of Jesus"

##### will be persecuted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will certainly have to endure persecution"

#### 2 Timothy 3:13

##### impostors

An imposter is a person who wants other people to think he is someone other, usually more important, than who he is.

##### will go from bad to worse

"will become even more evil"

##### leading others astray and being led astray

Here, to lead someone astray is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "deceiving and being deceived" or "teaching lies and believing lies"

#### 2 Timothy 3:14

##### remain in the things that you have learned

Paul speaks of biblical instruction as if it were a place that Timothy could stay in. Alternate translation: "do not forget what you learned" or "continue doing what you have learned"

#### 2 Timothy 3:15

##### the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus

Paul speaks of the message contained in the sacred writings as if it were the writings themselves and of those writings as if they were a person whose words could make a person wise. Alternate translation: "what is in the sacred writings. When you read the word of God, you can become wise so as to receive salvation from Christ Jesus by faith"

#### 2 Timothy 3:16

##### All scripture has been inspired by God

Some Bibles translate this as "All scripture is God-breathed." This means God produced the scripture through his Spirit by telling people what to write. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has spoken all scripture by his Spirit"

##### It is profitable

"It is useful" or "It is beneficial"

##### for conviction

"for pointing out errors"

##### for correction

"for fixing errors"

##### for training in righteousness

"for training people to be righteous"

#### 2 Timothy 3:17

##### the man of God

This means any believer in God whether male or female. Alternate translation: "all believers"

##### may be competent, equipped

"may be completely prepared"

## Chapter 4

# 2 Timothy 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### "I give this solemn command"

Paul begins to give personal instructions to Timothy.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Crown

Scripture uses different kinds of crowns as images for different things. It appears Christ will award the crown in this chapter to believers as a reward for living rightly.

#### 2 Timothy 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind Timothy to be faithful and that he, Paul, is ready to die.

##### this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus

"this solemn command in the presence of God and Christ Jesus." It is implied that God and Jesus will be Paul's witnesses. Alternate translation: "this solemn command, having as my witnesses God and Christ Jesus"

##### solemn command

"serious command"

##### the living and the dead

Here "the living" and "the dead" are used together to mean all people. Alternate translation: "all people who have ever lived"

##### the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom

Here "kingdom" stands for Christ's rule as king. Alternate translation: "the dead when he returns to rule as king"

#### 2 Timothy 4:2

##### the word

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "the message about Christ"

##### when it is not

Here the word "convenient" is understood. Alternate translation: "when it is not convenient"

##### Reprove

tell someone he is guilty of doing wrong

##### exhort, with all patience and teaching

"exhort, and teach the people, and always be patient with them"

#### 2 Timothy 4:3

##### For the time will come when

"Because at some time in the future"

##### people

The context indicates that these will be people who are a part of the community of believers.

##### will not endure sound teaching

"will no longer want to listen to true teaching" or "will not want to listen to reliable teaching"

##### they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires

Paul speaks of people obtaining many teachers as if they were putting them into a heap or pile. Alternate translation: "they will listen to many teachers who assure them that there is nothing wrong with their sinful desires"

##### who say what their itching ears want to hear

Paul speaks of people strongly wanting to hear something as if their ears itched and could only be satisfied if teachers taught them what they wanted to hear. Alternate translation: "who say only what they want so much to hear"

#### 2 Timothy 4:4

##### They will turn their hearing away from the truth

Paul speaks about people no longer paying attention as if they were physically turning away so they cannot hear. Alternate translation: "They will no longer pay attention to the truth"

##### they will turn aside to myths

Paul speaks about people starting to pay attention to myths as if they were physically turning towards them to listen. Alternate translation: "they will pay attention to teachings that are not true"

#### 2 Timothy 4:5

##### be sober-minded

Paul wants Timothy to think correctly about everything, and he speaks about him as if he wanted him to be sober, that is, not drunk with wine. Alternate translation: "think clearly"

##### the work of an evangelist

This means to tell people about who Jesus is, what he did for them, and how they are to live for him.

#### 2 Timothy 4:6

##### I am already being poured out

Paul speaks of his readiness to die as if he were a cup of wine being poured out as a sacrifice to God.

##### The time of my departure has come

Here "departure" is a polite way of referring to death. Alternate translation: "Soon I will die and leave this world"

#### 2 Timothy 4:7

##### I have fought the good fight

Paul speaks of his hard work as if he had been an athlete competing for a prize. Alternate translation: "I have done my best"

##### I have finished the race

Paul speaks of his life of service to God as if he had been running a race on foot. Alternate translation: "I have completed what I needed to do"

##### I have kept the faith

Paul speaks of his trust in Christ and his obedience to God as if they were a valuable object that he kept in his possession. Possible meanings are 1) "I have been faithful in doing my ministry" or 2) "I have kept the teachings about what we believe from any error"

#### 2 Timothy 4:8

##### The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has reserved the crown of righteousness for me"

##### crown of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) the crown is the prize that God gives to people who have lived the right way or 2) the crown is a metaphor for righteousness. Just as the judge of a race gives a crown to the winner, when Paul finishes his life, God will declare that Paul is righteous.

##### crown

a wreath made of laurel tree leaves that was given to winners of athletic contests

##### on that day

"on the day when the Lord comes again" or "on the day when God judges people"

##### but also to all those who have loved his appearing

Paul speaks about this event as if it has already happened. It can be stated as a future event. Alternate translation: "but also he will give it to those who are eagerly waiting for him to return"

#### 2 Timothy 4:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks of specific people and how they behaved, of God's work for and to him, and then closes with greetings to and from certain people.

##### come ... quickly

"come ... as soon as possible"

#### 2 Timothy 4:10

##### Demas ... Crescens ... Titus

These are names of men.

##### He loves this present world

Here "world" refers to worldly things as opposed to the things of God. Possible meanings are 1) he loves the temporary comforts of this world or 2) he is afraid he will die if he remains with Paul.

##### Crescens went ... and Titus went

These two men had left Paul, but Paul is not saying that they also "love this present world" like Demas.

##### Dalmatia

This is the name of a land region.

#### 2 Timothy 4:11

##### he is useful to me in the service

Possible meanings are 1) "he can help me in the ministry" or 2) "he can help me by serving me."

#### 2 Timothy 4:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 4:13

##### cloak

a heavy garment worn over clothes

##### Carpus

This is the name of a man.

##### the books

This refers to scrolls. A scroll was a type of book made of one long sheet of papyrus or leather. After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends

##### especially the parchments

This may refer to a specific type of scroll. Alternate translation: "especially those made from animal skins"

#### 2 Timothy 4:14

##### Alexander the coppersmith displayed

"Alexander, who works with metal, displayed"

##### Alexander

This is the name of a man.

##### displayed many evil deeds against me

Paul speaks of doing evil deeds as if they were put on display. Alternate translation: "did many evil things to me"

##### The Lord will repay him according to his deeds

Paul speaks of punishment as if it were payment. Alternate translation: "The Lord will punish him for what he has done"

##### him ... his

Alexander

#### 2 Timothy 4:15

##### him ... he

Alexander.

##### opposed our words

Here "words" refers to a message or teaching. Alternate translation: "opposed the message that we teach"

#### 2 Timothy 4:16

##### At my first defense

"When I first appeared in court and explained my actions"

##### no one stood with me

"no one stayed with me and helped me"

##### May it not be counted against them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God not count it against them" or "I pray that God does not punish those believers for leaving me"

#### 2 Timothy 4:17

##### the Lord stood by me

Paul is speaking as if the Lord had physically stood with him. Alternate translation: "the Lord helped me"

##### so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished ... the Gentiles might hear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that I was able to speak all of the Lord's message ... the Gentiles heard"

##### I was rescued out of the lion's mouth

Paul is speaking about danger as if he had been threatened by a lion. This danger could have been physical, spiritual, or both. Alternate translation: "I was rescued from great danger"

#### 2 Timothy 4:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Timothy 4:19

##### house of Onesiphorus

Here "house" stands for the people who live there. Alternate translation: "family of Onesiphorus"

##### Priscilla

This is the name of a woman.

##### Aquila

This is the name of a man.

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in 2 Timothy 1:16.

#### 2 Timothy 4:20

##### Erastus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Miletus

This is the name of a city to the south of Ephesus.

#### 2 Timothy 4:21

##### Eubulus ... Pudens, Linus

These are all names of men.

##### Do your best to come

"Try hard to come"

##### before winter

"before the cold season"

##### greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "greets you. Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers also greet you"

##### Claudia

This is a female name.

##### all the brothers

Here "brothers" means all believers whether male or female. Alternate translation: "all the believers here"

#### 2 Timothy 4:22

##### May the Lord be with your spirit

"I pray that the Lord makes your spirit strong." Here "you" is singular and refers to Timothy.

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that the Lord shows his grace to all of you there." Here "you" is plural and refers to all the believers there with Timothy.

## Chapter 1

# Titus 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul formally introduces this letter in verses 1-4. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

In verses 6-9, Paul lists several qualities that a man must have if he is to be an elder in the church. Paul gives a similar list in 1 Timothy 3.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Elders

The church has used different titles for church leaders. Some titles include overseer, elder, pastor, and bishop.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Should, may, must

The ULB uses different words that indicate requirements or obligations. These verbs have different levels of force associated with them. The subtle differences may be difficult to translate. The UDB translates these verbs in a more general way.

#### Titus 1:1

##### for the faith of

to strengthen the faith of

##### that agrees with godliness

"that is suitable for honoring God"

#### Titus 1:2

##### with the hope of everlasting life

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "with the confidence of receiving everlasting life"

##### before all the ages of time

"before time began"

#### Titus 1:3

##### At the right time

"At the proper time"

##### he revealed his word

Paul speaks of God's message as if it were an object that could be visibly shown to people. Alternate translation: "He caused people to understand his message"

##### with which I have been entrusted

This can be translated in active form, and what God trusted Paul to do can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "that he trusted me to deliver"

##### God our Savior

"God, who saves us"

#### Titus 1:4

##### a true son

Though Titus was not Paul's biological son, they share a common faith in Christ. Thus, in Christ, Paul considers Titus as his own son. Alternate translation: "you who are like a son to me"

##### our common faith

Paul expresses the same faith in Christ that they both share. Alternate translation: "the teachings that we both believe"

##### Grace and peace

This was a common greeting Paul used. You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "May you experience kindness and peace within"

##### Christ Jesus our Savior

"Christ Jesus who is our Savior"

#### Titus 1:5

##### For this purpose I left you in Crete, that you might set

"This is the reason I left you in Crete: I wanted you to set"

##### I left you in Crete

"I told you to stay in Crete"

##### set in order things not yet complete

"finish arranging things that needed to be done"

##### ordain elders

"appoint elders" or "designate elders"

##### elders

In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the assemblies of believers.

#### Titus 1:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Having told Titus to ordain elders in every city on the island of Crete, Paul gives the requirements for elders.

##### An elder must be blameless, the husband

To be "blameless" is to be known as a person who does not do bad things. Alternate translation: "An elder must not have a bad reputation and must be the husband"

##### the husband of one wife

This means that he has only one wife, that is, he does not have any other wives or concubines. It may also imply that he does not commit adultery and that he has not divorced a previous wife. Alternate translation: "a man who has only one woman" or "a man who is faithful to his wife"

##### faithful children

Possible meanings are 1) children who believe in Jesus or 2) children who are trustworthy.

#### Titus 1:7

##### overseer

This is another name for the same position of spiritual leadership that Paul referred to as "elder" in 1:6.

##### a manager of the household of God

Paul speaks of the church as if it were God's household and the overseer as if he were a servant in charge of managing the household.

##### not addicted to wine

"not an alcoholic" or "not one who drinks much wine"

##### not a brawler

"not one who is violent" or "not one who likes to fight"

#### Titus 1:8

##### Instead

Paul is changing his argument from what an elder is not to be to what an elder is to be.

#### Titus 1:9

##### hold tightly to

Paul speaks of devotion to the Christian faith as if it were grasping the faith with one's hands. Alternate translation: "be devoted to" or "know well"

##### truthful teaching

The Greek word translated "truthful" is a word meaning "healthy" and here is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "trustworthy words"

#### Titus 1:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Because of those that would oppose God's word, Paul gives Titus reasons to preach God's word and warns him about false teachers.

##### rebellious people

These are rebellious people who oppose Paul's gospel message.

##### empty talkers and deceivers

This phrase describes the rebellious people mentioned in the previous phrase. Here "empty" is a metaphor for useless, and "empty talkers" are people who say useless or foolish things. Alternate translation: "people who say useless things and deceive others"

##### those of the circumcision

This refers to the Christian Jews who taught that men must be circumcised in order to follow Christ.

#### Titus 1:11

##### It is necessary to stop them

"They must be prevented from spreading their teachings" or "They must be stopped from influencing others by their words"

##### what they should not teach

These are things that are not proper to teach regarding Christ and the Law because they are not true.

##### for disgraceful profit

This refers to profit that people make by doing things that are not honorable.

##### are upsetting whole families

"are ruining whole families." The issue was that they were upsetting families by destroying their faith. This may have caused the members of the families to argue with one another.

#### Titus 1:12

##### One of their own prophets

"A prophet from Crete itself" or "A Cretan that they themselves consider to be a prophet"

##### Cretans are always liars

"Cretans lie all the time." This is an exaggeration that means that many Cretans lie often.

##### evil beasts

This metaphor compares the Cretans to dangerous wild animals.

#### Titus 1:13

##### Therefore, correct them severely

"You must use strong language that the Cretans will understand when you correct them"

##### so that they may be truthful in the faith

The Greek word translated "truthful" is a word meaning "healthy" and here is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "trustworthy words"

#### Titus 1:14

##### Jewish myths

This refers to the false teaching of the Jews.

##### turn away from the truth

Paul speaks of the truth as if it were an object that one could turn away from or avoid. Alternate translation: "reject the truth"

#### Titus 1:15

##### To those who are pure, all things are pure

"If people are pure on the inside, everything they do will be pure"

##### To those who are pure

"To those who are acceptable to God"

##### to those who are corrupt and unbelieving, nothing is pure

Paul speaks of sinners as if they were physically dirty. Alternate translation: "if people are morally defiled and do not believe, they cannot do anything pure"

#### Titus 1:16

##### they deny him by their actions

"how they live proves that they do not know him"

##### They are detestable

"They are disgusting"

## Chapter 2

# Titus 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Gender roles

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches slaves to faithfully serve their masters. He teaches all believers to be godly and live rightly in every situation.

#### Titus 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving Titus reasons to preach God's word, and explains how the older men, older women, young men, and slaves or servants should live as believers.

##### But you, speak what fits

Paul implies what is in contrast. Alternate translation: "But you, Titus, in contrast with the false teachers, be sure to say those things that fit"

##### truthful instruction

The Greek word translated "truthful" is a word meaning "healthy" and here is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "trustworthy words"

#### Titus 2:2

##### to be temperate

"to be sober-minded" or "to be self-controlled"

##### temperate, dignified, sensible

"temperate and dignified, to control their desires

##### and sound in faith, in love, and in perseverance

The word "sound" means to be firm and unwavering. The abstract nouns "faith," "love," and "perseverance" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "and they must firmly believe the true teachings about God, truly love others, and continually serve God even when things are difficult"

#### Titus 2:3

##### slanderers

This word refers to people who say bad things about other people whether they are true or not.

##### or being slaves to much wine

People who cannot control themselves and who drink too much wine are spoken of as if they were slaves to the wine. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and not drinking too much wine" or "and not addicted to wine"

#### Titus 2:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Titus 2:5

##### so that God's word may not be spoken of as evil

"Word" here is a metonym for "message," which in turn is a metonym for God himself. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that no one insults God's word" or "so that no one insults God by saying bad things about his message"

#### Titus 2:6

##### In the same way, encourage

"Also be sure to encourage"

#### Titus 2:7

##### present yourself as

"show yourself to be"

##### an example of good works

"an example of one who does right and proper things"

#### Titus 2:8

##### a truthful message

The Greek word translated "truthful, is a word meaning "healthy" and here is a dead metaphor for true, trustworthy, and morally good. Alternate translation: "trustworthy words"

#### Titus 2:9

##### their masters

"their own masters"

##### in everything

"in every situation" or "always"

##### please them

"make their masters happy" or "satisfy their masters"

#### Titus 2:10

##### demonstrate all good faith

"show that they are worthy of their masters' trust"

##### in every way

"in everything they do"

##### they may bring credit to the teaching about God our Savior

"they may make the teaching about God our Savior attractive" or "they may cause people to understand that the teaching about God our Savior is good"

##### God our Savior

"our God who saves us"

#### Titus 2:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages Titus to look for Jesus's coming and remember his authority through Jesus.

##### the grace of God has appeared

Paul speaks of the grace of God as if it were a person who goes to other people.

#### Titus 2:12

##### trains us

Paul speaks of the grace of God

##### trains us to reject godlessness

"teaches us not to dishonor God"

##### worldly desires

"strong desires for the things of this world" or "strong desires for sinful pleasures"

##### in this age

"as we live in this world" or "during this time"

#### Titus 2:13

##### we look forward to receiving

"we eagerly wait to receive" or "we eagerly wait to welcome"

##### our blessed hope, the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ

Here "glory" represents Jesus himself, who will appear gloriously. Here "hope" means "confidently expectation." Alternate translation: "the good thing for which we confidently wait, that is, the glorious appearance of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ"

#### Titus 2:14

##### gave himself for us

This refers to Jesus dying willingly. Alternate translation: "gave himself to die for us"

##### to redeem us from all lawlessness

Paul speaks of Jesus as if he were setting slaves free from their evil master.

##### a special people

A group of people that he treasures.

##### are eager

"have a strong desire"

#### Titus 2:15

##### give correction with all authority

This statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "correct with all authority those people who do not do these things"

##### Let no one

"Do not allow anyone to"

##### disregard you

This statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "refuse to listen to your words" or "refuse to respect you"

## Chapter 3

# Titus 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul gives Titus personal instructions in this chapter.

Verse 15 formally concludes this letter. This is a common way of ending a letter in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Genealogies

Genealogies are lists that record a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could normally become king. They also showed from what tribe and family they came. For example, priests came from the tribe of Levi and the family of Aaron.

#### Titus 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving Titus instructions on how to teach the elders and people under his care in Crete.

##### Remind them to submit

"Tell our people again what they already know, to submit" or "Keep reminding them to submit"

##### submit to rulers and authorities, to obey them

"do as the political rulers and government authorities say by obeying them"

##### rulers and authorities

These words have similar meanings and are used together to include everyone who holds authority in the government.

##### be ready for every good work

"be ready to do good whenever there is opportunity"

#### Titus 3:2

##### to insult no one

"to speak evil of no one"

#### Titus 3:3

##### For once we ourselves

"This is because we ourselves were once"

##### once

"formerly" or "at some time" or "previously"

##### we ourselves

"even we" or "we also"

##### were thoughtless

"were foolish" or "were unwise"

##### We were led astray and enslaved by various desires and pleasures

Desires and pleasures are spoken of as if they were masters over people and had made those people into slaves by lying to them. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Various desires and pleasures had lied to us and so led us astray" or "We had allowed ourselves to believe the lie that various desires and pleasures could make us happy, and then we were unable to control our feelings or stop doing things we thought would give us pleasure"

##### We lived in evil and envy

"We were always doing evil things and not wanting others to have good things"

##### We were detestable

"We caused others to hate us"

#### Titus 3:4

##### when the kindness of God our Savior and his love for mankind appeared

Paul speaks of God's kindness and love as if they were people that came into our sight.

#### Titus 3:5

##### by his mercy

"because he had mercy on us"

##### washing of new birth

Paul is probably speaking of God's forgiveness for sinners as if God were physically washing them. He is also speaking of sinners who become responsive to God as if they had been born again.

#### Titus 3:6

##### whom God richly poured on us

It is common for New Testament writers to speak of the Holy Spirit as a liquid that God can pour out in large amounts. Alternate translation: "whom God gave to us generously"

##### through our Savior Jesus Christ

"when Jesus saved us"

#### Titus 3:7

##### having been justified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "since God has declared us to be without sin"

##### we might become heirs having the hope of eternal life

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were heirs, inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "we might become like God's heirs, confidently waiting to inherit eternal life" or "we might have the confident expectation that God will cause us to live forever"

#### Titus 3:8

##### This message

This refers to God giving the believers the Holy Spirit through Jesus in Titus 3:7.

##### may be careful to engage themselves in good works

"may seek to do good works"

#### Titus 3:9

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains what Titus should avoid.

##### But avoid

"So avoid" or "Therefore, avoid"

##### foolish debates

"arguments concerning unimportant matters"

##### genealogies

This is the study of family kinship relationships.

##### strife

arguments or fights

##### the law

"the law of Moses"

#### Titus 3:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how Titus should treat those who cause contention among the believers.

##### Reject anyone

"Have everyone stay away from anyone"

##### after one or two warnings

"after you have warned that person once or twice"

#### Titus 3:11

##### such a person

"a person like that"

##### has turned from the right way

Paul speaks of someone who has rejected the truth as if he had left the correct path on which he had been walking.

##### condemns himself

"brings judgment on himself"

#### Titus 3:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes the letter by telling Titus what to do after he appoints elders in Crete and by giving greetings from those with him.

##### When I send

"After I send"

##### Artemas ... Tychicus

These are men's names.

##### hurry and come

"come quickly"

##### spend the winter

"stay until winter has ended"

#### Titus 3:13

##### Zenas ... Apollos

These are men's names.

#### Titus 3:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains why it is important to provide for Zenas and Apollos.

##### Our people

Paul is referring to the believers in Crete.

##### that provide for urgent needs

"that help people who need important things immediately"

##### needs, and so not be unfruitful

Paul speaks of people doing good work as if they were trees bearing good fruit. This double negative means they should be fruitful or productive. Alternate translation: "needs; in this way they will be fruitful" or "needs, and so they will do good works"

#### Titus 3:15

##### General Information:

Paul ends his letter to Titus.

##### All those

"All the people"

##### those who love us in faith

Possible meanings are 1) "the believers who love us" or 2) "the believers who love us because we share the same belief."

##### Grace be with all of you

This was a common Christian greeting. Alternate translation: "May God's grace be with you" or "I ask that God will be gracious to all of you"

## Chapter 1

#### Philemon 1:1

##### General Information:

Three times Paul identifies himself as the author of this letter. Evidently Timothy was with him and probably wrote the words down as Paul said them. Paul greets others who meet for church at Philemon's house. All instances of "I," "me," and "my" refer to Paul. Philemon is the main person to whom this letter is written. All instances of "you" and "your" refer to him and are singular unless otherwise noted.

##### Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and the brother Timothy, to Philemon

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the authors of a letter. Alternate translation: "I, Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and Timothy, our brother, are writing this letter to Philemon"

##### a prisoner of Christ Jesus

"a prisoner for the sake of Christ Jesus." People who opposed Paul's preaching had punished him by putting him into prison.

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian.

##### our dear friend

The word "our" here refers to Paul and those with him but not to the reader.

##### and fellow worker

"who, like us, works to spread the gospel"

#### Philemon 1:2

##### our sister ... our fellow soldier

The word "our" here refers to Paul and those with him but not to the reader.

##### Apphia our sister

Here "sister" means she was a believer, and not a relative. Alternate translation: "Apphia our fellow believer" or "Apphia our spiritual sister"

##### Archippus our fellow soldier

Paul speaks here of Archippus as if they were both soldiers in an army. He means that Archippus works hard, as Paul himself works hard, to spread the gospel. Alternate translation: "Archippus our fellow spiritual warrior" or "Archippus, who also fights the spiritual battle with us"

##### Archippus

This is the name of a man in the church with Philemon.

#### Philemon 1:3

##### May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ

"May God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ give you grace and peace." This is a blessing.

##### God our Father

The word "our" here refers to Paul, those with him, and the reader.

##### our Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Philemon 1:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philemon 1:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philemon 1:6

##### the sharing of your faith may be effective

Possible meanings are 1) "the way you tell others what you believe may cause them to believe also" or 2) "the way you believe the same way we do will cause good things to happen."

##### be effective, so you will have a full understanding of every good thing we have

"have a good result, and you will completely understand all the good things we have"

##### in Christ

"because of Christ" or "because we are Christ's people"

#### Philemon 1:7

##### the hearts of God's holy people have been refreshed by you

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's emotions or inner being. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you have encouraged believers" or "you have helped the believers"

##### you, brother

"you, dear brother" or "you, dear friend." Paul called Philemon "brother" because they were both believers and he was emphasizing their friendship.

#### Philemon 1:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins his plea and the reason for his letter.

##### all the boldness in Christ

Possible meanings are 1) "authority because of Christ" or 2) "courage because of Christ." Alternate translation: "courage because Christ has given me authority"

#### Philemon 1:9

##### yet because of love

Possible meanings: 1) "because I know that you love God's people" 2) "because you love me" or 3) "because I love you"

#### Philemon 1:10

##### General Information:

Onesimus is the name of a man. He was apparently Philemon's slave and had stolen something and run away.

##### my child Onesimus

"my son Onesimus." Paul speaks of the way he is friends with Onesimus as if it were the way a father and his son love each other. Onesimus was not Paul's actual son, but he received spiritual life when Paul taught him about Jesus, and Paul loved him. Alternate translation: "my spiritual son Onesimus"

##### Onesimus

The name "Onesimus" means "profitable" or "useful."

##### whom I have fathered in my chains

Here "fathered" is a metaphor that means Paul converted Onesimus to Christ. Alternate translation: "who became my spiritual son when I taught him about Christ and he received new life while I was in my chains" or "who became like a son to me while I was in my chains"

##### in my chains

Prisoners were often bound in chains. Paul was in prison when he taught Onesimus and was still in prison when he wrote this letter. Alternate translation: "while I have been in prison" or "while I was in prison"

#### Philemon 1:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Philemon 1:12

##### I have sent him back to you

Paul was probably sending Onesimus with another believer who carried this letter.

##### who is my very heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions. The phrase "who is my very heart" is a metaphor for someone whom the speaker loves dearly. Paul was saying this about Onesimus. Alternate translation: "whom I love dearly"

#### Philemon 1:13

##### so he could serve me for you

"so that, since you cannot be here, he might help me" or "so that he could help me in your place"

##### while I am in chains

Prisoners were often bound in chains. Paul was in prison when he taught Onesimus and was still in prison when he wrote this letter. Alternate translation: "while I am in prison"

##### for the sake of the gospel

Paul was in prison because he preached the gospel publicly. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "because I preach the gospel"

#### Philemon 1:14

##### But I did not want to do anything without your consent

Paul states a double negative to mean the opposite. Alternate translation: "But I wanted to make sure that you approved of everything I did"

##### I did not want your good deed to be from necessity but from good will

"I did not want you to do this good deed because I commanded you to do it, but because you wanted to do it"

##### but from good will

"but because you freely chose to do the right thing"

#### Philemon 1:15

##### Perhaps for this he was separated from you for a time, so that

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Perhaps the reason God took Onesimus away from you for a time was so that"

##### for a time

"during this time"

#### Philemon 1:16

##### better than a slave

"more valuable than a slave"

##### a beloved brother

"a dear brother" or "a precious brother in Christ"

##### much more so to you

"he means even more to you"

##### in both the flesh

"both as a man." Paul is referring to Onesimus' being a trustworthy servant.

##### in the Lord

"as a brother in the Lord" or "because he belongs to the Lord"

#### Philemon 1:17

##### if you have me as a partner

"if you think of me as a fellow worker for Christ"

#### Philemon 1:18

##### charge that to me

"say that I am the one who owes you"

#### Philemon 1:19

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

"I, Paul, write this myself." Paul wrote this part with his own hand so that Philemon would know that the words were really from Paul. Paul really would pay him.

##### not to mention

"I do not need to remind you" or "You already know." Paul says he does not need to tell Philemon this, but then continues to tell him anyway. This emphasizes the truth of what Paul is telling him.

##### you owe me your own self

"you owe me your own life." Paul was implying that Philemon should not say that Onesimus or Paul owed him anything because Philemon owed Paul even more. The reason Philemon owed Paul his life can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "you owe me much because I saved your life" or "you owe me your own life because what I told you saved your life"

#### Philemon 1:20

##### refresh my heart in Christ

Here "refresh" is a metaphor for comfort or encourage. Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's feelings, thoughts, or inner being. How Paul wanted Philemon to refresh his heart can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "encourage me in Christ" or "comfort me in Christ" or "refresh my heart in Christ by accepting Onesimus kindly"

#### Philemon 1:21

##### General Information:

Here the words "your" and "you" are singular and refer to Philemon.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter and speaks a blessing on Philemon and the believers that meet for church in Philemon's house.

##### Confident about your obedience

"Because I am sure that you will do what I ask"

#### Philemon 1:22

##### At the same time

"Also"

##### prepare a guest room for me

"make a room in your house ready for me." Paul is addressing Philemon here, so the word "prepare" is singular.

##### for I hope that through your prayers I will be returned to you

Paul is confident that he will return to Philemon and the other Christians there. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for I confidently expect that God will answer your prayers and send me back to you"

##### your ... you

These words are plural and refer to Philemon, Apphia, Archippus, and the other Christians that meet in their home.

#### Philemon 1:23

##### Epaphras

This man is a fellow believer and prisoner with Paul.

##### my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus

"who is in prison with me because he serves Christ Jesus"

#### Philemon 1:24

##### So do Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers

"Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers, also greet you"

##### Mark ... Aristarchus ... Demas ... Luke

These are names of men.

##### my fellow workers

"the men who work with me" or "who all work with me."

#### Philemon 1:25

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

The word "your" here refers to Philemon and all who met in his house and so is plural. The words "your spirit" are a synecdoche and represent the people themselves. Alternate translation: "May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to you"

## Chapter 1

# Hebrews 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter describes how Jesus is more important to us than the angels are.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:5, 7-13, which is from the Old Testament.

#### "Our ancestors"

The writer wrote this letter to Christians who had grown up as Jews. This is why the letter is called "Hebrews."

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way of proving Jesus is better than the angels. Both he and the readers know the answers to the questions, and the writer knows that as the readers think about the answers to the questions, they will realize that God's Son is more important than any of the angels.

#### Poetry

Jewish teachers, like the Old Testament prophets, would put their most important teachings in the form of poetry so that the hearers would be able to learn and remember them.

#### Hebrews 1:1

##### General Information:

Although this letter does not mention to whom it was sent, the author wrote particularly to Hebrews (Jews), who would have understood the many Old Testament references. This prologue provides the background for the whole book: the unsurpassing greatness of the Son, who is greater than all. The book begins by emphasizing that the Son is better than the prophets and the angels.

#### Hebrews 1:2

##### in these last days

"in these final days." This phrase refers to the time when Jesus began his ministry, extending until God establishes his complete rule in his creation.

##### through a Son

"Son" here is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### to be the heir of all things

The author speaks of the Son as if he will inherit wealth and property from his Father. Alternate translation: "to possess all things"

##### It is through him that God also made the universe

"It is through the Son that God also made all things"

#### Hebrews 1:3

##### the brightness of God's glory

"the light of his glory." God's glory is associated with a very bright light. The author is saying that the Son embodies that light and fully represents God's glory.

##### glory, the exact representation of his being

"glory, the image of God's being." The phrase "the exact representation of his being" is similar in meaning to "the brightness of God's glory." The Son embodies the character and essence of God and fully represents everything that God is. Alternate translation: "glory and is just like God" or "glory, and what is true about God is true about the Son"

##### the word of his power

"his powerful word." Here "word" refers to a message or command. Alternate translation: "his powerful command"

##### After he had made cleansing for sins

The abstract noun "cleansing" can be expressed as a verb: "making clean." Alternate translation: "After he had finished making us clean from sins" or "After he had finished purifying us from our sins"

##### he had made cleansing for sins

The author speaks of forgiving sins as if it were making a person clean. Alternate translation: "he had made it possible for God to forgive our sins"

##### he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the Majesty on high"

##### the Majesty on high

Here "Majesty" refers to God. Alternate translation: "God Most High"

#### Hebrews 1:4

##### He has become

"The Son has become"

##### as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name

Here "name" refers to honor and authority. Alternate translation: "as the honor and authority he has inherited is superior to their honor and authority"

##### he has inherited

The author speaks of receiving honor and authority from his father as if it were inheriting wealth and property from his father. Alternate translation: "he has received"

#### Hebrews 1:5

##### General Information:

The first prophetic quotation (You are my Son) comes from the Psalms. The prophet Samuel wrote the second one (I will be a Father to him). The words "You" and "he" refer to Jesus, and the words "I" and "me" refer to God the Father.

##### For to which of the angels did God ever say, "You are my Son ... a Son to me"?

This question emphasizes that God does not call any angel his Son. Alternate translation: "For God never said to any of the angels, 'You are my Son ... a Son to me.'"

##### You are my Son ... I have become your Father

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing.

#### Hebrews 1:6

##### General Information:

The quotation, "All God's angels ... him," comes from one of the books that Moses wrote.

##### the firstborn

This means Jesus. The author refers to him as the "firstborn" to emphasize the Son's importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God has other sons like Jesus. Alternate translation: "his honored Son, his only Son"

##### he says

"God says"

#### Hebrews 1:7

##### General Information:

The quotation, "He is the one who makes ... fire," is from the Psalms.

##### He is the one who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire

Possible meanings are 1) "God has made his angels to be spirits who serve him with power like flames of fire" or 2) God makes the wind and flames of fire his messengers and servants. In the original language the word for "angel" is the same as "messenger," and the word for "spirits" is the same as "wind." With either possible meaning, the point is that the angels serve the Son because he is superior.

#### Hebrews 1:8

##### General Information:

This scriptual quotation comes from the Psalms.

##### But to the Son he says

"But God says this to the Son"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### Your throne, God, is forever and ever

The Son's throne represents his rule. Alternate translation: "You are God, and your reign will last forever and ever"

##### The scepter of justice is the scepter of your kingdom

Here "scepter" refers to the Son's rule. Alternate translation: "And you will rule over your kingdom with justice" or "And you will rule over the people of your kingdom justly"

#### Hebrews 1:9

##### has anointed you with the oil of joy more than your companions

Here "oil of joy" refers to the joy that the Son felt when God honored him. Alternate translation: "has honored you and made you more joyful than anyone else"

#### Hebrews 1:10

##### General Information:

This quotation comes from another Psalm.

##### Connecting Statement:

The author continues explaining that Jesus is superior to the angels.

##### In the beginning

"Before anything existed"

##### you laid the earth's foundation

The author speaks of God creating the earth as if he built a building on a foundation. Alternate translation: "you created the earth"

##### The heavens are the work of your hands

Here "hands" refer to God's power and action. Alternate translation: "You made the heavens"

#### Hebrews 1:11

##### They will perish

"The heavens and earth will disappear" or "The heavens and earth will no longer exist"

##### wear out like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a piece of clothing that will get old and eventually become useless.

#### Hebrews 1:12

##### roll them up like a cloak

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a robe or another kind of outer garment.

##### they will be changed like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were clothing that could be exchanged for other clothing.

##### they will be changed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will change them"

##### your years do not end

Periods of time are used to represent God's eternal existence. Alternate translation: "your life will never end"

#### Hebrews 1:13

##### General Information:

This quotation comes from another Psalm.

##### But to which of the angels has God said at any time ... feet"?

The author uses a question to emphasize that God has never said this to an angel. Alternate translation: "But God has never said to an angel at any time ... feet.'"

##### Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

##### until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet

Christ's enemies are spoken of as if they will become an object on which a king rests his feet. This image represents defeat and dishonor for his enemies.

#### Hebrews 1:14

##### Are not all angels spirits ... inherit salvation?

The author uses this question to remind the readers that angels are not as powerful as Christ, but they have a different role. Alternate translation: "All angels are spirits who ... inherit salvation."

##### for those who will inherit salvation

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "for those whom God will save"

## Chapter 2

# Hebrews 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 2:6-8, 12-13, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Brothers

The author probably uses the term "brothers" to refer to Christians who grew up as Jews.

* [Hebrews 2:1 Notes](./01.md)

**<< | >>**

#### Hebrews 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the first of five urgent warnings the author gives.

##### we must

Here "we" refers to the author and includes his audience.

##### so that we do not drift away from it

Possible meanings for this metaphor are 1) people who stop believing in God's word are spoken of as if they were drifting away, like a boat drifts from its position in the water. Alternate translation: "so that we do not stop believing it" or 2) people who stop obeying God's words are spoken of as if they were drifting away, like a boat drifts from its position in the water. Alternate translation: "so that we do not stop obeying it"

#### Hebrews 2:2

##### For if the message that was spoken through the angels

The Jews believed that God spoke his law to Moses through angels. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For if the message that God spoke through the angels"

##### For if the message

The author is certain that these things are true. Alternate translation: "Because the message"

##### every transgression and disobedience receives just repayment

Here "transgression" and "disobedience" stand for the people who are guilty of these sins. Alternate translation: "every person who sins and disobeys will receive just repayment"

##### transgression and disobedience

These two words mean basically the same thing.

##### repayment

This is a general term, but you may need to make explicit that the "repayment" here is just punishment. Alternate translation: "punishment"

#### Hebrews 2:3

##### how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation?

The author uses a question to emphasize that the people will certainly receive punishment if they refuse God's salvation through Christ. Alternate translation: "then God will certainly punish us if we do not pay attention to his message about how God will save us!"

##### ignore

"pay no attention to" or "consider unimportant"

##### This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it

This can be stated in active form. The abstract noun "salvation" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "The Lord himself first announced the message about how God will save us and then those who heard the message confirmed it to us"

#### Hebrews 2:4

##### according to his will

"in just the way he wanted to do it"

#### Hebrews 2:5

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that the earth will one day be under the rule of the Lord Jesus.

##### For it was not to the angels that God subjected

"For God did not make the angels rulers over"

##### the world to come

Here "world" refers to the people who live there. And "to come" means that this is the world in the next age after Christ returns. Alternate translation: "the people who will live in the new world"

#### Hebrews 2:6

##### General Information:

The quotation here is from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. It continues on through verse 8.

##### What is man, that you are mindful of him?

This rhetorical question emphasizes the insignificance of humans and expresses surprise that God would pay attention to them. Alternate translation: "Humans are insignificant, and yet you are mindful of them!"

##### Or a son of man, that you care for him?

The idiom "son of man" refers to human beings. This rhetorical question means basically the same thing as the first question. It expresses surprise that God would care for humans, who are insignificant. Alternate translation: "Human beings are of little importance, and yet you care for them!"

##### Or a son of man

The verb may be supplied from the previous question. Alternate translation: "Or what is a son of man"

#### Hebrews 2:7

##### a little lower than the angels

The author speaks of people being less important than angels as if the people are standing in a position that is lower than the angels' position. Alternate translation: "less important than the angels"

##### made man ... crowned him

Here, these phrases do not refer to a specific person but to humans in general, including both males and females. Alternate translation: "made humans ... crowned them"

##### you crowned him with glory and honor

The gifts of glory and honor are spoken of as if they were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. Alternate translation: "you have given them great glory and honor"

#### Hebrews 2:8

##### his feet ... to him

Here, these phrases do not refer to a specific person but to humans in general, including both males and females. Alternate translation: "their feet ... to them"

##### You put everything in subjection under his feet

The author speaks of humans having control over everything as if they have stepped on everything with their feet. Alternate translation: "You have given them control over everything"

##### He did not leave anything not subjected to him

This double negative emphasizes the positive. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God made everything subject to him"

##### we do not yet see everything subjected to him

"we know that humans are not in control of everything yet"

#### Hebrews 2:9

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that Christ became lower than the angels when he came to earth to suffer death for forgiveness of sins, and that he became a merciful high priest to believers.

##### we see him

"we know there is one"

##### who was made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God made"

##### lower than the angels ... crowned with glory and honor

See how you translated these words in Hebrews 2:7.

##### he might taste death

The experience of death is spoken of as if it were food that people can taste. Alternate translation: "he might experience death" or "he might die"

#### Hebrews 2:10

##### bring many sons to glory

The gift of glory is spoken of here as if it were a place to which people could be brought. Alternate translation: "save many sons"

##### many sons

Here this refers to believers in Christ, including males and females. Alternate translation: "many believers"

##### the founder of their salvation

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) the author speaks of Jesus as the one who establishes salvation, or makes it possible for God to save people. Alternate translation: "the one who makes their salvation possible" or 2) the word translated here as "founder" can mean "leader" and the writer speaks of salvation as if it were a destination and of Jesus as the person who goes before the people on the road and leads them to salvation. Alternate translation: "the one who leads people to salvation"

##### complete

Becoming mature and completely trained is spoken of as if a person were made complete, perhaps complete in all his body parts.

#### Hebrews 2:11

##### the one who sanctifies

"the one who makes others holy" or "the one who makes others pure from sin"

##### those who are sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom he makes holy" or "those whom he makes pure from sin"

##### have one source

Who that source is can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "have one source, God himself" or "have the same Father"

##### he is not ashamed

"Jesus is not ashamed"

##### is not ashamed to call them brothers

This litotes means that he will claim them as his brothers. Alternate translation: "is pleased to call them brothers"

##### brothers

Here this refers to all who have believed in Jesus, including both men and women.

#### Hebrews 2:12

##### General Information:

This prophetic quotation comes from a Psalm of King David.

##### I will proclaim your name to my brothers

Here "name" refers to the person's reputation and what they have done. Alternate translation: "I will proclaim to my brothers the great things you have done"

##### from inside the assembly

"when believers come together to worship God"

#### Hebrews 2:13

##### General Information:

The prophet Isaiah wrote these quotations.

##### And again,

"And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:"

##### the children

This speaks about those who believe in Christ as if they were children. Alternate translation: "those who are like my children"

#### Hebrews 2:14

##### the children

This speaks about those who believe in Christ as if they were children. Alternate translation: "those who are like his children"

##### share in flesh and blood

The phrase "flesh and blood" refers to people's human nature. Alternate translation: "are all human beings"

##### he shared in those things in the same way

"Jesus in the same way shared in flesh and blood" or "Jesus became human in the same way they did"

##### through death

Here "death" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "by dying"

##### has the power of death

Here "death" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "has the power to cause people to die"

#### Hebrews 2:15

##### This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives subject to slavery

The fear of death is spoken of as if it were making people live as slaves. Taking away someone's fear is spoken of as it were freeing that person from slavery. Alternate translation: "This was so he might free all people. For we lived like slaves because we were afraid of dying"

#### Hebrews 2:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 2:17

##### it was necessary for him

"it was necessary for Jesus"

##### like his brothers

Here "brothers" refers to people in general. Alternate translation: "like human beings"

##### he could make atonement for the sins of the people

Christ's death on the cross means that God can forgive sins. Alternate translation: "he could make it possible for God to forgive people's sins"

#### Hebrews 2:18

##### was tempted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Satan tempted him"

##### who are tempted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Satan is tempting"

## Chapter 3

# Hebrews 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is about how Jesus is better than Moses, the greatest Israelite in the Old Testament.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:7-11,15, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Brothers

The author probably uses the term "brothers" to refer to Christians who grew up as Jews.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Harden your hearts

A person who hardens his heart is a person who will not listen to or obey God.

#### Rhetorical questions

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way of warning his readers. Both he and the readers know the answers to the questions, and the writer knows that as the readers think about the answers to the questions, they will realize that they need to listen to God and obey him.

#### Hebrews 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This second warning is longer and more detailed and includes chapters 3 and 4. The writer begins by showing that Christ is better than his servant Moses.

##### holy brothers

Here "brothers" refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "holy brothers and sisters" or "my holy fellow believers"

##### you share in a heavenly calling

Here "heavenly" represents God. Alternate translation: "God has called us together"

##### the apostle and high priest

Here the word "apostle" means someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve apostles. Alternate translation: "the one whom God sent and is the high priest"

##### of our confession

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "confession" is expressed as the verb "confess." Alternate translation: "whom we confess" or "in whom we believe"

#### Hebrews 3:2

##### in all the house of God

The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "to all of God's people"

#### Hebrews 3:3

##### Jesus has been considered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has considered Jesus"

#### Hebrews 3:4

##### the one who built everything

God's acts of creating the world are spoken of as if they were the actions of building a house.

##### every house is built by someone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "every house has someone who built it"

#### Hebrews 3:5

##### in God's entire house

The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:2]

##### house, bearing witness about the things

This phrase probably refers to all of Moses's work. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "house. Moses's life and work pointed to the things"

##### were to be spoken of in the future

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God would speak about in the future"

#### Hebrews 3:6

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### who is in charge of the house of God

This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "who rules over God's people"

##### We are his house

This speaks of God's people as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "We are God's people"

##### if we hold firmly to our courage and the hope of which we boast

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Here "courage" and "hope" are abstract nouns and can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "if we continue to be courageous and joyfully expect God to do what he has promised"

#### Hebrews 3:7

##### General Information:

This quotation comes from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament.

##### Connecting Statement:

The warning here is a reminder that the Israelites' unbelief kept almost all of them from entering into the land that God had promised them.

##### if you hear his voice

God's "voice" represents him speaking. Alternate translation: "when you hear God speak"

#### Hebrews 3:8

##### do not harden your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "harden your hearts" is a metaphor for being stubborn. Alternate translation: "do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen"

##### as in the rebellion, in the time of testing in the wilderness

Here "rebellion" and "testing" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "as when your ancestors rebelled against God and tested him in the wilderness"

#### Hebrews 3:9

##### General Information:

This quotation is from the Psalms.

##### your ancestors

Here "your" is plural and refers to the people of Israel.

##### by testing me

Here "me" refers to God.

#### Hebrews 3:10

##### forty years

"40 years"

##### I was angry

"I was greatly unhappy"

##### They have always gone astray in their hearts

Here "gone astray in their hearts" is a metaphor for not being loyal to God. Here "hearts" is a metonym for minds or desires. Alternate translation: "They have always rejected me" or "They have always refused to obey me"

##### They have not known my ways

This speaks of a manner of conducting one's life as if it were a way or a path. Alternate translation: "They have not understood how I want them to conduct their lives"

#### Hebrews 3:11

##### They will never enter my rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "I will never allow them to experience my blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 3:12

##### brothers

Here this refers to fellow Christians, including males and females. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" or "fellow believers"

##### that none of you has an evil heart of unbelief, a heart that turns away from the living God

Here "heart" is a metonym that represents a person's mind or will. Refusing to believe and obey God is spoken of as if the heart did not believe and it physically turned away from God. Alternate translation: "that none of you refuses to believe the truth and stops obeying the living God"

##### the living God

"the true God who is really alive"

#### Hebrews 3:13

##### as long as it is called "today,"

"while there is still opportunity,"

##### no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the deceitfulness of sin will not harden any of you"

##### no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin

Being stubborn is spoken of as being hard or having a hard heart. The hardness is a result of being deceived by sin. This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "deceitfulness" is expressed as the verb "deceive." Alternate translation: "no one among you will be deceived by sin and become stubborn" or "you do not sin, deceiving yourselves so that you become stubborn"

#### Hebrews 3:14

##### For we have become

Here "we" refers to both the writer and the readers.

##### if we firmly hold to our confidence in him

"if we continue to confidently trust in him"

##### from the beginning

"from when we first began to believe in him"

##### to the end

This is a polite way of referring to when a person dies. Alternate translation: "until we die"

#### Hebrews 3:15

##### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the same psalm that was also quoted in Hebrews 3:7.

##### it has been said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer wrote"

##### if you hear his voice

God's "voice" represents him speaking. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:7]

##### as in the rebellion

Here "rebellion" can be stated as a verb. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:8]

#### Hebrews 3:16

##### Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses?

The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can be joined as one statement, if needed. Alternate translation: "All those who came out of Egypt with Moses heard God, yet they still rebelled."

#### Hebrews 3:17

##### With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness?

The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can be joined as one statement, if needed. Alternate translation: "For forty years, God was angry with those who sinned, and he let them die in the wilderness."

##### forty years

"40 years"

#### Hebrews 3:18

##### To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him?

The author uses this question to teach his readers. Alternate translation: "And it was to those who disobeyed that he swore they would not enter his rest."

##### they would not enter his rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "they would not enter the place of rest" or "they would not experience his blessings of rest"

##### they

The word "they" refers to the disobedient Israelites.

#### Hebrews 3:19

##### General Information:

Here "we" refers to the author and readers.

##### because of unbelief

The abstract noun "unbelief" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "because they did not believe him"

## Chapter 4

# Hebrews 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter tells why Jesus is the greatest high priest.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:3-4, 7, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's rest

The word "rest" seems to refer to at least two things in this chapter. It refers to a place or time when God will allow his people to rest from their work ([Hebrews 4:3](../../heb/04/03.md)), and it refers to God resting on the seventh day ([Hebrews 4:4](../../heb/04/04.md)).

#### Hebrews 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Chapter 4 continues the warning to believers starting in Hebrews 3:7.

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true" or "Since God will certainly punish those who do not obey"

##### let us fear

This is probably a hyperbole that refers to being very careful. Alternate translation: "we must be very careful"

##### entering his rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "to enter the place of rest" or "to experience God's blessings of rest"

##### none of you may seem to have fallen short of it

God's promise is spoken of as if it were a place to which people were trying to go. Alternate translation: "none of you fail to enter into God's rest, which he promised to us" or "God allows you all to enter into his rest as he promised us"

#### Hebrews 4:2

##### For we were told the good news just as they were

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For we heard the good news just as they did"

##### as they were

Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

##### But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed

The author is talking about two groups of people, those who received God's covenant with faith, and those who heard it but did not believe. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it"

##### unite

join

#### Hebrews 4:3

##### General Information:

Here the quotation, "As I swore ... rest," is from a psalm.

##### we who have believed

"we who believe"

##### we who have believed enter that rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "we who have believed will enter the place of rest" or "we who have believed will experience God's blessings of rest"

##### just as he said

"just as God said"

##### As I swore in my wrath

"As I swore when I was very angry"

##### They will never enter my rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest"

##### his works were finished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he finished creating" or "he finished his works of creation"

##### from the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "at the beginning of the world" or "from the time he created the world"

#### Hebrews 4:4

##### General Information:

The quotation, "God rested on ... works," is from Moses's writings.

##### the seventh day

The word "seventh" is the ordinal number for "seven."

#### Hebrews 4:5

##### General Information:

This quotation, "They will never enter ... rest," is from a psalm.

#### Hebrews 4:6

##### it remains for some to enter that rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:7

##### General Information:

Here we find out that this quotation from the Psalms was written by David (Hebrews 3:7-8).

##### if you hear his voice

God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:7]

##### do not harden your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "harden your hearts" is a metaphor for being stubborn. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:8]

#### Hebrews 4:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the writer warns believers not to disobey but to enter into the rest God offers. He reminds them that God's word will convict them and that they can come in prayer with the confidence that God will help them.

##### if Joshua had given them rest

A person causing someone to rest is spoken of as if the person were giving someone rest. Alternate translation: "if Joshua had been able to cause the people to rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 4:10

##### he who enters into God's rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they are a place to enter. Alternate translation: "the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:11

##### let us be eager to enter that rest

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were a place to enter. Alternate translation: "we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is"

##### will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did

Disobedience is spoken of as if it were a hole that a person could physically fall into by accident. This passage can be reworded so that the abstract noun "disobedience" is expressed as the verb "disobey." Alternate translation: "will disobey in the same way as they did"

##### that they did

Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors during the time of Moses.

#### Hebrews 4:12

##### the word of God is living ... It pierces ... is able

Here "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to humanity, whether through speech or through written messages. Alternate translation: "the words of God are living ... They pierce ... are able"

##### living and active

This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective.

##### sharper than any two-edged sword

A two-edged sword can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

##### two-edged sword

a sword with a blade that is sharp on both edges

##### It pierces even to the dividing of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow

This continues speaking about God's word as if it were a sword. Here the sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside us that we can hide from God.

##### soul and spirit

These are two different but closely related nonphysical parts of a human. The "soul" is what causes a person to be alive. The "spirit" is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God.

##### joints and marrow

The "joint" is what holds two bones together. The "marrow" is the center part of the bone.

##### is able to discern

This speaks about God's word as if it were a person who could know something. Alternate translation: "exposes"

##### the thoughts and intentions of the heart

"Heart" here is a metonym for "inner self." Alternate translation: "what a person is thinking and intends to do"

#### Hebrews 4:13

##### No thing that has been created is hidden before God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nothing that God has created can hide from him"

##### everything is bare and open

This speaks about all things as if they were a person standing bare, or a box that is open. Alternate translation: "everything is completely exposed"

##### bare and open

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that nothing is hidden from God.

##### to the eyes of the one to whom we must give an account

God is spoken of as if he had eyes. Alternate translation: "to God, who will judge how we have lived"

#### Hebrews 4:14

##### who has passed through the heavens

"who has entered where God is"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### let us firmly hold to our confession

The word "confession" is a metonym for what a person believes and confesses. This is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could grasp firmly. Alternate translation: "let us continue to believe confidently in him, as we say that we do"

#### Hebrews 4:15

##### we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy ... Rather, we have

This double negative is used to correct an incorrect idea that the reader might have, that the high priest cannot feel sympathy. Alternate translation: "we have a high priest who can feel sympathy ... Rather, we have"

##### who has in all ways been tempted as we are

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who has endured temptation in every way that we have" or "whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us"

##### he is without sin

"he did not sin"

#### Hebrews 4:16

##### to the throne of grace

"to God's throne, where there is grace." Here "throne" refers to God ruling as king. Alternate translation: "to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne"

##### we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need

Here "mercy" and "grace" are spoken of as if they were objects that can be given or can be found. Alternate translation: "God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need"

## Chapter 5

# Hebrews 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the teaching of the previous chapter.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 5:5-6.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### High priest

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Milk and solid food

The writer speaks of Christians who are only able to understand simple things about Jesus as if they were babies, who drink only milk and cannot eat solid food.

#### Hebrews 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, and then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, one not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.

##### chosen from among people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God chooses from among the people"

##### is appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God appoints"

##### to act on the behalf of people

"to represent the people"

##### so that he may offer

The word "he" refers to a high priest.

#### Hebrews 5:2

##### He can deal gently

"The high priest can deal gently"

##### those ... who have been deceived

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those ... whom others have deceived" or "those ... who believe what is false"

##### who have been deceived

"who believe false things and so behave badly"

##### is subject to weakness

The high priest's own weakness is spoken of as if it were a another person who rules over him. Alternate translation: "is spiritually weak" or "is weak against sin"

##### weakness

the desire to sin

#### Hebrews 5:3

##### he also is required

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also requires him"

#### Hebrews 5:4

##### takes this honor

Honor is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could grasp in his hands.

##### takes this honor

The "honor" or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task.

##### he is called by God, just as Aaron was

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God calls him, just as he called Aaron"

#### Hebrews 5:5

##### General Information:

This quotation is from the Psalms in the Old Testament.

##### the one speaking to him said

"God said to him"

##### You are my Son; today I have become your Father

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated them in [Hebrews 1:5]

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God the Father.

#### Hebrews 5:6

##### General Information:

This prophecy is from a Psalm of David.

##### he also says

To whom God is speaking can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "he also says to Christ"

##### in another place

"in another place in the scriptures"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

#### Hebrews 5:7

##### During the days of his flesh

Here "the days" stands for a period of time. And, "flesh" stand for Jesus's earthly life. Alternate translation: "While he lived on earth"

##### prayers and requests

Both of these words mean basically the same thing.

##### the one able to save him from death

Possible meanings are 1) God was able to save Christ so that he would not die. Alternate translation: 'to save him from dying" or 2) God was able to save Christ after Christ's death by making him alive again. If possible, translate this in a way that allows both interpretations.

##### he was heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God heard him"

#### Hebrews 5:8

##### a Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Hebrews 5:9

##### He was made perfect

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made him perfect"

##### made perfect

Here this means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.

##### became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation

The abstract noun "salvation" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever"

#### Hebrews 5:10

##### He was designated by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God designated him" or "God appointed him"

##### as high priest after the manner of Melchizedek

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "to be the sort of high priest that Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 5:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the writer begins his third warning. He warns these believers that they are still not mature and encourages them to learn God's word so they can understand right from wrong.

##### We have much to say

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "I have much to say"

##### you have become dull in hearing

The ability to understand and obey is spoken of as if it were the ability to listen. And the ability to listen is spoken of as if it were a metal tool that becomes dull with use. Alternate translation: "you have trouble understanding it"

#### Hebrews 5:12

##### elementary principles of God's messages

Here "elementary principles" refers to the first things people should be able to understand. Alternate translation: "basic truths of God's messages" or "beginnning lessons of God's word"

##### You need milk

Truths about God that are easy to understand are spoken of as if they were milk, the only food that infants can take. Alternate translation: "You have become like babies and can drink only milk"

##### milk, not solid food

Truths about God that are difficult to understand are spoken of as if they were solid food, suitable for adults. Alternate translation: "milk instead of solid food that adults can eat"

#### Hebrews 5:13

##### takes milk

Here "takes" stands for "drinks." Alternate translation: "drinks milk"

##### because he is still a little child

Spiritual maturity is compared with the kind of food that a growing child eats. Solid food is not for a tiny baby, and that is a figure describing a young Christian who only learns simple truths; but later, more solid food is given to the little child, just as when a person matures he can learn about matters that are more difficult.

#### Hebrews 5:14

##### who because of their maturity have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil

People trained to understand something are spoken of as if their ability to understand had been trained. Alternate translation: "who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil"

## Chapter 6

# Hebrews 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Abrahamic Covenant

In the covenant that God made with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect Abraham's descendants and to give them land of their own. (See: covenant)

#### Hebrews 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues with what immature Hebrew believers need to do to become mature Christians. He reminds them of the foundational teachings.

##### let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity

This speaks about the basic teachings as if they were the beginning of a journey and the mature teachings as if they were the end of a journey. Alternate translation: "let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well"

##### Let us not lay again the foundation

The teachings of the faith are spoken of as if they were a building, and the basic, elementary teachings are the foundation. Alternate translation: "Let us not repeat the basic teachings"

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 6:2

##### nor the foundation of teaching

The teachings of the faith are spoken of as if they were a building, and the basic, elementary teachings are the foundation. Alternate translation: "nor the basic teachings"

##### laying on of hands

This practice was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

#### Hebrews 6:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 6:4

##### those who were once enlightened

Understanding is spoken of as if it were illumination. Alternate translation: "those who once understood the message about Christ"

##### who tasted the heavenly gift

Experiencing salvation is spoken of as if it were tasting food. Alternate translation: "who experienced God's saving power"

##### who were sharers of the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit, who comes to believers, is spoken of as if he were an object that people could share. Alternate translation: "who received the Holy Spirit"

#### Hebrews 6:5

##### who tasted God's good word

Learning God's message is spoken of as if it were tasting food. Alternate translation: "who learned about God's good message"

##### the powers of the age to come

This means the power of God when his kingdom is fully present in all the world. In this sense, "the powers" refer to God himself, who holds all power. Alternate translation: "how God will work powerfully in the future"

#### Hebrews 6:6

##### it is impossible to restore them again to repentance

"it is impossible to bring them back to repent again"

##### they crucify the Son of God for themselves again

When people turn away from God, it is as though they crucify Jesus again. Alternate translation: "it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### Hebrews 6:7

##### the land that drinks in the rain

Farmland that benefits from much rain is spoken of as if it were a person who drinks in the rainwater. Alternate translation: "the land that absorbs the rain"

##### that gives birth to the plants

Farmland that produces crops is spoken of as if it gives birth to them. Alternate translation: "that produces plants"

##### the land that receives a blessing from God

Rain and crops are seen as proof that God has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God's blessing.

##### a blessing from God

Here "blessing" means help from God, not spoken words.

#### Hebrews 6:8

##### is near to a curse

This speaks of "curse" as if it were a place to which a person could draw near. Alternate translation: "is in danger of God cursing it"

##### Its end is in burning

The farmer will burn everything in the field.

#### Hebrews 6:9

##### we are convinced

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "I am convinced" or "I am certain"

##### about better things concerning you

This means they are doing better than those who have rejected God, disobeyed him, and now can no longer repent so that God will forgive them ([Hebrews 6:4-6](./04.md)). Alternate translation: "that you are doing better things than what I have mentioned"

##### things that concern salvation

The abstract noun "salvation" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "things that concern God saving you"

#### Hebrews 6:10

##### For God is not unjust. He will not forget

This double negative can mean that God in his justice will remember what good things his people have done. Alternate translation: "For God is just. He will certainly remember"

##### for his name

God's "name" is a metonym that stands for God himself. Alternate translation: "for him"

#### Hebrews 6:11

##### We greatly desire

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "I greatly desire"

##### diligence

careful, hard work

##### to the end

The implicit meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "to the end of your lives"

##### in order to make your hope certain

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you"

#### Hebrews 6:12

##### imitators

An "imitator" is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.

##### inherit the promises

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "receive what God promised them"

#### Hebrews 6:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 6:14

##### He said

God said

#### Hebrews 6:15

##### what was promised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God promised him"

#### Hebrews 6:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 6:17

##### to the heirs of the promise

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "to those who would receive what he promised"

##### the unchangeable quality of his purpose

"that his purpose would never change" or "that he would always do what he said he would do"

#### Hebrews 6:18

##### we, who have fled for refuge

Believers, who trust in God for him to protect them, are spoken of as if they were running to a safe place. Alternate translation: "we, who have trusted him"

##### will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us

The phrase "to hold firmly to the hope set before us" is a metaphor meaning to continue to hope in what God has promised to do. Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "will continue to trust in God just has he encouraged us to do"

##### set before us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God has placed before us"

#### Hebrews 6:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Having finished his third warning and encouragement to the believers, the writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

##### as a secure and reliable anchor for the soul

Just as an anchor keeps a boat from drifting in the water, Jesus keeps us secure in God's presence. Alternate translation: "that causes us to live securely in God's presence"

##### a secure and reliable anchor

Here the words "secure" and "reliable" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the complete reliability of the anchor. Alternate translation: "a completely reliable anchor"

##### hope that enters into the inner place behind the curtain

Confidence is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple.

##### the inner place

This was the most holy place in the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room.

#### Hebrews 6:20

##### after the order of Melchizedek

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

## Chapter 7

# Hebrews 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:17, 21, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### High priest

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

#### Hebrews 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

##### Salem

This is the name of a city.

##### Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings

This is refers to when Abraham and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family.

#### Hebrews 7:2

##### It was to him

"It was to Melchizedek"

##### king of righteousness ... king of peace

"righteous king ... peaceful king"

#### Hebrews 7:3

##### He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life

It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that all the writer means is that the Scriptures provide no information about Melchizedek's ancestry, birth, or death.

#### Hebrews 7:4

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer states that the priesthood of Melchizedek is better than Aaron's priesthood and then reminds his readers that the priesthood of Aaron did not make anything perfect.

##### this man was

"Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 7:5

##### The descendants of Levi who receive the priestly office

The author says this because not all of Levi's sons became priests. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Levi who become priests"

##### from the people

"from the people of Israel"

##### from their brothers

Here "brothers" means they are all related to each other through Abraham. Alternate translation: "from their relatives"

#### Hebrews 7:6

##### whose descent was not traced from them

"who was not a descendant of Levi"

##### the one who had the promises

The things that God promised to do for Abraham are spoken of as if they were objects that he could possess. Alternate translation: the one to whom God had spoken his promises"

#### Hebrews 7:7

##### the lesser person is blessed by the greater person

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the more important person blesses the less important person"

#### Hebrews 7:8

##### In this case ... in that case

These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.

##### is testified that he lives on

It is never explicitly written in scripture that Melchizedek dies. The author of Hebrews speaks of this absence of information about Melchizedek's death in scripture as if it were a positive statement that he is still alive. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "scripture shows that he lives on"

#### Hebrews 7:9

##### Levi, who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham.

#### Hebrews 7:10

##### Levi was in the body of his ancestor

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham.

#### Hebrews 7:11

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron?

This question emphasizes that it was unexpected that priests come after the order of Melchizedek. Alternate translation: "no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise."

##### to arise

"to come" or "to appear"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

##### not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not be after the manner of Aaron" or "who is not a priest like Aaron"

#### Hebrews 7:12

##### For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law"

#### Hebrews 7:13

##### For the one

This refers to Jesus.

##### about whom these things are said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "about whom I am speaking"

#### Hebrews 7:14

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### it is from Judah that our Lord was born

The words "our Lord" refer to Jesus.

##### from Judah

"from the tribe of Judah"

#### Hebrews 7:15

##### when another priest arises

"when another priest comes"

##### in the likeness of Melchizedek

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

#### Hebrews 7:16

##### This one became a priest

The words "This one" refer to the one who became priest in the likeness of Melchizedek.

##### not based on a law of physical requirement

He became priest, but it was not because he met the physical requrement.

##### a law of physical requirement

This physical requirement is that only the descendants of priests could become priests. Alternate translation: "a law of human descent" or "a law that required priests to be descendants of priests"

#### Hebrews 7:17

##### General Information:

This quote comes from a psalm of King David.

##### For scripture witnesses about him

This speaks about scripture as if it were a person who could witness about something. Alternate translation: "For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" or "For this is what was written about him in the scripture"

##### according to the order of Melchizedek

There were two groups of priests. One was made up of the descendants of Levi. The other was made up of Melchizedek and Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "according to the line of Melchizedek" or "according to the priesthood of Melchizedek"

#### Hebrews 7:18

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer gives the first of two statements that explain [Hebrews 7:17](./17.md).

##### has the former command been set aside

Here "set aside" is a metaphor for making something invalid. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has God made the commandment invalid"

#### Hebrews 7:19

##### Connecting Statement:

After a short statement that explains [Hebrews 7:18](./18.md), the writer gives the second of two statements that explain [Hebrews 7:17](./17.md).

##### the law made nothing perfect

The law is spoken of as if it were a person who could act. Alternate translation: "no one could become perfect by obeying the law"

##### a better hope is introduced

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has introduced a better hope" or "God has given us reason for a more confident hope"

##### through which we come near to God

Worshiping God and having his favor are spoken of as coming near to him. Alternate translation: "and because of this hope we approach God" or "and because of this hope we worship God"

#### Hebrews 7:20

##### And it was not without an oath!

The word "it" refers to the act of God choosing Jesus to be the eternal priest. This can be stated in positive form, and it can be stated clearly who made the oath. Alternate translation: "And God did not choose this new priest without swearing an oath!" or "And God showed how important it was by swearing an oath!"

#### Hebrews 7:21

##### General Information:

This quote comes from the same psalm of David as Hebrews 7:17.

#### Hebrews 7:22

##### has given the guarantee of a better covenant

"has told us that we can be sure that there will be a better covenant"

#### Hebrews 7:23

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer then assures these Jewish believers that Christ has the better priesthood because he lives forever and the priests that descended from Aaron all die, stopping them from continuing to be priests.

#### Hebrews 7:24

##### he has a permanent priesthood

A priest's work is spoken of as if it were an object that the priest possesses. This can be worded to avoid the abstract noun. Alternate translation: "he is a priest permanently"

#### Hebrews 7:25

##### Therefore he

You can make explicit what "Therefore" implies. Alternate translation: "Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever, he"

##### those who approach God through him

"those who come to God because of what Jesus has done"

#### Hebrews 7:26

##### exalted above the heavens

"whom God has raised up to the highest heavens." The author speaks of possessing more honor and power than anyone else as if it were a position that is up above all things. Alternate translation: "whom God has given more honor and power than anyone else"

#### Hebrews 7:27

##### General Information:

Here the words "He," "his," and "himself" refer to Christ.

#### Hebrews 7:28

##### the law appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses

Here "the law" is a metonym for the men who appointed the high priests according to the law of Moses. The focus is not on the men who did this, but on the fact that they did this according to the law. Alternate translation: "according to the law, men appoint as high priests men who have weaknesses" or "for according to the law, men who have weaknesses are appointed as high priests"

##### men who have weaknesses

"men who are spiritually weak" or "men who are weak against sin"

##### the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son

The "word of the oath" represents God, who made the oath. Alternate translation: "God appointed a Son by his oath, which he made after he gave the law, a Son" or "after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

##### who has been made perfect

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who has completely obeyed God and become mature"

## Chapter 8

# Hebrews 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The author finishes describing how and why Jesus is the most important high priest. Then he begins to speak about how the new covenant is better to the covenant God made with Moses. (See: covenant)

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 8:8-12, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### New covenant

The author tells how Jesus has established a new covenant that is better than the covenant that God established with the Israelites. (See: covenant)

#### Hebrews 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer, having shown that Christ's priesthood is better than the earthly priesthood, shows that the earthly priesthood was a pattern of heavenly things. Christ has a superior ministry, a superior covenant.

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### we are saying

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Because the writer does not include his readers here, the word "we" is exclusive. Alternate translation: "I am saying" or "I am writing"

##### We have a high priest

The author is including the readers here, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hebrews 1:3]

#### Hebrews 8:2

##### the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up

People built the earthly tabernacle out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, and they set it up in the manner of a tent. Here "true tabernacle" means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

#### Hebrews 8:3

##### For every high priest is appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God appoints every priest"

#### Hebrews 8:4

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### according to the law

"as God requires in the law"

#### Hebrews 8:5

##### They serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things

The words "copy" and "shadow" have similar meanings and are metaphors meaning that something is not the real thing but it is similar to the real thing. These words emphasize that the priesthood and the earthly temple were images of Christ, the true high priest, and the heavenly temple. Alternate translation: "They serve what is a vague image of the heavenly things" or "They serve what is only similar to the heavenly things"

##### It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It is just as God warned Moses when Moses was"

##### was about to construct the tabernacle

Moses did not construct the tabernacle himself. He ordered the people to construct it. Alternate translation: "was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle"

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### to the pattern

"to the design"

##### that was shown to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that I showed you"

##### on the mountain

You can make explicit that "mountain" refers to Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: "on Mount Sinai"

#### Hebrews 8:6

##### Connecting Statement:

This section begins to show that the new covenant is better than the old covenant with Israel and Judah.

##### Christ has received

"God has given Christ"

##### mediator of a better covenant

A mediator is a person who helps two parties come to an agreement. Christ, as mediator, made it possible for a better covenant between God and humans to exist.

##### covenant, which is based on better promises

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "covenant. It was this covenant that God made based on better promises" or "covenant. God promised better things when he made this covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:7

##### first ... second

The words "first" and "second" are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: "old covenant ... new covenant"

##### had been faultless

"had been perfect"

##### no occasion for a second would have been sought

The word "second" also describes a "covenant." Alternate translation: "no one would have sought a way to establish a second covenant" or "there would have been no reason to establish a second covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:8

##### General Information:

In this quotation the prophet Jeremiah foretold of a new covenant that God would make.

##### with the people

"with the people of Israel"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### the house of Israel and with the house of Judah

The people of Israel and Judah are spoken of as if they were houses. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel and with the people of Judah"

#### Hebrews 8:9

##### I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt

This metaphor represents God's great love and concern. Alternate translation: "I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child"

#### Hebrews 8:10

##### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

##### the house of Israel

The people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a house. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel"

##### after those days

"after that time"

##### I will put my laws into their minds

God's requirements are spoken of as if they were objects that could be placed somewhere. People's ability to think is spoken of as if it were a place. Alternate translation: "I will enable them to understand my laws"

##### I will also write them on their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being. The phrase "write them on their hearts" is a metaphor for enabling people to obey the law. Alternate translation: "I will also put them in their hearts" or "I will enable them to obey my law"

##### I will be their God

"I will be the God they worship"

##### they will be my people

"they will be the people for whom I care"

#### Hebrews 8:11

##### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

##### They will not teach each one his fellow citizen and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord.'

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "They will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me"

##### citizen ... brother

Both of these refer to a fellow Israelite.

##### Know the Lord ... will all know me

"Know" here stands for acknowledge.

#### Hebrews 8:12

##### toward their evil deeds

This stands for the people who committed these evil deeds. Alternate translation: "to those who did evil deeds"

##### their sins I will not remember any longer

Here "remember" stands for "think about."

#### Hebrews 8:13

##### he declared the first covenant to be obsolete

"he declared that the first covenant was no longer useful"

##### what has become obsolete

"what is no longer useful"

##### obsolete

Something that is obsolete is no longer useful because people can now use something better.

## Chapter 9

# Hebrews 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter describes how Jesus is better than the tabernacle and all its laws and rules. This chapter will be difficult to understand if the first five books of the Old Testament have not yet been translated.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Will

A will is a legal document that describes what will happen to a person's property after he dies.

#### Blood

In the Old Testament, God had commanded the Israelites to offer sacrifices so that he would forgive their sins. Before they could offer these sacrifices, they had to kill animals and then offer not only the animal's body but also its blood. Shedding blood is a metaphor for killing an animal or person. Jesus offered his life, his blood, as a sacrifice when he allowed men to kill him. The writer of the Book of Hebrews is saying in this chapter that this sacrifice is better than the sacrifices of the Old Testament. (See: and covenant)

#### Return of Christ

Jesus will return to finish the work that he began when he died so that God would forgive his people's sins. He will finish saving those people who are waiting for him. (See: save)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### First covenant

This refers to the covenant that God made with Moses. However, before he made this covenant, God had made a covenant with Abraham. But this was the first covenant that God had made with the people of Israel. You may decide to translate "the first covenant" as "the earlier covenant."

#### Hebrews 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The author begins a description of the place in which God's faithful people worshiped during the time of the old covenant. He is describing a "tabernacle," a place where people dwell, in which there are two sections, each of which he also calls a tabernacle.

##### General Information:

The writer makes clear to these Jewish believers that the laws and the tabernacle of the old covenant were only pictures of the better, new covenant.

##### Now

This word marks a new part of the teaching.

##### first covenant

See how you translated this in Hebrews 8:7.

##### had regulations

"had detailed instructions" or "had rules"

#### Hebrews 9:2

##### For

The author is continuing the discussion from Hebrews 8:7.

##### a tabernacle was prepared

A tabernacle was constructed and made ready for use. This idea can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelites prepared a tabernacle"

##### tabernacle

Or "tent." This is perhaps a metaphor for a place in which the priests set the lampstand and other items.

##### The first room

"The first room." Some modern translations read the ellipsis as "The first room in the tabernacle" or "The first section of the tabernacle."

##### the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence

These objects are all accompanied by the definite article "the," because the author assumes that his readers already know about these things.

##### bread of the presence

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "presence" is expressed as the verb "display" or "present." Alternate translation: "bread on display before God" or "bread the priests presented to God"

#### Hebrews 9:3

##### Behind the second curtain

The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the "second curtain" was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."

##### second

This is the ordinal word for the number two.

#### Hebrews 9:4

##### Inside it

"Inside the ark of the covenant"

##### Aaron's rod that budded

This was the rod Aaron had when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron's rod bud.

##### that budded

"from which leaves and flowers had grown"

##### tablets of the covenant

Here "tablets" are flat pieces of stone that had writing on them. This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.

#### Hebrews 9:5

##### glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid

When the Israelites were making the ark of the covenant, God commanded them to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant. Here they are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant. Alternate translation: "glorious cherubim covered the atonement lid with their wings"

##### cherubim

Here "cherubim" means figures of two cherubim.

##### which we cannot

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "which I cannot"

#### Hebrews 9:6

##### After these things were prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After the priests prepared these things"

#### Hebrews 9:7

##### not without blood that he offered

Another possible meaning is "not without blood, which he offered."

##### not without blood

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "always with blood"

##### blood

This is the blood of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

#### Hebrews 9:8

##### the most holy place

Possible meanings are 1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth or 2) God's presence in heaven.

##### the first tabernacle was still standing

Possible meanings are 1) "the outer room of the tabernacle was still standing" or 2) "the earthly tabernacle and the sacrificial system still existed."

#### Hebrews 9:9

##### This was an illustration

"This was a picture" or "This was a symbol"

##### for the present time

"for now"

##### that are now being offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the priests now offer"

##### are not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience

The writer speaks of a person's conscience as if it were an object that could be made better and better until it was without fault. A person's conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty. Alternate translation: "are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt"

##### the worshiper's conscience

The writer appears to refer to only one worshiper, but he means all those who go to worship God at the tabernacle.

#### Hebrews 9:10

##### until the time of the new order

"until God creates the new order"

##### new order

"new covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Having described the service of the tabernacle under God's law, the writer makes clear that Christ's service under the new covenant is better because it is sealed with his blood. It is better also because Christ has entered the true "tabernacle," that is, God's own presence in heaven, instead of entering, as other high priests, into the earthly tabernacle, which was only an imperfect copy.

##### good things

This does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.

##### the greater and more perfect tabernacle

This refers to the heavenly tent or tabernacle, which is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.

##### that was not made by human hands

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that humans hands did not make"

##### human hands

Here "hands" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "humans"

#### Hebrews 9:12

##### most holy place

This means the most holy place in the heavenly tabernacle. It is most holy because God himself lives there.

#### Hebrews 9:13

##### sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have been defiled

The priest would drop small amounts of the ashes on the people who were defiled.

##### for the cleansing of their flesh

Here "flesh" refers to the entire body. Alternate translation: "for the cleansing of their bodies"

#### Hebrews 9:14

##### how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

The author uses this question to emphasize that Christ's sacrifice was the most powerful. Alternate translation: "then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself unblemished to God."

##### the blood of Christ

The "blood" of Christ stands for his death.

##### unblemished

A small, unusual spot or defect on a person's body is a metaphor for a small sin or moral fault. Alternate translation: "without even the smallest fault"

##### cleanse our conscience

Here "conscience" refers to a person's feeling of guilt. Believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because Jesus sacrificed himself and has forgiven them.

##### cleanse

Here "cleanse" stands for the action of relieving our consciences from guilt for the sins we have committed.

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 9:15

##### For this reason

"As a result" or "Because of this"

##### he is the mediator of a new covenant

A mediator is a person who helps two parties come to an agreement. Christ, as mediator, made it possible for a better covenant between God and humans to exist. See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 8:6.

##### first covenant

See how you translated this in Hebrews 8:7.

##### to redeem those under the first covenant from their transgressions

"to take away the transgressions of those who were under the first covenant." The abstract noun "transgressions" can be translated using the verb "transgress." Possible meanings are 1) here "their transgressions" is a metonym for the guilt of their transgressions. Alternate translation: "to take away the guilt of those who were under the first covenant." Or 2) here "their transgressions" is a metonym for the punishment for their transgressions. Alternate translation: "to take away the punishment that those who were under the first covenant deserved because they had transgressed"

##### those who are called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God has called" or "those whom God has chosen to be his children"

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Hebrews 9:16

##### will

a legal document in which a person states who should receive his possessions when he himself dies

##### the death of the person who made it must be proven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

#### Hebrews 9:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 9:18

##### So not even the first covenant was established without blood

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: "So God established even the first covenant with blood"

##### first covenant

See how you translated this in Hebrews 8:7.

##### blood

The death of animals sacrificed to God is spoken of as if it were nothing but blood. Alternate translation: "the death of animals sacrificed to God"

#### Hebrews 9:19

##### took the blood ... with water ... and sprinkled ... the scroll ... and all the people

The priest dipped the hyssop in the blood and the water and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the people. Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed.

##### hyssop

a woody shrub with flowers in summer, used in ceremonial sprinkling

#### Hebrews 9:20

##### the blood of the covenant

Here "blood" refers to the death of the animals sacrificed to carry out the covenant's requirements. Alternate translation: "the blood that brings into effect the covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:21

##### he sprinkled

"Moses sprinkled"

##### sprinkled

Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 9:19]

##### all the containers used in the ministry

A container is an object that can hold things. Here it may refer to any kind of utensil or tool. Alternate translation: "all the utensils used in the ministry"

##### used in the ministry

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests used in their work"

##### blood

Here the animal "blood" represents the animal's death.

#### Hebrews 9:22

##### almost everything is cleansed with blood

Making something acceptable to God is spoken of as if it were cleansing that thing. This idea can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything"

##### Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness

Here "shedding of blood" refers to something dying as a sacrifice to God. This double negative can mean that all forgiveness comes through the shedding of blood. Alternate translation: "Forgiveness only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice"

##### forgiveness

You can state explicitly the implied meaning. Alternate translation: "forgiveness of the sins of the people"

#### Hebrews 9:23

##### the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests should use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven"

##### the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices

That is, better than the sacrifices used to cleanse the earthly copies. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices"

#### Hebrews 9:24

##### the most holy place made with hands, which

Here "with hands" means "by humans." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the most holy place, which humans made, and which"

##### of the true one

"of the true most holy place"

#### Hebrews 9:25

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer emphasizes that Christ (now in heaven interceding for us) had to die only once for sins and that he will return to earth a second time.

##### He did not go there

"He did not enter heaven"

##### year by year

"every year" or "each year"

##### with the blood of another

This means with the blood of an animal victim, not with his own blood.

#### Hebrews 9:26

##### If that had been the case

"If he had had to offer himself often"

##### since the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

##### to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself

Doing away with sin represents having God forgive it. Alternate translation: "to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself" or "to sacrifice himself so that God can forgive sin"

#### Hebrews 9:27

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 9:28

##### Christ was offered once

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ offered himself once"

##### to take away the sins

The act of making us innocent rather than guilty for our sins is spoken of as if our sins were physical objects that Christ could carry away from us. Alternate translation: "so that God would forgive the sins"

##### the sins

Here "sins" mean the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed.

## Chapter 10

# Hebrews 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, the writer finishes describing how Jesus's sacrifice was better than the sacrifices offered in the Temple. (See: lawofmoses)

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 10:5-7, 15-17, 37-38, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's judgment and reward

Holy living is important for Christians. God will hold people accountable for how they lived their Christian lives. Even though there will not be eternal condemnation for Christians, ungodly actions do and will have consequences. In addition, faithful living will be rewarded. (See: holy, godly and faithful and reward)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins"

The sacrifices themselves had no redeeming power. They were effective because they were a display of faith, which was credited to the person offering the sacrifice. It is ultimately the sacrifice of Jesus that "takes away sins." (See: redeem and faith)

#### "The covenant that I will make"

It is unclear whether this prophecy was being fulfilled as the author was writing or whether it was to occur later. The translator should try to avoid making a claim about the time this covenant begins. (See: prophet and covenant)

#### Hebrews 10:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer shows the weakness of the law and its sacrifices, why God gave the law, and the perfection of the new priesthood and Christ's sacrifice.

##### the law is only a shadow of the good things to come

This speaks about the law as if it were a shadow. The author means the law is not the good things that God had promised. It only hints at the good things that God is going to do.

##### not the real forms of those things themselves

"not the real things themselves"

##### year after year

"every year"

#### Hebrews 10:2

##### would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered?

The author uses a question to state that the sacrifices were limited in their power. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they would have ceased offering those sacrifices."

##### ceased to be

"stopped being"

##### the worshipers would have been cleansed one time and would

Here being cleansed represents no longer being guilty of sin. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sacrifices would have taken away the worshipers' sin once, and they would" or "God would have made the worshipers no longer guilty of sin once, and they would"

##### would no longer have any consciousness of sin

"would no longer think that they are guilty of sin" or "would know that they are no longer guilty of sin"

#### Hebrews 10:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 10:4

##### For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins

Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that animal blood could sweep away as it flowed. Alternate translation: "For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins"

##### the blood of bulls and goats

Here "blood" refers to these animals dying as sacrifices to God.

#### Hebrews 10:5

##### General Information:

Christ's words when he was on earth were foretold in this quotation from a psalm of David.

##### you did not desire

Here "you" is singular and refers to God.

##### a body you have prepared

"you have made a body ready"

#### Hebrews 10:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 10:7

##### Then I said

Here "I" refers to Christ.

#### Hebrews 10:8

##### General Information:

Though changing the wording slightly, the author repeats these quotations from a psalm of David for emphasis.

##### sacrifices ... offerings

See how you translated these words in [Hebrews 10:5](./05.md).

##### whole burnt offerings ... sin offerings

See how you translated similar words in [Hebrews 10:6](./06.md).

##### that are offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that priests offer"

#### Hebrews 10:9

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice

The abstract noun "practice" here refers to a way of atoning for sins. Stopping doing it is spoken of as if it were an object that could be taken away. Starting the second way of atoning for sins is spoken of as establishing that practice. Alternate translation: "He stops people atoning for sins the first way in order to atone for sins the second way"

##### first practice ... the second practice

The words "first" and "second" are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: "old practice ... the new practice"

#### Hebrews 10:10

##### we have been sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has sanctified us" or "God has dedicated us to himself"

##### through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ

The abstract noun "offering" can be expressed with the verb "offer" or "sacrifice." Alternate translation: "because Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice" or "because Jesus Christ sacrificed his body"

#### Hebrews 10:11

##### Day after day

"Day by day" or "Every day"

##### can never take away sins

This speaks of "sins" as if they are an object that a person can take away. Alternate translation: "can never cause God to forgive sins"

#### Hebrews 10:12

##### he sat down at the right hand of God

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hebrews 1:3]

#### Hebrews 10:13

##### until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet

Christ's enemies being humiliated is spoken of as if they were made a place for him to rest his feet. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until God humiliates Christ's enemies and they become like a footstool for his feet"

#### Hebrews 10:14

##### those who are being sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God is sanctifying" or "those whom God has dedicated to himself"

#### Hebrews 10:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 10:16

##### General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

##### with them

"with my people"

##### after those days

"when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished"

##### I will put my laws in their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being. The phrase "put my laws in their hearts" is a metaphor for enabling people to know his laws. Alternate translation: "I will enable them to know my laws"

##### I will write them on their minds

The phrase "write them on their minds" is a metaphor for causing people to remember his laws. Alternate translation: "I will cause them to remember my laws"

#### Hebrews 10:17

##### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

##### Their sins and lawlessness I will remember no longer."

"I will no longer remember their sins and lawlessness.'" or "I will no longer think about their sins and lawlessness.'" This is the second part of the Holy Spirit's testimony

##### Their sins and lawlessness

The words "sins" and "lawlessness" mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the sin is. Alternate translation: "The things they did that were forbidden and how they broke the law"

#### Hebrews 10:18

##### Now

This is used to draw attention to the important point that follows. It does not mean "at this moment."

##### where there is forgiveness for these

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "forgiveness" is expressed as the verb "forgive." Alternate translation: "when God has forgiven these things"

##### there is no longer any sacrifice for sin

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "sacrifice" is expressed as the verb "make offerings." Alternate translation: "people no longer need to make offerings for sin"

#### Hebrews 10:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Having made it clear that there is only one sacrifice for sin, the writer continues with the picture of the most holy place in the temple, where only the high priest could enter each year with the blood of the sacrifice for sins. He reminds the believers that they now worship God in his presence as if they were standing in the most holy place.

##### brothers

Here this means all believers in Christ, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" or "fellow believers"

##### the most holy place

This means the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle.

##### by the blood of Jesus

Here "blood of Jesus" refers to the death of Jesus.

#### Hebrews 10:20

##### living way

Possible meanings are 1) this new way to God that Jesus has provided results in believers living forever or 2) Jesus is alive, and he is the way believers enter into the presence of God.

##### through the curtain

The curtain in the earthly temple represents the separation between people and God's true presence.

##### by means of his flesh

Here "flesh" stands for the body of Jesus, and his body stands for his sacrificial death. Alternate translation: "by means of his death"

#### Hebrews 10:21

##### we have a great priest over the house of God

This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this "great priest."

##### over the house

"in charge of the house"

##### the house of God

This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "all the people of God"

#### Hebrews 10:22

##### let us approach

Here "approach" stands for worshiping God, as a priest would go up to God's altar to sacrifice animals to him.

##### with true hearts

"with faithful hearts" or "with honest hearts." Here "hearts" stands for the genuine will and motivation of the believers. Alternate translation: "with sincerity" or "sincerely"

##### in the full assurance of faith

"and with a confident faith" or "and trusting completely in Jesus"

##### having our hearts sprinkled clean

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as if had he made our hearts clean with his blood"

##### hearts sprinkled clean

Here "hearts" is a metonym for the conscience, the awareness of right and wrong. Being made clean is a metaphor for being forgiven and being given the status of righteousness.

##### sprinkled

Sprinkling blood of a sacrifice was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 9:19]

##### having our bodies washed with pure water

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as if he had washed our bodies in pure water"

##### our bodies washed with pure water

Possible meanings are 1) "bodies" is a metonym that represents peoples' entire beings, and "washed with pure water" is a metaphor representing Christ making a person spiritually pure or 2) this is literal and it refers to Christian baptism.

#### Hebrews 10:23

##### Let us also hold firmly to the hope we confess

Here "hold firmly" is a metaphor that refers to a person determining to do something and refusing to stop. Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." The abstract noun "hope" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "Let us be determined to continue confessing the things that we confidently expect from God"

#### Hebrews 10:24

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 10:25

##### Let us not abandon meeting together

You can make explicit that the people met to worship. Alternate translation: "Let us not stop coming together to worship"

##### as you see the day coming closer

A future time is spoken of as if it were an object coming closer to the speaker. Here "the day" refers to when Jesus will return. Alternate translation: "as you know that Christ will return soon"

#### Hebrews 10:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer now gives his fourth warning.

##### we deliberately go on sinning

"we know we are sinning but we do it again and again"

##### after we have received the knowledge of the truth

Knowledge of the truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be given by one person to another. Alternate translation: "after we have learned the truth"

##### the truth

The truth about God.

##### a sacrifice for sins no longer remains

No one is able to give a new sacrifice because Christ's sacrifice is the only one that works. Alternate translation: "no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### a sacrifice for sins

Here "sacrifice for sins" stands for "an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins"

#### Hebrews 10:27

##### of judgment

Of God's judgment, that is, that God will judge.

##### a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies

God's fury is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his enemies.

#### Hebrews 10:28

##### of two or three witnesses

It is implied that this means "of at least two or three witness."

#### Hebrews 10:29

##### How much worse punishment do you think one deserves ... grace?

The author is emphasizing the greatness of the punishment for those who reject Christ. Alternate translation: "This was severe punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone ... grace!"

##### who has trampled underfoot the Son of God

Someone who has disregarded Christ and scorned him is spoken of as if that person had walked on him. Alternate translation: "who has rejected the Son of God"

##### the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### who has regarded the blood of the covenant as unholy

This shows how the person has trampled the Son of God. Alternate translation: "by regarding the blood of the covenant as unholy"

##### has regarded

or "has treated"

##### the blood of the covenant

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death, by which God established the new covenant.

##### the blood by which he was sanctified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the blood by which God sanctified him"

##### the Spirit of grace

"the Spirit of God, who provides grace"

#### Hebrews 10:30

##### General Information:

The word "we" here refers to the writer and all believers. These two quotations come from the law that Moses gave in the Old Testament.

##### Vengeance belongs to me

Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belongs to God, who has the right to do as he wishes with what he owns. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies.

##### I will pay back

God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying back the harmful things that someone has done to others.

#### Hebrews 10:31

##### to fall into the hands

Receiving God's full punishment is spoken of as if the person falls into God's hands. Here "hands" refers to God's power to judge. Alternate translation: "to receive the full punishment"

#### Hebrews 10:32

##### the former days

"the time in the past"

##### after you were enlightened

Learning the truth is spoken of as if God shined a light on the person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after you learned the truth about Christ"

##### how you endured a great struggle in suffering

"how much suffering you had to endure"

#### Hebrews 10:33

##### Sometimes you were publicly exposed to insult and persecution

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People ridiculed you by insulting you and persecuting you in public"

##### you shared with those

"you joined those"

#### Hebrews 10:34

##### a better and everlasting possession

God's eternal blessings are spoken of as a "possession."

#### Hebrews 10:35

##### do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward

A person no longer having confidence is spoken of as if the person were to throw confidence away, like a person would discard something worthless. The abstract noun "confidence" can be translated with the adjective "confident" or the adverb "confidently." Alternate translation: "do not stop being confident, because you will receive a great reward for being confident" or "do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly"

#### Hebrews 10:36

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Hebrews 10:37

##### General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Isaiah in the Old Testament.

##### For in a very little while

You can make this explicit. Alternate translation: "As God said in the scriptures, 'For in a very little while"

##### in a very little while

"very soon"

#### Hebrews 10:38

##### General Information:

Here the author quotes from the prophet Habakkuk. This directly follows the quotation from the prophet Isaiah in the previous verse.

##### My righteous one ... If he shrinks ... with him

These refer to any of God's people in general. Alternate translation: "My faithful people ... If any one of them shrinks ... with that person" or "My faithful people ... If they shrink ... with them"

##### My righteous ... my soul will

Here "My" and "my soul" refer to God.

##### my soul

The soul is a metonym for the whole being.

##### shrinks back

stops doing the good thing he is doing

#### Hebrews 10:39

##### who turn back to destruction

A person who loses courage and faith are spoken of as if he were stepping back in fear from something. And "destruction" is spoken of as if it were a destination. Alternate translation: "who stop trusting God, whom God will destroy"

##### who have faith and preserve their souls

Living eternally with God is spoken of as if it were preserving one's soul. Here "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "who have faith, which will result in our living with God forever"

## Chapter 1

# James 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

James formally introduces this letter in verse 1. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Testing and temptation

These two words occur together in ([James 1:12-13](./12.md)). Both words speak of a person who is able to choose between doing something good and doing something evil. The difference between them is important. God is testing the person and wants him to do what is good. Satan is tempting the person and wants him to do what is evil.

#### Crowns

The crown that a man who passes the test receives is a reward, something that people who do something especially good receive. (See: reward)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

James uses many metaphors in this chapter, and you will need to understand the material on the metaphor page before you can translate them well.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "To the twelve tribes in the dispersion"

It is not clear to whom James wrote this letter. He calls himself a servant of the Lord Jesus Christ, so he was probably writing to Christians. But he calls his readers "the twelve tribes in the dispersion," words which usually refer to Jews. It is possible that he is using the words as a metaphor for "all people whom God has chosen" or that he wrote the letter at a time when most Christians had grown up as Jews.

#### James 1:1

##### General Information:

The apostle James writes this letter to all the Christians. Many of them were Jews, and they lived in many different places.

##### James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ

The phrase "this letter is from" is implied. Alternate translation: "This letter is from James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### to the twelve tribes

Possible meanings are 1) this is a synecdoche for Jewish Christians, or 2) this is a metaphor for all Christians. Alternate translation: "to God's faithful people"

##### in the dispersion

The term "dispersion" normally referred to the Jews who were scattered in other countries, away from their homeland, Israel. This abstract noun can be expressed with a phrase with the verb "scattered." Alternate translation: "who are scattered around the world" or "who live in other countries"

##### Greetings!

This is a basic greeting, such as "Hello!" or "Good day!"

#### James 1:2

##### Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles

"My fellow believers, think of all your different kinds of troubles as things to celebrate"

#### James 1:3

##### the testing of your faith produces endurance

The expressions "the testing," "your faith," and "endurance" are nouns that stand for actions. God does the testing, that is, he finds out how much the believers trust and obey him. Believers

#### James 1:4

##### Let endurance complete its work

Here endurance is spoken of as if it were a person at work. Alternate translation: "Learn to endure any hardship"

##### fully developed

able to trust in Christ and obey him in all circumstances

##### not lacking anything

This can be stated in the positive. Alternate translation: "having all that you need" or "being all that you need to be"

#### James 1:5

##### ask for it from God, the one who gives

"ask God for it. He is the one who gives"

##### gives generously and without rebuke to all

"gives generously and does not rebuke any"

##### he will give it to him

"God will give it to him" or "God will answer his prayer"

#### James 1:6

##### in faith, doubting nothing

"with complete certainty that God will answer"

##### For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around

Anyone who doubts that God will help him is said to be like the water in the ocean or in a large lake, which keeps moving in different directions.

#### James 1:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### James 1:8

##### is a double-minded man, unstable

The word "double-minded" refers to a person's thoughts when he is unable to make a decision. Alternate translation: "cannot decide if he will follow Jesus or not and is unstable"

##### unstable in all his ways

Here this person is spoken of as if he cannot stay on one path but instead goes from one to another.

#### James 1:9

##### the lowly brother

"the believer who does not have much money" or "the believer whom other people consider unimportant"

##### boast of his high position

Someone whom God has honored is spoken of as if he were standing in a high place.

#### James 1:10

##### but the rich man of his low position

The words "let" and "boast" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "but let the rich man boast of his low position"

##### but the rich man

"but the man who has a lot of money"

##### of his low position

A rich believer should be happy if God causes him to suffer. Alternate translation: "should be happy that God has given him difficulties"

##### he will pass away as a wild flower in the grass

Rich people are spoken of as being similar to wild flowers, which are alive for only a short time.

#### James 1:11

##### its beauty perishes

A flower that is becoming less beautiful because it is decaying is spoken of as if its beauty were dying. Alternate translation: "it is no longer beautiful"

##### the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey

Here the flower simile is probably continued. As flowers do not die suddenly but instead fade away over a short time, so also the rich people may not die suddenly but instead take a little time to disappear.

##### in the middle of his journey

A rich man's activities in daily life are spoken of as if they are a journey that he is making. This metaphor implies that he is giving no thought to his coming death, and that it will takes him by surprise.

#### James 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

James reminds the believers who have fled that God does not cause temptation; he tells them how to avoid temptation.

##### Blessed is the man who endures testing

"The man who endures testing is fortunate" or "The man who endures testing is well off"

##### endures testing

remains faithful to God during hardships

##### passed the test

he has been approved by God

##### receive the crown of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. Alternate translation: "receive eternal life as his reward"

##### has been promised to those who love God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has promised to those who love him"

#### James 1:13

##### when he is tempted

"when he desires to do something evil"

##### I am tempted by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is trying to make me do something evil"

##### God is not tempted by evil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one can make God desire to do evil"

##### nor does he himself tempt anyone

"and God himself does not try to persuade anyone do evil"

#### James 1:14

##### each person is tempted by his own desire

A person's desire is spoken of as if it were someone else who was tempting him to sin.

##### which drags him away and entices him

Evil desire continues to be spoken of as if it were a person who could drag away someone else.

##### entices

attracts, persuades someone to do evil

#### James 1:15

##### Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death

Desire continues to be spoken of as a person, this time clearly as a woman who becomes pregnant with a child. The child is identified as sin. Sin is a female baby that grows up, becomes pregnant, and gives birth to death. This chain of metaphors is a picture of someone who ends up dying both spiritually and physically because of his evil desires and his sin.

#### James 1:16

##### Do not be deceived

"Do not let anyone deceive you" or "Stop deceiving yourselves"

#### James 1:17

##### Every good gift and every perfect gift

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize that anything good that a person has comes from God.

##### the Father of lights

God, the creator of all the lights in the sky

##### With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning

This expression pictures God as an unchanging light. This is in contrast to the sun, moon, and stars that appear to move in the sky and sometimes are darkened. Alternate translation: "God always stays the same. He does not change like shifting shadows"

#### James 1:18

##### to give us

The word "us" refers to James and his audience.

##### give us birth

God, who brought us eternal life, is spoken of as if he had given us birth.

##### the word of truth

Possible meanings are 1) "the message about the truth" or 2) "the true message."

##### so that we would be a kind of firstfruits

James is using the traditional Hebrew idea of firstfruits as a way to describe the value of the Christian believers to God. He implies that there will be many more believers in the future. Alternate translation: "so that we would be like an offering of firstfruits"

#### James 1:19

##### You know this

Possible meanings are 1) "Know this" is a command to pay attention to what I am about to write or 2) "You know this" is a statement saying that I am about to remind you of something that you already know.

##### Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak

These sayings are idioms that mean people should first listen intently, and then consider carefully what they say. Here "slow to speak" does not mean speaking slowly.

##### slow to anger

"not get angry quickly"

#### James 1:20

##### the anger of man does not accomplish the righteousness of God

When a person is always angry, he cannot do God's work, which is righteous.

#### James 1:21

##### take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

Sin and evil are spoken of here as if they were clothing that could be taken off. Alternate translation: "stop doing all filthy sins and stop doing abundant amounts of evil"

##### take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

Here the expressions "sinful filth" and "evil" share similar meanings. James uses them to emphasize how bad sin is. Alternate translation: "stop doing every kind of sinful behavior"

##### sinful filth

Here "filth," that is, dirt, stands for sin and evil.

##### In humility

"Without pride" or "Without arrogance"

##### receive the implanted word

The expression "implant" means to place one thing inside of another. Here God's word is spoken of as if it were a plant made to grow inside believers. Alternate translation: "obey the message God has spoken to you"

##### save your souls

What a person is saved from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "save you from God's judgment"

##### your souls

Here the word "souls" refers to persons. Alternate translation: "yourselves"

#### James 1:22

##### Be doers of the word

"Be people who follow God's instructions"

##### deceiving yourselves

"fooling yourselves"

#### James 1:23

##### For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer

In the phrase "but not a doer" the words "is" and "of the word" are understood from the previous phrase. The noun "doer" can also be expressed with the verbs "do" or "obey." Alternate translation: "For if anyone listens to God's word in the scriptures but does not obey the word"

##### the word

"the message"

##### he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror

A person who hears God's word is like someone who looks in the mirror.

##### his natural face

The word "natural" clarifies that James is using the ordinary meaning of the word "face." Alternate translation: "his face"

#### James 1:24

##### then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like

It is implied that though he may see that he needs to do something, such as wash his face or fix his hair, he walks away and forgets to do it. This what a person who does not obey God's word is like. Alternate translation: "then goes away and immediately forgets to do what he saw he needed to do"

#### James 1:25

##### the person who looks carefully into the perfect law

This expression continues the image of the law as a mirror.

##### the perfect law of freedom

The relationship between the law and freedom can be expressed clearly. Here "freedom" probably refers to freedom from sin. Alternate translation: "the perfect law that gives freedom" or "the perfect law that makes those who follow it free"

##### this man will be blessed in his actions

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless this man as he obeys the law"

#### James 1:26

##### thinks he is religious

"thinks he worships God correctly"

##### his tongue

Controlling one's tongue stands for controlling one's speech. Alternate translation: "what he says"

##### deceives

gets someone to believe something that is not true

##### his heart

Here "heart" refers to his belief or thoughts. Alternate translation: "himself"

##### his religion is worthless

"he worships God uselessly"

#### James 1:27

##### pure and unspoiled before our God and Father

James speaks of religion, the way one worships God, as if it could be physically pure and unspoiled. These are traditional ways for Jews to say that something is acceptable to God. Alternate translation: "completely acceptable to our God and Father"

##### the fatherless

"the orphans"

##### in their affliction

The fatherless and widows are suffering because their fathers or husbands have died.

##### to keep oneself unstained by the world

Sin in the world is spoken of as something dirty that can stain a person. Alternate translation: "to not allow the evil in the world to cause oneself to sin"

## Chapter 2

# James 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Favoritism

Some of James's readers treated rich and powerful people well and treated poor people badly. This is called favoritism, and James tells them that this is wrong. God wants his people to treat both rich people and poor people well.

#### Justification

Justification is what happens when God makes a person righteous. James says here that God makes righteous or justifies people who do good works along with having faith. (See: justice and righteous and faith)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Quotation marks

The words "Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works" are hard to understand. Some people think that they are what "someone may say," like the words in the quotation marks. Most versions translate them as words that James is saying back to that "someone."

#### "You have ... I have"

Some people think that the words "you" and "I" are metonyms for "some people" and "other people." If they are correct, verse 18 could be translated, "Someone may say, 'Some people have faith and other people have works. Not everyone has both.'" If the next sentence is also what "someone may say," it could be translated "Some people show their faith without works, and other people show their faith by their works. Both have faith." In both cases, the reader will understand only if you add the extra sentence. It is probably best to translate as the ULB does.

#### James 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

James continues to tell the scattered Jewish believers how to live by loving one another and reminds them not to favor rich people over poor people.

##### My brothers

James considers his audience to be Jewish believers. Alternate translation: "My fellow believers" or "My brothers and sisters in Christ"

##### do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... with partiality toward certain people

James wanted them to hold to faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, but he did not want them to show partiality to people. Alternate translation: "as you hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... do not show partiality toward certain people"

##### hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ

Believing in Jesus Christ is spoken of as if it were an object that one could hold onto.

##### our Lord Jesus Christ

The word "our" includes James and his fellow believers.

##### partiality

the act of treating some people better than others

#### James 2:2

##### Suppose that someone enters your meeting

James starts to describe a situation where the believers might give more honor to a rich person than to a poor person.

##### wearing gold rings and splendid clothes

"dressed like a wealthy person"

#### James 2:3

##### sit here in a good place

sit in this place of honor

##### stand over there

move to a place with less honor

##### Sit by my footstool

move to a humble place

#### James 2:4

##### are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts?

James is using rhetorical questions to teach and possibly scold his readers. Alternate translation: "you are making judgments among yourselves and becoming judges with evil thoughts."

#### James 2:5

##### Listen, my beloved brothers

James is exhorting his readers as if they were his family. Alternate translation: "Pay attention, my dear fellow believers"

##### did not God choose ... love him?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to teach his readers not to show favoritism. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "God has chosen ... love him"

##### the poor

This refers to poor people in general. Alternate translation: "poor people"

##### be rich in faith

Having much faith is spoken of as being wealthy or rich. The object of faith may have to be specified. Alternate translation: "have strong faith in Christ"

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

#### James 2:6

##### But you have

James is speaking to his whole audience.

##### have dishonored the poor

"you have shamed poor people"

##### Is it not the rich who oppress you?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. Alternate translation: "It is rich people who oppress you."

##### the rich

This refers to rich people in general. Alternate translation: "rich people"

##### who oppress you

"who treat you badly"

##### Are they not the ones ... to court?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "The rich people are the ones ... to court."

##### drag you to court

"forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges"

#### James 2:7

##### Do they not insult ... have been called?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct and teach his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "The rich people insult ... have been called."

##### the good name by which you have been called

Here "name" represents "Christ." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ, who called you" or "Christ, to whom you belong"

#### James 2:8

##### you fulfill

The word "you" refers to the Jewish believers.

##### fulfill the royal law

"obey God's law." The law is "royal" becuase God, the true king, is the one who gave it to people.

##### Love your neighbor as yourself

James is quoting from the book of Leviticus.

##### your neighbor

"all people" or "everyone"

##### you do well

"you are doing well" or "you are doing what is right"

#### James 2:9

##### if you favor

"give special treatment to" or "give honor to"

##### committing sin

"sinning." That is, breaking the law.

##### you are convicted by the law as transgressors

Here the law is spoken of as if it were a human judge. This can be translated using an active verb. Alternate translation: "the law itself convicts you of transgressing it" or "you are guilty of breaking God's law"

#### James 2:10

##### For whoever obeys

"For anyone who obeys"

##### except that he stumbles ... the whole law

Stumbling is falling down while one is trying to walk. Disobeying one point of the law is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking.

##### in just a single way

because of disobedience to just one requirement of the law

#### James 2:11

##### For the one who said

This refers to God, who gave the law to Moses.

##### Do not commit

To "commit" is to do an action.

##### If you ... but if you ... you have

Here "you" means "each one of you." Although James was writing to many Jewish believers, in this case, he used the singular form as if he was writing to each person individually.

#### James 2:12

##### So speak and act

"So you must speak and obey." James commands the people to do this.

##### who will be judged by means of the law of freedom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who know that God will judge them by means of the law of freedom"

##### by means of the law

This passage implies that it is God who will judge according to his law.

##### the law of freedom

"the law that gives true freedom"

#### James 2:13

##### Mercy triumphs over

"Mercy is better than" or "Mercy defeats." Here mercy and justice are spoken of as if they were persons.

#### James 2:14

##### Connecting Statement:

James encourages the scattered believers to show their faith before others, just as Abraham showed others his faith by his works.

##### What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works?

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "Fellow believers, if someone says he has faith but he has no works, that does him no good at all." or "Fellow believers, someone who has no works is no better if he says he has faith than someone who does not say he has faith."

##### he has faith, but he has no works ... that faith

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. The abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with the verbs "believe" and "do." Alternate translation: "he believes in God but does not do anything ... what he believes" or "he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief ... that belief"

##### Can that faith save him?

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "faith." Alternate translation: "That faith cannot save him." or "Just saying he believes in God will not save him."

##### save him

"spare him from God's judgment"

#### James 2:15

##### brother or sister

a fellow believer in Christ, whether male or female

#### James 2:16

##### stay warm

This means either "have enough clothes to wear" or "have a place to sleep."

##### be filled

The thing that fills them is food. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "be filled with food" or "have enough to eat"

##### for the body

to eat, to wear, and to live comfortably

##### what profit is that?

James uses a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "how does that help them?" or "that does nothing good for them." or "your speech by itself does not help them."

#### James 2:17

##### faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. James speaks of faith as if it were alive if one does good works, and of faith as if it were dead if one does not do good deeds. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." Alternate translation: "a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything, does not really believe in God" or "a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief, does not really believe in God"

#### James 2:18

##### Yet someone may say, "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works.

Possible meanigs are 1) James describes how someone might argue against his teaching and how he would respond to that person or 2) James describes how someone might support his teaching. If the speaker is supporting James, then the quotation would end at the end of the verse.

##### "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works

The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe in God" and "do good things." Alternate translation: "'You believe in God and I do good things.' Prove to me that you can believe in God without doing anything, and I will prove to you that I believe in God by what I do"

#### James 2:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### James 2:20

##### Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless?

James uses this question to introduce the next part of his teaching. Alternate translation: "Listen to me, foolish man, and I will show that faith without works is useless."

##### that faith without works is useless

The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe in God" and "do good things." Alternate translation: "that saying that you believe in God without doing good things is useless" or "that if you do not do good things, it is useless to say that you believe"

#### James 2:21

##### General Information:

Since these are Jewish believers, they know the story of Abraham, about whom God had told them long ago in his word.

##### Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

This rhetorical question is used to rebut the foolish man's arguments from [James 2:18]

##### Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Did not God justify Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar?" or "God certainly justified Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar."

##### father

Here "father" is used in the sense of "ancestor."

#### James 2:22

##### You see

The word "see" is a metonym. Alternate translation: "You understand"

##### that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed

James speaks as if "faith" and "works" were things that can work together and help each other. The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe God" and "do what God commanded." Alternate translation: "that because Abraham believed God, he did what God commanded him to do. And Abraham doing what God commanded showed that he truly believed"

##### You see

James again addresses his audience directly by using the plural form of "you."

#### James 2:23

##### The scripture was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled the scripture"

##### it was counted to him as righteousness

"God regarded his faith as righteousness." Abraham's faith and righteousness were treated as if they were able to be counted as having value.

#### James 2:24

##### it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God justifies a man because of what he does, and not just because he believes in God" or "God justifies a man because of what he does as a result of his belief, and not just because he believes in God"

#### James 2:25

##### In the same way also ... justified by works

James says that what was true of Abraham was also true of Rahab. Both were justified by works.

##### was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

James is using this rhetorical question to instruct his audience. Alternate translation: "it was what Rahab the prostitute did that justified her ... another road."

##### was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did God not justify Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road?" or "God justified Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road."

##### Rahab the prostitute

James expects his audience to know the Old Testament story about the woman Rahab.

##### messengers

people who bring news from another place

##### sent them away by another road

"then helped them escape and leave the city"

#### James 2:26

##### For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead

James is speaking of faith without works as if it were a dead body without the spirit. Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." Alternate translation: "For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything" or "For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything as a result of his belief"

## Chapter 3

# James 3 General Notes

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

James teaches his readers that they should live to please God by reminding them of things that they know from everyday life.

#### James 3:1

##### Not many of you

James is making a generalized statement.

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers"

##### we who teach will be judged more strictly

"God will judge us who teach more severely." This probably because those whom they teach trust them to know the truth and teach it correctly.

##### we who teach

James includes himself and other teachers, but not the readers, so the word "we" is exclusive.

#### James 3:2

##### we all stumble

James speaks of himself, other teachers, and the readers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### stumble

Sinning is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking. Alternate translation: "fail" or "sin"

##### does not stumble in words

"does not sin by saying wrong things"

##### he is a perfect man

"he is spiritually mature"

##### control even his whole body

James is referring to one's heart, emotions, and actions. Alternate translation: "control all his behavior" or "control all his actions"

#### James 3:3

##### General Information:

James is developing an argument that small things can control big things.

##### Now if we put bits into horses' mouths

James speaks about horses' bits. A bit is a small piece of metal that is placed into a horse's mouth to control where it goes.

##### Now if

"If" or "When"

##### horses

A horse is a large animal used to carry things or people.

#### James 3:4

##### Notice also that ships ... are steered by a very small rudder

A ship is like a truck that floats on water. A rudder is a flat piece of wood or metal at the back of the ship, used to control where it goes. The word "rudder" could also be translated as "tool."

##### are driven by strong winds,

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "strong winds push them, they"

##### are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires

"have a small tool that a person can use to control where the ship goes"

#### James 3:5

##### the tongue is a small member

It can be stated explicitly what the tongue is a member of. Alternate translation: "the tongue is a small member of the body" or "the tongue is a small part of the body"

##### boasts great things

Here "things" is a general word for everything about which these people are proud.

##### Notice also

"Think about"

##### how small a fire sets on fire a large forest

In order to help people understand the harm that the tongue can cause, James speaks of the harm that a small flame can cause. Alternate translation: "how a small flame can start a fire that burns many trees"

#### James 3:6

##### The tongue is also a fire

The tongue is a metonym for what people say. James calls it a fire because of the great damage it can do. Alternate translation: "The tongue is like a fire"

##### a world of evil set among our members

The enormous effects of sinful speaking are spoken of as if they were a world by themselves.

##### our members

"the members of our bodies" or "the parts of our bodies"

##### The tongue defiles the whole body

The tongue here is a metonym for the words of the person whose tongue it is, and the body is a synecdoche for the whole person. The words defiling the person is a metaphor for God rejecting a person who speaks evil words.

##### sets on fire the course of life

The phrase "course of life" refers to a person's entire life. Alternate translation: "it ruins a person's entire life"

##### life, and is itself set on fire by hell

The word "itself" refers to the tongue. Also, here "hell" refers to the powers of evil or to the devil. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "life because the devil uses it for evil"

#### James 3:7

##### For every kind of ... mankind

The phrase "every kind" is a general statement referring to all or many kinds of wild animals. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People have learned to control many kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles, and sea creatures"

##### reptile

This is an animal that crawls on the ground.

##### sea creature

an animal that lives in the sea

#### James 3:8

##### But no human being can tame the tongue

James speaks of the tongue as if it were a wild animal. Here "tongue" represents a person's desire to speak evil thoughts.

##### It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison

James speaks of the harm that people can cause by what they say as if the tongue were an evil and poisonous creature that can kill people. Alternate translation: "It is like a restless and evil creature, full of deadly poison" or "It is like a restless and evil creature that can kill people with its venom"

#### James 3:9

##### With it we

"We use the tongue to say words that"

##### we curse men

"we ask God to harm men"

##### who have been made in God's likeness

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God made in his likeness"

#### James 3:10

##### Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing

The nouns "blessing" and "cursing" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "With the same mouth, a person blesses people and curses people"

##### My brothers

"Fellow Christians"

##### these things should not happen

"these things are wrong"

#### James 3:11

##### Connecting Statement:

After James stresses that the words of believers should not both bless and curse, he gives examples from nature to teach his readers that people who honor God by worshiping him should also live in right ways.

##### Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water?

James uses a rhetorical question to remind believers about what happens in nature. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that a spring does not pour out both sweet water and bitter water."

#### James 3:12

##### Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives?

James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: "Brothers, you know that a fig tree cannot grow olives."

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers"

##### Or a grapevine, figs?

The word "make" is understood from the previous phrase. James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: "Or does a grapevine make figs?" or "And a grapevine cannot grow figs."

#### James 3:13

##### Who is wise and understanding among you?

James uses this question to teach his audience about proper behavior. The words "wise" and "understanding" are similar. Alternate translation: "I will tell you how a wise and understanding person is to act."

##### Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "humility" and "wisdom." Alternate translation: "That person should live a good life by doing the kind of deeds that come from being humble and wise"

#### James 3:14

##### if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions or thoughts. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "jealousy" and "ambition." Alternate translation: "if you are jealous and selfish" or "if you desire what other people have and you want to succeed even if it harms others"

##### do not boast and lie against the truth

The abstract noun "truth" can be stated as "true." Alternate translation: "do not boast that you are wise, because that is not true"

#### James 3:15

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above

Here "This" refers to the "bitter jealousy and strife" described in the previous verses. The phrase "from above" is a metonym that represents "heaven" which represents God himself. Alternate translation: "This is not the kind of wisdom that God teaches us from heaven"

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic

The abstract noun "wisdom" can be stated as "wise." Alternate translation: "Whoever acts like this is not wise according to what God in heaven teaches us. Rather, this person is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic"

##### earthly

The word "earthly" refers to the values and behaviors of the people who do not honor God. Alternate translation: "not honoring to God"

##### unspiritual

"not from the Holy Spirit" or "not spiritual"

##### demonic

"from demons"

#### James 3:16

##### For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "jealousy," "ambition," and "confusion." Alternate translation: "For when people are jealous and selfish, this causes them to act in disorderly and evil ways"

##### there is confusion

"there is disorder" or "there is chaos"

##### every evil practice

"every kind of sinful behavior" or "every kind of wicked deed"

#### James 3:17

##### But the wisdom from above is first pure

Here "from above" is metonym that represents "heaven," which represents God himself. The abstract noun "wisdom" can be stated as "wise." Alternate translation: "But when a person is wise according to what God in heaven teaches, he acts in ways that are first pure"

##### is first pure

"is first holy"

##### full of mercy and good fruits

Here "good fruits" refer to kind things that people do for others as a result of having wisdom from God. Alternate translation: "full of mercy and good deeds"

##### and sincere

"and honest" or "and truthful"

#### James 3:18

##### The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace

Making peace is spoken of as if they were sowing seeds, and righteousness is spoken of as if it were the fruit that grows up as a result of making peace. Alternate translation: "The result of making peace is righteousness" or "Those who work peacefully to help people live in peace produce righteousness"

##### make peace

The abstract noun "peace" can be expressed by using the word "peacefully." Alternate translation: "cause people to live peacefully" or "help people not to be angry with each other"

## Chapter 4

# James 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Adultery

Writers in the Bible often speak of adultery as a metaphor for people who say they love God but do things that God hates. (See: and godly)

#### Law

James probably uses this word in [James 4:11](../../jas/04/11.md) to refer to "the royal law" ([James 2:8](../../jas/02/08.md)).

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

James asks many questions because he wants his readers to think about how they are living. He wants to correct and teach them.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Humble

This word probably usually refers to people who are not proud. James uses the word here to refer to people who are not proud and who also trust in Jesus and obey him.

#### James 4:1

##### General Information:

In this chapter, the words "yourselves," "your," and "you" are plural and refer to the believers to whom James writes.

##### Connecting Statement:

James rebukes these believers for their worldliness and their lack of humility. He again urges them to watch how they speak to and about each other.

##### Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from?

The abstract nouns "quarrels" and "disputes" mean basically the same thing and can be translated with verbs. Alternate translation: "Why do you quarrel and dispute among yourselves?" or "Why do you fight among yourselves?"

##### Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members?

James uses this question to rebuke his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "They come from your evil desires for things, desires that fight among your members." or "You quarrel and have disputes because of your desires that fight among your members."

##### Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members

James writes of the tension or conflict that people feel because of their different desires as if those desires were fighting. Alternate translation: "Do they not come because of the conflict you feel because of your different desires? " or "You quarrel and argue because of the tension caused by your different desires."

##### your desires that fight among your members

Possible meanings are 1) "members" refers to the parts of a person: his body, feelings, and thoughts. Each person wants more than one thing, but he cannot have them all. Alternate translation: "your conflicting desires within you" 2) "members" refers to the individual people in the church. Different members want different things. Alternate translation: "the conflicting desires among you all"

#### James 4:2

##### You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain

The phrase "You murder" is probably a hyperbole. The words "murder" and "covet" are used to express how badly the people behave in order to get what they want. Alternate translation: "You do all kinds of evil things to get what you cannot have"

##### You fight and quarrel

The words "fight" and "quarrel" mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize how much the people argue among themselves. Alternate translation: "You constantly fight"

#### James 4:3

##### you ask wrongly

Possible meanings are 1) "you ask with wrong motives" or "you ask with bad attitudes" or 2) "you are asking for wrong things" or "you are asking for bad things"

#### James 4:4

##### You adulteresses!

James speaks of believers as being like wives who sleep with men other than their husbands. Alternate translation: "You are not being faithful to God!"

##### Do you not know ... God?

James uses this question to teach his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know ... God!"

##### friendship with the world

This phrase refers to identifying with or participating in the world's value system and behavior.

##### friendship with the world

Here the world's value system is spoken of as if it were a person that others could be friends with.

##### friendship with the world is hostility against God

One who is friends with the world is an enemy of God. Here "friendship with the world" stands for being friends with the world, and "hostility against God" stands for being hostile against God. Alternate translation: "friends of the world are enemies of God"

#### James 4:5

##### Or do you think the scripture says in vain ... envious"?

This is a rhetorical question James uses to exhort his audience. To speak in vain is to speak uselessly. Alternate translation: "There is a reason that scripture says ... envious.'"

##### The Spirit he caused to live in us

Some versions, including the ULB and UDB, understand this as a reference to the Holy Spirit. Other versions translate this as "the spirit" and mean by it the human spirit that each person has been created to have. We suggest that you use the meaning that is presented in other translations used by your readers.

#### James 4:6

##### But God gives more grace

How this phrase relates to the previous verse can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But, even though our spirits may desire what we cannot have, God gives us even more grace if we will humble ourselves"

##### so the scripture

"that is why the scripture"

##### the proud

This refers to proud people in general. Alternate translation: "proud people"

##### the humble

This refers to humble people in general. Alternate translation: "humble people"

#### James 4:7

##### So submit

"Because God gives grace to the humble, submit"

##### submit to God

"obey God"

##### Resist the devil

"Oppose the devil" or "Do not do what the devil wants"

##### he will flee

"he will run away"

##### you

Here this pronoun is plural and refers to James's audience.

#### James 4:8

##### General Information:

The word "you" here is plural and refers to the scattered believers to whom James writes.

##### Come close to God

Here the idea of coming close stands for becoming honest and open with God.

##### Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded

These are two phrases in parallel with each other.

##### Cleanse your hands

This expression is a command for people to do righteous acts instead of unrighteous acts. Alternate translation: "Behave in a way that honors God"

##### purify your hearts

Here "hearts" refers to a person's thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "make your thoughts and intentions right"

##### you double-minded people

The word "double-minded" refers to a person who cannot make a firm decision about something. Alternate translation: "you people who cannot decide if you want to obey God or not"

#### James 4:9

##### Grieve, mourn, and cry

These three words have similar meanings. James uses them together to emphasize that the people should be truly sorry for not obeying God.

##### Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom

This is saying the same thing in different ways for emphasis. The abstract nouns "laughter," "mourning," "joy," and "gloom" can be translated as verbs or adjectives. Alternate translation: "Stop laughing and mourn. Stop being joyful and be gloomy"

#### James 4:10

##### Humble yourselves before the Lord

"Be humble toward God." Actions done with God in mind are often spoken of as being done in his physical presence.

##### he will exalt you

James indicates that God will honor the humble person by saying God will pick that person up off the ground physically from where that person had prostrated himself in humility. Alternate translation: "he will honor you"

#### James 4:11

##### brothers

James speaks of the believers as if they are biological brothers. The term here includes women as well as men. Alternate translation: "fellow believers"

##### but a judge

"but you are acting like the person who gives the law"

#### James 4:12

##### Only one is the lawgiver and judge

This refers to God. "God is the only one who gives laws and judges people"

##### Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

This is a rhetorical question James uses to scold his audience. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are just a human and cannot judge another human."

#### James 4:13

##### spend a year there

James speaks of spending time as if it were money. "stay there for a year"

#### James 4:14

##### Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life?

James uses these questions to correct his audience and to teach these believers that physical life is not that important. They can be expressed as statements. Alternate translation: "No one knows what will happen tomorrow, and your life does not last very long!"

##### For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears

James speaks of people as if they were a mist that appears and then quickly goes away. Alternate translation: "You live for only a short amount of time, and then you die"

#### James 4:15

##### Instead, you should say

"Instead, your attitude should be"

##### we will live and do this or that

"we will live long enough to do what we have planned to do." The word "we" does not directly refer to James or his audience but is part of the example of how James's audience should consider the future.

#### James 4:16

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### James 4:17

##### for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin

Anyone who fails to do the good he knows he should do is guilty of sin.

## Chapter 5

# James 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Eternity

This chapter contrasts living for things of this world, which will not last, with living for things that will last for eternity. It is also important to live with the expectation that Jesus will return soon. (See: eternity)

#### Oaths

Scholars are divided over whether this passage teaches all oaths are wrong. Most scholars believe some oaths are permissible and James instead is teaching Christians to have integrity.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Elijah

This story will be difficult to understand if the books of 1 and 2 Kings and 1 and 2 Chronicles have not yet been translated.

#### "Save his soul from death"

This probably teaches that the person who stops their sinful lifestyle will not be punished with physical death as a consequence of their sin. On the other hand, some scholars believe this passage teaches about eternal salvation. (See: sin and death and save)

#### James 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

James warns rich people about their focus on pleasure and riches.

##### you who are rich

Possible meanings are 1) James is giving a strong warning to wealthy believers or 2) James is talking about wealthy unbelievers. Alternate translation: "you who are rich and say you honor God"

##### because of the miseries coming on you

James states that these people will suffer terribly in the future and writes as if their sufferings were objects that were coming toward them. The abstract noun "miseries" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "because you will suffer terribly in the future"

#### James 5:2

##### Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten.

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation: "Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths."

##### riches ... clothes

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

#### James 5:3

##### Your gold and your silver have become tarnished

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation: "Your gold and silver will become tarnished"

##### gold ... silver

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

##### have become tarnished ... their rust

Gold does not actually tarnish, and gold and silver do not actually rust. James wants to emphasize that these precious metals will be ruined. Alternate translation: "are ruined ... their ruined condition"

##### their rust will be a witness against you. It

James wrote of their valuable things being ruined as if they were a person in a courtroom accusing the wicked of their crimes. Alternate translation: "and when God judges you, your ruined treasures will be like someone who accuses you in court. Their corrosion" (See: and )

##### will consume ... like fire

Here the corrosion is spoken of as if it were a fire that will burn up their owners.

##### your flesh

Here "flesh" stands for the physical body.

##### fire

The idea of fire here is meant to lead people to remember that fire often stands for God's punishment that will come on all the wicked.

##### for the last days

This refers to the time right before God comes to judge all people. The wicked think they are storing up riches for the future, but what they are doing is storing up judgment. Alternate translation: "for when God is about to judge you"

#### James 5:4

##### Connecting Statement:

James continues to warn rich people about thier focus on pleasure and riches.

##### the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields are crying out against you

The money that should have been paid is spoken of as a person who is shouting because of the injustice done to him. Alternate translation: "God can see that you kept back the wages you should have given to those who mowed your fields"

##### The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts

The shouts of the harvesters are spoken of as if they could be heard in heaven. Alternate translation: "The Lord of hosts has heard the cries of the harvesters"

##### the ears of the Lord of hosts

God is spoken of as if he had ears as humans have.

#### James 5:5

##### You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter

Here people are viewed as if they were cattle, luxuriously fed on grain so they would become fattened to be slaughtered for a feast. However, no one will feast at the time of judgment. Alternate translation: "Your greed has only prepared you for harsh eternal judgment"

##### your hearts

The "heart" was considered to be the center of human desire, and here stands for the entire person.

#### James 5:6

##### You have condemned ... the righteous person

This is probably not "condemned" in the legal sense of a judge passing a sentence of death on a criminal. Instead, it probably refers to the wicked and powerful people who decide to mistreat the poor until they die.

##### the righteous person. He does not

"the people who do what is right. They do not." Here "the righteous person" refers to righteous people in general and not to a specific person. Alternate translation: "righteous people. They do not"

#### James 5:7

##### General Information:

In closing, James reminds the believers about the Lord's coming and gives several short lessons on how to live for the Lord.

##### Connecting Statement:

James changes topics from a rebuke of the rich people to an exhortation to the believers.

##### Be patient, then

"Because of this, wait and be calm"

##### until the Lord's coming

This phrase refers to the return of Jesus, when he will begin his kingdom on the earth and judge all people. Alternate translation: "until Christ's return"

##### the farmer

James makes an analogy using farmers and believers to teach what it means to be patient.

#### James 5:8

##### Strengthen your hearts

James is equating the believers' hearts to their will to remain committed. Alternate translation: "Stay committed" or "Keep your faith strong"

##### the Lord's coming is near

"the Lord will return soon"

#### James 5:9

##### Do not complain, brothers ... you

James is writing to all the scattered Jewish believers.

##### against one another

"about each other"

##### you will not be condemned

This can be stated in the active. Alternate translation: "Christ will not condemn you"

##### See, the judge

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the judge"

##### the judge is standing at the door

James compares Jesus, the judge, to a person about to walk through a door to emphasize how soon Jesus will return to judge the world. Alternate translation: "the judge is coming soon"

#### James 5:10

##### the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord

"how the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord suffered persecution with patience"

##### spoke in the name of the Lord

"Name" here is a metonym for the person of the Lord. Alternate translation: "spoke by the authority of the Lord" or "spoke for the Lord to the people"

#### James 5:11

##### See, we regard

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: we regard"

##### those who endured

"those who continued obeying God even through hardship"

#### James 5:12

##### Above all, my brothers,

"This is important, may brothers:" or "Especially, my brothers,"

##### my brothers

This refers to all believers including women. Alternate translation: "my fellow believers"

##### do not swear

To "swear" is to say that you will do something, or that something is true, and to be held accountable by a higher authority. Alternate translation: "do not make an oath" or "do not make a vow"

##### either by heaven or by the earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" refer to the spiritual or human authorities that are in heaven and earth.

##### let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No,"

James is telling people to speak the truth without making an oath. Alternate translation: "If you say "Yes" or "No," say it truthfully"

##### so you do not fall under judgment

Being condemned is spoken of as if one had fallen, crushed by the weight of something heavy. Alternate translation: "so God will not punish you"

#### James 5:13

##### Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is enduring troubles, he should pray"

##### Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their blessings. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is happy, he should sing songs of praise"

#### James 5:14

##### Is anyone among you sick? Let him call

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is sick, he should call"

##### in the name of the Lord

"Name" is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "by the authority of the Lord" or "with the authority that the Lord has given hthem"

#### James 5:15

##### The prayer of faith will heal the sick person

The writer speaks of God hearing believers pray for sick people and healing those people as if the prayers themselves healed the people. Alternate translation: "The Lord will hear the prayer of faith and will heal the sick person"

##### The prayer of faith

"The prayer made by believers" or "The prayer that people pray believing God will do as they ask"

##### the Lord will raise him up

"the Lord will make him well" or "the Lord will enable him to resume his normal life"

#### James 5:16

##### General Information:

As these are Jewish believers, James reminds them to pray by recalling one of the prophets of old and that prophet's practical prayers.

##### So confess your sins

Admit to other believers things you did wrong so that you can be forgiven.

##### to one another

"to each other"

##### so that you may be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God may heal you"

##### The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working

Prayer is presented as if it were an object that was strong or powerful. Alternate translation: "When the person who obeys God prays, God will do great things"

#### James 5:17

##### prayed earnestly

"prayed eagerly" or "prayed passionately"

##### in the land

There may have been rain in lands other than Israel, but it did not rain in Israel.

##### three ... six

"3 ... 6"

#### James 5:18

##### The heavens gave rain

"The heavens" probably refers to the sky, which is presented as the source of the rain. Alternate translation: "Rain fell from the sky"

##### the earth produced its fruit

Here the earth is presented as the source of the crops.

##### fruit

Here "fruit" stands for all the crops of the farmers.

#### James 5:19

##### brothers

Here this word probably refers to both men and women. Alternate translation: "fellow believers"

##### if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back

A believer who stops trusting in God and obeying him is spoken of as if he were a sheep that wandered away from the flock. The person who persuades him to trust in God again is spoken of as if he were a shepherd who goes to search for the lost sheep. Alternate translation: "whenever anyone stops obeying God, and another person helps him start obeying again"

#### James 5:20

##### whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way ... will cover over a great number of sins

James means that God will use the actions of this person to persuade the sinner to repent and be saved. But James speaks as if it were this other person who actually saved the sinner's soul from death.

##### will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins

Here "death" refers to spiritual death, eternal separation from God. Alternate translation: "will save him from spiritual death, and God will forgive the sinner for all of his sins"

##### will cover over a great number of sins

Possible meanings are 1) the person who brings back the disobedient brother will have his sins forgiven or 2) the disobedient brother, when he returns to the Lord, will have his sins forgiven. Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that God could cover so that he would not see them, so that he would forgive them.

## Chapter 1

# 1 Peter 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Peter formally introduces this letter in verses 1-2. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 1:24-25.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### What God reveals

When Jesus comes again, everyone will see how good God's people were to have faith in Jesus. Then God's people will see how gracious God has been to them, and all people will praise both God and his people.

#### Holiness

God wants his people to be holy because God is holy. (See: holy)

#### Eternity

Peter tells Christians to live for things that will last forever and not to live for the things of this world, which will end. (See: eternity)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Peter writes that his readers are glad and sad at the same time ([1 Peter 1:6](./06.md)). He can say this because they are sad because they are suffering, but they are glad because they know that God will save them "in the last time" ([1 Peter 1:5](./05.md))

#### 1 Peter 1:1

##### General Information:

Peter identifies himself as the writer and identifies and greets the believers to whom he is writing.

##### the foreigners of the dispersion

Peter speaks of his readers as people who live away from their homes in many different countries.

##### Cappadocia ... Bithynia

Along with the other places that Peter mentions, "Cappadocia" and "Bithynia" were Roman provinces located in what is now the country of Turkey.

##### the chosen ones

"the ones whom God the Father has chosen." God has chosen them according to his own foreknowledge.

#### 1 Peter 1:2

##### the foreknowledge of God the Father

The abstract noun "foreknowledge" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Possible meanings are 1) God had determined what would happen ahead of time. Alternate translation: "what God the Father decided previously" or 2) God knew what would happen ahead of time. Alternate translation: "what God the Father knew beforehand"

##### for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ

Here "the blood" refers to the death of Jesus. Just as Moses sprinkled blood on the people of Israel to symbolize their covenant with God, believers are in covenant with God because of Jesus's death.

##### May grace be to you, and may your peace increase

This passage speaks of grace as if it were an object that believers could possess, and of peace as if it were something that could increase in amount. Of course, grace is in reality the kind way God acts toward believers, and peace is how believers live in safety and joy with God.

#### 1 Peter 1:3

##### General Information:

Peter begins to talk about the believers' salvation and faith.

##### our Lord Jesus Christ ... has given us new birth

The words "our" and "us" refer to Peter and those to whom he is writing.

##### he has given us new birth to a living hope

Here "new birth" is a metaphor meaning that God has changed people so that they live their lives in a new way. Here "living hope" is a metaphor meaning an enduring, confident expectation." Alternate translation: "he has caused us to live in a new way, having an enduring, confident hope"

##### he has given us new birth

"he has caused us to be born again"

#### 1 Peter 1:4

##### This is for an inheritance

You can translate this using a verb. Alternate translation: "We confidently expect to receive an inheritance"

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away

Peter uses three similar phrases to describe the inheritance as something that is perfect and eternal.

##### It is reserved in heaven for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is reserving it in heaven for you"

#### 1 Peter 1:5

##### You are protected by God's power

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is protecting you"

##### by God's power

Here "power" is a way of saying that God is strong and able to protect believers.

##### through faith

Here "faith" refers to the fact that the believers trust in Christ. Alternate translation: "because of your faith"

##### that is ready to be revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God is ready to reveal"

##### in the last time

This refers to a particular time, not to an extended period of time. This particular time is as the world as we know it is ending, before the age to come begins.

#### 1 Peter 1:6

##### In this you greatly rejoice

The word "this" refers to all the blessings that Peter mentions in the previous verses.

#### 1 Peter 1:7

##### This is for the proving of your faith

In the same way in which fire refines gold, hardships test how well believers trust in Christ.

##### the proving of your faith

God wishes to test how well believers trust in Christ.

##### faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire

Faith is more valuable than gold, because gold does not last forever, even if it is refined in fire.

##### your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor

Possible meanings are 1) that "God will honor you very highly" because of your faith or 2) that "your faith will bring praise, glory, and honor" to God.

##### at the revealing of Jesus Christ

"when Jesus Christ is revealed." This refers to the return of Christ. This can also be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:8

##### joy that is inexpressible and filled with glory

"wonderful joy that words cannot describe"

#### 1 Peter 1:9

##### the salvation of your souls

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. The abstract noun "salvation" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "your salvation" or "God saving you"

#### 1 Peter 1:10

##### salvation ... grace

These words present two ideas as if they were things or objects. In reality, "salvation" refers to the action of God saving us, or to what happens as a result. Similarly, "grace" refers to the kind way in which God deals with believers.

##### searched diligently and examined carefully

The words "searched diligently" and "examined carefully" mean basically the same thing. Together these words emphasize how hard the prophets tried to understand this salvation. Alternate translation: "carefully searched to know all about this salvation" or "carefully examined everything about this salvation"

#### 1 Peter 1:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues talking about the prophets' search for salvation.

##### inquiring into

Possible meanings are 1) "trying to learn" or 2) "trying to make known."

##### the Spirit of Christ

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit.

#### 1 Peter 1:12

##### It was revealed to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God revealed to the prophets"

##### into which angels long to look

"that angels want to understand"

#### 1 Peter 1:13

##### So gird

"Because of this, gird." Peter uses the word "So" here to refer back to everything he has said about salvation, their faith, and the Spirit of Christ giving revelations to the prophets.

##### gird up the loins of your mind

Girding up the loins refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease. Alternate translation: "get your minds ready"

##### Be sober

Here the word "sober" refers to mental clarity and alertness. Alternate translation: "Control your thoughts" or "Be careful about what you think"

##### Put your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you

Peter tells Christians to confidently wait to receive God's grace. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Confidently wait for the grace that God will bring to you" or "Fully trust in the grace that God will bring to you"

##### the grace that will be brought to you

God's way of dealing kindly with believers is spoken of as if it were an object that he will bring to them. Alternate translation: "the good things that God will kindly give to you"

##### when Jesus Christ is revealed

This refers to when Christ returns. This can also be expressed with an active form. See how you translated this in 1 Peter 1:7. Alternate translation: "when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:14

##### do not conform yourselves to the desires

"do not desire the same things" Alternate translation: "do not live to gratify the desires"

#### 1 Peter 1:15

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Peter 1:16

##### For it is written

This refers to God's message in the scripture. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For as God said"

##### Be holy, because I am holy

Here the word "I" refers to God.

#### 1 Peter 1:17

##### conduct yourselves in fear during your time here as foreigners.

Christians living their lives on earth is spoken of as if they were living in a land far away from their home. Alternate translation: "be reverent while you are living your life on earth"

#### 1 Peter 1:18

##### you have been redeemed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has redeemed you"

#### 1 Peter 1:19

##### the precious blood of Christ

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death on the cross.

##### like that of a lamb without blemish or spot

Jesus died as a sacrifice so that God would forgive people's sins. This phrase shows that Jesus was perfect by comparing his blood to the blood of a spotless lamb. Alternate translation: "like the blood of the spotless lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed"

##### without blemish or spot

Peter expresses the same idea in two different ways to emphasize Christ's purity. Alternate translation: "with no imperfections"

#### 1 Peter 1:20

##### Christ was foreknown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knew Christ" or "God chose Christ"

##### before the foundation of the world

You can translate this with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "before God created the world"

##### he has been revealed to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has revealed him to you"

##### he has been revealed to you

Peter does not mean that his readers have actually seen Christ, but that they have learned the truth about him.

#### 1 Peter 1:21

##### who raised him from the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "who caused him to live again so that he was no longer among the dead"

##### and gave him glory

"and glorified him" or "and showed that he is glorious"

##### your faith and hope are in God

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "your faith and trust are in God" or "you believe in God and trust him"

#### 1 Peter 1:22

##### You made your souls pure

Here the word "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "You made yourselves pure"

##### pure

Here the idea of cleanliness refers to being acceptable to God.

##### by obedience to the truth

You can translate this using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "by obeying the truth"

##### brotherly love

This refers to love between fellow believers.

##### love one another earnestly from a pure heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or emotions. To love someone "from a pure heart" means to love some one completely with total commitment. Alternate translation: "love one another earnestly and completely"

#### 1 Peter 1:23

##### born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed

Possible meanings are that Peter speaks of the word of God either 1) as the seed of a plant that grows and produces new life in believers or 2) as the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.

##### imperishable seed

seed that will not rot or dry up or die

##### through the living and remaining word of God

Peter speaks of God's word as if it were alive forever. In reality, it is God who lives forever, and whose instructions and promises last eternally.

#### 1 Peter 1:24

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes a passage from the prophet Isaiah relating to what he has just said about them being born of imperishable seed.

##### All flesh is like grass, and all its

The word "flesh" refers to humanity. The prophet Isaiah compares humanity to grass that grows and dies quickly. Alternate translation: "All people will die like grass dies, and all their"

##### glory is like the wild flower of the grass

Here the word "glory" refers to beauty or goodness. Isaiah compares the things that people consider to be good or beautiful about humanity to flowers that die quickly. Alternate translation: "goodness soon stops, just as flowers soon die"

#### 1 Peter 1:25

##### the word of the Lord

"the message that comes from the Lord"

##### the gospel that was preached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the gospel that we preached"

## Chapter 2

# 1 Peter 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:6, 7, 8, and 22.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Stones

Peter uses a building made of large stones as a metaphor for the church. Jesus is the cornerstone, the most important stone. The apostles and prophets are the foundation, the part of the building on which all the other stones rest. In this chapter, Christians are the stones that make up the walls of the building. (See: and cornerstone and foundation)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Milk and babies

When Peter tells his readers to "long for pure spiritual milk," he is using the metaphor of a baby craving his mother's milk. Peter wants Christians to crave God's word the same way a baby craves milk.

#### 1 Peter 2:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues teaching his readers about holiness and obedience.

##### Therefore, put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander

These sinful actions are spoken of as if they were objects that people could throw away. The word "Therefore" here refers back to everything that Peter has said about being holy and obedient. Alternate translation: "So then, stop being evil, deceptive, hypocritical, envious, and slanderous"

#### 1 Peter 2:2

##### As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk

Peter speaks of his readers as if they were babies. Babies requires very pure food that they can digest easily. In the same way, believers need pure teaching from God's word. Alternate translation: "Just as babies long for their mother's breast milk, so you must yearn for pure spiritual milk"

##### long for

"desire intensely" or "yearn for"

##### pure spiritual milk

Peter speaks of the word of God as if it were spiritual milk that nourishes children.

##### you may grow in salvation

Here the word "salvation" refers to when God brings the salvation of his people to completion when Jesus returns

##### grow

Peter speaks of believers advancing in knowledge of God and faithfulness to him as if they were children growing up.

#### 1 Peter 2:3

##### if you have tasted that the Lord is kind

Here to taste means to experience something personally. Alternate translation: "if you have experienced the Lord's kindness toward you"

#### 1 Peter 2:4

##### General Information:

Peter begins to tell a metaphor about Jesus and the believers being living stones.

##### Come to him who is a living stone

Peter speaks of Jesus as if he were a stone in a building. Alternate translation: "Come to him who is like a stone in a building, but alive, not a dead stone"

##### who is a living stone

Possible meanings are 1) "who is a stone that is alive" or 2) "who is a stone that gives life."

##### that has been rejected by people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that people have rejected"

##### but that has been chosen by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but that God has chosen"

#### 1 Peter 2:5

##### You also are ... being built up to be a spiritual house

Just as people used stones to build the temple in the Old Testament, believers are the materials that God is using to build a house in which he will live.

##### You also are like living stones

Peter compares his readers to stones that are alive.

##### that are being built up to be a spiritual house

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God is building into a spiritual house"

##### a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices

Here the position of priesthood stands for the priests who fulfill its duties.

#### 1 Peter 2:6

##### Scripture contains this

The scriptures are spoken of as if they were a container. This passage refers to the words that a person reads in scripture. Alternate translation: "This is what a prophet wrote in the scriptures long ago"

##### See

The word "see" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### a cornerstone, chosen and valuable

God is the one who chose the stone. Alternate translation: "a most important cornerstone, which I have chosen"

##### a cornerstone

The prophet speaks of the Messiah as the most important stone in a building.

#### 1 Peter 2:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues quoting from the scriptures.

##### The value, then, is to you who believe

You may need to make explicit that the value is of the "cornerstone"

##### The stone that was rejected ... has become the head of the corner

This is a metaphor that means people, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God has made him the most important stone in a building.

##### The stone that was rejected by the builders

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The stone that the builders rejected"

##### the head of the corner

This refers to the most important stone in a building and means basically the same thing as "cornerstone" in 1 Peter 2:6.

#### 1 Peter 2:8

##### A stone of stumbling and a rock that makes them fall

These two phrases share similar meanings. Together they emphasize that people will take offense at this "stone," which refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "a stone or a rock over which people will stumble"

##### stumble because they disobey the word

Here "the word" refers to the gospel message. To disobey means to not believe. Alternate translation: "stumble because they do not believe the message about Jesus"

##### which is what they were appointed to do

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for which God also appointed them"

#### 1 Peter 2:9

##### a chosen people

You can clarify that God is the one who has chosen them. Alternate translation: "a people whom God has chosen"

##### a royal priesthood

Possible meanings are 1) "a group of priests who are also kings" or 2) "a group of priests who serve the king."

##### a people for God's possession

"a people who belong to God"

##### who called you out

"who called you to come out"

##### from darkness into his marvelous light

Here "darkness" refers to their condition as sinful people who did not know God, and "light" refers to their condition as people who do know God and practice righteousness. Alternate translation: "from a life of sin and ignorance of God to a life of knowing and pleasing him"

#### 1 Peter 2:10

##### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a verse from the prophet Hosea. Some modern versions do not format this as a quote, which is also acceptable.

#### 1 Peter 2:11

##### General Information:

Peter begins to talk about how to live Christian lives.

##### foreigners and exiles

These two words mean basically the same thing. Peter speaks of his readers as people who are living in foreign lands away from their home. See how you translated "foreigners" in [1 Peter 1:1]

##### to abstain from fleshly desires

Here the idea of flesh refers to the sinful nature of humanity in this fallen world. Alternate translation: "to not to give in to sinful desires"

##### fight against your soul

Here the word "soul" refers to a person's spiritual life. Peter speaks of sinful desires as soldiers that are trying to destroy the spiritual life of believers. Alternate translation: "seek to destroy your spiritual life"

#### 1 Peter 2:12

##### Your conduct among the Gentiles should be honorable

The abstract noun "conduct" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "When you are with the Gentiles, you should always act in an honorable way"

##### honorable

morally good

##### they may be eyewitnesses of your good deeds

The abstract noun "deeds" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "they may be eyewitnesses of the good things that you do"

##### on the day when he appears

"on the day when he comes." This refers to the day when God will judge all people. Alternate translation: "when he comes to judge everyone"

#### 1 Peter 2:13

##### every human authority

"every person who is in authority" or "everyone who has authority"

##### for the Lord's sake

Possible meanings are 1) that by obeying human authorities, they are obeying the Lord who established those authorities or 2) that by obeying human authorities, they will honor Jesus who also obeyed human authorities.

##### the king as supreme

"the king as the highest human authority"

#### 1 Peter 2:14

##### who are sent for the punishment

The abstract noun "punishment" can be translated using the verb "punish," and the idea can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the king has sent to punish"

#### 1 Peter 2:15

##### in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people

"by doing good you stop foolish people from speaking about things that they do not know"

#### 1 Peter 2:16

##### as a covering for wickedness

Peter speaks of their condition as free people as something that they should not use to hide sinful behavior. Alternate translation: "as an excuse to do wicked things"

#### 1 Peter 2:17

##### the brotherhood

This refers to all Christian believers.

#### 1 Peter 2:18

##### General Information:

Peter begins to speak specifically to people who are servants of other people.

##### the good and gentle masters

Here the words "good" and "gentle" share similar meanings and emphasize that such masters treat their servants kindly. Alternate translation: "the very kind masters"

##### the malicious ones

"the cruel ones" or "the mean ones"

#### 1 Peter 2:19

##### it is praiseworthy

"it is deserving of praise" or "it is pleasing to God"

##### because he is conscious of God, a person endures sorrows while suffering unjustly

This person accepts unjust suffering because he knows that he is obeying God.

#### 1 Peter 2:20

##### For how much credit is there ... while being afflicted?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that there is nothing praiseworthy about suffering for doing something wrong. Alternate translation: "For there is no credit ... while being afflicted."

##### while being afflicted

Here the word "afflicted" is a metonym for "punished." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "while someone afflicts you" or "while someone punishes you"

#### 1 Peter 2:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues speaking to people who are servants of other people.

##### it is to this that you were called

Here the word "this" refers to believers enduring while suffering for doing good, as Peter has just described. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has called you to this"

##### for you to follow in his steps

"so that you would follow his footprints." Peter speaks of following Jesus's example in the way that they suffer as if one were walking on the same path that Jesus had taken. Alternate translation: "so that you would imitate his behavior"

#### 1 Peter 2:22

##### neither was any deceit found in his mouth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "neither did anyone find deceit in his mouth"

##### neither was any deceit found in his mouth

Here "deceit" refers to words that a person speaks that are intended to deceive other people. Alternate translation: "neither did he speak any lies"

#### 1 Peter 2:23

##### When he was insulted, he gave no insult in return

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When people insulted him, he did not insult them back"

##### he gave himself over to the one who judges justly

"he entrusted himself to the one who judges justly." This means that he trusted God to take away his shame, which had been put on him by those who treated him harshly.

#### 1 Peter 2:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues talking about Jesus Christ. He is still speaking to people who are servants.

##### He himself

This refers to Jesus, with emphasis.

##### carried our sins in his body on the tree

Here "carried our sins" means he suffered the punishment for our sins. Alternate translation: "suffered the punishment for our sins in his body on the tree"

##### the tree

This is a reference to the cross on which Jesus died, which was made of wood.

##### By his bruises you have been healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has healed you because people bruised him"

#### 1 Peter 2:25

##### you had been straying like lost sheep

Peter compares his readers' actions before they had believed in Christ to the way lost sheep wander away from their shepherd.

##### the shepherd ... of your souls

The word "shepherd" is a metaphor for a person who protects another, and the word "souls" is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "your shepherd..."

## Chapter 3

# 1 Peter 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 3:10-12.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "Outward ornaments"

Most people want to look good so other people will like them and think they are good people. Women are especially careful to look good by wearing nice clothes and jewels. Peter is saying that what a woman thinks and says and does are more important to God than how she looks.

#### Unity

Peter wanted his readers to agree with each other. More importantly, he wanted them to love each other and be patient with each other.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Peter quotes a psalm that describes God as if he were a person with eyes, ears, and a face. However, God is a spirit, so he does not have physical eyes or ears or a physical face. But he does know what people do, and he does act against wicked people.

#### 1 Peter 3:1

##### General Information:

Peter begins to speak specifically to women who are wives.

##### In the same way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands

Just as believers are to "Obey every human authority" (1 Peter 2:13) and servants are to "be subject" to their masters (1 Peter 2:18), wives are to submit to their husbands. The words "Obey," "be subject," and "submit" translate the same word.

##### some men are disobedient to the word

Here "the word" refers to the gospel message. To disobey means that they do not believe. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Peter 2:8]

##### they may be won

"they may be persuaded to believe in Christ." This means that the unbelieving husbands will become believers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they may become believers"

##### without a word

"without the wife saying a word." Here "a word" refers to anything the wife might speak about Jesus.

#### 1 Peter 3:2

##### having been eyewitnesses of your respectful, pure behavior

The abstract noun "behavior" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "having seen for themselves that you behave sincerely and respectfully"

##### your respectful, pure behavior

Possible meanings are 1) "your sincere behavior toward them and the way that you honor them" or 2) "your pure behavior toward them and the way that you honor God."

#### 1 Peter 3:3

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues speaking to women who are wives.

##### your adornment

"the things that make you beautiful" or "your beauty"

#### 1 Peter 3:4

##### the inner person of the heart

Here the words "inner person" and "heart" refer to the inward character and personality of a person. Alternate translation: "what you really are on the inside"

##### a gentle and quiet spirit

"a gentle and peaceful attitude." Here the word "quiet" means "peaceful" or "calm." The word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude or temperament.

##### which is precious before God

Peter speaks of God's opinion of a person as if that person were standing directly in front of him. Alternate translation: "which God considers to be precious"

#### 1 Peter 3:5

##### who hoped in God

The holy women confidently expected that God would do what he promised to do. Alternate translation: "who fully trusted God"

#### 1 Peter 3:6

##### called him her lord

said that he was her lord, that is, her master

##### You are now her children

Peter says that believing women who act as Sarah acted can be thought of as if they were her actual children.

#### 1 Peter 3:7

##### General Information:

Peter begins to speak specifically to men who are husbands.

##### In the same way

This refers back to how Sarah and other godly women obeyed their husbands in 1 Peter 3:5 and 1 Peter 3:6.

##### wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman

Peter speaks of women as if they were containers, as men are sometimes also spoken of. The abstract noun "understanding" can also be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "wives, understanding that the woman is the weaker partner"

##### give them honor as fellow heirs of the grace of life

You can translate this using verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "honor them because they will also receive by grace the eternal life that God gives"

##### heirs of the grace of life

Eternal life is often spoken of as if it were something that people inherit.

##### Do this

Here "this" refers to the ways husbands should treat their wives. Alternate translation: "Live with your wives in this way"

##### so that your prayers will not be hindered

To "hinder" is to prevent something from happening. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that nothing will hinder your prayers" or "so that nothing will keep you from praying as you should"

#### 1 Peter 3:8

##### General Information:

Peter begins to speak again to all of the believers.

##### be like-minded, compassionate

"have the same opinion and be compassionate" or "have the same attitude and be compassionate"

##### tenderhearted

being gentle and compassionate towards others

#### 1 Peter 3:9

##### Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult

Peter speaks of responding to the actions of another person as remitting payment for those actions. Alternate translation: "Do not do evil to someone who does evil to you or insult someone who insults you"

##### continue to bless

You can clarify the object of blessing. Alternate translation: "continue to bless those who do evil to you or insult you"

##### for this you were called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God called you for this"

##### that you might inherit a blessing

Peter speaks of receiving God's blessing as receiving an inheritance. Alternate translation: "that you might receive God's blessing as your permanent possession"

#### 1 Peter 3:10

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes from the Psalms.

##### to love life and see good days

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the desire to have a good life.

##### see good days

Here experiencing good things is spoken of as seeing good days. The word "days" refers to one's lifetime. Alternate translation: "experience good things during life"

##### stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit

The words "tongue" and "lips" refer to the person who is speaking. The phrases "his tongue from evil" and "his lips from speaking deceit" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the command not to lie. Alternate translation: "stop himself from saying evil and deceitful things"

#### 1 Peter 3:11

##### Let him turn away from what is bad

Here "turn away" is a metaphor that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: "Let him stop doing what is bad"

#### 1 Peter 3:12

##### The eyes of the Lord see the righteous

The word "eyes" refers to the Lord's ability to know things. The Lord's approval of the righteous is spoken of as his seeing them. Alternate translation: "The Lord sees the righteous" or "The Lord approves of the righteous"

##### his ears hear their prayers

The word "ears" refers to the Lord's awareness of what people say. That the Lord hears their prayers implies that he also responds to them. Alternate translation: "he hears their prayers" or "he grants their prayers"

##### the face of the Lord is against

The word "face" refers to the Lord's will to oppose his enemies. Opposing someone is spoken of as setting one's face against that person. Alternate translation: "the Lord opposes"

#### 1 Peter 3:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues teaching the believers how to live Christian lives.

##### Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that it is unlikely that someone would harm them if they do good things. Alternate translation: "No one will harm you if you do good things."

#### 1 Peter 3:14

##### suffer because of righteousness

You can translate this with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "suffer because you do what is right"

##### you are blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless you"

##### Do not fear their threats. Do not be troubled

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that believers should not be afraid of those who persecute them. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of what people might do to you"

##### their threats

Here the word "their" refers to anyone who might try to harm those to whom Peter is writing.

#### 1 Peter 3:15

##### Instead, set apart

"Instead of being troubled, set apart"

##### set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy

The phrase "set apart the Lord Christ ... as holy" is a metaphor for acknowledging Christ's holiness. Here "hearts" is a metonym for the "inner person." Alternate translation: "acknowledge within yourselves that the Lord Christ is holy" or "honor the Lord Christ as holy within yourselves"

##### about the hope you have

Here "hope" means "a confident expectation." Alternate translation: "about why you have confidence in God" or "about what you are confidently expecting God to do for you"

#### 1 Peter 3:16

##### however, with meekness and respect

This describes how Christias should answer people who ask about their hope. Alternate translation: "but do this with gentleness and respect"

#### 1 Peter 3:17

##### if it should be God's will

This statement is hypothetical. Peter is saying that it is sometimes God's will that his people suffer, but it is not always God's will.

#### 1 Peter 3:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter explains how Christ suffered and what Christ accomplished by suffering.

##### suffered for us

The word "us" includes the people Peter was writing to.

##### so that he would bring us to God

Peter probably means here that Christ died in order to create a close relationship between us and God.

##### He was put to death in the flesh

Here "flesh" refers to Christ's body; Christ was physically put to death. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People put Christ to death physically"

##### he was made alive by the Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) the Holy Spirit made Jesus alive. Alternate translation: "the Spirit made him alive" or 2) Jesus now had a spiritual body that would never die. Alternate translation: "he was made alive in the spirit" or "he was made alive with a spiritual body"

#### 1 Peter 3:19

##### By the Spirit, he went

Possible meanings are 1) "By the Holy Spirit's power, he went" or 2) "In his spiritual existence, he went."

##### the spirits who are now in prison

Possible meanings of the word "spirits" are 1) "evil spirits" or 2) "spirits of the dead people."

#### 1 Peter 3:20

##### when the patience of God was waiting

God's patience is a metonym for God himself. Peter writes of God's patience as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "when God was waiting patiently"

##### in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "during the time of Noah, when he was building an ark"

#### 1 Peter 3:21

##### through the resurrection of Jesus Christ

"because of the resurrection of Jesus Christ." This phrase completes the thought, "This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now."

#### 1 Peter 3:22

##### Christ is at the right hand of God

To be at the "right hand of God" is a symbol that God has given Jesus the greatest honor and authority over all others. Alternate translation: "Christ is beside God in the place of honor and authority"

##### submit to him

"submit to Jesus Christ"

## Chapter 4

# 1 Peter 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 4:18.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Ungodly Gentiles

This passage uses the term "Gentiles" to refer to all ungodly people who are not Jews. It does not include Gentiles who have become Christians. "Sensuality, passion, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, having wild parties, and committing disgusting acts of idolatry" were actions that characterized or typified the ungodly Gentiles. (See: godly)

#### Martyrdom

It is apparent that Peter is speaking to many Christians who are experiencing great persecution and are facing death for their beliefs.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "Let it" and "Let none" and "Let him" and "Let those"

Peter uses these phrases to tell his readers what he wants them to do. They are like commands because he wants his readers to obey. But it is as if he is telling one person what he wants other people to do.

#### 1 Peter 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to teach the believers about Christian living. He begins by giving a conclusion to his thoughts from the previous chapter about Christ's sufferings.

##### in the flesh

Here "flesh" means "body." Alternate translation: "in his body" or "while here on earth"

##### arm yourselves with the same intention

The phrase "arm yourselves" makes readers think of soldiers who get their weapons ready for battle. It also pictures "the same intention" as a weapon or perhaps as a piece of armor. Here this metaphor means that believers should be determined in their mind to suffer as Jesus did. Alternate translation: "prepare yourselves with the same thoughts that Christ had"

##### has ceased from sin

"has stopped sinning"

#### 1 Peter 4:2

##### for men's desires

for the things that sinful people normally desire

#### 1 Peter 4:3

##### the time that has passed is enough for you to do the desire of the Gentiles

Peter wanted the believers to stop doing the sinful things the Gentiles did. He was not praising them for doing those things enough. Alternate translation: "you have been doing for too long the things that the Gentiles like to do"

##### drunken celebrations, having wild parties

These terms refer to activities in which people gather to drink too much alcohol and behave in a shameful manner.

#### 1 Peter 4:4

##### floods of reckless behavior

These examples of wild, boundless sin are spoken of as if they were great floods of water that sweep over people.

##### reckless behavior

doing everything they can to satisfy the desires of their bodies

#### 1 Peter 4:5

##### the one who is ready to judge

Possible meanings are 1) "God, who is ready to judge" or 2) "Christ, who is ready to judge"

##### the living and the dead

This means all people, whether they are still alive or have died. Alternate translation: "every person"

#### 1 Peter 4:6

##### the gospel was preached also to the dead

Possible meanings are 1) "the gospel was preached also to people who had already died" or 2) "the gospel was preached also to those who were alive but are now dead"

##### the gospel was preached

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Christ preached. Alternate translation: "Christ preached the gospel" or 2) men preached. Alternate translation: "men preached the gospel"

##### they have been judged in the flesh as humans

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) God judged them in this life on earth. Alternate translation: "God judged them in their bodies as humans" or 2) men judged them according to human standards. Alternate translation: "men judged them in their bodies as humans"

##### judged in the flesh as humans

This is a reference to death as the ultimate form of judgment.

##### live in the spirit the way God does

Possible meanings are 1) "live spiritually as God lives because the Holy Spirit will enable them to do so" or 2) "live according to God's standards by the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 1 Peter 4:7

##### The end of all things

This refers to the end of the world at Christ's second coming.

##### is coming

The end that will happen soon is spoken of as if it is physically coming closer in distance. Alternate translation: "will soon happen"

##### be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Peter uses them to emphasize the need to think clearly about life since the end of the world is near.

##### be sober in your thinking

Here the word "sober" refers to mental clarity and alertness. See how you translated this in [1 Peter 1:13]

#### 1 Peter 4:8

##### Above all things

"Most importantly of all"

##### for love covers a multitude of sins

Peter describes "love" as if it were a person who places a cover over the sins of others. Possible meanings are 1) "for a person who loves will not try to find out if another person has sinned" or 2) "for a person who loves will forgive the sins of other people, even if those sins are many"

#### 1 Peter 4:9

##### Be hospitable

Show kindness to and welcome guests and travelers

#### 1 Peter 4:10

##### As each one of you has received a gift

This refers to special spiritual abilities that God gives to believers. Alternate translation: "Because each one of you has received a special spiritual ability as a gift from God"

#### 1 Peter 4:11

##### so that in all ways God would be glorified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that in all ways you will glorify God"

##### glorified

praised, honored

#### 1 Peter 4:12

##### do not regard as strange the testing

"do not be surprised by the testing"

##### the testing in the fire that has come upon you

In the same way that fire refines gold, trials test and refine a person's faith. Alternate translation: "the difficult trial that you are experiencing" or "your troubles that are like a test by fire"

#### 1 Peter 4:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Peter 4:14

##### If you are insulted for Christ's name,

Here the word "name" refers to Christ himself. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If people insulted you because you believe in Christ"

##### the Spirit of glory and of God

This refers to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Spirit of glory, who is the Spirit of God," or "the glorious Spirit of God"

##### rests on you

"is with you" or "stays with you" or "lives with you"

#### 1 Peter 4:15

##### a meddler

This refers to a person who gets involved with the affairs of others without having a right to do so.

#### 1 Peter 4:16

##### with that name

"because he bears the name Christian" or "because people have recognized him as a Christian." The words "that name" refer to the word "Christian."

#### 1 Peter 4:17

##### household of God

This phrase refers to believers, whom Peter speaks of as God's family.

##### If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who disobey God's gospel?

Peter use this question to emphasize that God's judgment will be more severe for people who reject the gospel than for believers. Alternate translation: "If it begins with us, the outcome for those who do not obey God's gospel will be much worse."

##### what will be the outcome for those

"what will happen to those"

##### those who disobey God's gospel

"those who do not believe God's gospel." Here the word "disobey" means to not believe.

#### 1 Peter 4:18

##### the righteous ... what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?

Peter use this question to emphasize that sinners will suffer much more than believers do. Alternate translation: "the righteous man ... the outcome will be much worse for the ungodly and the sinner."

##### If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved

Here the word "saved" refers to final salvation when Christ returns. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If the righteous person experiences many difficulties before God saves him"

##### what will become of the ungodly and the sinner

"what will happen to the ungodly and the sinner"

##### the ungodly and the sinner

The "the ungodly" is a nominal adjective that means "the ungodly person." The words "ungodly" and "sinner" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the wickedness of these people. Alternate translation: "ungodly sinners"

#### 1 Peter 4:19

##### commit their souls

Here the word "souls" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "commit themselves" or "commit their lives"

##### in well-doing

The abstract noun "well-doing" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "while they do good" or "while they live rightly"

## Chapter 5

# 1 Peter 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Most people in the ancient Near East would end a letter the way Peter ends this one.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Crowns

The crown that the Chief Shepherd will give is a reward, something that people who do something especially good receive. (See: reward)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Lion

All animals are afraid of lions because they are fast and strong, and they eat almost every other kind of animal. They also eat people. Satan wants to make God's people afraid, so Peter uses the simile of a lion to teach his readers that Satan can harm their bodies, but if they trust in God and obey him, they will always be God's people, and God will care for them.

#### Babylon

Babylon was the evil nation that in Old Testament times had destroyed Jerusalem, taken the Jews away from their homes, and ruled over them. Peter uses Babylon as a metaphor for the nation that was persecuting the Christians he was writing to. Many scholars think that Peter was referring to Rome because the Romans were persecuting the Christians.

#### 1 Peter 5:1

##### General Information:

Peter speaks specifically to men who are elders.

##### the glory that will be revealed

This is a reference to Christ's second coming. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the glory of Christ that God will reveal"

#### 1 Peter 5:2

##### Be shepherds of God's flock

Peter speaks of the believers as a flock of sheep and the elders as the shepherds who care for them.

#### 1 Peter 5:3

##### Do not act as lords over those allotted to you. Instead, be examples

Elders are to lead by example and not act toward the people as a harsh master would toward his servants.

##### those allotted to you

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God has placed in your care"

#### 1 Peter 5:4

##### Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed

Peter speaks of Jesus as if he were a shepherd who has authority over all other shepherds. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Jesus, the Chief Shepherd, appears" or "When God reveals Jesus, the Chief Shepherd"

##### an unfading crown of glory

Here the word "crown" represents the reward that someone receives as a symbol of victory. The word "unfading" means that it is eternal. Alternate translation: "a glorious prize that will last forever"

#### 1 Peter 5:5

##### General Information:

Peter gives an instruction specifically to younger men and then continues to instruct all of the believers.

##### In the same way

This refers back to the way the elders were to submit to the Chief Shepherd as Peter described in 1 Peter 5:1 through 1 Peter 5:4.

##### All of you

This refers to all believers, not just the younger men.

##### clothe yourselves with humility

Peter speaks of the moral quality of humility as if it were clothing that people could put on. Alternate translation: "act humbly toward each other" or "act with humility"

#### 1 Peter 5:6

##### under God's mighty hand so

Here the word "hand" refers to God's power to save the humble and punish the proud. Alternate translation: "under God's great power so" or "before God, realizing that he has great power, so"

#### 1 Peter 5:7

##### Cast all your anxiety on him

Peter speaks of anxiety as if it were a heavy burden that a person places on God, rather than carrying it himself. Alternate translation: "Trust him with everything that worries you" or "Let him take care of all the things that trouble you"

#### 1 Peter 5:8

##### Be sober

Here the word "sober" refers to mental clarity and alertness. See how you translated this in [1 Peter 1:13]

##### the devil is walking around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour

Peter compares the devil to a roaring lion. Just as a hungry lion completely devours its prey, the devil is seeking to completely destroy the faith of believers.

##### walking around

The context indicates that this is part of the simile of the "roaring lion," so if your language has a word for the way an animal walks when it is hunting, you may use it here.

#### 1 Peter 5:9

##### Stand against him

Standing is a metonym for fighting. Alternate translation: "Fight against him"

##### your brotherhood in the world is enduring

Peter speaks of fellow believers as members of the same family. Alternate translation: "your fellow believers who are in the world are enduring"

##### in the world

"in various places throughout the world"

#### 1 Peter 5:10

##### for a little while

"for a short time"

##### the God of all grace

Here the word "grace" may refer either to the things that God gives or to God's character. Possible meanings are 1) "the God who always gives us what we need" or 2) "the God who is always gracious."

##### who called you to his eternal glory in Christ

"who chose you to share his eternal glory in heaven because you are joined to Christ"

##### perfect you

"make you perfect" or "restore you" or "make you well again"

##### confirm you, strengthen you

These two expressions have similar meanings, that is, that God will enable the believers to trust in him and to obey him regardless of any suffering they may experience.

#### 1 Peter 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 Peter 5:12

##### General Information:

This is the end of Peter's letter. Here he gives his final remarks about his letter and his closing greetings.

##### I have written to you briefly through him

Silvanus wrote the words that Peter told him to write in the letter.

##### what I have written is the true grace of God

"I have written about the true grace of God." Here the word "grace" refers to the gospel message, which tells of the kind things that God has done for believers.

##### Stand in it

The word "it" refers to "the true grace of God." Being strongly committed to this grace is spoken of as standing firmly in one place, refusing to move. Alternate translation: "Remain strongly committed to it"

#### 1 Peter 5:13

##### The woman who is in Babylon

Here "The woman" probably refers to the group of believers who live in "Babylon." Possible meanings for "Babylon" are 1) it is a symbol for the city of Rome, 2) it is a symbol for anywhere that Christians are suffering, or 3) it refers literally to the city of Babylon. It most likely refers to the city of Rome.

##### who is chosen together with you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has chosen as he has chosen you"

##### my son

Peter speaks of Mark as if he were his spiritual son. Alternate translation: "my spiritual son" or "who is like a son to me"

#### 1 Peter 5:14

##### a kiss of love

"a loving kiss" or "a kiss to show your love for each other"

## Chapter 1

# 2 Peter 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Peter formally introduces this letter in verses 1-2. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Knowledge of God

To have knowledge of God means to belong to him or to have a relationship with him. Here, "knowledge" is more than just mentally knowing about God. It is a knowledge that causes God to save a person and to give him grace and peace. (See: know)

#### Living godly lives

Peter teaches that God has given believers all that they need for living godly lives. Therefore, believers should do everything they can to obey God more and more. If believers continue to do this, then they will be effective and productive through their relationship with Jesus. However, if believers do not continue living godly lives, then it is like they have forgotten what God did through Christ to save them. (See: godly and save)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The truth of Scripture

Peter teaches that the prophecies in Scripture were not made up by men. The Holy Spirit revealed God's message to the men who spoke them or wrote them down. Also, Peter and the other apostles did not make up the stories they told people about Jesus. They witnessed what Jesus did and heard God call Jesus his son.

#### 2 Peter 1:1

##### General Information:

Peter identifies himself as the writer and identifies and greets the believers he is writing to.

##### slave and apostle of Jesus Christ

Peter speaks of being Jesus Christ's servant. He also was given the position and authority of being Christ's apostle.

##### to those who have received the same precious faith

That these people have received faith implies that God has given that faith to them. Alternate translation: "to those to whom God has given the same precious faith"

##### to those who have received

"to you who have received." Peter addresses all believers who may read this letter.

##### we have received

Here the word "we" refers to Peter and the other apostles, but not to those to whom he is writing. Alternate translation: "we apostles have received"

#### 2 Peter 1:2

##### May grace and peace increase in measure

God is the one who will give grace and peace to believers. Alternate translation: "May God increase your grace and your peace"

##### May grace and peace increase

Peter speaks of peace as if it were an object that could increase in size or numbers.

##### in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord

You can translate "knowledge" using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:3

##### General Information:

Peter begins to teach the believers about living godly lives.

##### for life and godliness

Here "godliness" describes the word "life." Alternate translation: "for a godly life"

##### through the knowledge of him who called us

You may need to make specific that it is Peter and his readers who know God. Alternate translation: "through our knowledge of God, who called us" or "because we know God, who has called us"

##### who called us

Here the word "us" refers to Peter and his audience.

##### through his own glory and excellence

Possible meanings are 1) "by showing us his own glory and greatness" or 2) "to share his own glory and excellence."

#### 2 Peter 1:4

##### Through these

Here "these" refers to "his own glory and virtue."

##### you might be sharers

"you might share"

##### the divine nature

what God is like

##### having escaped the corruption in the world that is caused by evil desires

Peter speaks of people not suffering from the corruption that wicked desires cause as if they were escaping from that corruption. The word "corruption" is an abstract noun that can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "and so that the wicked desires in this world will no longer corrupt you"

#### 2 Peter 1:5

##### For this reason

This refers to what Peter has just said in the previous verses. Alternate translation: "Because of what God has done"

#### 2 Peter 1:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 Peter 1:7

##### brotherly love

This refers to love for a friend or family member and likely means love for one's spiritual family.

#### 2 Peter 1:8

##### these things

This refers to faith, virtue, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in the previous verses.

##### they will keep you from being barren or unfruitful

Peter speaks of these qualities as if they were people who could change his readers, and he speaks of his readers as if they were cattle or a food crop. This can be translated using the opposites of "barren" and "unfruitful." Alternate translation: "because you have them you will not be barren or unfruitful" or "they will enable you to do much valuable work"

##### barren or unfruitful

A "barren" animal is one that cannot bear offspring, and an "unfruitful" plant is one that cannot bear food. These are metaphors that describe people who do not do valuable work. If your language has only one word for these two ideas, you can treat them as a doublet and combine them. Alternate translation: "unproductive"

##### in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ

You can translate "knowledge" using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:9

##### whoever lacks these things

any person who does not have these things

##### is so nearsighted that he is blind

Peter speaks of a person who does not possess these qualities as if he were a nearsighted or blind person because he does not understand their value. Alternate translation: "is like a shortsighted person who cannot see their importance"

##### he has been cleansed from his past sins

You can use a verb to translate this. Alternate translation: "that God has cleansed him from his old sins"

#### 2 Peter 1:10

##### make your calling and election sure

The words "calling" and "election" share similar meanings and refer to God's choosing people to belong to him. Alternate translation: "make sure that God has really chosen you to belong to him"

##### you will not stumble

Here the word "stumble" refers either to 1) committing sin. Alternate translation: "you will not practice sinful behavior" or 2) becoming unfaithful to Christ. Alternate translation: "you will not become unfaithful to Christ"

#### 2 Peter 1:11

##### there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will richly provide for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom"

##### an entrance

the opportunity to enter

#### 2 Peter 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter tells the believers about his obligation to continue reminding them and teaching them.

##### you are strong in the truth

"you strongly believe the truth of these things"

#### 2 Peter 1:13

##### to stir you up by way of reminder

Here the word "stir" means to awaken someone from sleep. Peter speaks of causing his readers to think about these things as if he were waking them from sleep. Alternate translation: "to remind you of these things so that you will think about them"

##### as long as I am in this tent

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a tent that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive, and taking it off represents dying. Alternate translation: "as long as I am in this body" or "as long as I am alive"

#### 2 Peter 1:14

##### the putting off of my tent will be soon

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a tent that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive, and taking it off represents dying. Alternate translation: "I will soon take off this body" or "I will die soon"

#### 2 Peter 1:15

##### you may always be able to remember these things

Here the words "these things" refers to everything that Peter has said in the previous verses.

##### after my departure

Peter speaks of his death as if he were leaving one place to go to another. Alternate translation: "after my death" or "after I die"

#### 2 Peter 1:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to explain his teachings to the believers and explains why they are trustworthy.

##### For we did not follow cleverly invented myths

Here the word "we" refers to Peter and the other apostles, but not to his readers. Alternate translation: "For we apostles did not follow cleverly made-up stories"

##### the power and the coming

These two phrases may refer to the same thing and be translated as a single phrase. Alternate translation: "the powerful coming"

##### the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ

Possible meanings are 1) the future second coming of the Lord Jesus or 2) the first coming of the Lord Jesus.

##### our Lord Jesus Christ

Here the word "our" refers to all believers.

#### 2 Peter 1:17

##### when a voice was brought to him by the Majestic Glory

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when he heard a voice come from the Majestic Glory" or "when he heard the voice of the Majestic Glory speak to him" or "when the Majestic Glory spoke to him"

##### the Majestic Glory, saying

Peter refers to God in terms of his glory. This is a euphemism that avoids using God's name, out of reverence for him. Alternate translation: "God, the Supreme Glory, saying"

#### 2 Peter 1:18

##### We ourselves heard this voice brought from heaven

With the word "We," Peter is referring to himself and to the disciples James and John, who heard the voice of God. Alternate translation: "We ourselves heard this voice that came from heaven"

##### heard this voice brought from heaven

"heard the voice of the one who spoke from heaven"

##### we were with him

"we were with Jesus"

#### 2 Peter 1:19

##### General Information:

Peter begins to warn the believers about false teachers.

##### For we have the prophetic word made more certain

The things that Peter and the other apostles saw, which he described in the previous verses, confirm what the prophets spoke. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the things that we saw make this prophetic message more sure"

##### For we have

Here the word "we" refers to all believers, including Peter and his readers.

##### the prophetic word made

This refers to the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "the scriptures, which the prophets spoke, made"

##### to which you would do well to pay attention

Peter instructs the believers to pay close attention to the prophetic message.

##### as to a lamp shining in a dark place until the day dawns

Peter compares the prophetic word to a lamp that gives light in the dark until light comes in the morning. The coming of morning is a reference to Christ's coming.

##### the morning star rises in your hearts

Peter speaks of Christ as the "morning star," which indicates that daybreak and the end of darkness is near. Christ will bring light into the hearts of believers, ending all doubt and bringing full understanding of who he is. Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds. Alternate translation: "Christ shines his light into your hearts like the morning star shines its light into the world"

##### the morning star

The "morning star" refers to the planet Venus, which sometimes rises just before the sun and indicates that daybreak is near.

#### 2 Peter 1:20

##### Above all, you must understand

"Most importantly, you must understand"

##### no prophecy of scripture comes from someone's own interpretation

Possible meanings are 1) the prophets did not make their prophecies on their own or 2) people must rely on the Holy Spirit to understand the prophecies or 3) people must interpret the prophecies with the help of the entire Christian community of believers.

#### 2 Peter 1:21

##### men spoke from God when they were carried along by the Holy Spirit

Peter speaks of the Holy Spirit helping the prophets to write what God wanted them to write as if the Holy Spirit were carrying them from one place to another. Alternate translation: "men spoke from God as the Holy Spirit directed them"

## Chapter 2

# 2 Peter 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Flesh

"Flesh" is a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. Here it does not represent the physical part of man. "Flesh" represents the human nature that rejects all things godly and desires what is sinful. This is the condition of all humans before they receive the Holy Spirit by believing in Jesus. (See: flesh)

#### Implicit information

There are several analogies in 2:4-8 that are difficult to understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. Further explanation may be necessary.

#### 2 Peter 2:1

##### General Information:

Peter begins to warn the believers about false teachers.

##### False prophets came to the people, and false teachers will also come to you

Just as false prophets came deceiving Israel with their words, so will false teachers come teaching lies about Christ.

##### destructive heresies

The word "heresies" refers to opinions that are contrary to the teaching of Christ and the apostles. These heresies destroy the faith of those who believe them.

##### the master who bought them

The word "master" here refers to a person who owns slaves. Peter speaks of Jesus as the owner of people whom he has bought, the price being his death.

#### 2 Peter 2:2

##### sensuality

immoral sexual behavior

##### the way of truth will be slandered

The phrase "way of truth" refers to the Christian faith as the true path to God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "unbelievers will slander the way of truth"

#### 2 Peter 2:3

##### exploit you with deceptive words

"convince you to give them money by telling you lies"

##### Their condemnation has been coming for a long time, and their destruction is not asleep

Peter speaks of "condemnation" and "destruction" as if they are persons who act. These abstract nouns can be expressed with the verbs "condemn" and "destroy". Alternate translation: "It was decided long ago that they would be condemned; they will surely be destroyed" or "God said long ago that he would condemn them; he is ready to destroy them"

##### Their condemnation has been coming for a long time, and their destruction is not asleep

Possible meanings are 1) the false teachers will be condemned, and as a result they will be destroyed, or 2) the two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how soon or how certainly the false teachers will be condemned.

#### 2 Peter 2:4

##### Connecting Statement:

In verses 4-9, Peter gives three examples of times that God punished sinners. Two of these times there were also some righteous people whom God did not punish.

##### did not spare

"did not refrain from punishing" or "punished"

##### but delivered them into hell

This tells how God punished the angels who sinned. Alternate translation: "but threw them down into hell" or "but sent them to hell"

##### to be kept in chains of darkness

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where he keeps them in chains of darkness"

##### in chains of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "in chains in a very dark place" or 2) "in darkness that imprisons them like chains."

##### until the judgment

This refers to the day of judgment when God will judge every person.

#### 2 Peter 2:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Verse 5 is Peter's second example of a time that God punished sinners. This time there was a righteous man whom God did not punish.

##### and if he did not spare the ancient world

Here the word "world" refers to the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: "and if God did not refrain from punishing the people who lived in the ancient world"

##### but preserved Noah ... along with seven others

"But protected Noah ... along with seven others." God did not destroy Noah and seven other people when he destroyed the rest of the people who lived in the ancient world.

##### Noah, a herald of righteousness

"Noah, a preacher of righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) Noah taught people that they should live righteous lives, or 2) Noah warned people that the righteous God would judge them.

##### when he brought a flood on the world of the ungodly

God punished ungodly people by sending a flood that killed them.

#### 2 Peter 2:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 6-8 are Peter's third example of a time that God punished sinners. Again, there was a righteous man whom God did not punish.

##### and if he reduced the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes

"and if God burned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah with fire until only ashes remained"

##### condemned them to destruction

Here the word "them" refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and the people who lived in them.

##### as an example of what is to happen to the ungodly

Sodom and Gomorrah serve as an example and a warning of what will happen to others who disobey God.

#### 2 Peter 2:7

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 6-8 are Peter's third example of a time that God punished sinners. Verses 7-8 tell about a righteous man whom God did not punish with the sinners.

##### but delivered righteous Lot

Lot was righteous, and God rescued him from the punishment he sent on Sodom and Gomorrah.

##### the sensual behavior of lawless people

"the immoral behavior of people who broke God's law"

#### 2 Peter 2:8

##### that righteous man

This refers to Lot.

##### was tormented in his righteous soul

Here the word "soul" refers to Lot's thoughts and emotions. The immoral behavior of the citizens of Sodom and Gomorrah disturbed him emotionally. Alternate translation: "was greatly disturbed"

#### 2 Peter 2:9

##### Connecting Statement

In this verse Peter tells us what we can know about God because of what God did in verses 4-8.

##### if the Lord did these things

The words "these things" refer to what God did in verses 4-8.

##### rescue ... out of trials

Possible meanings of the word "trials" are 1) tests or temptations, "enable ... to resist temptation" or "enable ... to pass the test," or 2) suffering, "bring ... through suffering."

#### 2 Peter 2:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins describing the characteristics of unrighteous men.

##### This is especially true

The word "this" refers to God keeping unrighteous men in prison until judgment day in 2 Peter 2:9.

##### those who walk after the corrupt desires of the flesh

The word "flesh" here is a metonym for the body and for selfish desires, and to "walk after" or pursue its "corrupt desires" is a metaphor for those people doing whatever they want to do to satisfy those desires. Alternate translation: "those who continue to indulge their corrupt, sinful desires"

##### despise authority

"refuse to submit to God's authority." Here the word "authority" probably refers to God's authority.

##### authority

Here "authority" stands for God, who has the right to give commands and to punish disobedience.

##### self-willed

"doing whatever they want to do"

##### the glorious ones

This phrase refers to spiritual beings, such as angels or demons.

#### 2 Peter 2:11

##### greater strength and power

"more strength and power than the false teachers"

##### they do not bring insulting judgments against them

The word "they" refers to angels. Possible meanings for the word "them" are 1) the glorious ones or 2) the false teachers.

##### bring insulting judgments against them

The idea that angels could accuse them is spoken of as if they could attack them using accusations as weapons.

#### 2 Peter 2:12

##### these people are like unreasoning animals, born for capture and destruction

Just as people cannot reason with animals, no one can reason with these men. Alternate translation: "these false teachers are like unreasoning animals whose nature is to be born for capture and destruction"

##### for capture and destruction

These abstract nouns can be translated as verbs. The author has not stated the actor in these cases, so it is best if you can leave it unstated. Alternate translation: "so that people can capture and destroy them" or "so that other animals can capture and destroy them" or "so that people can capture them or other animals can destroy them" or "and they become prey or die"

##### They do not know what they insult

They speak evil of what they do not know or understand.

##### In destruction they also will be destroyed

This emphasizes that God will destroy them and can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will completely destroy them"

#### 2 Peter 2:13

##### suffering harm as a reward for doing harm

Peter speaks of the punishment that the false teachers will receive as if it were a reward. Alternate translation: "receiving what they deserve for the harm they have done"

##### luxury during the day

Here the word "luxury" refers to immoral activity that includes gluttony, drunkenness, and sexual activity. Doing these things during the day indicates that these people are not ashamed of this behavior.

##### They are stains and blemishes

The words "stains" and "blemishes" share similar meanings. Peter speaks of the false teachers as if they were stains on a garment that cause shame for those who wear it. Alternate translation: "They are like stains and blemishes on clothes, which cause disgrace"

#### 2 Peter 2:14

##### They have eyes full of adultery

Here the "eyes" represent their desires and "eyes full" means they constant want something. Alternate translation: "They constantly want to commit adultery"

##### they are never satisfied with sin

Although they sin in order to satisfy their lusts, the sin that they commit never satisfies.

##### They entice unstable souls

Here the word "souls" refers to persons. Alternate translation: "They entice unstable people"

##### hearts trained in greed

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and emotions of the person. Because of their habitual actions, they have trained themselves to think and act out of greed.

#### 2 Peter 2:15

##### the straight way

Behavior that honors God is spoken of as if it were a path to follow.

##### have gone astray

People who commit evil behavior that displeases God are spoken of as if they were animals like cows or sheep who go away from the people who take care of them.

##### to receive payment for unrighteousness

"to receive money for doing things that are not righteous"

#### 2 Peter 2:16

##### he obtained a rebuke

You can specify it was God who rebuked Balaam. Alternate translation: "God rebuked him"

##### a mute donkey speaking in a human voice

A donkey, which is naturally unable to speak, spoke with a voice like a human.

##### stopped the prophet's insanity

God used a donkey to stop the prophet's foolish action.

#### 2 Peter 2:17

##### These men are springs without water

Springs flowing with water promise refreshment for thirsty people, but "springs without water" will leave the thirsty disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise.

##### mists driven by a storm

When people see storm clouds, they expect rain to fall. When the winds from the storm blow the clouds away before the rain can fall, the people are disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise.

##### The gloom of thick darkness is reserved for them

The word "them" refers to the false teachers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has reserved the gloom of thick darkness for them"

#### 2 Peter 2:18

##### They speak with vain arrogance

They use impressive but meaningless words.

##### Through the lusts of the flesh, through sensuality, they entice people

"They appeal to people's fleshly lusts and desire for sensuality. This is how they entice people"

##### people who are trying to escape from those who live in error

This phrase refers to people who recently became believers. The phrase "those who live in error" refers to unbelievers who still live in sin. Alternate translation: "people who try to live rightly, instead of living sinfully as they used to and as other people do"

##### people who are trying to escape

Peter speaks of people who live sinfully as if they are slaves to sin who need to be released from their captivity.

#### 2 Peter 2:19

##### They promise freedom to them, but they themselves are slaves of corruption

"Freedom" here is an idiom for the ability to live exactly as one wants. Alternate translation: "They promise to give them the ability to live exactly as they want to live, but they themselves cannot escape their own sinful desires"

##### promise freedom ... slaves of corruption

Peter speaks of people who live sinfully as if they were slaves to sin and need to be released from their captivity.

##### For a man is a slave to whatever overcomes him

Peter speaks of a person as a slave when anything has control over that person, and that thing as the master of that person. Alternate translation: "For if something has control over a person, that person becomes like a slave to that thing"

#### 2 Peter 2:20

##### Connecting Statement:

The words "they" and "them" refer to the false teachers Peter speaks of in verses 12-19.

##### If they have escaped the corruptions ... and are again entangled in them and overcome

The events in this conditional statement have happened. The false teachers had at one time escaped, but they became entangled and were overcome. Alternate translation: "Since they have escaped ... and are again entangled in them and overcome"

##### the corruptions of the world

The word "corruptions" refers to sinful behavior that makes one morally impure. The "world" refers to human society. Alternate translation: "the corrupting practices of sinful human society"

##### through the knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

You can translate "knowledge" using a verbal phrase. See how you translated similar phrases in [2 Peter 1:2]

##### the last state has become worse for them than the first

"their condition is worse than it was before"

#### 2 Peter 2:21

##### the way of righteousness

Peter speaks of life as a "way" or path. This phrase refers to living a life that is according to God's will.

##### turn away from the holy commandment

Here "turn away from" is a metaphor that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: "stop obeying the holy commandment"

##### the holy commandment delivered to them

This can be stated in active terms. Alternate translation: "the holy commandment that God delivered to them" or "the holy commandment that God made sure that they received"

#### 2 Peter 2:22

##### This proverb is true for them

"This proverb applies to them" or "This proverb describes them"

##### A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig returns to the mud

Peter uses two proverbs to illustrate how the false teachers, although they have known "the way of righteousness," have turned back to the things that make them morally and spiritually impure.

## Chapter 3

# 2 Peter 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Fire

People often use fire to destroy things or to make something pure by burning off the dirt and worthless parts. Therefore when God punishes the wicked or purifies his people, it is often associated with fire. (See: fire)

#### Day of the Lord

The exact time of the coming day of the Lord will come as a surprise to people. This is what the simile "like a thief in the night" means. Because of this, Christians are to be prepared for the coming of the Lord.

#### 2 Peter 3:1

##### General Information:

Peter begins to talk about the last days.

##### to stir up your sincere mind

Peter speaks of causing his readers to think about these things as if he were waking them from sleep. Alternate translation: "to cause you to think pure thoughts"

#### 2 Peter 3:2

##### the words spoken in the past by the holy prophets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the words that the holy prophets spoke in the past"

##### the command of our Lord and Savior given through your apostles

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the command of our Lord and Savior, which your apostles gave to you"

#### 2 Peter 3:3

##### Know this first

"Know this as the most important thing." See how you translated this in 2 Peter 1:20.

##### proceed according to their own desires

Here the word "desires" refers to sinful desires that are opposed to God's will. Alternate translation: "live according to their own sinful desires"

##### proceed

act, behave

#### 2 Peter 3:4

##### Where is the promise of his return?

The mockers ask this rhetorical question to emphasize that they do not believe that Jesus will return. The word "promise" refers to the fulfillment of the promise that Jesus will return. Alternate translation: "The promise that Jesus would return is not true! He will not return!"

##### our fathers fell asleep

Here "fathers" refers to ancestors who lived long ago. Falling asleep is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: "our ancestors died"

##### all things have stayed the same, since the beginning of creation

The mockers exaggerate with the word "all," and they argue that since nothing in the world has ever changed, it cannot be true that Jesus will return.

##### since the beginning of creation

This can be translated as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "since God created the world"

#### 2 Peter 3:5

##### by the word of God the heavens and the earth came to exist

"God spoke and the heavens and the earth came to exist"

##### came to exist out of water and through water

This means that God caused the land to come up out of the water, gathering the bodies of water together to make the land appear.

#### 2 Peter 3:6

##### through which

Here "which" refers to God's word and water.

##### the world at that time was destroyed, being flooded with water

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God flooded the world that existed at that time with water and destroyed it"

#### 2 Peter 3:7

##### By the same word the heavens and the earth are reserved for fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God, by that same word, has reserved the heavens and the earth for fire"

##### the same word

"that same command"

##### fire, being kept for the day of judgment

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "fire. God is reserving them for the day of judgment"

##### for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly people

This can be stated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "for the day when he judges and destroys ungodly people"

#### 2 Peter 3:8

##### It should not escape your notice

"You should not fail to understand this" or "Do not ignore this"

##### that one day with the Lord is like a thousand years

"that from the Lord's point of view, one day is like a thousand years"

#### 2 Peter 3:9

##### The Lord is not slow concerning his promise

"The Lord is not slow to fulfill his promise." The noun "promise" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "The Lord will not delay in doing what he promised to do"

##### his promise

This is the Lord's promise to return.

##### as some consider slowness to be

Some people think that the Lord is slow to fulfill his promise because their perspective of time is different from God's.

#### 2 Peter 3:10

##### However ... laid bare

Although the Lord is being patient and wants people to repent, he will indeed return and bring judgment.

##### the day of the Lord will come as a thief

Peter speaks of the day when God will judge everyone as if it were a thief who will come unexpectedly, and the people will be surprised when it happens.

##### The heavens will pass away

"The heavens will disappear"

##### The elements will be burned with fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will burn the elements with fire"

##### The elements

Possible meanings are 1) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars or 2) the things that make up heaven and earth, such as soil, air, fire, and water.

##### the earth and the deeds in it will be laid bare

God will see all the earth and all the deeds of everyone, and he will then judge everything. This can be stated in active terms. Alternate translation: "God will expose the earth and everything that people have done on it"

#### 2 Peter 3:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins to tell the believers how they should live as they wait for the day of the Lord.

##### Since all these things will be destroyed in this way

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Since God will destroy all these things in this way"

##### what kind of people should you be?

Peter uses this rhetorical question to emphasize what he will say next, that they "should live holy and godly lives." Alternate translation: "you know what kind of people you should be."

#### 2 Peter 3:12

##### the heavens will be destroyed by fire, and the elements will be melted in great heat

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will destroy the heavens by fire, and he will melt the elements in great heat"

##### the elements

Possible meanings are 1) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars or 2) the things that make up heaven and earth, such as soil, air, fire, and water. See how you translated this in 2 Peter 3:10.

#### 2 Peter 3:13

##### where righteousness will dwell

Peter speaks of "righteousness" as if it were a person. This is a metonym for people who are righteous. Alternate translation: "where righteous people will dwell" or "where people will live righteously"

#### 2 Peter 3:14

##### do your best to be found spotless and blameless before him, in peace

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "do your best to live in such a way that God will find you spotless and blameless, and be at peace with him and each other"

##### spotless and blameless

The words "spotless" and "blameless" mean basically the same thing and emphasize moral purity. Alternate translation: "completely pure"

##### spotless

Here this stands for "faultless."

#### 2 Peter 3:15

##### Also, consider the patience of our Lord to be salvation

Because the Lord is patient, the day of judgment has not yet happened. This gives people an opportunity to repent and be saved, as he explained in [2 Peter 3:9]

##### according to the wisdom that was given to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "according to the wisdom that God gave to him"

#### 2 Peter 3:16

##### Paul speaks of these things in all his letters

"Paul speaks of the patience of God leading to salvation in all his letters"

##### in which there are things that are difficult to understand

There are things in Paul's letters that are difficult to understand.

##### Ignorant and unstable men distort these things

Ignorant and unstable men misinterpret the things that are difficult to understand in Paul's letters.

##### Ignorant and unstable

"Unlearned and unsteady." These men have not been taught how to properly interpret scripture and are not well established in the truth of the gospel.

##### to their own destruction

"resulting in their own destruction"

#### 2 Peter 3:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes instructing the believers and ends his letter.

##### since you know about these things

"These things" refers to the truths about the patience of God and the teachings of these false teachers.

##### guard yourselves

"protect yourselves"

##### so that you are not led astray by the deceit of lawless people

Here "led astray" is a metaphor for being persuaded to do something wrong. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that lawless people do not deceive you and cause you do something wrong"

##### and lose your own faithfulness

Faithfulness is spoken of as if it were a possession that believers could lose. Alternate translation: "and stop being faithful"

#### 2 Peter 3:18

##### grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

Here growing in the grace and knowledge of the Lord represents experiencing his grace more and knowing him more. The abstract noun "grace" can be expressed with the phrase "act kindly." Alternate translation: "receive more of the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, and know him more" or "be more aware of how our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ acts kindly toward you, and know him better"

## Chapter 1

# 1 John 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is a letter that John wrote to Christians.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Christians and sin

In this chapter John teaches that all Christians are still sinners. But God continues to forgive a Christian's sins. (See: sin and faith and forgive)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

In this chapter John writes that God is light. Light is a metaphor for understanding and righteousness. (See: and righteous)

John also writes about people walking in the light or in the darkness. Walking is a metaphor for behaving or living. People who walk in the light understand what is righteous and do it. People who walk in the darkness may not understand what is righteous, and they do what is sinful.

#### 1 John 1:1

##### General Information:

The apostle John wrote this letter to believers. All instances of "you," "your," and "yours" include all believers and are plural. Here the words "we" and "us" refer to John and those who had been with Jesus. In verses 1-2 many pronouns like "that," "which," and "it" are used. They refer to "the Word of life" and "the eternal life." But, since these are names for Jesus, you can use pronouns that refer to a person like "who," "whom" or "he."

##### which we have heard

"which we have heard him teach"

##### which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked at

This is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "which we ourselves have seen"

##### the Word of life

This refers to Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "the one who gives life" or "the one who causes people to live forever"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually.

#### 1 John 1:2

##### the life was made known

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made the eternal life known to us" or "God made us able to know him, who is eternal life"

##### we have seen and testify

"we have seen it and testify about it" or "we have seen him and testify about him"

##### the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to us

Here, "the eternal life" refers to the one who gives that life, Jesus. Alternate translation: "the one who enables us to live forever, who was with God the Father, and who has been made known to us"

##### and which has been made known to us

This was when he lived on earth. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and which the Father has made known to us" or "and who came to live among us"

#### 1 John 1:3

##### General Information:

Here the words "we," "us," and "our" refer to John and those who had been with Jesus.

##### That which we have seen and heard we declare also to you

"We say to you also what we have seen and heard"

##### have fellowship with us. Our fellowship is with the Father

"be our close friends. We are friends with God the Father"

##### Our fellowship

It is not clear if John is including or excluding his readers. You may translate this either way.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### 1 John 1:4

##### so that our joy will be complete

"to make our joy complete" or "to make ourselves completely happy"

#### 1 John 1:5

##### General Information:

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to all believers, including the people to whom John was writing. Unless otherwise stated, that is the meaning for the remainder of this book.

##### Connecting Statement:

From here into the next chapter, John writes about fellowship—close relationships with God and other believers.

##### God is light

This is a metaphor that means that God is perfectly pure and holy. Cultures that associate goodness with light may be able to keep the idea of light without explaining the metaphor. Alternate translation: "God is purely righteous like pure light"

##### in him there is no darkness at all

This is a metaphor that means that God never sins and is not evil in any way. Cultures that associate evil with darkness may be able to keep the idea of darkness without explaining the metaphor. Alternate translation: "in him there is nothing that is evil"

#### 1 John 1:6

##### walk in darkness

Here "walk" is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here "darkness" is a metaphor for "evil." Alternate translation: "do what is evil"

#### 1 John 1:7

##### walk in the light as he is in the light

Here "walk" is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here "light" is a metaphor for "good" or "right." Alternate translation: "do what is good as God is perfectly good" or "do what is right as God is perfectly right"

##### the blood of Jesus

This refers to the death of Jesus.

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### 1 John 1:8

##### have no sin

"never sin"

##### are deceiving

"are tricking" or "lying to"

##### the truth is not in us

The truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be inside believers. Alternate translation: "we do not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 1:9

##### he is faithful

"God is faithful"

##### to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. John uses them to emphasize that God will surely forgive our sins. Alternate translation: "and will completely forgive us for what we have done wrong"

#### 1 John 1:10

##### we make him out to be a liar

It is implied that a person who claims to be without sin would be calling God a liar since he said that everyone is a sinner. Alternate translation: "it is the same as calling God a liar, because he said we have all sinned"

##### his word is not in us

"Word" here is a metonym for "message." Obeying and honoring God's word is spoken of as if his word were inside the believers. Alternate translation: "we do not understand God's word and do not obey what he says"

## Chapter 2

# 1 John 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Antichrist

In this chapter John writes about both a specific antichrist and many antichrists. The word "antichrist" means "opposed to Christ." The antichrist is a person who will come in the last days and imitate Jesus's work, but he will do it for evil. Before this person comes, there will be many people who work against Christ; they too are called "antichrists." (See: antichrist and lastday and evil)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

There are several groups of similar metaphors that are used throughout this chapter.

Being in God is a metaphor for having fellowship with God, and God's word and truth being in people is a metaphor for people knowing and obeying God's word.

Walking is a metaphor for behaving, not knowing where one is going is a metaphor for not knowing how to behave, and stumbling is a metaphor for sinning.

The light is a metaphor for knowing and doing what is right, and darkness and blindness are metaphors for not knowing what is right and doing what is wrong.

Leading people astray is a metaphor for teaching people things that are not true.

#### 1 John 2:1

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to John and all believers.

##### Connecting Statement:

John continues to write about fellowship and shows that it is possible because Jesus goes between believers and the Father.

##### Children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. Alternate translation: "You who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### I am writing these things

"I am writing this letter"

##### But if anyone sins

"But when anyone sins." This is something that is likely to happen.

##### we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous

The word "advocate" here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "we have Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous, who speaks to the Father and asks him to forgive us"

#### 1 John 2:2

##### He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins

"God is no longer angry with us because Jesus sacrificed his own life for our sins"

#### 1 John 2:3

##### We know that we have come to know him

"We know that we know him" or "We know that we have a good relationship with him"

##### if we keep his commandments

"if we obey what he commands"

#### 1 John 2:4

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says" or "The person who says"

##### I know God

"I have a good relationship with God"

##### does not keep

"does not obey" or "disobeys"

##### his commandments

"what God tells him to do"

##### the truth is not in him

The truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be inside the believers. Alternate translation: "he does not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 2:5

##### keeps his word

To keep someone's word here is an idiom for to obey. Alternate translation: "does what God tells him to do"

##### in him truly the love of God has been perfected

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "the love of God" refers to a person loving God, and "perfected" represents completely or fully. Alternate translation: "it is that person who loves God completely" or 2) "the love of God" refers to God loving people, and "perfected" represents completing its purpose. Alternate translation: "God's love has achieved its purpose in that person's life"

##### By this we know that we are in him

The phrase "we are in him" means that the believer has fellowship with God. Alternate translation: "When we obey what God says, we can be certain that we have fellowship with him" or "By this we know that are joined to God"

#### 1 John 2:6

##### remains in God

To remain in God means to continue to have fellowship with God. Alternate translation: "continues to have fellowship with God" or "stays joined to God"

##### should himself also walk just as he walked

Conducting one's life is spoken of as if it were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "must live as he lived" or "should also obey God just as Jesus Christ did"

#### 1 John 2:7

##### Connecting Statement:

John gives believers basic principles of fellowship—obedience and love.

##### Beloved, I am

"You people whom I love, I am" or "Dear friends, I am"

##### I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment that you have had

"I write to you to love one other, which is not a new thing to do but an old commandment that you have heard." John refers to Jesus's command to love one another.

##### from the beginning

Here, "beginning" refers to when they decided to follow Christ. Alternate translation: "from when you first believed in Christ"

##### The old commandment is the word that you heard

"The old commandment is the message that you heard"

#### 1 John 2:8

##### Yet I am writing a new commandment to you

"But in one way the commandment I write to you is a new commandment"

##### which is true in Christ and in you

"which is true, as shown in Christ's deeds and your deeds"

##### the darkness is passing away, and the true light is already shining

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for "evil," and "light" is a metaphor for "good." Alternate translation: "you are ceasing to do evil and you are doing more and more good"

#### 1 John 2:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "brother" refers to a fellow Christian.

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says" or "Someone who claims." This does not refer to a specific person.

##### he is in the light

Here to be "in the light" is a metaphor for doing what is right. Alternate translation: "he does what is right"

##### is in the darkness

Here to be "in the darkness" is a metaphor for doing what is evil. Alternate translation: "does what is evil"

#### 1 John 2:10

##### there is no occasion for stumbling in him

"nothing will cause him to stumble." The word "stumbling" is a metaphor that means to fail spiritually or morally. Alternate translation: "nothing will cause him to sin" or "he will not fail to do what is pleasing to God"

#### 1 John 2:11

##### is in the darkness and walks in the darkness

Here "walk" is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here to be "in the darkness" and "walks in the darkness" mean the same thing. This brings attention to how evil it is to hate a fellow believer. Alternate translation: "does what is evil"

##### he does not know where he is going

This is a metaphor for the believer who is not living as a Christian should be living. Alternate translation: "he does not know what he should do"

##### the darkness has blinded his eyes

"the darkness has made him unable to see." Darkness is a metaphor for sin or evil. Alternate translation: "sin has made it impossible for him to understand the truth"

#### 1 John 2:12

##### General Information:

John explains why he is writing his letter either to different age groups or to believers with differences in maturity. Try to use similar wording for these sentences, as they are written poetically.

##### you, children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### your sins are forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God forgives your sins"

##### because of his name

"his name" refers to Christ and who he is. Alternate translation: "because of what Christ has done for you"

#### 1 John 2:13

##### I am writing to you, fathers

The word "fathers" here is possibly a metaphor referring to mature believers. Alternate translation: "I am writing to you, mature believers"

##### you know

"you have a relationship with"

##### the one who is from the beginning

"the one who has always lived" or "the one who has always existed." It refers either to "Jesus" or to "God the Father."

##### young men

This possibly refers to those who are no longer new believers but are growing in spiritual maturity. Alternate translation: "young believers"

##### overcome

The writer is speaking of the believers' refusal to follow Satan and of their frustrating his plans as if it were a matter of conquering him.

#### 1 John 2:14

##### you are strong

Here "strong" refers not to believers' physical strength, but to their faithfulness to Christ.

##### the word of God remains in you

"Word of God" here is a metonym for the message from God. The writer refers to the believers' increased faithfulness to Christ and knowledge of him as if he were speaking of God's word existing in them. Alternate translation: "God's message continues to teach you" or "you know the word of God"

#### 1 John 2:15

##### Do not love the world or

In 2:15-17 the word "world" refers to all the things people want to do that do not honor God. Alternate translation: "Do not behave like the people in the world who do not honor God, and do not love"

##### the things that are in the world

"the things that those who dishonor God want"

##### If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him

A person cannot love this world and all that dishonors God and love the Father at the same time.

##### the love of the Father is not in him

"he does not love the Father"

#### 1 John 2:16

##### the lust of the flesh

"the strong desire to have sinful physical pleasure"

##### the lust of the eyes

"the strong desire to have things that we see"

##### is not from the Father

"does not come from the Father" or "is not how the Father teaches us to live"

#### 1 John 2:17

##### are passing away

"pass away" or "will one day not be here"

#### 1 John 2:18

##### Connecting Statement:

John warns about those who are against Christ.

##### Children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### it is the last hour

The phrase "the last hour" refers to the time just before Jesus returns. Alternate translation: "Jesus will return soon"

##### many antichrists have come

"there are many people who are against Christ"

##### have come. By this we know

"have come, and because of this we know" or "have come, and because many antichrists have come, we know"

#### 1 John 2:19

##### They went out from us

"They left us"

##### but they were not from us

"but they did not really belong to us anyway" or "but they were not really part of our group in the first place." The reason they were not really part of the group is that they were not believers in Jesus.

##### For if they had been from us, they would have remained with us

"We know this because they would not have left us if they really had been believers"

#### 1 John 2:20

##### General Information:

In the Old Testament the word "anointing" referred to pouring oil on a person to set him apart to serve God.

##### But you have an anointing from the Holy One

John speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were "an anointing" that the people have received from Jesus. The abstract noun "anointing" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "But the Holy One has anointed you" or "But Jesus Christ, the Holy One, has given you his Spirit"

##### the Holy One

This refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus, the Holy One"

##### you all know

Your language might allow you to use the abstract noun "knowledge" here. If your language requires you to state what it is that the readers know, be as general as possible. Alternate translation: "you all have knowledge" or "you all know what is true"

#### 1 John 2:21

##### the truth ... no lie is from the truth

The abstract noun "truth" can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "what is true ... no lie comes from what is true"

#### 1 John 2:22

##### Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ?

"Who is the liar? Anyone who denies that Jesus is the Christ." John used a question to emphasize who liars are. Alternate translation: "The one who denies that Jesus is the Christ is the liar"

##### denies that Jesus is the Christ

"refuses to say that Jesus is the Christ" or "says that Jesus is not the Messiah"

##### denies the Father and the Son

"refuses to say the truth about the Father and the Son" or "rejects the Father and the Son."

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### 1 John 2:23

##### has the Father

"belongs to the Father"

##### confesses the Son

"speaks the truth about the Son"

##### has the Father

"belongs to the Father"

#### 1 John 2:24

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the people to whom John wrote, as well as all believers. The word "he" is emphatic and refers to Christ.

##### Connecting Statement:

John reminds believers to continue in what they have first heard.

##### As for you

This marks John's telling them how they should live as followers of Jesus instead of how those against Christ live.

##### let what you have heard from the beginning remain in you

"remember and believe what you have heard from the beginning." How they heard it, what they heard, and what "the beginning" means can be made explicit: Alternate translation: "continue to trust what we have taught you about Jesus just as you have trusted since you first became believers"

##### what you have heard from the beginning

"what we taught you about Jesus when you first became believers"

##### If what you heard from the beginning remains in you

The word "remains" is talking about relationship, not salvation. Alternate translation: "If you continue to trust what we first taught you"

##### also remain in the Son and in the Father

To "remain in" means to continue to have fellowship with. See how you translated a similar phrase to "remain in" in [1 John 2:6]

#### 1 John 2:25

##### This is the promise he gave to us—eternal life.

"This is what he promised to give us—eternal life" or "He has promised to cause us to live forever"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in [1 John 1:1]

#### 1 John 2:26

##### those who would lead you astray

Here "lead you astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "those who want to deceive you" or "those who want to make you believe lies about Jesus Christ"

#### 1 John 2:27

##### Connecting Statement:

Starting in verse 29, John introduces the idea of being born into God's family. The previous verses show that believers continue to sin; this part shows that believers also have the new nature, which cannot sin. It continues to show how believers can recognize each other.

##### As for you

This marks John's telling them something else about how they should live as followers of Jesus instead of following those who are against Christ.

##### the anointing that you received from him remains in you

John speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were "the anointing" that the people have received from Jesus and remains in them. The abstract noun "anointing" can be translated with a verbal phrase. See how you translated "anointing" in [1 John 2:20]

##### as his anointing teaches you everything

Here the word "everything" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "because his anointing teaches you everything that you need to know" or "because his Spirit teaches you everything that you need to know"

#### 1 John 2:28

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the letter.

##### Now, children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### he appears

"we see him"

##### boldness

having no fear

##### not be ashamed before him

"not be ashamed in his presence"

##### at his coming

"when he comes again"

#### 1 John 2:29

##### has been born from him

"has been born of God" or "is God's child"

## Chapter 3

# 1 John 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Children of God

God created all people, but people can only become children of God by believing in Jesus. (See: believe)

#### Cain

Cain was a son of the first man, Adam, and the first woman, Eve. He was jealous of his brother and murdered him. Readers may not know who Cain was if they have not read Genesis. It may help them if you explain this to them.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "To know"

The verb "to know" is used in two different ways in this chapter. Sometimes it is used about knowing a fact, as in 3:2, 3:5, and 3:19. Sometimes it means to experience and understand someone or something, as in 3:1, 3:6, 3:16, and 3:20. Some languages have different words for these different meanings.

#### "He who keeps God's commandments remains in him, and God remains in him"

Many scholars believe this is about remaining in God's will and is not about being saved. (See: eternity and save)

#### 1 John 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

In this part John tells the believers about their new nature, which cannot sin.

##### See what kind of love the Father has given to us

"Think about how our Father loves us so much"

##### we should be called children of God

"the Father called us his children"

##### children of God

Here this means people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

##### For this reason, the world does not know us, because it did not know him

Possible meanings are 1) "Because we are the children of God and because the world did not know God, it does not know us" or 2) "Because the world did not know God, it does not know us."

##### the world does not know us, because it did not know him

Here "the world" refers to people who do not honor God. What the world did not know can be made explicit: Alternate translation: "those who do not honor God do not know that we belong to God, because they did not know God"

#### 1 John 3:2

##### Beloved, we are

"You people whom I love, we are" or "Dear friends, we are." See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

##### it has not yet been revealed

This can be stated in active form: Alternate translation: "God has not yet revealed"

##### revealed

This can mean here either "told," "demonstrated," or "shown."

#### 1 John 3:3

##### Everyone who has this hope in him

The word "him" refers to Christ. Having hope in Christ means expecting that because of Christ, what is hoped for will happen. Alternate translation: "Everyone who has this hope because of Christ" or "Everyone who trusts Christ to fulfill this hope"

##### who has this hope in him

The phrase "this hope" refers to the hope of being like Christ, as mentioned in the previous verse. Here to have hope is to confidently expect something good. Alternate translation: "who confidently expects in Christ to become like Christ" or "who confidently waits for Christ to cause him to become like Christ"

##### purifies himself just as he is pure

"keeps himself pure because Christ is pure"

#### 1 John 3:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 3:5

##### Christ was revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ appeared" or "the Father revealed Christ"

#### 1 John 3:6

##### remains in him

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

##### No one ... has seen him or known him

John uses the words "seen" and "known" to say that the person who sins has never met Christ in a spiritual sense. A person behaving according to his sinful nature cannot know Christ. Alternate translation: "No one ... has ever truly believed in him"

#### 1 John 3:7

##### Children, do not let

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### do not let anyone lead you astray

Here "lead you astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "do not let anyone fool you" or "do not let anyone deceive you"

##### The one who does righteousness is righteous, just as Christ is righteous

"He who does what is right is pleasing to God just as Christ is pleasing to God."

#### 1 John 3:8

##### is from the devil

"belongs to the devil" or "is like the devil"

##### from the beginning

This refers to the very earliest time of creation before humans first sinned. Alternate translation: "since the earliest time of creation"

##### the Son of God was revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God revealed his Son"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### 1 John 3:9

##### Connecting Statement:

For now John ends this section on the new birth and the new nature which cannot sin.

##### Whoever has been born from God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Whoever God has made his child"

##### God's seed

This speaks of the Holy Spirit, whom God gives to believers and who makes them able to resist sin and do what pleases God as if he were a physical seed that is planted in the earth and grows. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit"

##### he has been born of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has given him new spiritual life" or "he is a child of God"

#### 1 John 3:10

##### In this the children of God and children of the devil are revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is how we know who the children of God are and who the children of the devil are"

##### Whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God, neither is the one who does not love his brother

"whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God; whoever does not love his brother is also not from God" or "those who are from God do what is right, and those who are from God love their brothers"

##### his brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 John 3:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 3:12

##### General Information:

Cain and Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve, the first man and woman.

##### We should not be like Cain

"We should not do as Cain did"

##### brother

This refers to Cain's younger brother Abel.

##### Why did he kill him? Because

John uses a question to teach his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He killed him because"

##### his works were evil and his brother's righteous

The words "works were" are also understood in the second phrase. Alternate translation: "Cain's works were evil and his brother's works were righteous" or "Cain did evil things and his brother did what was right"

#### 1 John 3:13

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers." John's readers were both male and female.

##### if the world hates you

Here the word "world" refers to the people who do not honor God. Alternate translation: "if those who do not honor God hate you who do honor God"

#### 1 John 3:14

##### we have passed out of death into life

The conditions of living and of being dead are spoken of as if they were physical locations that a person could leave from and go to. The abstract nouns "life" and "death" can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "we are no longer spiritually dead but are spiritually alive"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in [1 John 1:1]

##### remains in death

"is still spiritually dead"

#### 1 John 3:15

##### Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer

John speaks of a person who hates another believer as if he were a murderer. Since people commit murder because they hate other people, God considers anyone who hates to be as guilty as someone who kills a person. Alternate translation: "Whoever hates another believer is as guilty as someone who kills a person"

##### no murderer has eternal life residing in him

"Eternal life" does refer to believers living forever after they have died, but it is also the power that God gives believers in this life to help them to stop sinning and to do what please him. Here eternal life is spoken of as if it were a person that could live in someone. Alternate translation: "a murderer does not have the power of spiritual life"

#### 1 John 3:16

##### Christ laid down his life for us

This expression means "Christ willingly gave his life for us" or "Christ willingly died for us"

#### 1 John 3:17

##### the world's goods

material possessions like money, food, or clothing

##### sees his brother in need

"realizes a fellow believer needs help"

##### shuts up his heart of compassion from him

Here "heart" is a metonym for "thoughts" or "emotions." Here "shuts up his heart of compassion" is a metaphor for no longer showing someone compassion. Alternate translation: "does not show him compassion" or "does not willingly help him"

##### how does the love of God remain in him?

John uses a question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "God's love is not in him"

#### 1 John 3:18

##### My children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### let us not love in word or in tongue, but in actions and truth

The phrases "in word" and "in tongue" both refer to what a person says. Alternate translation: "do not just say that you love people, but show that you truly love people by helping them"

##### in actions and truth

The words "let us love" are understood here. Alternate translation: "let us love in actions and truth"

#### 1 John 3:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Here John probably means that believers' ability to love God and each other sincerely (1 John 3:18) is a sign that their new life has indeed originated from the truth about Christ.

##### we are from the truth

People living according to the truth is spoken of as they were "from the truth." Alternate translation: "we are living according the way Jesus taught us" or "we belong to him who is true"

##### we assure our hearts

The word "heart" here refers to feelings. Alternate translation: "we do not feel guilty"

#### 1 John 3:20

##### if our hearts condemn us

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's thoughts or consciences. Here "hearts condemn us" is a metaphor for feeling guilty. Alternate translation: "if we know that we have sinned and as a result feel guilty"

##### God is greater than our hearts

Here "hearts" is metonym for people's thoughts or consciences. For God to be "greater than our hearts" means that God knows more than a person. Therefore he can judge things better than a person can. The effect of this truth is probably that God is more merciful than our consciences would suppose. Alternate translation: "God knows more than we do"

#### 1 John 3:21

##### Beloved, if

"You people whom I love, if" or "Dear friends, if." See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

#### 1 John 3:22

##### do the things that are pleasing before him

Here "before him" represents God's opinion or what he thinks about something. Alternate translation: "do the things that are pleasing to him" or "do what pleases him"

#### 1 John 3:23

##### This is his commandment: that we should believe ... just as he gave us this commandment

The abstract noun "commandment" can be stated as "command." Alternate translation: "This is what God commands us to do: Believe ... just as he commanded us to do"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### 1 John 3:24

##### remains in him, and God remains in him

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

##### he remains in us

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. Alternate translation: "God continues to have fellowship with us"

## Chapter 4

# 1 John 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spirit

This word "spirit" is used in different ways in this chapter. Sometimes the word "spirit" refers to spiritual beings. Sometimes it refers to the character of something. For example "the spirit of the antichrist," "the spirit of truth," and "the spirit of error" refer to what is typical of the antichrist, truth, and error. "The Spirit" (written with a capital "S") and "the Spirit of God" refer to God. (See: antichrist)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Loving God

If people love God, they should show it in the way they live and the way they treat other people. Doing this may assure us that God has saved us and that we belong to him, but loving others does not save us. (See: save)

#### 1 John 4:1

##### General Information:

John gives a warning against false teachers who teach against Christ's having had a human body and teachers who talk the way those who love the world talk.

##### Beloved, do not believe

"You people whom I love, do not believe" or "Dear friends, do not believe." See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

##### do not believe every spirit

Here, the word "spirit" refers to a spiritual power or being that gives a person a message or prophecy. Alternate translation: "do not trust every prophet who claims to have a message from a spirit"

##### test the spirits

Here, the word "spirits" refers to a spiritual power or being that gives a person a message or prophecy. Alternate translation: "think carefully about what the prophet says"

#### 1 John 4:2

##### has come in the flesh

Here "flesh" represents the human body. Alternate translation: "has come as a human being" or "has come in a physical body"

#### 1 John 4:3

##### This is the spirit of the antichrist, which you have heard is coming, and now is already in the world

"These are prophets opposed to Christ, whom you have heard are coming, and now are already in the world"

#### 1 John 4:4

##### God, children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### have overcome them

"have not believed the false teachers"

##### the one who is in you is

"God, who is in you, is"

##### the one who is in the world

Here "the one" refers to the devil. Here "the world" represents the people of the world. Alternate translation: "the devil who is in the people of the world"

#### 1 John 4:5

##### They are from the world

"They" refers to the false teachers. "From the world" is in contrast to being from God. "The world" represents all things that oppose God. Alternate translation: "They are of the world"

##### therefore what they say is from the world

Here "from the world" is in contrast to being from God. Here "the world" represents all things that oppose God. Alternate translation: "therefore what the false teachers say is of the world"

##### and the world listens to them

The words "the world" are a metonym for people who do not obey God. Alternate translation: "so the people who do not obey God listen to them"

#### 1 John 4:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 4:7

##### General Information:

John continues to teach about the new nature. He teaches his readers about God's love and loving one another.

##### Beloved, let us love

"You people whom I love, let us love" or "Dear friends, let us love." See how you translated "Beloved" in 1 John 2:7.

##### let us love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

##### and everyone who loves is born from God and knows God

"and because those who love their fellow believers have become God's children and know him"

##### for love is from God

"because God causes us to love each other"

##### born from God

This is a metaphor which means someone has a relationship to God like a child to his father.

#### 1 John 4:8

##### The person who does not love does not know God, for God is love

The phrase "God is love" a metaphor which means "the character of God is love." Alternate translation: "Those who do not love their fellow believers do not know God, because the character of God is to love people"

#### 1 John 4:9

##### Because of this ... among us, that God has sent his only Son

"Because of this ... among us: God has sent his only Son." The phrase "Because of this" refers to the phrase "that God has sent his only Son."

##### the love of God was revealed among us

The noun "love" can be translated as a verb. This phrase can be made active. Alternate translation: "God showed that he loves us"

##### so that we would live because of him

"to enable us to live eternally because of what Jesus did"

#### 1 John 4:10

##### In this is love: not that

"The true demonstration of love was not that" or "This is true love: not that

##### he sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins

By dying on the cross as a sacrifice, Christ satisfied God's wrath against our sin. The phrase "atoning sacrifice" can translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "he sent his Son to be the sacrifice that satisfied his wrath against our sins"

#### 1 John 4:11

##### Beloved, if

"You people whom I love, if" or "Dear friends, if." See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

##### if God so loved us

"since God loved us in this way"

##### we also should love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

#### 1 John 4:12

##### God remains in us

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

##### his love is perfected in us

"God's love is complete in us"

#### 1 John 4:13

##### we remain in him and he in us

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

##### and he in us

The word "remains" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and he remains in us"

##### By this we know ... us, because he has given

Your translation may be clearer if you omit either "by this" or "because." Alternate translation: "We know ... us because he gave" or "By this we know ... us: he gave"

##### because he has given us some of his Spirit

"because he gave us his Spirit" or "because he has put his Holy Spirit in us." This phrase, however, does not imply that God has less of his Spirit after he has given us some.

#### 1 John 4:14

##### Also, we have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world

"And we apostles have seen the Son of God and tell everyone that God the Father has sent his Son to save people on this earth"

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### 1 John 4:15

##### Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God

"Anyone who says the truth about Jesus, that he is the Son of God"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

##### God remains in him and he in God

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

##### and he in God

The word "remains" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and he remains in God" (See: Ellipsis)

#### 1 John 4:16

##### God is love

This is a metaphor which means "the character of God is love." See how you translated this in [1 John 4:8]

##### the one who remains in this love

"those who continue to love others"

##### remains in God, and God remains in him

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated "remains in God" in [1 John 2:6]

#### 1 John 4:17

##### Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "Because of this" refers back to [1 John 4:16]

##### this love has been made perfect among us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has made his love for us complete"

##### because as he is, just so are we in this world

"because the relationship that Jesus has with God is the same relationship we have with God in this world"

#### 1 John 4:18

##### Instead, perfect love throws out fear

Here "love" is described as a person with the power to remove fear. God's love is perfect. Alternate translation: "Instead, when our love is complete, we are no longer afraid"

##### because fear has to do with punishment

"because we would be afraid only if we thought that he would punish us"

##### But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But when a person is afraid that God will punish him, his love is not complete"

#### 1 John 4:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 4:20

##### hates his brother

"hates a fellow believer"

##### the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen

If two negative statements in a row are confusing, this can be translated differently. Alternate translation: "the one who hates his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen"

#### 1 John 4:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 5

# 1 John 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Children born from God

When people believe in Jesus, God makes them his children and gives them eternal life. (See: believe)

#### Christian living

People who believe in Jesus should obey God's commands and love his children.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### A sin that results in death

This seems to refer to behaviors that will result in a person experiencing spiritual death, that is, to be separated from God forever. (See: death)

#### "the whole world lies in the power of the evil one"

The phrase "the evil one" refers to Satan. God has allowed him to rule the world, but ultimately God is in control over everything. God keeps his children safe from the evil one. (See: satan)

#### 1 John 5:1

##### General Information:

John continues to teach his readers about God's love and the love believers are to have because they have this new nature from God.

##### is born from God

"is a child of God"

#### 1 John 5:2

##### This is how we know that we love the children of God: when we love God and obey his commandments.

"When we love God and do what he commands, then we know that we love his children"

#### 1 John 5:3

##### For this is love for God: that we keep his commandments

"Because when we do what he commands, that is true love for God"

##### his commandments are not burdensome

"what he commands is not difficult"

##### burdensome

"heavy" or "crushing" or "difficult"

#### 1 John 5:4

##### everyone who is born from God overcomes

"all children of God overcome"

##### overcomes the world

"has victory over the world," "succeeds against the world," or "refuses to do the evil things unbelievers do"

##### the world

This passage uses "the world" to refer to all the sinful people and the evil systems in the world. Alternate translation: "everything in the world that is against God"

##### And this is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith

"And this is what gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God: our faith" or "And it is our faith that gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God"

#### 1 John 5:5

##### Who is the one who overcomes the world?

John used this question to introduce something he wanted to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who overcomes the world:"

##### The one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God

This does not refer to a specific person but to anyone who believes this. Alternate translation: "Anyone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### 1 John 5:6

##### Connecting Statement:

John teaches about Jesus Christ and what God said about him.

##### This is the one who came by water and blood: Jesus Christ

"Jesus Christ is the one who came by water and blood." Here "water" is probably a metonym for the baptism of Jesus, and "blood" stands for Jesus's death on the cross. Alternate translation: "God showed that Jesus Christ is his son at Jesus's baptism and his death on the cross"

##### He came not only by water, but also by water and blood

Here "water" is probably a metonym for the baptism of Jesus, and "blood" stands for Jesus's death on the cross. Alternate translation: "God did not show us Jesus was his son just through his baptism, but through his baptism and his death on the cross"

#### 1 John 5:7

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 5:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 5:9

##### If we receive the testimony of men

The idiom to "receive the testimony" means to believe what another person testifies concerning something that he has seen. The abstract noun "testimony" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "If we believe what men testify" or "If we believe what men say about what they have seen"

##### the testimony of God is greater

the testimony of God is more important and more reliable

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### 1 John 5:10

##### Anyone who believes in the Son of God has the testimony in himself

"Whoever believes in Jesus knows for sure Jesus is the Son of God"

##### has made him out to be a liar

"has called God a liar"

##### because he has not believed the testimony that God has given concerning his Son

"because he has not believed that God has told the truth about his Son"

#### 1 John 5:11

##### And the testimony is this

"This is what God says"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in [1 John 1:1]

##### this life is in his Son

"this life is through his Son" or "we will live forever if we are joined with his Son" or "we will live forever if we are united with his Son"

##### Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### 1 John 5:12

##### The one who has the Son has life. The one who does not have the Son of God does not have life

Being in a close relationship to the Son is spoken of as having the Son. Alternate translation: "He who believes in the Son of God has eternal life. He who does not believe in the Son of God does not have eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:13

##### General Information:

This begins the end of John's letter. He tells his readers the last purpose for his letter and gives them some final teachings.

##### these things

"this letter"

##### to you who believe in the name of the Son of God

Here "name" is a metonym for the Son of God. Alternate translation: "to you who trust in the Son of God"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### 1 John 5:14

##### this is the confidence we have before him, that

The abstract noun "confidence" can be stated as "confident." Alternate translation: "we are confident in God's presence because we know that"

##### if we ask anything according to his will

"if we ask for the things that God desires"

#### 1 John 5:15

##### we know that we have whatever we have asked of him

"we know that we will receive that for which we have asked God"

#### 1 John 5:16

##### his brother

"a fellow believer"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in [1 John 1:1]

##### death

This refers to eternal death, that is, eternity spent away from God's presence.

#### 1 John 5:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 1 John 5:18

##### Connecting Statement:

John closes his letter, reviewing what he has said about the new nature of believers, which cannot sin, and he reminds them to keep themselves from idols (5:21).

##### the evil one cannot harm him

The phrase "the evil one" refers to Satan, the devil.

#### 1 John 5:19

##### the whole world lies in the power of the evil one

Lying in someone's power represents being controlled or ruled by him. Alternate translation: "the whole world is controlled by the evil one"

##### the whole world lies in the power

Here "world" represents all the people who rebel against God. Alternate translation: "all the people of the world are under the power"

#### 1 John 5:20

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

##### has given us understanding

"has enabled us to understand the truth"

##### we are in him who is true

Being "in" someone represents having a close relationship with him, that is being united to him or belonging to him. The phrase "him who is true" refers to the true God, and the phrase "in his Son Jesus Christ" explains how we are in him who is true. Alternate translation: "we are united to him who is true by being united to his Son Jesus Christ"

##### him who is true

"the true one" or "the real God"

##### This one is the true God

Possible meanings are 1) "This one" refers to Jesus Christ, or 2) "This one" refers to the one true God.

##### and eternal life

He is called "eternal life" becasue he gives us eternal life. Alternate translation: "and the one who gives eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:21

##### Children

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in [1 John 2:1]

##### keep yourselves from idols

"stay away from idols" or "do not worship idols"

## Chapter 1

#### 2 John 1:1

##### General Information:

Tradition identifies the apostle John as the writer of this letter. Though possibly addressed to an individual woman, because he writes that they should "love one another," this is probably to a church. All instances of "you" and "your" in this letter are plural unless noted otherwise. In this letter, John includes himself and his readers by using the word "us" and "our."

##### From the elder to the chosen lady and her children

This is how letters were started. The name of the author can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I, John the elder, am writing this letter to the chosen lady and her children"

##### the elder

This refers to John, the apostle and disciple of Jesus. He refers to himself as "elder" either because of his old age or because he is a leader in the church.

##### to the chosen lady and her children

This probably refers to a congregation and the believers that belong to it.

#### 2 John 1:2

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### 2 John 1:3

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### in truth and love

The word "truth" describes "love." Possibly the phrase means "in true love."

#### 2 John 1:4

##### your children

The word "your" is singular.

##### just as we have received this commandment from the Father

"just as God the Father commanded us"

#### 2 John 1:5

##### you, lady ... writing to you

These instances of "you" are singular.

##### I were writing to you a new commandment, but one that we have had from the beginning

Here, "beginning" refers to "when we first believed." Alternate translation: "I were commanding you to do something new, but what Christ commanded us to do when we first believed"

##### beginning—that we should love one another

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "beginning. He commanded that we should love one another"

#### 2 John 1:6

##### This is the commandment, just as you heard from the beginning, that you should walk in it

Conducting our lives according to God's commands is spoken of as if we were walking in them. The word "it" refers to love. "And he has commanded you, since you first believed, to love one another"

#### 2 John 1:7

##### Connecting Statement:

John warns his readers of deceivers, reminds them to remain in Christ's teaching, and warns them to stay away from those who do not remain in Christ's teaching.

##### For many deceivers have gone out into the world

"For many false teachers have left the congregation" or "For many deceivers are in the world"

##### many deceivers

"many false teachers" or "many imposters"

##### Jesus Christ came in the flesh

Coming in the flesh is a metonym for being a real person. Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ came as a real human"

##### This is the deceiver and the antichrist

"They are the ones who deceive others and oppose Christ himself"

#### 2 John 1:8

##### Look to yourselves

"Watch out" or "Pay attention" or "Be on guard"

##### lose the things

"lose your future rewards in heaven"

##### the things for which we have labored

Another possible meaning is, "the things that we have accomplished."

##### full reward

"complete reward in heaven"

#### 2 John 1:9

##### Whoever goes on ahead

This refers to a person who claims to know more about God and truth than everyone else. Alternate translation: "Whoever claims to know more about God" or "Whoever disobeys the truth"

##### goes on ahead

Some modern translations read, "transgresses."

##### does not have God

"does not belong to God"

##### The one who remains in the teaching, this one has both the Father and the Son

"Someone who follows Christ's teaching belongs to both the Father and the Son"

##### the Father and the Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### 2 John 1:10

##### receive him into your house

Here this means to welcome him and treat him with honor in order to build a relationship with him.

#### 2 John 1:11

##### participates in his evil deeds

"shares with him in his evil deeds" or "helps him in his evil deeds"

#### 2 John 1:12

##### General Information:

The words "you" in verse 12 are singular.

##### Connecting Statement:

John's letter closes with his desire to visit his readers and gives greetings from another church.

##### I did not wish to write them with paper and ink

John does not wish to write these other things but would like to come say the words to them. He is not saying that he would write them with something other than paper and ink.

##### I hope to come to you

John wants to visit his readers but he does not know with certainty that he would be able to visit them. Alternate translation: "I plan to come to you" or "I want to come to you"

##### speak face to face

"Speak face to face" here is an idiom, meaning "to speak in their presence." Alternate translation: "speak in your presence" or "speak to you in person"

#### 2 John 1:13

##### General Information

The word "your" in verse 13 is plural.

##### The children of your chosen sister

Here John speaks of this other church as if it were a sister to the readers' church and the believers that are a part of that church as if they were that church's children. This emphasizes that all believers are a spiritual family.

## Chapter 1

#### 3 John 1:1

##### General Information:

This is a personal letter from John to Gaius. All instances of "you" and "your" refer to Gaius and are singular.

##### The elder

This refers to John, the apostle and disciple of Jesus. He refers to himself as "elder" either because of his old age or because he is a leader in the church. The name of the author can be made explicit: "I, John the elder, am writing."

##### Gaius

This is a fellow believer to whom John is writing this letter.

##### whom I love in truth

"whom I truly love"

#### 3 John 1:2

##### all may go well with you and that you may be healthy

"you may do well in all things and be healthy"

##### just as it is well with your soul

"just as you are doing well spiritually"

#### 3 John 1:3

##### brothers came

"fellow believers came." These people were probably all male.

##### you walk in truth

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: "you are living your life according to God's truth"

#### 3 John 1:4

##### my children

John speaks of those he taught to believe in Jesus as though they were his children. This emphasizes his love and concern for them. It could also be that he himself led them to the Lord. Alternate translation: "my spiritual children"

#### 3 John 1:5

##### Connecting Statement:

John's purpose in writing this letter is to compliment Gaius in the way he took care of traveling Bible teachers; then he talks about two people, one evil and one good.

##### Beloved

Here this is used as a term of endearment for a fellow believer.

##### you practice faithfulness

"you are doing what is faithful to God" or "you are being loyal to God"

##### labor for the brothers and for strangers

"help fellow believers and those you do not know"

#### 3 John 1:6

##### You do well to send them

John is thanking Gaius for his normal practice of helping these believers.

#### 3 John 1:7

##### because it was for the sake of the name that they went out

Here "the name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "for they have gone out to tell people about Jesus"

##### taking nothing

receiving no gifts or help

##### the Gentiles

Here "Gentiles" means non-Jews who do not believe in Christ.

#### 3 John 1:8

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to John and those with him, and possibly includes all believers.

##### so that we will be fellow workers for the truth

"so that we will cooperate with them in announcing God's truth to people"

#### 3 John 1:9

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to John and those with him and does not include Gaius.

##### congregation

This refers to Gaius and the group of believers who met together to worship God.

##### Diotrephes

He was a member of the congregation.

##### who loves to be first among them

"who loves to be the most important one among them" or "who loves to act as though he's their leader"

#### 3 John 1:10

##### falsely accusing us with wicked words

"and how he says evil things about us that certainly are not true"

##### refuses to welcome the brothers

"does not welcome the fellow believers"

##### stops those who want to welcome them

"stops those who want to welcome the believers"

##### drives them out of the church

"he forces them to leave the congregation"

#### 3 John 1:11

##### Beloved

Here this is used as a term of endearment for a fellow believer. See how you translated this in 3 John 1:5.

##### do not imitate what is evil

"do not copy the evil things that people do"

##### but what is good

There are words left out but they are understood. Alternate translation: "but imitate what is good" or "but imitate the good things that people do"

##### is of God

"belongs to God"

##### has not seen God

"does not belong to God" or "does not believe in God"

#### 3 John 1:12

##### General Information:

Here "we" refers to John and those with him and does not include Gaius.

##### Demetrius received a good testimony from everyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "All who know Demetrius testify that he is a good man" or "Every believer who knows Demetrius speaks well of him"

##### Demetrius

This is probably a man whom John wants Gaius and the congregation to welcome when he comes to visit.

##### by the truth itself

"the truth itself speaks well of him." Here "truth" is described as a person speaking. Alternate translation: "everyone who knows the truth knows he is a good person"

##### We also testify about him

What John is confirming is implied and can be made specific here. Alternate translation: "We also testify about Demetrius" or "We also speak well of Demetrius"

#### 3 John 1:13

##### General Information:

This is the end of John's letter to Gaius. He gives some final remarks and closes with a greeting.

##### I do not wish to write them to you with pen and ink

John does not wish to write these other things at all. He is not saying that he would write them with something other than pen and ink.

#### 3 John 1:14

##### I hope to see you soon

John wants to visit him, but he does not know with certainty that he would be able to visit him. Alternate translation: "I plan to come to you" or "I want to come to you"

##### face to face

"Face to face" here is an idiom, meaning "in person." Alternate translation: "in person"

#### 3 John 1:15

##### May peace be with you

"May God give you peace"

##### The friends greet you

"The friends here greet you"

##### Greet our friends there by name

"Greet each of the believers there for me"

## Chapter 1

#### Jude 1:1

##### General Information:

Jude identifies himself as the writer of this letter and greets his readers. He was probably the half-brother of Jesus. There are two other Judes mentioned in the New Testament. The word "you" in this letter refers to the Christians to whom Jude was writing and is always plural.

##### Jude, a servant of

Jude is the brother of James. Alternate translation: "I am Jude, a servant of"

##### brother of James

James and Jude were half brothers of Jesus.

#### Jude 1:2

##### May mercy and peace and love be multiplied to you

"may mercy, peace, and love be increased many times for you." These ideas are spoken of as if they were objects that could grow in size or number. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "mercy," "peace," and "love." Alternate translation: "May God continue to be merciful to you so that you live peacefully and love one another more and more

#### Jude 1:3

##### General Information:

The word "our" in this letter includes both Jude and believers.

##### Connecting Statement:

Jude tells the believers his reason for writing this letter.

##### our common salvation

"the salvation we share"

##### I had to write

"I felt a great need to write" or "I felt an urgent need to write"

##### to exhort you to struggle earnestly for the faith

"to encourage you to defend the true teaching"

##### once for all

"finally and completely"

#### Jude 1:4

##### For certain men have slipped in secretly among you

"For some men have come in among the believers without drawing attention to themselves"

##### These men were marked out for condemnation

This can also be put into the active voice. Alternate translation: "These were men whom God chose to condemn"

##### who have changed the grace of our God into sensuality

God's grace is spoken of as if it were a thing that could be changed into something horrible. Alternate translation: "who teach that God's grace permits one to continue to live in sexual sin"

##### deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ

Possible meanings are 1) they teach that he is not God or 2) these men do not obey Jesus Christ.

#### Jude 1:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Jude gives examples from the past of those who did not follow the Lord.

##### the Lord saved a people out of the land of Egypt

"the Lord rescued the Israelites long ago from Egypt"

##### the Lord

Some texts read "Jesus."

#### Jude 1:6

##### their own position of authority

"the responsibilities God entrusted to them"

##### their proper dwelling place

The proper dwelling place of angels is heaven.

##### God has kept them in everlasting chains, in utter darkness

"God has put these angels in a dark prison from which they will never escape"

##### utter darkness

Here "darkness" is a metonym which represents the place of the dead or hell. Alternate translation: "in utter darkness in hell"

##### the great day

the final day when God will judge everyone

#### Jude 1:7

##### Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them

Here "Sodom," "Gomorrah," and "cities" represent the people who lived in them. Alternate translation: "the people of Sodom and Gomorrah and the people in the cities around them"

##### gave themselves over to sexual immorality and perverse sexual acts

"engaged in every kind of sexual immorality and all of the perverse sexual acts they desired." The sexual sins of Sodom and Gomorrah were the result of the same kind of rebellion as the angels' evil ways.

##### as an example of those who suffer the punishment

The destruction of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah became an example of the fate of all who reject God.

#### Jude 1:8

##### these dreamers

These are the people who disobey God, probably because they claim to have seen visions that gave them authority to do so.

##### defile their bodies

The people sinning is spoken of as if they were making their bodies unclean. Alternate translation: "sin and defile themselves"

##### they slander

"they speak insults about"

##### glorious ones

This refers to spiritual beings, such as angels.

#### Jude 1:9

##### General Information:

Balaam was a prophet who refused to curse Israel for an enemy but then taught that enemy to get the people to marry unbelievers and become idol worshipers. Korah was a man of Israel who rebelled against Moses's leadership and Aaron's priesthood.

##### did not dare to bring a slanderous judgment against him

"did not dare to speak anything evil against him" or "did not dare to insult or condemn him"

#### Jude 1:10

##### these people

the ungodly people

##### whatever they do not understand

"anything of which they do not know the meaning." Possible meanings are 1) "everything good that they do not understand" or 2) "the glorious ones, which they do not understand" (Jude 1:8).

#### Jude 1:11

##### walked in the way of Cain

"Walked in the way" here is a metaphor for "lived in the same way as." Alternate translation: "lived the same way Cain lived"

#### Jude 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Jude uses a series of metaphors to describe the ungodly men. He tells the believers how to recognize these men when they are among them.

##### These people

The word "These" refers to the "ungodly men" of Jude 1:4.

##### dangerous reefs

Reefs are large rocks that are very close to the surface of water in the sea. Because sailors cannot see them, they are very dangerous. Ships can easily be destroyed if they hit these rocks.

##### autumn trees without fruit—twice dead, uprooted

These words contain two metaphors for dead people and apply them both to "these people."

##### autumn trees without fruit

This is the first metaphor for dead people. Trees in autumn look dead because their leaves have all fallen off, as has the fruit of fruit trees.

##### twice dead, uprooted

This is the second metaphor for dead people. After these "autumn trees" have lost their leaves and fruit, they die their first metaphorical death. Then people uproot them, and they die their second metaphorical death.

##### uprooted

completely pulled out of the ground so their roots dry out

#### Jude 1:13

##### violent waves in the sea

As the sea's waves are blown by a strong wind, so the ungodly people are easily moved in many directions.

##### foaming up their shame

As wind causes wild waves to stir up dirty foam—so these men, through their false teaching and actions, shame themselves. Alternate translation: "and just as waves bring up foam and dirt, these men pollute others with their shame"

wandering stars

Those who studied the stars in ancient times noticed that some "stars,"—what we call planets—do not move the way that stars do, so they called them "wandering stars." Alternate translation: "They are like moving stars"

##### for whom the gloom of complete darkness has been reserved forever

Here "darkness" is a metonym that represents the place of the dead or hell, and "the gloom of complete darkness" is an idiom that means "a totally dark place." The phrase "has been reserved" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and God will put them in the gloom and complete darkness of hell forever"

#### Jude 1:14

##### the seventh from Adam

If Adam is counted as the first generation of mankind, Enoch is the seventh. If Adam's son is counted as the first, Enoch is sixth in line.

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to this important thing I am going to say"

##### holy ones

Possible meanings are 1) "angels" or 2) "saints" or 3) "angels and saints"

#### Jude 1:15

##### to execute judgment on

"to make judgment on" or "to judge"

#### Jude 1:16

##### grumblers, complainers

People who do not want to obey and speak against godly authority. "Grumblers" tend to speak quietly, while "complainers" speak openly.

##### Their mouths speak loud boasts

They praise themselves so that others can hear.

##### flattering others

"giving false praise to others"

#### Jude 1:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Jude 1:18

##### mockers who will follow their own ungodly desires

Ungodly desires are spoken of as if they were a path that a person will follow. Alternate translation: "mockers who will continue to dishonor God by doing the evil things they wish to do"

#### Jude 1:19

##### It is these

"It is these mockers" or "These mockers are the ones"

##### they are worldly

Here "worldly" describes someone who is concerned with things of the world rather than things of God. Often in the Bible "world" represents all things opposed to God. Alternate translation: "they are only concerned with doing what is evil"

##### they do not have the Spirit

The Holy Spirit is spoken of as if he were something that people can possess. Alternate translation: "the Spirit is not within them"

#### Jude 1:20

##### Connecting Statement:

Jude tells the believers how they should live and how they should treat others.

##### But you, beloved

"Do not be like them, beloved. Instead"

##### build yourselves up

Becoming increasingly able to trust in God and obey him is spoken of as if it were the process of constructing a building.

#### Jude 1:21

##### Keep yourselves in God's love

Remaining able to receive God's love is spoken of as if one were keeping oneself in a certain place.

##### wait for

"eagerly look forward to"

##### the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ that brings you eternal life

Here "mercy" stands for Jesus Christ himself, who will show his mercy to the believers by making them live forever with him.

#### Jude 1:22

##### those who doubt

"those who do not yet believe that Jesus is God"

#### Jude 1:23

##### snatching them out of the fire

The picture is that of pulling people from a fire before they start to burn. Alternate translation: "doing for them whatever needs to be done to keep them from dying without Christ. This is like pulling them from the fire"

##### to others show mercy with fear

"be kind to others, but be afraid of sinning the way they do"

##### hating even the garment defiled by the flesh

Jude exaggerates to warn his readers that they can become like those sinners. Alternate translation: "treating them as though you could become guilty of sin just by touching their clothes"

#### Jude 1:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jude closes with a blessing.

##### to cause you to stand before his glorious presence

His glory is brilliant light that represents his greatness. Alternate translation: "and to allow you to enjoy and worship his glory"

##### glorious presence without blemish and with

Here sin is spoken of as if it were dirt on one's body or a flaw on one's body. Alternate translation: "glorious presence, where you will be without sin and have"

#### Jude 1:25

##### to the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord

"to the only God, who saved us because of what Jesus Christ did." This emphasizes that God the Father as well as the Son is the Savior.

##### be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority, before all time, now, and forever

God has always had, now has, and always will have glory, absolute leadership, and complete control of all things.

## Chapter 1

# Revelation 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter explains how the Book of Revelation records the vision John received on the island of Patmos.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make them easier to read. The ULB does this with the quoted words in verse 7.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Seven churches

John wrote this book to seven actual churches in Asia Minor, which is now the country of Turkey.

#### White

The Bible often speaks of something that belongs to a person as being "white." This is metaphor and metonym for that person living rightly and pleasing God. (See: and and righteous)

#### "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come"

God exists now. He has always existed. He will always exist. Your language may have a different way of saying this.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Blood

Blood is a metonym for death. Jesus "has released us from our sins by his blood." John means that Jesus saved us from our sins by dying for us.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "He is coming with the clouds"

Jesus went into the clouds when he went up to heaven after God raised him from the dead. When Jesus returns, he will also be "with the clouds." It is not clear whether he will be sitting or riding on clouds or coming in the clouds or "with the clouds" in some other way. Your translation should express this in a way that is natural in your language.

#### "One like a son of man"

This refers to Jesus. You should translate the words "son of man" using the same words as you did in the Gospels for when Jesus called himself the "Son of Man."

#### "The angels of the seven churches"

The word "angels" here can also mean "messengers." This might refer to heavenly beings, or to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches. John uses the same word "angel" (singular) in verse 1 and in many other places throughout the book. Your translation should also use the same word.

#### Revelation 1:1

##### General Information:

This is an introduction to the book of Revelation. It explains that it is a revelation from Jesus Christ and it gives a blessing to those who read it.

##### his servants

This refers to people who believe in Christ.

##### what must soon take place

"the events that must happen soon"

##### made it known

"communicated it"

##### to his servant John

John wrote this book and was referring to himself here. Alternate translation: "to me, John, his servant"

#### Revelation 1:2

##### who testified about ... all the things that he saw

The word "who" refers to John. This tells what John did after he learned about the revelation. Alternate translation: "And John testified about ... all the things that he saw"

##### the word of God

"the message that God spoke"

##### the testimony of Jesus Christ

These words could refer to 1) the testimony that John has given about Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "he has also given testimony about Jesus Christ" Or 2) the testimony that Jesus Christ has given about himself.

#### Revelation 1:3

##### the one who reads aloud

This does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone who reads it aloud. Alternate translation: "anyone who reads aloud"

##### obey what is written in it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "obey what John has written in it" or "obey what they read in it"

##### the time is near

"the things that must happen will soon happen"

#### Revelation 1:4

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of John's letter. Here he names himself as the writer and greets the people he is writing to.

##### May grace be to you and peace

"May you receive grace and peace" or "May you experience grace and peace." This is a wish or blessing.

##### from the one who is

"from God, who is"

##### who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

##### seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

#### Revelation 1:5

##### and from Jesus Christ

This continues the blessing from [Revelation 1:4](./04.md). Alternate translation:"and may grace be to you and peace also from Jesus Christ" or "and may Jesus Christ treat you kindly and enable you to live peacefully and securely"

##### the firstborn from the dead

"the first person to be raised from death, never to die again"

##### from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

##### has freed us from our sins

"has released us from our sins"

#### Revelation 1:6

##### has made us a kingdom, priests

"has set us apart and begun to rule over us and he has made us priests"

##### his God and Father

This is one person. Alternate translation: "God, his Father"

##### Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### to him be the glory and the power

This is a wish or prayer. Possible meanings are 1) "May people honor his glory and power" or 2) "May he have glory and power." John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything.

##### the power

This probably refers to his authority as king.

#### Revelation 1:7

##### General Information:

Here John quotes from Daniel and Zechariah.

##### every eye

Since people see with the eyes, the word "eye" is used to refer to people. Alternate translation: "every person" or "everyone"

##### including those who pierced him

"even those who pierced him will see him"

##### pierced him

Jesus's hands and feet were pierced when he was nailed to the cross. Here it refers to people killing him. Alternate translation: "killed him"

##### pierced

made a hole in

#### Revelation 1:8

##### "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is ... the Almighty."

This can be restated so that the quotation is not split. Alternate translation: "The Lord God says, 'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty.'" or "'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty,' says the Lord God."

##### the Alpha and the Omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live." If the meanings are unclear to readers, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. Alternate translation: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last"

##### who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 1:9

##### General Information:

John explains how his vision began and the instructions the Spirit gave him.

##### your ... you

These refer to the believers in the seven churches.

##### I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was

This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "I, John, am your brother who shares with you in God's kingdom and also suffers and patiently endures trials along with you because we belong to Jesus. I was"

##### because of the word of God

"because I told others the word of God"

##### the word of God

"the message that God spoke." Translate as in Revelation 1:2.

##### the testimony about Jesus

"the testimony that God has given about Jesus." Translate as in Revelation 1:2.

#### Revelation 1:10

##### I was in the Spirit

John speaks of being influenced by God's Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. Alternate translation: "I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me"

##### the Lord's day

the day of worship for believers in Christ

##### loud voice like a trumpet

The voice was so loud it sounded like a trumpet.

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

#### Revelation 1:11

##### Smyrna ... Pergamum ... Thyatira ... Sardis ... Philadelphia ... Laodicea

These are names of cities in the region of western Asia that today is modern Turkey.

#### Revelation 1:12

##### Connecting Statement:

John begins to explain what he saw in his vision.

##### whose voice

This refers to the person speaking. Alternate translation: "who"

#### Revelation 1:13

##### son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human.

##### a golden sash

a piece of cloth worn around the chest. It may have had golden threads in it.

#### Revelation 1:14

##### His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow

Wool and snow are examples of things that are very white. The repetition of "as white as" emphasizes that they were very white.

##### wool

This is the hair of a sheep or goat. It was known to be very white.

##### his eyes were like a flame of fire

His eyes are described as being full of light like fire flames. Alternate translation: "his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire"

#### Revelation 1:15

##### His feet were like polished bronze

Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. Alternate translation: "His feet were very shiny like polished bronze"

##### like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace

The bronze would be refined first and then polished. Alternate translation: "like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and polished"

##### furnace

a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal in it, and the hot fire would burn away any impurities that were in the metal.

##### the sound of many rushing waters

This is very loud, like the sound of a large, fast flowing river, of a large waterfall, or of loud waves in the sea.

#### Revelation 1:16

##### a sword ... was coming out of his mouth

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.

##### a sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions.

#### Revelation 1:17

##### fell at his feet like a dead man

John lay down facing the ground. He was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect.

##### He placed his right hand on me

"He touched me with his right hand"

##### I am the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus.

#### Revelation 1:18

##### I have the keys of death and of Hades

Having the power over something is spoken of as having the keys to it. The implied information is that he can give life to those who have died and let them out of Hades. Alternate translation: "I have the power over death and over Hades" or "I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades"

#### Revelation 1:19

##### Connecting Statement:

The Son of Man continues to speak.

#### Revelation 1:20

##### stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches.

##### lampstands

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:12.

##### the angels of the seven churches

Possible meanings are that these "angels" are 1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches or 2) human messengers to the seven churches, either messengers who went from John to the churches or the leaders of those churches.

##### seven churches

This refers to seven churches that actually existed in Asia Minor at that time. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

## Chapter 2

# Revelation 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 together are usually called the "seven letters to the seven churches." You may wish to set each letter apart. The reader can then easily see that they are separate letters.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted words of verse 27.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Poverty and wealth

The Christians in Smyrna were poor because they did not have much money. But they were rich spiritually because God would reward them for their suffering. (See: spirit)

#### "The devil is about to"

Some authorities were about to take some of the Christians in Smyrna and throw them into prison and even kill some of them

#### Balaam, Balak, and Jezebel

Balaam, Balak, and Jezebel were people who lived long before Jesus was born. They all tried to harm the Israelites either by cursing them or by making them want to stop obeying God.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### "Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches"

The writer knew that almost all of his readers had physical ears. The ear here is a metonym for hearing what God says and desiring to obey him.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "The angel of the church"

The word "angel" here can also mean "messenger." This might refer to the messenger or leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in [Revelation 1:20](../../rev/01/20.md).

#### "The words of the one who"

The verses with these words can be difficult to translate. They do not make complete sentences. You may need to add "These are" to the beginning of these verses. Also, Jesus used these words to speak of himself as if he were speaking of another person. Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking of other people. Jesus began speaking in [Revelation 1:17](../../rev/01/17.md). He continues to speak through the end of Chapter 3.

#### Revelation 2:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Ephesus.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### stars

These stars are symbols. They represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16]

##### lampstands

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:12]

#### Revelation 2:2

##### I know ... your hard labor, and your patient endurance

"Labor" and "endurance" are abstract nouns and can be translated with verbs "work" and "endure." Alternate translation: "I know ... that you work very hard and that you endure patiently"

##### but are not

"but are not apostles"

##### you have found them to be false

"you have recognized that those people are false apostles"

#### Revelation 2:3

##### for my name

"Name" here is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you believe in my name" or "because you believe in me"

##### you have not grown weary

Being discouraged is spoken of as being tired. Alternate translation: "you have not become discouraged" or "you have not quit"

#### Revelation 2:4

##### I have against you the fact that

"I disapprove of you because" or "I am angry with you because"

##### you have left behind your first love

To stop doing something is spoken of as leaving it behind. Love is spoken of as if it is an object that can be left behind. Alternate translation: "you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning"

#### Revelation 2:5

##### from where you have fallen

No longer loving as much as they used to is spoken of as haven fallen. Alternate translation: "how much you have changed" or "how much you used to love me"

##### Unless you repent

"If you do not repent"

##### remove your lampstand

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated "lampstand" in [Revelation 1:12]

#### Revelation 2:6

##### Nicolaitans

people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus

#### Revelation 2:7

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen to" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

##### the one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. Alternate translation: "anyone who resists evil" or "those who do not agree to do evil"

##### the paradise of God

"God's garden." This is a symbol for heaven.

#### Revelation 2:8

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Smyrna.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Smyrna

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:17]

#### Revelation 2:9

##### I know your sufferings and your poverty

"Sufferings" and "poverty" can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: "I know how you have suffered and how poor you are"

##### I know the slander of those who say they are Jews

"Slander" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I know how people have slandered you—those who say they are Jews" or "I know how people have said terrible things about you—those who say they are Jews"

##### but they are not

"but they are not real Jews"

##### a synagogue of Satan

People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews.

#### Revelation 2:10

##### The devil is about to throw some of you into prison

The words "The devil" here are a metonym for the people who obey the devil. Alternate translation: "The devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison"

##### Be faithful until death

"Be faithful to me even if they kill you." The use of the word "until" does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death.

##### the crown

"the winner's crown." This was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete.

##### the crown of life

Possible meanings are 1) "a crown that shows that I have given you eternal life" or 2) "true life as a prize like a winner's crown"

#### Revelation 2:11

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### The one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

##### will not be hurt by the second death

"will not experience the second death" or "will not die a second time"

#### Revelation 2:12

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Pergamum.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Pergamum

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### the sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:16

#### Revelation 2:13

##### Satan's throne

Possible meanings are 1) Satan's power and evil influence on people, or 2) the place where Satan rules.

##### you hold on tightly to my name

"Name" here is a metonym for the person. Firmly believing is spoken of as holding on tightly. Alternate translation: "you firmly believe in me"

##### you did not deny your faith in me

"Faith" can be translated with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "you continued to tell people that you believe in me"

##### Antipas

This is the name of a man.

#### Revelation 2:14

##### But I have a few things against you

"I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did." See how you translated a similar phrase in Revelation 2:4.

##### who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who

Possible meanings are 1) "who teach what Balaam taught; he" or 2) "who do what Balaam taught; he."

##### Balak

This is the name of a king.

##### who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel

Something that leads people to sin is spoken of as a stone in the road that people stumble on. Alternate translation: "who showed Balak how to cause the people of Israel to sin"

##### be sexually immoral

"sin sexually" or "commit sexual sin"

#### Revelation 2:15

##### Nicolaitans

This was the name for a group of people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:6]

#### Revelation 2:16

##### Repent, therefore

"So repent"

##### If you do not, I

The verb can be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "If you do not repent, I"

##### wage war against them

"fight against them"

##### with the sword in my mouth

This refers to the sword in [Revelation 1:16]

#### Revelation 2:17

##### Let the one who has an ear hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### To the one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

#### Revelation 2:18

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Thyatira.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Thyatira

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### who has eyes like a flame of fire

His eyes are describes as being full of light like a flame of fire. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:14]

##### feet like polished bronze

Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:15]

#### Revelation 2:19

##### your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

The abstract nouns "love," "faith," "service," and "endurance" can be translated with verbs. Alternate translation: "How you have loved, trusted, served, and endured patiently"

##### your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

The implied objects of these verbs can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "How you have loved me and others, trusted me, served me and others, and endured troubles patiently"

#### Revelation 2:20

##### But I have this against you

"But I disapprove of some of the things you are doing" or "But I am angry with you because of something you are doing." See how you translated a similar phrase in Revelation 2:4.

##### the woman Jezebel, who

Jesus spoke of a certain woman in their church as if she were Queen Jezebel because she did the same kinds of sinful things that Queen Jezebel had done long before that time. Alternate translation: "the woman who is just like Jezebel and"

#### Revelation 2:21

##### I gave her time to repent

"I gave her opportunity to repent" or "I waited for her to repent"

#### Revelation 2:22

##### I will throw her onto a sickbed ... into great suffering

Her having to lie in bed would be the result of Jesus making her very sick. Alternate translation: "I will make her lie sick in bed ... I will make suffer greatly" or "I will make her very sick ... I will make suffer greatly"

##### those who commit adultery with her into great suffering

Jesus speaks of causing people to suffer as throwing them into suffering. Alternate translation: "I will make those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly"

##### commit adultery

"practice adultery"

##### unless they repent of her deeds

This implies that they have participated with her in her wicked behavior. By repenting of her deeds, they also repent of participating in her behavior. Alternate translation: "if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does" or "if they do not repent of participating in her deeds"

#### Revelation 2:23

##### I will strike her children dead

"I will kill her children"

##### her children

Jesus spoke of her followers as if they were her children. Alternate translation: 'her followers" or "the people who do what she teaches"

##### thoughts and hearts

The term "heart" a metonym that represents feelings and desires. Alternate translation: "what people think and want"

##### I will give to each one of you

This is an expression about punishment and reward. Alternate translation: "I will punish or reward each one of you"

#### Revelation 2:24

##### everyone who does not hold this teaching

Believing a teaching is spoken of as holding the teaching. Alternate translation: "everyone who does not believe this teaching"

##### does not hold this teaching

The noun "teaching" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "does not hold to what she teaches" or "does not believe what she teaches"

##### deep things

Secret things are spoken of as if they were deep. Alternate translation: "secret things"

#### Revelation 2:25

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 2:26

##### The one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

##### does my works

"does what I command him to do"

#### Revelation 2:27

##### He will rule ... break them into pieces

This is a prophecy from the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applies it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.

##### He will rule them with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. Alternate translation: "He will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick"

##### like clay jars he will break them into pieces

Breaking them to pieces is an image that represents either 1) destroying evildoers or 2) defeating enemies. Alternate translation: "He will defeat his enemies completely as if breaking clay jars into pieces"

#### Revelation 2:28

##### Just as I have received from my Father

Some languages may need to tell what was received. Possible meanings are 1) "Just as I have received authority from my Father" or 2) "Just as I have received the morning star from my Father."

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### I will also give him

Here "him" refers to the one who conquers.

##### morning star

This is a bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory.

#### Revelation 2:29

##### Let the one who has an ear hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

## Chapter 3

# Revelation 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 together are usually called the "seven letters to the seven churches." You may wish to set each letter apart. The reader can then easily see that they are separate letters.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with verse 7.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](../../rev/01/04.md).

#### Seven stars

These stars are the seven stars of [Revelation 1:20](../../rev/01/20.md).

### Important metaphors in this chapter

#### Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking

Jesus speaks of his desire to have the Christians in Laodicea obey him as if he were a man asking people in a house to allow him to enter and eat with them

#### "Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches"

The speaker knew that almost all of his readers had physical ears. The ear here is a metonym for hearing what God says and desiring to obey him.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### "The angel of the church"

The word "angel" here can also mean "messenger." This might refer to the messenger or leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in [Revelation 1:20](../../rev/01/20.md).

#### "The words of the one who"

The verses with these words can be difficult to translate. They do not make complete sentences. You may need to add "These are" to the beginning of these verses. Also, Jesus used these words to speak of himself as if he were speaking of another person. Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking of other people. Jesus began speaking in [Revelation 1:17](../../rev/01/17.md). He continues to speak through the end of Chapter 3.

#### Revelation 3:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Sardis.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Sardis

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### the seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4]

##### the seven stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16]

##### You have a name that you are alive

The word "name" here is a metonym for a reputation. Alternate translation: "You have a reputation for being alive" or "People think that you are alive"

##### alive ... dead

Obeying and honoring God is spoken of as being alive; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being dead.

#### Revelation 3:2

##### Wake up and strengthen what remains but is about to die

The good deeds done by the believers in Sardis are spoken of as if they were alive but in danger of dying. Alternate translation: "Wake up and complete the work that remains; otherwise what you have done will become worthless" or "Wake up. If you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless"

##### Wake up

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. Alternate translation: "Be alert" or "Be careful"

#### Revelation 3:3

##### what you have received and heard

This refers to God's word, which they believed. Alternate translation: "God's word that you heard and the truth that you believed"

##### if you do not wake up

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. See how you translated "wake up" on [Revelation 3:2]

##### I will come as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected.

#### Revelation 3:4

##### a few names

The word "names" is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "a few people"

##### have not stained their clothes

Jesus speaks of sin in a person's life as if it were a stain on clothes. Alternate translation: "have not made their lives sinful"

##### will walk with me

People commonly spoke of living as "walking." Alternate translation: "will live with me"

##### dressed in white

White clothes represent a pure life without sin. Alternate translation: "and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure"

#### Revelation 3:5

##### The one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

##### will be clothed in white garments

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "will wear white garments" or "I will give white clothes"

##### I will confess his name

He would announce that the person belongs to him, not simply say the person's name. Alternate translation: "I will announce that he belongs to me"

##### before my Father

"in the presence of my Father"

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Revelation 3:6

##### Let the one who has an ear hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

#### Revelation 3:7

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Philadelphia.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Philadelphia

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### key of David

Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's key.

##### he opens and no one shuts

"he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"

##### he shuts and no one can open

"he closes the door and no one can open it"

#### Revelation 3:8

##### I have put before you an open door

"I have opened a door for you"

##### you have obeyed my word

Possible meanings are 1) "you have followed by teachings" or 2) "you have obeyed my commands"

##### my name

The word "name" here is is a metonym for the person who has that name. Alternate translation: "me"

#### Revelation 3:9

##### General Information:

The writer begins his sentence with "I will cause," but he does not finish the sentence by telling what he will cause "those who belong to the synagogue of Satan" to do. He begins the sentence again with "I will make them," where "them" refers to "those who belong to the synagogue of Satan."

##### synagogue of Satan

People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were in a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:9]

##### those calling themselves Jews but are not, but rather liars

"those calling themselves Jews when they are not Jews: instead, they are liars." These words further describe "those who belong to the synagogue of Satan."

##### bow down

This is a sign of submission, not worship. Alternate translation: "bow down in submission"

##### before your feet

Here the word "feet" represent the person before whom these people bow down. Alternate translation: "before you" or "to you"

##### they will know

"they will learn" or "they will admit"

#### Revelation 3:10

##### will also keep you from the hour of testing

"will also prevent the hour of testing from happening to you" or "will protect you so you do not enter the hour of testing"

##### hour of testing

"time of testing." This probably means "the time when people try to make you disobey me."

##### is coming

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 3:11

##### I am coming soon

It is understood that he is coming in order to judge. Alternate translation: "I am coming to judge soon"

##### Hold to what you have

Continuing to believe firmly in Christ is spoken of as if it were holding something tightly. Alternate translation: "Continue to believe firmly"

##### crown

A crown was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete. Here "crown" stands for a reward. See how you translated "crown" in Revelation 2:10.

#### Revelation 3:12

##### The one who conquers I will make a pillar in the temple of my God

Here "The one who conquers" refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

#### Revelation 3:13

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

#### Revelation 3:14

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Laodicea.

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

##### Laodicea

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11]

##### The words of the Amen

Here "the Amen" is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.

##### the ruler over God's creation

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who rules over everything that God created" or 2) "the one through whom God created everything."

#### Revelation 3:15

##### you are neither cold nor hot

The writer speaks of the Laodiceans as if they were water. Possible meanings are 1) "cold" and hot" represent two extremes of spiritual interest or love for God, where "cold" is to be completely against God, and to be "hot" is to be zealous to serve him, or 2) "cold" and "hot" both refer to water that is useful for drinking or for cooking or healing, respectively. Alternate translation: "you are like water that is neither cold nor hot"

#### Revelation 3:16

##### I am about to vomit you out of my mouth

Rejecting them is spoken of as vomiting them out of the mouth. Alternate translation: "I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water"

#### Revelation 3:17

##### you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked

Jesus speaks of their spiritual condition as if he were speaking about their physical condition. Alternate translation: "You are like people who are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked"

#### Revelation 3:18

##### Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see

Here to "buy" represents receiving things from Jesus that have true spiritual value. The "gold refined by fire" represents spiritual wealth. The "brilliant white garments" represents rightousness. And the "salve to anoint your eyes" represents the ability to understand spiritual things. Alternate translation: "Come to me and receive spiritual wealth, which is more valuable than gold that is refined by fire. Receive from me righteousness, which is like brilliant white garments, so that you will not be ashamed. And receive from me wisdom, which is like salve for the eyes, so that you may understand spiritual things"

#### Revelation 3:19

##### be earnest and repent

"be serious and repent"

#### Revelation 3:20

##### I am standing at the door and am knocking

Jesus speaks about wanting people to relate to him as if he wanted them to invite him into their home. Alternate translation: "I am like one standing at the door and knocking"

##### am knocking

When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they knock on the door. Alternate translation: "I want you to let me come inside"

##### hears my voice

The phrase "my voice" refers to Christ speaking. Alternate translation: "hears me speak" or "hears me call"

##### I will come into his home

Some languages might prefer the verb "go" here. Alternate translation: "I will go in to his home"

##### and will eat with him

This represents being together as friends.

#### Revelation 3:21

##### The one who conquers

This refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7]

##### to sit down with me on my throne

To sit on a throne means to rule. Alternate translation: "to rule with me" or "to sit down on my throne and rule with me"

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Revelation 3:22

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the Son of Man's messages to the angels of the seven churches.

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has an ear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

##### Let the one ... hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7]

## Chapter 4

# Revelation 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with verses 8 and 11.

John has finished describing the letters to the churches. He now begins to describe a vision that God showed him.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Jasper, carnelian, and emerald

These words refer to kinds of special stones that the people in John's day considered valuable. It may be difficult for you to translate these words if people in your culture do not value special kinds of stones.

#### Twenty-four elders

Elders are church leaders. Twenty-four elders may be symbolic of the whole church through the ages. There were twelve tribes in Old Testament Israel and twelve apostles in the New Testament church.

#### Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](../../rev/01/04.md).

#### Giving glory to God

God's glory is the great beauty and radiant majesty that God has because he is God. Other Bible writers describe it as if it were a light so bright that no one can look at it. No one can give God this kind of glory, because it is already his. For people "to give glory" to God and for God "to receive glory" means that people are praising and worshiping God because of the glory he already has. (See: glory and worthy and worship)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Difficult images

Such things as bolts of lightning coming from the throne, lamps that are spirits, and a sea in front of the throne may be difficult to imagine, and so the words for them may be difficult to translate.

#### Revelation 4:1

##### General Information:

John begins to describe his vision of the throne of God.

##### After these things

"Just after I had seen these things." Here "these things" refers to what John saw in (Revelation 2:1-3:22)

##### an open door in heaven

This expression stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision.

##### speaking to me like a trumpet

How the voice was like a trumpet can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet"

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:10.

#### Revelation 4:2

##### I was in the Spirit

John speaks of being influenced by God's Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:10]

#### Revelation 4:3

##### jasper and carnelian

These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red.

##### emerald

a green, valuable stone

#### Revelation 4:4

##### twenty-four elders

"24 elders"

##### golden crowns

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Such crowns, made of leaves, were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 4:5

##### flashes of lightning

Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.

##### rumblings, and crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4]

#### Revelation 4:6

##### a sea of glass

How it was like glass or a sea can be stated clearly. Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. Alternate translation: "a sea that was as smooth as glass" or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. Alternate translation: "glass that was spread out like a sea"

##### like crystal

How it was like crystal can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "clear as crystal"

##### In the middle of the throne and around the throne

"Immediately around the throne" or "Close to the throne and around it"

##### four living creatures

"four living beings" or "four living things"

#### Revelation 4:7

##### The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle

How the head of each living creature appeared to John is expressed as a comparison with something more familiar.

##### living creature

"living being" or "living thing." See how you translated this in Revelation 4:6

#### Revelation 4:8

##### full of eyes on top and underneath

The top and bottom of each wing was covered with eyes.

##### who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 4:9

##### the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever

This is one person. The one who sits on the throne lives forever and ever.

##### forever and ever

These two words mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "for all eternity"

#### Revelation 4:10

##### twenty-four elders

"24 elders." See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4]

##### fall down

They purposely lie down facing the ground to show that they are worshiping.

##### They lay their crowns before the throne

These crowns looked like wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. The elders were respectfully placing the crowns on the ground, showing that they were submitting to God's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "they lay their crowns before the throne to show that they are submitting to him"

##### lay

Possible meanings are 1) to place or 2) to throw down forcibly, as of something worthless ("throw," Revelation 2:22). The reader should understand that the elders are acting respectfully.

#### Revelation 4:11

##### our Lord and our God

"our Lord and God." This is one person, the one sitting on the throne.

##### to receive glory and honor and power

These are things that God always has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. Alternate translation: "to be praised for your glory, honor, and power" or "for everyone to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and powerful"

## Chapter 5

# Revelation 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 9-13.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sealed scroll

Kings and important people in John's time wrote important documents on large pieces of paper or animal skin. They then rolled them up and sealed them with wax so they would stay closed. Only the person to whom the document was written had the authority to open it by breaking the seal. In this chapter, "the one who was seated on the throne" had written the scroll. Only the person called "the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David" and "the Lamb" had the authority to open it. (See: scroll and authority)

#### Twenty-four elders

Elders are church leaders. Twenty-four elders may be symbolic of the whole church through the ages. There were twelve tribes in Old Testament Israel and twelve apostles in the New Testament church.

#### Christian prayers

The prayers of Christians are described as incense. Christian prayers have a good smell to God. He is pleased when Christians pray.

#### Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](../../rev/01/04.md).

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

The "Lion of the tribe of Judah" and the "Root of David" are metaphors that refer to Jesus. Jesus descended from the tribe of Judah and the family of David. Lions are fierce, and all animals and people are afraid of them, so they are a metaphor for a king whom everyone obeys. The words "Root of David" speak of Israel's King David as if he were a seed that God had planted and of Jesus as if he were a root growing from that seed.

#### Revelation 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe what he saw in his vision of the throne of God.

##### Then I saw

"After I saw those things, I saw"

##### the one who was seated on the throne

This is the same "one" as in Revelation 4:2-3.

##### a scroll written on the front and on the back

"a scroll with writing on the front and the back"

##### sealed with seven seals

"and it had seven seals keeping it closed"

#### Revelation 5:2

##### Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

The person would need to break the seals in order to open the scroll. Alternate translation: "Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?"

##### Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

This can be translated as a command: "The one who is worthy to do this should come to break the seals and open the scroll!"

#### Revelation 5:3

##### in heaven or on the earth or under the earth

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. Alternate translation: "anywhere in heaven or on the earth or under the earth"

#### Revelation 5:4

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 5:5

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### The Lion of the tribe of Judah

This is a title for the man from the tribe of Judah that God had promised would be the great king. Alternate translation: "The one who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah" or "The king who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah"

##### The Lion

The king is spoken of as if he were a lion because a lion is very strong.

##### the Root of David

This is a title for the descendant of David that God had promised would be the great king. Alternate translation: "the one who is called the Root of David"

##### the Root of David

The descendant is spoken of as if David's family were a tree and he were a root of that tree. Alternate translation: "the Descendant of David"

#### Revelation 5:6

##### General Information:

The Lamb appears in the throne room.

##### a Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:4.

##### sent out into all the earth

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "which God sent out over all the earth"

#### Revelation 5:7

##### He went

He approached the throne. Some languages would use the verb "come." Alternate translation: "He came"

#### Revelation 5:8

##### the Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6]

##### twenty-four elders

"24 elders." See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4]

##### fell down

"lay down on the ground." Their faces were toward the ground to show that they were worshiping the Lamb. They did this on purpose; they did not fall accidentally.

##### Each of them

Possible meanings are 1) "each of the elders and living creatures" or 2) "each of the elders."

##### a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of God's holy people

The incense here is a symbol for the believers' prayers to God.

#### Revelation 5:9

##### For you were slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For they slaughtered you" or "For people killed you"

##### slaughtered

If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.

##### with your blood

Since blood represents a person's life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means "by your death" or "by dying."

##### you purchased people for God

"you bought people so that they could belong to God" or "you paid the price so that people could belong to God"

##### from every tribe, language, people, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

#### Revelation 5:10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 5:11

##### ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands

Use an expression in your language that shows that it is a huge number. Alternate translation: "millions" or "too many thousands to count"

#### Revelation 5:12

##### Worthy is the Lamb, who has been slaughtered

"The Lamb, who has been slaughtered, is worthy"

##### to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise

These are all things that the Lamb has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns. See how you translated a similar sentence in [Revelation 4:11]

#### Revelation 5:13

##### in heaven and on the earth and under the earth

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:3]

##### To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be

"May he who sits on the throne and the Lamb have"

#### Revelation 5:14

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 6

# Revelation 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The author describes what happened after the Lamb opens each of the first six seals. The Lamb does not open the seventh seal until Chapter 8.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Seven Seals

Kings and important people in John's time wrote important documents on large pieces of paper or animal skin. They then rolled them up and sealed them with wax so they would stay closed. Only the person to whom the document was written had the authority to open it by breaking the seal. In this chapter, the Lamb opens the seals.

#### The Four Horsemen

As the Lamb opens each of the first four seals, the author describes horsemen riding different colored horses. The colors of the horses seem to symbolize how the rider will affect the earth.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### The Lamb

This refers to Jesus. In this chapter, it is also a title for Jesus.

#### Similes

In verses 12-14, the author uses several similes to try to describe the images he sees in the vision. He compares the images to everyday things.

#### Revelation 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the events that happened before the throne of God. The Lamb begins to open the seals on the scroll.

##### Come!

This is a command to one person, apparently the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.

#### Revelation 6:2

##### he was given a crown

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "he received a crown" or "God gave him a crown"

##### a crown

Crowns were wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves and were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads. The crown given to rider may have been hammered out in gold in the likeness of wreaths of olives branches or laurel leaves.

#### Revelation 6:3

##### the second seal

"the next seal" or "seal number two"

##### the second living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number two"

#### Revelation 6:4

##### came out—fiery red

This can the stated as a second sentence. Alternate translation: "came out. It was red like fire" or "came out. It was bright red"

##### To its rider was given permission

This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God gave permission to its rider" or "Its rider received person"

##### This rider was given a huge sword

This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "This rider received a huge sword" or "God gave this rider a huge sword"

##### a huge sword

"a very large sword" or "a great sword"

#### Revelation 6:5

##### the third seal

"the next seal" or "seal number three"

##### the third living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number three"

##### a pair of scales

a tool used for weighing things

#### Revelation 6:6

##### A choenix of wheat for one denarius

Some languages might want a verb such as "cost" or "buy" in the sentence. There was very little wheat for all the people, so its price was very high. Alternate translation: "A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius" or "Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius"

##### A choenix of wheat ... three choenices of barley

A "choenix" was a specific measure that was about one liter. The plural of "choenix" is "choenices." Alternate translation: "One liter of wheat ... three liters of barley" or "One bowl of wheat ... three bowls of barley"

##### one denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages. Alternate translation: "one silver coin" or "the pay for one day of work"

##### But do not harm the oil and the wine

If the oil and wine were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.

##### the oil and the wine

These expressions probably stand for the olive oil harvest and the grape harvest.

#### Revelation 6:7

##### the fourth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number four"

##### the fourth living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number four"

#### Revelation 6:8

##### pale horse

"grey horse." This is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death.

##### one-fourth of the earth

Here "the earth" represents the people of the earth. Alternate translation: "one-fourth of the people on the earth"

##### the sword

A sword is a weapon, and here it represents war.

##### with the wild animals of the earth

This means that Death and Hades would cause the wild animals to attack and kill people.

#### Revelation 6:9

##### the fifth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number five"

##### under the altar

This may have been "at the base of the altar."

##### those who had been killed

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "those whom others had killed"

##### because of the word of God and the testimony which they held

Here "word of God" is a metonym for the message from God and "held" is a metaphor. Possible meanings are 1) holding the testimony refers to believing God's word and testimony. Alternate translation: "because of the teachings of scripture and what they taught about Jesus Christ" or "because they believed the word of God, which is his testimony" or 2) holding the testimony refers to testifying about the word of God. Alternate translation: "because they testified about the word of God"

#### Revelation 6:10

##### avenge our blood

The word blood here represents their deaths. Alternate translation: "punish those who killed us"

#### Revelation 6:11

##### Then each of them was given a white robe

Either God or an angel gave them a white robe. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then each of them received a white robe"

##### they were told

Either God or an angel is speaking. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God told them" or "an angel told them"

##### until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers who were to be killed, just as they had been killed, was made complete

Here "servants" and "brothers" refer to the same group. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until enemies have killed all of Christ's servants whom God had determined would die, just as those under the altar had died"

##### brothers

Christians are often spoken of as being one another's brothers. Females were among those spoken of here. Alternate translation: "fellow Christians" or "fellow believers"

#### Revelation 6:12

##### the sixth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number six"

##### as black as sackcloth

Sometimes sackcloth was made of black hair. People would wear sackcloth when they were mourning. The image of sackcloth is meant to lead people to think of death and mourning. Alternate translation: "as black as mourning clothes"

##### like blood

The image of blood is meant to lead people to think of death. How it was like blood can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "red like blood"

#### Revelation 6:13

##### just as a fig tree drops its unripe figs when shaken by a stormy wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: ""just as figs do when a stormy wind shakes a fig tree and causes it to drop its unripe figs"

#### Revelation 6:14

##### The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up

The sky was normally thought of as being as strong as a sheet of metal, but now it had become as weak as a sheet of paper and was easily torn and rolled up.

#### Revelation 6:15

##### the commanders

soldiers who command warriors during battle

##### caves

large holes in the sides of hills

#### Revelation 6:16

##### the face of the one

Here "face" represents "presence." Alternate translation: "the presence of the one" or "the one"

#### Revelation 6:17

##### the great day of their wrath has come

The day of their wrath refers to the time when they would punish wicked people. Alternate translation: "this is the terrible time when they will punish people"

##### has come

Existing now is spoken of as having come.

##### their wrath

"Their" refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.

##### Who is able to stand?

Surviving, or staying alive, is spoken of as if it were standing. This question is used to express great sadness and fear that no one will be able to survive when God punishes him. Alternate translation: "No one can survive."

## Chapter 7

# Revelation 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Scholars have interpreted parts of this chapter in many different ways. Translators do not need to fully understand what this chapter means to accurately translate its contents.

It is important to accurately translate the large numbers in this chapter. The number 144,000 is twelve times twelve thousand.

Translators should be aware that the tribes of the people of Israel are not listed in this chapter the same as they are generally listed in the Old Testament.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 5-8 and 15-17.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Worship

God saves his people and keeps them through times of trouble. His people respond by worshipping him. (See: worship)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### The Lamb

This refers to Jesus. In this chapter, it is also a title for Jesus.

#### Revelation 7:1

##### General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of 144,000 servants of God who become marked with seals. Their marking takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

##### the four corners of the earth

The earth is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase "the four corners" refers to the north, south, east, and west.

#### Revelation 7:2

##### the seal of the living God

The word "seal" here refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God's people. Alternate translation: "the marker of the living God" or "the stamp of the living God"

#### Revelation 7:3

##### put a seal on the foreheads

The word "seal" here refers to a mark. This mark shows that the people belong to God and that he will protect them. Alternate translation: "put a mark on the foreheads"

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 7:4

##### those who were sealed

This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "those whom God's angel marked"

##### 144,000

"one hundred forty-four thousand people"

#### Revelation 7:5

##### twelve thousand from the tribe

"12,000 people from the tribe"

##### twelve thousand from ... Judah were sealed

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated similar words in [Revelation 7:4]

#### Revelation 7:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 7:7

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of the people of Israel who were sealed.

#### Revelation 7:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 7:9

##### General Information:

John begins to describe a second vision about a multitude praising God. This vision also takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

##### a huge multitude

"a huge crowd" or "a great number of people"

##### white robes

Here the color "white" represents purity.

#### Revelation 7:10

##### Salvation belongs to

"Salvation comes from"

##### Salvation belongs to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!

They were praising God and the Lamb. The noun "salvation" can be expressed with the verb "save." Alternate translation: "Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!"

#### Revelation 7:11

##### the four living creatures

These are the four creatures mentioned in Revelation 4:6-8.

##### they fell on their faces

Here "fell on their faces" is an idiom that means they lay down facing the ground. See how you translated "prostrated themselves" in [Revelation 4:10]

#### Revelation 7:12

##### Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God

"Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength" or "We must give praise, glory, thanks, and honor to our God"

##### forever and ever

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

#### Revelation 7:13

##### these, clothed with white robes

The white robes showed that these people were righteous.

#### Revelation 7:14

##### have come out of the great tribulation

"have survived the great tribulation" or "have lived through the great tribulation"

##### the great tribulation

"the time of terrible suffering"

##### They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb

People who have been made righteous by the blood of the Lamb are spoken of as if they have washed their robes in his blood. Alternate translation: "They have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood"

##### the blood of the Lamb

The word "blood" is used to refer to the death of Lamb.

#### Revelation 7:15

##### Connecting Statement:

The elder continues to speak to John.

##### they ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping"

##### will spread his tent over them

"will put his tent up over them." Protecting them is spoken of as if it were giving them shelter to live under. Alternate translation: "will shelter them" or "will protect them"

#### Revelation 7:16

##### They ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### The sun will not beat down

The sun's heat no longer causing people to suffer is spoken of as if the sun would not beat down on them. Alternate translation: "The sun will not burn them" or "The sun will not make them weak"

#### Revelation 7:17

##### them ... them ... their

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### the Lamb at the center of the throne will

"the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne, will be"

##### For the Lamb ... will shepherd them

The elder speaks of the Lamb's care for his people as if it were a shepherd's care for his sheep. Alternate translation: "For the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them" or "For the Lamb ... will care for them as a person cares for his animals"

##### he will guide them to springs of living water

The elder speaks of what gives life as if it were springs of fresh water. Alternate translation: "he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water" or "he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water"

##### God will wipe away every tear from their eyes

Tears here represent sadness. Alternate translation: "God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore"

## Chapter 8

# Revelation 8 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Seven seals and seven trumpets

This chapter begins to show what happens when the Lamb opens the seventh seal. God uses the prayers of all believers to cause dramatic things to happen on earth. John then describes what happens when angels sound the first four of seven trumpets.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Similes

In verses 8 and 10, John uses similes to try to describe the images he sees in the vision. He compares the images to everyday things.

#### Revelation 8:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The Lamb opens the seventh seal.

##### the seventh seal

This is the last of the seven seals on the scroll. Alternate translation: "the next seal" or "the final seal" or "seal number seven"

#### Revelation 8:2

##### seven trumpets were given to them

They were each given one trumpet. This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "God gave them seven trumpets" or 2) "the Lamb gave them seven trumpets"

#### Revelation 8:3

##### he would offer it

"he would offer the incense to God by burning it"

#### Revelation 8:4

##### the angel's hand

This refers to the bowl in the angel's hand. Alternate translation: "the bowl in the angel's hand"

#### Revelation 8:5

##### filled it with fire

The word "fire" here probably refers to burning coals. Alternate translation: "filled it with burning coals" or "filled it with coals of fire"

#### Revelation 8:6

##### General Information:

The seven angels sound the seven trumpets, one at a time.

#### Revelation 8:7

##### It was thrown down onto the earth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth"

##### a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass"

##### a third

"A third" is a fraction.

#### Revelation 8:8

##### The second angel

"The next angel" or "Angel number two"

##### something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire"

##### A third

"A third" is a fraction.

##### became blood

Possible meanings are it 1) "became red like blood" or it 2) really became blood.

#### Revelation 8:9

##### the living creatures in the sea

"the things living in the sea" or "the fish and other animals that lived in the sea"

#### Revelation 8:10

##### a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch

"a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky." The fire of the huge star looked similar to the fire of a torch.

##### torch

a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light

#### Revelation 8:11

##### The name of the star is Wormwood

Wormwood is a shrub that tastes bitter. People made medicine out of it, but they also believed that it was poisonous. Alternate translation: "The name of the star is Bitterness" or "The name of the star is Bitter Medicine"

##### became wormwood

The bitter taste of the water is spoken of as if it were wormwood. Alternate translation: "became bitter like wormwood" or "became bitter"

##### died from the waters that became bitter

"died when they drank the bitter water"

#### Revelation 8:12

##### a third of the sun was struck

Causing something bad to happen to the sun is spoken of as striking, or hitting, it. This can be stated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "a third of the sun changed" or "God changed a third of the sun"

##### a third of them turned dark

Possible meanings are 1) "one third of the time they were dark" or 2) "one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark"

##### a third of the day and a third of the night had no light

"there was no light during one third of the day and one third of the night" or "they did not shine during one third of the day and one third of the night"

#### Revelation 8:13

##### because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them"

## Chapter 9

# Revelation 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, John continues to describe what happens when angels sound seven trumpets.

#### Woe

John describes several "woes" in the Book of Revelation. This chapter begins to describe three "woes" announced at the end of Chapter 8.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Animal imagery

This chapter includes several animals: locusts, scorpions, horses, lions, and snakes. These animals represent different qualities or traits. For example, a lion is powerful and dangerous. Translators should use the same animals in their translation if possible. If the animal is unknown, one with similar qualities or traits should be used.

#### Bottomless pit

This image is seen several times in the Book of Revelation. It is a picture of hell as being inescapable and the opposite direction as heaven. (See: hell)

#### Abaddon and Apollyon

"Abaddon" is a Hebrew word. "Apollyon" is a Greek word. Both words mean "Destroyer." John used the sounds of the Hebrew word and wrote them with Greek letters. The ULB and UDB write the sounds of both words with English letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate these words using the letters of the target language. The original Greek readers would have understood "Apollyon" to mean "Destroyer." So translators may also supply what it means in the text or in a footnote.

#### Repentance

Despite great signs, people are described as not repenting and so remain in their sin. People refusing to repent are also mentioned in Chapter 16. (See: repent and sin)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Simile

John uses many similes in this chapter. They help to describe the images that he sees in his vision.

#### Revelation 9:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The fifth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

##### I saw a star from heaven that had fallen

John saw the star after it had fallen. He did not watch if fall.

##### the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit

"the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit"

##### the shaft of the bottomless pit

Possible meanings are 1) "shaft" is another way of referring to the pit and describes it as long and narrow, or 2) "shaft" refers to the opening of the pit.

##### the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

#### Revelation 9:2

##### like smoke from a huge furnace

A huge furnace gives off a great amount of thick, dark smoke. Alternate translation: "like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace"

##### turned dark

"became dark"

#### Revelation 9:3

##### locusts

insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees.

##### power like that of scorpions

Scorpions have the ability to sting and poison other animals and people. Alternate translation: "the ability to sting people as scorpions do"

##### scorpions

small insects with poisonous stingers on their tails. Their sting is extremely painful and the pain lasts a long time.

#### Revelation 9:4

##### They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree

Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and all the leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.

##### but only the people

The phrase "to damage" or "to harm" is understood. Alternate translation: "but only to harm the people"

##### the seal of God

The word "seal" refers a mark that would be left by a tool being pressed into a a wax seal. In this case it refers to mark that God would place upon the foreheads of his people. The people who do not have this mark do not belong to God. See how you translated "seal" in [Revelation 7:3]

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 9:5

##### They were not given permission

"They" refers to the locusts. (Revelation 9:3)

##### those people

the people whom the locusts were stinging

##### but only to torture them

Here the words "given permission" are understood. Alternate translation: "but only given permission to torture them"

##### to torture them for five months

The locusts would be allowed to do this for five months.

##### to torture them

"to make them suffer terrible pain"

##### the sting of a scorpion

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.

#### Revelation 9:6

##### people will seek death but will not find it

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "death." Alternate translation: "people will try to find a way to die but will not find it" or "people will try to kill themselves but will not find a way to die"

##### will greatly desire to die

"will want very much to die" or "will wish that they could die"

##### death will flee from them

John speaks of death as if it were a person or animal that could run away. Alternate translation: "they will not be able to die" or "they will not die"

#### Revelation 9:7

##### General Information:

These locusts did not look like ordinary locusts. John describes them by telling how parts of them looked like other things.

##### crowns of gold

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 9:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 9:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 9:10

##### They had tails

The word "They" refers to the locusts.

##### with stingers like scorpions

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. Its sting can cause severe pain or even death. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 9:3]

##### in their tails they had power to harm people for five months

Possible meanings are 1) they had power for five months to harm people or 2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.

#### Revelation 9:11

##### the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in Revelation 9:1.

##### Abaddon ... Apollyon

Both names mean "Destroyer."

#### Revelation 9:12

##### there are still two disasters to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 9:13

##### Connecting Statement:

The sixth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

##### I heard a voice coming

The voice refers to the one who was speaking. John does not say who the speaker was, but it may have been God. Alternate translation: "I heard someone speaking"

##### horns of the golden altar

These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the altar.

#### Revelation 9:14

##### the four angels who had been bound

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "the four angels whom God had commanded someone to bind" or "the four angels whom God bound"

#### Revelation 9:15

##### The four angels who had been prepared for ... that year were released

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "The angel released the four angels who had been prepared for ... that year"

##### The four angels who had been prepared

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "The four angels whom God had prepared"

##### for that hour, that day, that month, and that year

These words are used to show that the time to release the angels is a specific, chosen time and not just any time. Alternate translation: "for that exact time"

#### Revelation 9:16

##### General Information:

Suddenly, 200,000,000 soldiers on horseback appear in John's vision. John is no longer speaking about the four angels mentioned in the previous verse.

##### 200,000,000

Some ways to express this are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in [Revelation 5:11]

#### Revelation 9:17

##### fiery red

"red like fire" or "bright red." See how you translated this in Revelation 6:3.

##### out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur

"fire, smoke, and sulfur came out of their mouths"

#### Revelation 9:18

##### Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the horses and the plagues brought upon humanity.

##### A third of the people

"One third of the people." See how you translated "A third" in [Revelation 8:7]

#### Revelation 9:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 9:20

##### those who were not killed by these plagues

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the plagues had not killed"

##### the works of their hands

The word "hand" here is a metonym for the person whose hands they are. Alternate translation: "the deeds they had done"

##### things that cannot see, hear, or walk

This phrase reminds us that idols are not alive and do not deserve to be worshiped. But the people did not stop worshiping them. Alternate translation: "even though idols cannot see, hear, or walk"

#### Revelation 9:21

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Chapter 10

# Revelation 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Seven thunders

John here describes the seven thunders as making sounds that he could understand as words. However, translators should use their normal word for "thunder" when translating these verses.

#### "The mystery of God"

This refers to some aspect of the hidden plan of God. It is not necessary to know what this mystery is to translate it. (See: reveal)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Simile

John uses similes to help him describe the face, legs, and voice of the mighty angel. Translators should understand other objects in this chapter, such as the rainbow and the cloud, with their normal meanings.

#### Revelation 10:1

##### General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of a mighty angel holding a scroll. In John's vision he is viewing what is happening from earth. This takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

##### He was clothed in a cloud

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing a cloud as his clothing. This expression may be understood as metaphor. However, because very unusual things were often seen in visions, it might be understood as a literally true statement in its context.

##### His face was like the sun

John compares the brightness of his face with the brightness of the sun. Alternate translation: "His face was bright like the sun"

##### his feet were like pillars of fire

The word "feet" here refers to the legs. Alternate translation: "his legs were like pillars of fire"

#### Revelation 10:2

##### He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land

"He stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land"

#### Revelation 10:3

##### Then he shouted

"Then the angel shouted"

##### the seven thunders spoke out

The thunder is described as if it were a person who could speak. Alternate translation: "the seven thunders made a loud noise" or "the thunder sounded very loudly seven times"

##### seven thunders

Thunder occurring seven times is spoken of as if it were seven different "thunders."

#### Revelation 10:4

##### but I heard a voice from heaven

The word "voice" refers to words spoken by someone other than the angel. Alternate translation: "but I heard someone speaking from heaven"

##### Seal up

People in John's day would write a message on a scroll and then seal the scroll so that only the person whom the writers wanted to open it were able to open it. This is a metaphor for keeping something secret. Alternate translation: "Keep secret"

#### Revelation 10:5

##### raised his right hand to heaven

He did this to show that he was swearing by God.

#### Revelation 10:6

##### He swore by the one who lives forever and ever

"He asked that what he was going to say would be confirmed by the one who lives forever and ever"

##### the one who lives forever and ever

Here "the one" refers to God.

##### There will be no more delay

"There will be no more waiting" or "God will not delay"

#### Revelation 10:7

##### the mystery of God will be accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will accomplish his mystery" or "God will complete his secret plan"

#### Revelation 10:8

##### Connecting Statement:

John hears the voice from heaven, which he had heard in Revelation 10:4, speak to him again.

##### The voice I heard from heaven

The word "voice" refers to the speaker. Alternate translation: "The one I heard speak from heaven" or "The one who had spoken to me from heaven"

##### I heard

John heard

#### Revelation 10:9

##### He said to me

"The angel said to me"

##### make ... bitter

"make ... sour" or "make ... acid." This refers to a bad taste from the stomach after eating something that is not good.

#### Revelation 10:10

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Revelation 10:11

##### languages

This refers to the people who speak the languages. Alternate translation: "language communities" or "groups of people who speak their own languages"

## Chapter 20

# Revelation 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The thousand-year reign of Christ

In this chapter, Jesus is said to reign for a thousand years, at the same time that Satan is bound. Scholars are divided over whether this refers to a future period of time or to Jesus reigning now from heaven. It is not necessary to understand this passage in order to translate it accurately. (See: prophet)

#### Final rebellion

This chapter also describes what happens after the thousand years are ended. During this time, Satan and many people will attempt to rebel against Jesus. This will result in God's ultimate and final victory over sin and evil. (See: sin and evil and eternity)

#### Great white throne

This chapter ends with God judging all people who ever lived. God separates people who believe in Jesus from those who do not believe in him. (See: judge and heaven and faith)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Hades and the lake of fire

These appear to be two distinct places. The translator may wish to do further research to determine how to translate these two places differently. They should not be made the same as each other in translation. (See: hell)

#### Revelation 20:1

##### General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of an angel throwing the devil into the bottomless pit.

##### Then I saw

Here "I" refers to John.

##### bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in Revelation 9:1.

#### Revelation 20:2

##### dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos.

#### Revelation 20:3

##### sealed it over him

The angel sealed the pit to keep anyone from opening it. Alternate translation: "sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it"

##### deceive the nations

Here "nations" is a metonym for the people of the earth. Alternate translation: "deceive the people-groups"

##### the thousand years

"1,000 years"

##### he must be set free

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will command the angel to free him"

#### Revelation 20:4

##### General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing thrones and the souls of believers.

##### who had been given authority to judge

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God had given authority to judge"

##### who had been beheaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whose heads others had cut off"

##### for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God

"because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and about the word of God"

##### for the word of God

These words are a metonym for the message from God. Alternate translation: "for what they taught about the scriptures"

##### They came to life

"They came back to life" or "They became alive again"

#### Revelation 20:5

##### The rest of the dead

"All of the other dead people"

##### the thousand years were ended

"the end of the 1,000 years"

#### Revelation 20:6

##### Over these the second death has no power

Here John describes "death" as a person with power. Alternate translation: "These people will not experience the second death"

##### the second death

"dying a second time." This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14]

#### Revelation 20:7

##### Satan will be released from his prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will release Satan from his prison"

#### Revelation 20:8

##### They will be as many as the sand of the sea

This emphasizes the extremely large number of soldiers in Satan's army.

#### Revelation 20:9

##### They went

"Satan's army went"

##### the beloved city

This refers to Jerusalem.

##### fire came down from heaven and devoured them

Here John speaks of fire as if it were alive. Alternate translation: "God sent fire from heaven to burn them up"

#### Revelation 20:10

##### The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God threw the devil, who had deceived them, into" or "God's angel threw the devil, who had deceived them, into"

##### lake of burning sulfur

"the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur." See how you translated this in Revelation 19:20.

##### where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where he had also thrown the beast and the false prophet"

##### They will be tormented

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will torment them"

#### Revelation 20:11

##### General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing a great white throne and the dead being judged.

##### The earth and the heavens fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go

John describes heaven and earth as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth.

#### Revelation 20:12

##### the books were opened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone opened the books"

##### The dead were judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God judged the people who had died and now lived again"

##### by what was recorded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by what he had recorded"

#### Revelation 20:13

##### The sea gave up the dead ... Death and Hades gave up the dead

Here John speaks of the sea, death, and Hades as if they were living persons.

##### the dead were judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God judged the dead people"

##### Hades

Here "Hades" is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment.

#### Revelation 20:14

##### Death and Hades were thrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God threw Death and Hades" or "God's angel threw Death and Hades"

##### the second death

"dying a second time." This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14]

#### Revelation 20:15

##### If anyone's name was not found written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If God's angel did not find a person's name"

##### he was thrown into the lake of fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the angel threw him into the lake of fire" or "the angel threw him into the place where fire burns forever"